

**CIHM
Microfiche
Series
(Monographs)**

**ICMH
Collection de
microfiches
(monographies)**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1999

Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming are checked below.

- ☒ Coloured covers / Couverture de couleur
- ☐ Covers damaged / Couverture endommagée
- ☐ Covers restored and/or laminated / Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- ☐ Cover title missing / Le titre de couverture manque
- ☐ Coloured maps / Cartes géographiques en couleur
- ☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black) / Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- ☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations / Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- ☐ Bound with other material / Relié avec d'autres documents
- ☐ Only edition available / Seule édition disponible
- ☐ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin / La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure.
- ☐ Blank leaves added during restorations may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming / Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- ☐ Additional comments / Commentaires supplémentaires:

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- ☐ Coloured pages / Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged / Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated / Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed / Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached / Pages détachées
- ☒ Showthrough / Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies / Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material / Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image / Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.
- ☐ Opposing pages with varying colouration or discolourations are filmed twice to ensure the best possible image / Les pages s'opposant ayant des colorations variables ou des décolorations sont filmées deux fois afin d'obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below /
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10x 14x 18x 22x 26x 30x
12x 16x 20x 24x 28x 32x

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

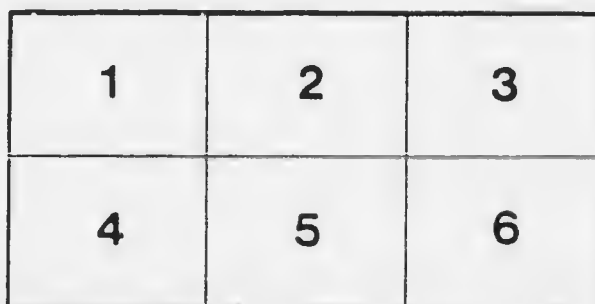
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

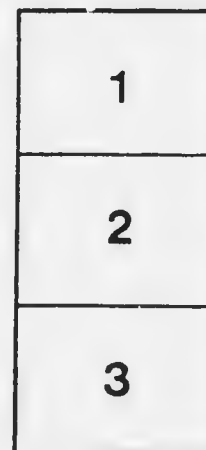
Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

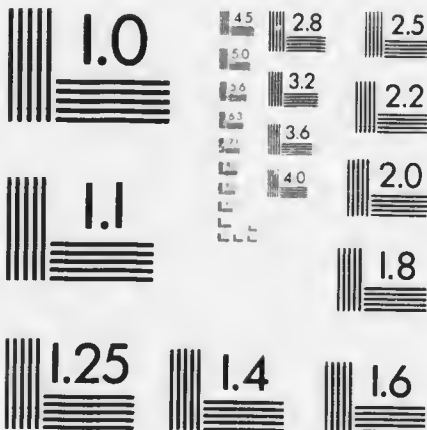
Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

MATRICULATION LATIN

CARRUTHERS AND ROBERTSON



THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK CO. LIMITED
TORONTO



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.
(From the Roman Gallery, British Museum.)

Twentieth Century Series

MATRICULATION LATIN

BY

ADAM CARRUTHERS, M.A.

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF GREEK, UNIVERSITY COLLEGE,
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

AND

J. C. ROBERTSON, M.A.

PROFESSOR OF GREEK, VICTORIA COLLEGE,
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK CO., LIMITED
TORONTO

PA209E
C3

Entered according to Act of Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand nine hundred and six, by W. J. GAGE & CO. LIMITED, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

81255-

PREFACE.

THIS book contains the Caesar and Virgil required for pass University Matriculation, besides a considerable amount of prose Latin for practice in sight reading. It contains also a statement of the principles of Latin syntax, together with exercises in prose composition based on Caesar. This inclusion of selections from both prose and poetry in the same volume is attended with certain advantages, and is not altogether a new departure, as the plan has been followed in recent years in more than one excellent work published in England and the United States for pupils at this stage.

Since the character of the work required, in future, of pupils preparing for the examination in Latin for University Matriculation and Junior Teachers is materially changed, the book has been prepared mainly with a view to meeting the new requirements.

According to the new prescription, special importance is to be attached to the translation at sight of passages of average difficulty from Caesar. The prescribed portion of Caesar, while of an amount sufficient to prepare the pupil for the test of his knowledge of Latin Syntax and his power of idiomatic translation, is obviously too small to give sufficient practice in sight reading. Accordingly, the story of Caesar's Conquest of Gaul (Books I.-IV.) has been given in, as far as practicable, Caesar's own language. This has been reduced in amount to somewhat more than the length of an average book of Caesar, by the elimination of digressions, by the omission or modification of passages of more than average difficulty, and in the earlier sections by a certain measure of simplification. These simplified sections would also serve admirably for an easy transition from the introductory book to the reading of Caesar.

The prescribed text of Caesar has been annotated with a view to the accurate comprehension of the author, to syntactical study and idiomatic translation. The classified index of noteworthy

points of syntax will, we trust, be found useful to both teacher and pupil, especially for purposes of review.

The statement of syntax contains, printed in large type, the more common rules, which should be carefully studied by all pupils, and upon which the exercises in composition are based. It deals also with many points which are not found in the ordinary introductory book, or necessary for the prescribed prose composition, but a knowledge of which, nevertheless, is often required for the intelligent reading of the prescribed authors, and the absence of which would necessitate the use of an additional book on Latin grammar. The portions dealing with these points are printed in smaller type.

Of the sections printed in smaller type the following should be carefully studied: sections 179 to 184 on the use of the tenses; and sections 201 to 205 on idiomatic translation.

An attempt has been made to give an accurate presentation of the rules and facts of Latin syntax, in the light derived from the standard authorities, including Gildersleeve and Lodge, Harkness, Bennett, Allen and Greenough, Lane, West, and Hale and Buck.

To illustrate the common rules of Latin syntax, a double series of exercises on prose composition is given, one series based on the *Bellum Gallicum* generally, the other on the prescribed chapters of Books IV. and V.

The notes on the prescribed Virgil are meant to promote the intelligent and appreciative reading of that author, in other words to help the pupil to understand the author's meaning, to feel the influence of his poetic charm, and to render the Latin lines with taste and sympathy into worthy idiomatic English prose. While it has been deemed undesirable to treat the Virgil, like the Caesar, as a subject of special grammatical study, yet every effort has been made to enable the pupil to cope with those difficulties in Virgilian syntax and Virgilian diction which so often prove a bar to the comprehension or the adequate expression of the poet's meaning.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Introduction to Caesar	9
The Story of Caesar's Conquest of Gaul	13
Caesar, <i>De Bello Gallico</i> , IV. 20—V. 23	39
Notes on Caesar, <i>De Bello Gallico</i> , IV. 20—V. 23	67
Index of Points of Syntax and Accidence	94
Vocabulary to Caesar	101
Rules of Syntax and Exercises in Prose Composition	169
English-Latin Vocabulary	309
Introduction to Virgil's <i>Aeneid</i>	323
Virgil, <i>Aeneid</i> I., 1-510	337
Notes on Virgil's <i>Aeneid</i> I., 1-510	355
Vocabulary to Virgil	393
Index	417

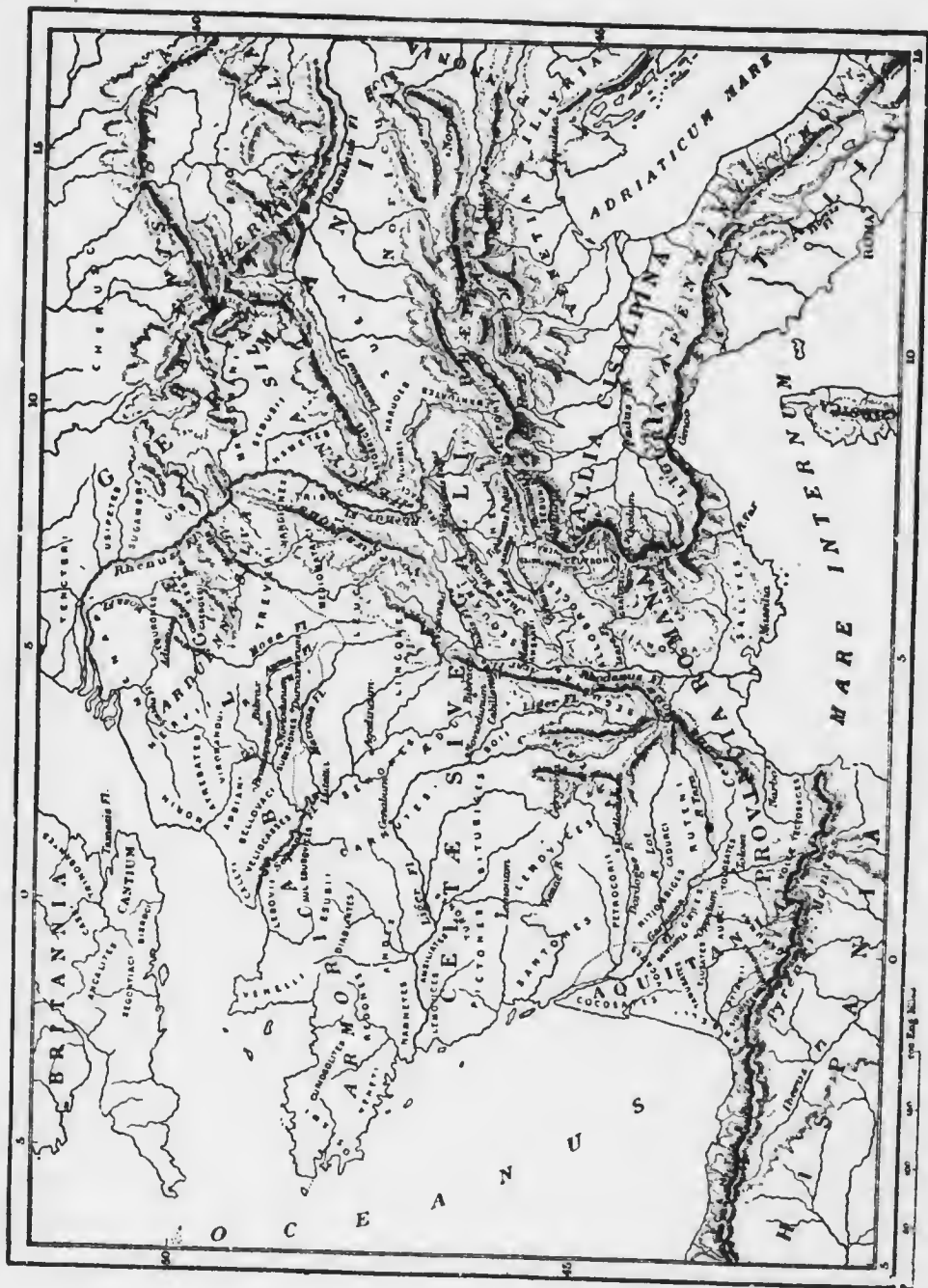
RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

Introductory.—Order of Words, Order of Clauses, Con- cords	169
The Accusative and Infinitive	176
Complementary Infinitive	180
Final Clauses (Clauses of Purpose)	183
Consecutive or Result Clauses. Clauses of Characteristic	187
Questions, Direct and Indirect	190
The Present and Perfect Participles	195
The Ablative Absolute	199
Verbs Completed by the Dative, Genitive or Ablative. The Impersonal Passive	202

	PAGE
Conditional Sentences	207
Clauses of Concession. Clauses of Proviso. Conditional	
Clauses of Comparison	211
Uses of the Accusative	214
Uses of the Dative	218
Uses of the Genitive	223
Uses of the Ablative	229
Verbal Nouns—Infinitive, Gerund, Supine	236
Verbal Adjectives—Gerundive, Participles	240
Expressions of Place and Time	243
Imperative. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive	247
Verbs of Fearing. Uses of Quin and Quōminus	251
Duty, Necessity, Possibility, Permission	253
Causal Sentences. Uses of Cum	256
Temporal Clauses	260
Personal, Demonstrative, Reflexive and Possessive Pro- nouns	264
Indefinite Pronouns	269
The Relative Pronoun	273
Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse	277
Tenses of the Indicative	281
Indirect Discourse (Ōratiō Obliqua)	286
Different Forms of the Noun Clause	294
Continuous Prose and Idiomatic Translation	298

ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Caius Julius Caesar	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Roman Eagle	9
Sub Sarcinis	31
Roman Sword	38
Legionary Soldier	50
Armor and Weapons	61
Roman Soldiers on the March	66
Roman War Galleys	79
Testūdō (<i>from Trajan's Column</i>)	86
Transport Ship	94
Attack on a Walled City	168
Ancient City Wall and Gate	308
Warship	322
Virgil	323
Juno	336
Diana	353
 MAP OF GAUL AND BRITAIN	 8
MAP SHOWING THE WANDERINGS OF AENEAS	354





INTRODUCTION.

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

Rise to Eminence.

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR was born at Rome on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. (or, as Mommsen holds, in 102 B.C.), of one of the oldest patrician families of that city. Although of aristocratic birth, he espoused the cause of the popular party, and after barely escaping with his life on the defeat of that party by Sulla in 82 B.C., he withdrew from active politics for several years. By 70 B.C., however, he had become a favorite of the people, and one of its most influential leaders. He rose rapidly through the various grades of office, being made in succession quaestor, aedile, pontifex maximus (a life-office), praetor, and finally consul in 59 B.C.

First Triumvirate.

The three leading men of Rome at this time were Pompey, representing the nobles ; Caesar, the leader of the popular party ; and Crassus, whose influence was largely due to his immense wealth. On Caesar's suggestion they formed a coalition (the so-called First Triumvirate), the result of which was to place the practical supremacy of the state in the hands of these three men. The powerful influence of this coalition secured for him,

after his consulship, the administration for five years of the three provinces, Illyricum and Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul.* In 55 B.C., by an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, this command was extended for another period of five years.

Conquest of Gaul and Expeditions to Britain.

From 58 to 51 B.C. Caesar was engaged in the conquest of Gaul. In the first three campaigns he made himself master of that country from the Province and the Pyrenees to the Rhine and the Ocean. In the fourth year (55 B.C.), after driving back across the Rhine certain invading German tribes, Caesar late in the summer undertook a reconnoitring expedition to Britain. He did not venture inland, and returned in a few weeks, but "he had learned where and how to land, and had noted the British method of fighting; above all he had accustomed his men to the sight of the sea and the painted barbarians." Caesar was not satisfied with this expedition, and in the next summer (54 B.C.), in spite of growing disaffection in Gaul, set sail for Britain with a much larger force, as if for a serious invasion. But though he subdued all the south-eastern districts, the Britons fought obstinately, and he had to withdraw at the end of the summer without being able to make any permanent impression upon this distant country, which was not again visited by a Roman army for nearly a century. The remaining three years (53 to 51 B.C.) were spent in completing the subjugation of Gaul, and especially in crushing the insurrections that from time to time broke out. Among the results of Caesar's conquest of Gaul were, first, that the boundaries of the Roman empire were now extended to the English Channel and the Rhine, and secondly, that the Roman language and civilization became so firmly implanted in Gaul that, even after nearly two thousand years, the language of that country (the French) is a modified Latin, and its laws and institutions show everywhere the in-

* For the various senses in which the word *Gaul* is used, see the Vocabulary under *Gallia*.

fluence of Rome. A more immediate result also was to furnish Caesar with an army of experienced and devoted veterans, such as the Roman world had never before seen.

Civil War and Death.

After the conquest of Gaul, civil war arose between Caesar and Pompey, now his sole remaining rival, Crassus having fallen in battle in the East. By the overthrow of the Pompeian party Caesar became practically supreme ruler of the Roman world. He showed unexpected clemency to his former opponents, and began a brilliant career as administrator and reformer. But the Roman aristocracy, alarmed at his great power and popularity and their own loss of prestige, formed a conspiracy to remove him, being actuated in some cases by jealousy, in others by an honest but short-sighted desire to bring back republican freedom; and on the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., "the foremost man of all this world" fell beneath the daggers of the conspirators, at the base of Pompey's statue. Saddest of all, one of his many wounds was dealt by the hand of his intimate friend Brutus.

Personal Appearance.

We are told that in personal appearance Caesar was noble and commanding. He was tall of stature and of slender build, his complexion was pale, his nose prominent and decidedly "Roman," his eyes were black, keen and full of expression. In later life he had a tendency to baldness. His constitution was naturally delicate, and he was subject to attacks of epilepsy, but by constant exercise and temperate living he managed to acquire vigorous health, so that he could endure the most prolonged toil and most arduous exertions.

Versatile Genius.

The genius of Caesar was many-sided, and he excelled in everything he undertook. Not only was he one of the greatest generals of all time, but he was pre-eminent as a law-giver, a jurist and a statesman. Moreover, he has left behind him a reputation as an orator, a poet, a mathematician, an architect and engineer, while as an historian he will ever rank with the highest.

Extant Works.

Caesar was the author of numerous literary works, on many different subjects, but of these all that have come down to us are his *Commentarii De Bello Gallico* (from which the selections contained in this book are taken), and his *Commentarii De Bello Civili* (in three books), a history of the war between himself and Pompey. The Commentaries* of Caesar are memoirs written by himself, descriptive of his different campaigns. It is uncertain whether the work was written as the war went on, and issued book by book, or whether it was composed towards the end of the war. Each book of the Commentaries on the Gallic War contains the account of a single year's campaign. There are seven books in all, the history of the eighth year's operations having been composed after Caesar's death by Aulus Hirtius, one of his lieutenants.

Literary Style.

The *Commentarii*, by universal consent, are written in the purest Latin, in a style marked by great simplicity and conciseness, and, in spite of its condensation, by singular ease and elegance. The best judges among Caesar's contemporaries praise his literary style for its purity of diction, and its business-like directness of expression. Cicero, the best literary critic of his day, has this to say of the Commentaries: "I pronounce them to be, in fact, entirely commendable; for they are simple, straightforward, of a charming elegance, stripped of all rhetorical adornments." In the choice of words also Caesar is pure and classical, in accordance with the advice quoted from him by the Roman grammarian Gellius, "to shun an uncommon or out-of-the-way word as a ship would a rock."

* *Commentarii*, meaning *sketches, jottings*, is used as the title of a book on any subject, but especially an historical one, which is only sketched down or written without careful revision.

THE STORY OF CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL.

THE FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

Caesar, hearing of a threatened emigration of the Helvetian nation, hastens from Rome to Transalpine Gaul to prevent a movement so dangerous to the Roman Province.

1. Gallia est omnis¹ divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam Galli, qui ipsorum² lingua Celtae appellantur. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, qui a provincia longissime absunt, proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidiane proeliis cum Germanis contendunt. Sed undique loci natura continentur: una ex parte est flumen Rhenus altissimus et latissimus; altera³ ex parte mons Jura altissimus; tertia ex parte flumen Rhodanus nostram provinciam⁴ ab Helvetiis dividit. His de causis Helvetii non late vagari poterant, nec facile finitibus bellum inferre. Itaque, cum essent homines bellandi cupidi, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur. His rebus adducti, oppida sua omnia vicisque incendere et de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exire constituerunt et optimam partem totius Galliae occupare.

¹ Translate **omnis** by *as a whole*, in opposition to the narrower sense in which Caesar proceeds to speak of the **Galli**.

² Translate by *their own* (in opposition to that of the Romans).

³ Translate here by *a second*.

⁴ Since 118 B.C. the southern part of France had been a Roman province (hence the modern name *Provence*). See the map of Gaul.

2. Itineribus omnino duobus domo¹ exire poterant; quorum unum erat per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multo facilius. Caesar, cui prōvincia Gallia eō annō dēerēta erat, audivit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī. Statim ab urbe proficiscitur et in Galliam pervenit. Ubi dē ejus adventū Helvētīi certiorēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; sed Caesar negat sē posse iter² ulli per prōvinciam dare. Relinquēbātur ūna³ per Sēquanōs via. Mox Caesari renūtiatur Helvētiōs per agrum Sēquanōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, qui nōn longē ā prōvinciā nostrā absunt. Intellegēbat periculōsum prōvinciae fore⁴, si hominēs bellicōsi, populi Rōmāni inimici, prōvinciae finitimi essent⁵. Ob eās causās in Italiā contendit; duās ibi legiōnēs cōnseribit, et trēs ex hibernis ēdūcit; cum his quinque legiōnibus in Galliam per Alpēs ire contendit.

Caesar surprises the Helvetians at the river Arar, and soon after, near Bibracte, inflicts a crushing defeat on the remainder. The survivors are sent back to the homes they had abandoned.

3. Helvētīi jam per finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant, eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Itaque nē omnēs fortunāe sociōrum cōnsiderentur, Caesar ē castris profectus ad Helvētiōs pervēnit⁶. Trēs jam partēs Helvētiōrum flūmen Ararim trānsierant; reliquōs aggressus, māgnam partem eōrum cōeidit; reliquī sēsē in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Hōc proeliō factō, ut reliquās cōpiās cōsequi posset⁷, pontem facit, atque ita exereitum trādūcit. Tum per⁸ multōs diēs Caesar Helvētiōs insequitur, novissimumque agmen laeessit.

¹ See 126. [References are to Syntax and Composition, page 169.]

² Translate by *passage* or *right of passing*.

³ Translate *ūna via* by *only the way*.

⁴ *Fore* = *futūrum esse*, the future infinitive of *sum*.

⁵ Translate by *should be* (or *were to be*). *Si* with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive may represent future conditions put in indirect discourse (187, b).

⁶ Translate by *came up with*.

⁷ For the use of secondary sequence with the historical present see 23, iv.

⁸ Translate by *throughout* or *for*.

4. Tandem ut rei frumentariae prospiceret, iter ab Helvëtiis avertit, atque ad oppidum Aeduorum maximum et cōpiōsissimum ire contendit. Helvëtiī Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs esse et discēdere ā sē existimābant. Itaque, itinere conversō, nostrōs insequi ac lacessere coepērunt. Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collein subducit, aciemque instruit. Helvëtiī impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt; ipsi sub primam nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar, cohortātus suōs, proclium commisit. Diū atque acriter pūgnāverunt. Sed cum diūtius sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, Helvëtiī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad Caesarem misērunt. Caesar Helvëtiōs in finēs suōs, unde profecti erant, reverti jussit, et oppida vicōsque restituere. Helvëtiōrum trecenta et sexāgintā octō milia domo exierant; vix centum et decem milia domum¹ rediērunt.

The leading men of several Gallic tribes ask Caesar's assistance against Ariovistus, a German king, who had recently gained a footing in central Gaul. Caesar at first tries argument and diplomacy, but in vain.

5. Hōc bellō cōfectō, tōtius ferē Galliae principēs ad Caesarem convēnērunt atque petiērunt ut sibi auxilium ferret contrā Ariovistum, rēgem Germānōrum, quī multa milia suōrum in Galliam trādūxisset optimumque agrum occupāvisset atque Gallōs ex finibus pelleret. Dēmōnstrant Ariovistum Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicisse et nunc crūdēliter imperāre atque obsidēs² nōbilissimōrum liberōs poscere; neque posse ējus imperium diūtius sustinēri. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Gallōrum animōs cōfirmāvit, pollicitusque sē Galliam ab Ariovistī injuriā dēfensūrum. Hāc orātiōne habitā principēs dīmisit. Simul Germānōs cōsuēscere³ in Galliam trānsire populō Rōmānō periculōsum esse vidēbat, nē, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Italiā contenderent. Itaque cōstituit ad

¹ See 125.

² Translate by *as hostages*; for the case see 69, v.

³ See the second illustrative sentence in 110 with the footnote.

Ariovistum lēgātōs mittere quī ab eō postulārent ut aliquem locum colloquī¹ diceret.

6. Quod² cum nōllet Ariovistus facere, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs mittit quī postulārent primum nē amplius Germānōs trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde ut obsidēs Gallis redderet nēve bellum iis inferret. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit sē Gallōs vīcisse atque jūre bellī ūti cōstituisse; sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque Gallis injūriā³ bellum illātūrum sī imperiō suō pārērent⁴; atque sī Caesar vellet sēcum congregi, intellectūrum quanta esset virtūs invietōrum Germānōrum.

7. Eōdem tempore Caesar certior factus est Germānōs, quī nūper in Galliam transportāti essent, finēs Aeduōrum populārī, et māguam multitudinem Suebōrum ad ripās Rhēnī vēnisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur. Quibus⁵ rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus, nātūrāre cōstituit nē nova manus Suebōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovisti sēsē conjungerent. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē comparātā, māgnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. Cum trīdūi viam prōeessisset, nūntiātum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere. In eō oppidō onium rērum quae ad bellum ūsui erant summa erat facultās, idque nātūrā loci ēgregiē mūniēbātur. Hūc Caesar contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

Deceived by false reports, the Roman soldiers are at first reluctant to advance, but Caesar calms their fears. On drawing near the Germans, Caesar has an interview with Ariovistus which the enemy's treachery renders fruitless.

8. Dum paucōs diēs ibi rei frūmentāriae causā morātur, militēs falsis rūmōribus māgnopere perturbāti sunt. Nam Galli ac mercā-

¹ Translate the dative by *for*.

² To emphasize the connection with the preceding words, Latin often uses *quī* for *hic* or *is*, placing it even before a conjunction. Here *quod* (literally *which thing*) is the object of *facere*; translate by *this* (172).

³ Translate by *wrongfully* (103).

⁴ For *pārērent* and *vellet* compare footnote 5, page 14.

⁵ Compare footnote 2 above, and translate as if it were *hī*.

tōres Germānōs ingenti māgnitūdine¹ esse corporum, incredibilique virtūte praedicābant. Caesar eum animadvertisset militēs propter timōrem castra movēre ac signa contrā hostēs ferre nōlle, convocātō conciliō, dēmonstrat Germānōs saepe ab Helvētiis superātōs esse, quī tamen parēs esse exercitui Rōmānō nōn potuissent. Tum affirmāvit sē proximā nocte quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, atque sī praetereā nēmō sequeretur, tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret. Hāc orātiōne habitā, summa alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendī innāta est², atque quārtā vigiliā, ut³ dixerat, profectus est cum omni exercitū. Septimō diē ab explorātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

9. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit qui dicerent Ariovistum, cum Caesar propius accessisset, colloqui eum eō jam velle: simul postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret, sed ut uterque cum equitātū veniret; verērī⁴ sē nē per insidiās⁵ ab eō circumvenirētur. Plānitēs erat māgna inter castra Ariovistī et Caesaris. Eō uterque cum equitātū ad colloquium venit, atque cum paucis equitibus in mediam plānitē prōgreditur. Reliqui equitēs mediocri intervallō⁶ cōstitērunt.

10. Caesar initio orātiōnis ostendit quanta a sē senātūque beneficia Ariovistus accēpisset; simul docēbat Aeduōs diū sociōs populī Rōmāni fuisse. Postulāvit deinde eadem quae⁷ lēgātī. Ariovistus respondit sē rogātum esse ā Gallis ut Rhēnum trānsiret; nōn sēsē Gallis sed Gallōs sibi bellum postea intulisse; atque iniquum esse exercitum Rōmānum⁸ in suōs finēs venīre. Postulāvit

¹ Translate *māgnitūdō corporum* by *stature*.

² Translate *was aroused*.

³ *Ut*, in the sense of *as*, takes the indicative.

⁴ The infinitive is in indirect discourse, the verb of *saying* being easily understood. For *nē*=*lest* or *that* after verbs of *fearing* see 138.

⁵ Translate by *treacherously*.

⁶ The ablative, as well as the accusative, may be used to express distance (101, i). Translate here by *at*.

⁷ Translate by *made the same demands as*.

⁸ See footnote 3, page 15.

igitur ut Caesar decēderet et liberum possessionem Galliae sibi traderet. Dum haec in colloquīo geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius accēdere, et lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conijcere. Caesar loquendi finem fecit, sēque ad suōs recēpit, suisque imperāvit, nē quod omninō tēlum in hostēs rejicerent, nē pulsī hostēs dicere possent sē in colloquīo per insidiās circumventōs. Quibus rēhus cōgnitis, multō māius studium pugnandi exercitui injectum est¹.

After several delays, Caesar comes to a decisive engagement with Ariovistus, completely routs the Germans and drives them back across the Rhine.

11. Post paucōs diēs Ariovistus, castris mōtis, praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duobus² ultrā eum castrū fecit, eō cōsiliō³ ut frūmentō commeātūque Caesarem interclūderet. Tum diēs continuōs quīque Caesar prō castris suīs cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūxit. Ariovistus autem, etsi dīmicanđi potestās nōn deerat, his omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit⁴, et equestri proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum ubi Germānī cōsēderant, circiter passūs sescēntōs ab iis, castris idōncum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse⁵, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Tum cōpiās Ariovistus misit quae nostrōs mūnitiōne⁶ prohibērēt. Caesar tamen, ut antē cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitis castris, duās legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra mājōra redūxit.

¹ Translate **injectō** and the dative by *inspire* (or *arouse*) *in*.

² For the ablative expressing distance see footnote 6, page 17.

³ Translate by *with this design*, explained by the following clause.

⁴ Translate by *kept in camp*.

⁵ Translate by *to remain under arms*.

⁶ Translate by *from fortifying*.

12. Proximō diē Caesar ē castris utrisque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā mājōribus castris prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibusque pūgnandi potestātem fēcit¹. Ubi nō tum quidem eōs prōdive intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Posterō diē praesidiō utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est reliquit, atque triplici instrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās ēdūxērunt, omnemque aciem rēdis et carris circumdederunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficiscentēs milites flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent.

13. Caesar ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostēs, signō datō, impetum fēcērunt, itaque² hostēs celeriter prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pila in hostēs conijciendī nō darētur. Rejectis pilis, comminus gladiis pūgnant. Cum hostiū aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudīne suōrum nostram aciem premēbant³. Id cum animadvertisset Pūblius Crassus, quī equitātui pracerat, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidiō misit. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnēs hostēs ^{erga} vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstiterunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī salutē repperērunt; in⁴ hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāvieulam delīgātum ad ripam naetus, eā profūgit. Reliquos omnēs cōsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

14. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum uūntiātō, Suēbī quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum reverti coepērunt. Caesar unā aestāte duobus māximis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus

¹ Translate by *gave an opportunity*.

² **Itaque**, here two words, **Ita + que**.

³ Translate the Imperfect by *kept pressing* (180, b).

⁴ Translate by *among*.

annī postulābat, in hiberna in¹ Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit. Hibernīs Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam profectus est.

THE SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

Learning that the tribes of the Belgae are combining against the Romans, Caesar advances into their territory and encamps on the bank of the river Axona.

15. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur², litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāre. Conjūrandī hae erant causae: primum verēbantur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad Belgās exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre in Galliā cōnsuēscere³ nōlēbant; nōnnulli etiam ex potentiōribus, quī rēgna occupāre cupiēbant, molestē ferēbant quod minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō⁴ cōsequi possent. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestātē⁵, in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret⁶, Quīntum Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Imperat Gallis quī finitimī Belgīs erant uti⁷ ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāverunt manūs cōgi, exercitum in ūnum locum condūci. Tum vērō rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet, diēbusque circiter quindecim ad finēs Belgārū pervenit.

¹ Translate by *among*; the phrase modifies a verb of motion (127, iv).

² The imperfect denotes repeated action, *kept coming in*; so *fiēbat*, *was repeatedly informed*.

³ Translate by *that an army should become accustomed* (21).

⁴ Translate by *under our rule*.

⁵ An ablative absolute; translate by *at the beginning of summer*.

⁶ For the relative clause of purpose see 26.

⁷ Distinguish *uti* = *ut* and *ut* the infinitive of *utor*.

16. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnī opīniōne¹ vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex² Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs misērunt, quī dicerent sē neque cum Belgis reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāsse³, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperātā⁴ facere; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs conjunxisse. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae civitātēs in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent⁵, sic reperiēbat⁶: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque⁷ antiquitus trāductōs propter loci fertilitatem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse.

17. Dē numerō cōrum Rēmī dicēbant quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit⁸ sē cōgnōvisse. Plūrimū inter cōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre⁹; hōs pollicitōs esse sexāgiūtā milia armātōrum, tōtiusque belli imperiū¹⁰ sibi postulāre. Suessionēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre; oppida habēre numerō duodecim, pollicērī milia armāta quinquāgiūtā; totidem Nervīōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur¹¹ longissimēque absint; quīndecim milia Atrebatēs, Ambianōs decem milia, Morinōs viginti quīnque milia, Menapiōs septem milia, Caletōs decem milia, Vellocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduātucōs decem et novem milia.

18. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātiōne prōsecūtus¹²

¹ Literally *than all expectation*; translate by *than any one had expected*.

² To be taken closely with **proximī** and translated by *of*.

³ A contracted form for **conjūrāvissē**.

⁴ Translate by *his bidding*.

⁵ Translate by *what their strength was* (72).

⁶ Translate by *he obtained this information*.

⁷ **Rhēnum** depends on **trāns** in **trāductōs** (69, iv).

⁸ For the tense see 190, vi.

⁹ Translate **plūrimū valēre** by *were the strongest*; the infinitive, like those which follow, depends on **cōgnōvisse**.

¹⁰ Translate by *the supreme command*.

¹¹ Translate by *are considered*; **ferī** is the predicate nominative.

¹² Translate by *addressing them with kindly words*.

omnem senātum ad sē convenīre, principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī jussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Tum postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum cōactās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque jam longē abesse ab iis, quōs miserat, explorātōribus cōgnōvit, flūmen¹ Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, atque ibi castra posuit. In cō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Tituriū Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit: castra pedum² duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum² mūniri jubet.

After an unsuccessful attack on Bibrax, the Belgae advance against Caesar. They are, however, defeated with great slaughter at the river Axona, and at once disband.

19. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octō. Id magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est³. Sed eum finem oppugnandī nōx fēcisset⁴, Iccius Rēmūs, summā nobilitāte et gratiā inter suōs, qui tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex iis, qui lēgātī⁵ de pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse⁶. Eō mediā nocte Caesar sagittariōs et funditōrēs subsidio oppidanīs⁷ mittit; quōrum adventū, hostēs, paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicis aedificiisque, quōs adire potuerant, ineēnsis ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt.

¹ Notice the double accusative with **trādūcere** (69, iv).

² Referring to the height and width respectively.

³ For the use of the impersonal passive see 56. Translate by *they held out* or *the defence was maintained* (203, d).

⁴ Translate **finem fēcisset** by *put an end (to)*.

⁵ Translate by *as ambassadors*, referring to those mentioned in § 16 above.

⁶ **Nisi...posse** is indirect discourse, depending on the idea of *saying* implied in **nūntium mittit**.

⁷ For the double dative see 81.

20. Caesar duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castris relictis, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās¹ instruxerunt. Palūs erat nōn mājua inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostri trāseundi fieret², hostēs expectābant; nostri autem, sī ab illis initium trāseundi fieret³, ut impeditōs aggredierentur, parātī in armis erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbatur⁴. Ubi neutri trāseundi initium faciunt⁵, Caesar suos in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra eastra dēmōstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōsiliō, ut, sī possent⁶, castellum, cui praeerat Quintus Titurius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent⁷, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui mājnō nobis ūsu ad bellum gerendum erant, eommeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

21. Caesar certior faetus ab Tituriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae⁸ Numidās, funditōrēs sagittariōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad cōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostri in flūmine aggressi mājnum eōrum numerum occiderunt: per eōrum corpōra reliquī andāeissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne telōrum repulsi sunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et de flūmine trāseundō spem sē fefellisse⁹ intellexērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque reverti et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent⁸, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique eonvenire. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā mājnō eum strepitū ac umultū castris ēgressi sunt nūllō⁹

¹ Translate by *led out and* (43, c; 50, iii).

² See the second and third illustrative sentences in 177.

³ Translate *initium faciō* by *take the first step (in)*, or *set the example*.

⁴ See 56. Translate by *a cavalry engagement was going on* (203, d).

⁵ For the tense see 187, b, i.

⁶ Translate by *light armed*, literally *of light equipment*.

⁷ From *fallō*. *Ipsōs*, in contrast with the Romans.

⁸ Translate by *should lead* (187, b, i); the antecedent of *quōrum* is *cōs*.

⁹ Translate *nūllō . . . imperiō* by *without any . . . control*.

certō ordine neque imperiō, sic ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.

22. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum¹ equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmātā rē² ab explōrātōribus omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, misit. His Quintum Pedium et Lūcium Cottam lēgātōs praefecit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum eum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecuti māgnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt, sub occāsumque sōlis sē in castra, ut erat imperātum³, recēpērunt.

Caesar advances into the Belgian country, receiving the submission of various tribes, and at last comes to the Nervii, the bravest of all the Belgae, who offer resistance.

23. Postridiē ejus diē⁴ Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent⁵, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmis erant, exercitum dūxit, et māgnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab⁶ dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucis dēfendentibus⁷ expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnītis, vineās ad oppidum agere, aggerem jacere, turrēs cōstituere⁸ quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Tum Galli māgnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mittunt. Caesar obsidibus acceptis armisque omni-

¹ Referring to the infantry alone.

² Translate by *on the fact being established*.

³ Translate by *according to instructions* (56; 203, d).

⁴ Translate by *next day*; literally *on the morrow of that day*.

⁵ See 156, b, with the illustrative sentence.

⁶ Translate by *empty* or *destitute of*.

⁷ See the last illustrative sentence in 46.

⁸ Translate by *erect*. **Quaeque** is two words. **Audierant** = **audiverant**, *had heard of*.

bus ex oppidō trāditis in dēditionem Suessionēs accēpit¹ exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit.

24. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū² ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in ejus fidem ac potestātem venīre³ neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō passis manibus suō mōre⁴ pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt. Caesar, quod erat cīvitas māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō collātis ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

25. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent⁵ patriamque virtutem prōjēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs. Cum per eōrum finēs triduum iter fēcisset, invenībat ex captivis Sabim flūmen ab castris suis nōn amplius⁶ milia passuum decem abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre unā cum Atrebatibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuāserant uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur); exspectāri etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quīque⁷ per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum conjēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercitū aditus nōn esset.

¹ Translate by *received the surrender of the Suessiones*.

² Translate by *the older men or the elders* (102). *Vōce* means *the tones of their voices*, for they could not speak Latin.

³ Translate by *put themselves under his protection*, etc.

⁴ Translate by *according to* (103, iii); so *cōsuetūdine suā*, page 26.

⁵ See 171 and translate by *for surrendering*.

⁶ Translate by *more than* (98, iv).

⁷ *Quique* has the force of *cōsque qui*. *Quō* is an adverb = *ad quem*, with antecedent *locum*; translate by *a place to which*.

The Nervii plan to surprise the Roman army. The design in part fails, but the Romans are for a time in great jeopardy, the utmost confusion prevailing, because of the suddenness and fury of the enemy's onset.

26. His rēbus cōgnitis explorātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit qui locum idōneum castris dēligant. Sed quidam ex dēditiciis Belgis qui unā cum Caesare iter faciēbant, ut postea ex captivis cōgnitum est, nocte ad Nervios pervēnerunt atque his dēmōstrāvērunt¹ inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnūm numerum intereēdere, neque esse quiequam negotiū², eum primā legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnūm spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis³ adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptis futurum, ut⁴ reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn auderent. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum⁵ nostrī castris dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō⁶ aequāliter dēclivis ad flumen Sabim, quod suprà nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitate collis nāscēbatur adversus hunc, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset⁷. Intrā eas silvas hostēs in occulto⁸ sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

27. Caesar equitatū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis⁹; sed ratio ordōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac¹⁰ Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostī appropinquābat, cōsuetūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocaēverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē

¹ For dēmōstrāvērunt. Translate *singulās* by *the several* or *every two*.

² Translate by *and that there was no difficulty* (86, i).

³ Translate by *while still burdened with the packs*. (See cut on page 31.)

⁴ Translate *futurum (esse) ut* by *the result would be that* (33, iv).

⁵ Omit in translation (173, b).

⁶ Translate by *from the top*; but for *ab superiōre parte* see 127, v.

⁷ Translate by *one could not see* (56).

⁸ Translate by *in hiding*. For *pedum* see 87, iii.

⁹ See 103, ii.

¹⁰ Translate by *was different from what* (168, a, i; 12, ii, b).

cōscriptae erant, tōtum rgmen elaudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī eum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressī eum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Interim legiōnēs sex, quae primae¹ vēnerant, castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab iis, qui in silvis abditi latēbant, visa sunt, subito omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fecērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incredibili celeritāte adversō colle² ad nostra castra atque eōs, qui in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

28. Caesari omnia unō tempore erant agenda³: vexillum⁴ propōnendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, acies instruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. His difficultātibus⁵ duae res erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum (nam superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fieri oportēret, sibi praescribere poterant), et quod ab opere lēgātōs Caesar discedere, nisi⁶ mūnītis castris, vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil jam⁷ Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant. Caesar necessariis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs militēs dēcueurit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs cohortatus, utī suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, proeli committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causā profectus pūgnantibus⁸ occurrit.

¹ See 205, a. In the next sentence translate by *the head of the baggage-train* (86, iv, b).

² Translate by *up the hill*, literally *by way of the hill facing them* (98, ii, a).

³ See 120; understand *erat* or *erant* throughout the sentence.

⁴ The *vexillum* indicated an impending battle; the *tuba* gave the signal to fall in; the final signal was to begin the battle.

⁵ Translate by *these difficulties were relieved by two circumstances* (81); these were, first, *scientia atque ūsus*, and second, *quod . . . vetuerat*. For *quod*, *the fact that*. see 198, c.

⁶ See 50, iv.; translate freely by *until after*, etc.

⁷ Translate by *no longer*. *Vidēbantur*, as often, means *seemed best*.

⁸ Understand *eis*, *them*; for the dative see 52.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad insīgnia¹ accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit.

29. Legiōis² nōnae et decimae milītēs, quī in sinistrā parte aciēi cōstitērant, pilis ēmissis Atrebatēs celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et insecūti gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt. Ipsī trārsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et redintegrātō proeliō hostēs in fugam conjēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae³ duae legiōēs, ūndecima et octāva, profligātis Viroman-duis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex locō superiōre, in ipsis flūminis ripis proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātis castris, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfērtissimō agmine⁴ ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōēs circumvenire, pars castra petere coepit.

30. Eodem tempore equitēs nostri levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iis ūnā fuerant, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis⁵ hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur⁶. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēveri, quī auxiliī causā ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudīne hostium castra complēri nostra, legiōēs premi et pāene circumventās esse, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātis⁷ nostris rēbus domum cōrederunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs civitāti renūntiāvērunt.

¹Such as crests and distinguishing badges. For the tense of *dēfuerit* see 33, iii.

²To be repeated with *decimae*; translate freely by the plural.

³Translate by *apart from the rest*; and *ipsi*, by *the very*.

⁴Translate by *in a very dense column*.

⁵Translate by *face to face*.

⁶For the number see 12, ii, b.

⁷Used transitively by Caesar in the ablative absolute; translate by *despairing of our success*.

Caesar by his presence and example at length rallies the legions, and after desperate fighting the Nervii are driven back with enormous loss, and submit to the Romans.

31. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, suōs urgēri et duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs milites sibi ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vidit, quārtae cohortis omnēs centuriōnēs occisōs esse signiferumque interfectum, signum āmissum, reliquārum cohortium omnēs ferē centuriōnēs aut vulnerātōs aut occisōs, et nōnnullōs ab novissimis proeliō excēdere ac tela vitāre, hostēs ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō, neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submitti posset. Tum vēro scūtō militi¹ detrāctō, quod ipse cō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit, militesque cohortātus signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō² facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cājus adventū spē illātā militibus³ ac redintegrātō animō, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

32. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae jūxtā cōstiterat, item urgēri ab hoste vidisset, monuit, ut paulatim sēs legiōnēs conjungerent et signa in hostēs inferrent. Interim milites legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō⁴ in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus, et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur cōspiciātus, decimam legiōnem subsidio nostris misit. Hōrum adventū tantarērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī etiam qui⁵ vulneribus cōfecti prōcubuissent, scūtis innixi proelium redintegrārent.

33. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis⁶ tantam virtūtem praestiterunt, ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent⁷, proximī jacentibus

¹ Translate the dative by *from* (80, a).

² See 28, iii.

³ Translate the dative by *in*, or more freely as in 78, v, c.

⁴ Translate by *quicken*ing their pace. For *summō* see 86, iv, b.

⁵ Translate by *even such of our men as*; for *prōcubuissent* see 32. For the ablative *scūtis* see 107, ii.

⁶ Translate by *when hope of safety was all but gone* (86, iv, b).

⁷ From *cadō*. Translate *jaçantibus* by (*upon*) the fallen or their prostrate bodies (78, v, c; 205, g).

insisterent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent, et ut¹ ex tumultu tela in nostros conficerent. Hoc proelio facto et prope ad interfectionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redactō, majores natū, qui inā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes coniecti erant, hanc pugnā nuntiātā, omnium qui supererant consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt sequē ei dēdiderunt. Quos Caesar suis² finibus atque oppidis nti jussit, et finitimis imperavit, ut ab injuriā et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

The Aduatuci, retiring to a strongly-fortified place, prepare to resist Caesar, but on realizing the efficiency of the Romans' siege artillery, make their submission.

34. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nervii venirent, hanc pugnā nuntiātā ex itinere domum revertunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregiē naturā munitum contulerunt. Quem locum duplici altissimo muro munerant: tum³ magni ponderis saxa et praeaeutās trabes in muro collocabant. Ac primō adventū exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursionēs faciebant parvulisque proeliis⁴ cum nostris contendebant; postea vālo passuum in circuitū quindecim milium crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppidō sese continēbant. Ubi vineis actis, aggere exstruetō, turrim procul constitui⁵ viderunt, primum irridere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod⁶ tanta machinatio ab tantō spatio⁷ instrueretur.

35. Ubi verō moveri⁸ et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, novā atque inusitatā speciem commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti sunt; se non existinare Romanos

¹ Translate by *as*; **conficerent** depends on the first **ut**.

² Translate by *their own*, referring to **quos** (161, i).

³ Translate by *at this time* or *now*.

⁴ Translate by *skirmishes*.

⁵ See footnote 8, page 24; for the historical infinitives following see 112.

⁶ See 147. Translate by *at the idea of*.

⁷ Translate by *so far off*; **ab** is used adverbially; for **spatio** see 101, l.

⁸ Understand **turrim** as subject. Translate **speciem** by *spectacle*.

sine ope divinā bellum gerere, qui¹ tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent ; sē suaeque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dixerunt. His rēbus gestis omni Galliā pācātā tanta hūjus belli ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iis nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent², mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, qui sē obsidēs datūrās³, imperāta factūrās pollicerentur.



Sub Sarcinis.

THE THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

The tribes on the north-western coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combine to recover their liberty.

36. His rēbus gestis cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācātā Galliam existimāret⁴, atque ita initā hieme in Illyrieum profectus esset, quod eas quoque regiōnēs cōgnoscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns eum lēgiōne septimā in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās eivitatēs frūmentī causā dīmisit ; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esubiōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas⁵, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

¹ Translate by *seeing that they* (171). ² See 177, i.

³ Feminine referring to the nātiōnēs, whom the envoys represented.

⁴ Translate by *had every reason to think*.

⁵ In the names of Gallic tribes, the Greek ending *-as* is often used instead of *-es* in the accusative plural of Declension III.

37. Hujus est civitatis¹ longē amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consueverunt, et scientiam atque usum nauticarum rerum reliquos antecedunt. Hi retinent Silium atque Velanum quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperaturos existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (ut² sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia), eadem de causa Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis legatis reliquas civitates sollicitant, ut in ea libertate, quam a maioribus acceperint, permanere quam Romanorum³ servitutem perferre malint. Omni ora maritimam celeriter ad suam sententiam perductam communem legationem ad P. Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat⁴.

Caesar builds a fleet and makes other preparations for quelling the revolt, but because of the difficulties of the situation spends most of the summer without making much headway.

38. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius⁵, naves in mari longae aedificari in flumine Ligere, quod influit in Oceanum, remiges ex provincia institui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari jubet. His rebus celeriter administratis ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit⁶, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti reliquaeque item civitates cognito Caesaris adventu pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare et maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent⁷, providere instituunt, hoc majore spe⁸, quod multum naturam loci confidebant. Pedestria esse itinera

¹ Translate by *this state possesses*, or *to this state belongs* (83, i).

² Translate by *for* (145). Translate **repentina** by *unexpected*.

³ Translate the genitive by *to* (85, ii).

⁴ The idea of *saying* is implied in **legationem mittunt**; translate by *telling him to restore* (186, c, i).

⁵ Translate by *too far* (98, vi). Translate **institui** by *to be organized*.

⁶ Translate by *as soon as the season permitted*.

⁷ Equal to **quae usus sunt navibus**. Translate **parare** by *prepare for*.

⁸ Translate by *all the more confidently*; for **hoc** (literally *by this*) see 101, ii, c, and footnote.

eoneisa aestuâriis, nâvigatiônem impeditam propter inscientiam locôrum paucitatemque portuum sciēbant, neque¹ nostrôs exercitûs propter frūmenti inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse confidēbant; ac perspiciebant sē plūrimū nāvibus posse, Rōmānôs neque ūllam facultātem habērē nāvium neque eōrum locorū ubi bellum gestārī essent, vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse.

39. His initis cōsiliis oppida mūnunt, frūmenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nāvēs quam plūrimās possunt eōgunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contra eas regiōnes posita est, accessunt. Erant hae difficultātēs belli gerendi quās suprā ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: rebelliō facta post deditiōnem, defectiō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum conjūrātiō. Itaque cum intellexeret omnes ferē Gallôs novis rēbus studere et ad bellum mōbiliter eeleriterque exēitārī, priusquam plūrēs civitatēs cōspirārent², lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

40. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverôs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, eum equitatū mittit. P. Crassum eum cohortibus legiōnariis duodecim et māgnō numerō equitatūs in Aquitāniam proficisci jubet, nē ex his nātiōibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōēs jungantur. Decimum Brutum adulescentem elassi Gallieisque nāvibus, quās ex Pietonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire jusserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Venetôs³ proficisci jubet. Ipse eō pedestribus eōpiis contendit. Erant ejusmodi ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs⁴ lingulis prōmunturiisque propter aestūs neque pedibus aditum habērent⁵, neque nāvibus. Ita oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbatur; ac sī quandō māgnitūdine operis⁶ forte superātī, suis

¹ Equal to *et nōn*, the negative going only with *posse*.

² Translate by *before* . . . *should* and compare footnote 5, page 21.

³ Translate by *into the country of the Veneti* (205, j).

⁴ Translate by *the points of* (86, iv, b). With *posita* understand *oppida*.

⁵ Translate by *were accessible*.

⁶ Translate by *of the siege-works*, and *superātī* by *being overmatched*.

fortūnīs¹ dēspērāre coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium appulsō, sua dēportābant omnia, sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant: ibi sē rūsus iisdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec cō² facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur, summaque³ erat vāstō atque apertō mari, māgnis aestibus, rārīs ac prope nullis portibus, difficultās nāvīgandī.

At last a decisive naval battle is fought in which the Romans are completely victorious.

41. Complūribus expūgnātis oppidīs, Cacsar, ubi intellexit frūstrā tantum⁴ labōrem sūmī, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ducentae vīgintī nāvēs eōrum⁵ parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ōrnatissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostris, faleēs pracacūtae insertae affixaeque longuriis. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī antennās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprēhēnsī adductique erant⁶, nāvīgō rēmīs incitātō praeumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antennae concidēbant, ut his ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur.

42. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in⁷ virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in⁸ mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur. Disjectīs, ut diximus, antennīs, cum singulās binae ac ternae⁹ nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī transe-

¹ Translate the dative by *of*, literally (*lose hope*) *for*. For the tense of *coeperant* and *dēportābant* see 64, v. Translate the three imperfects by *would* (180, b).

² See footnote 8, page 32.

³ With *difficultās*. For the intervening ablatives, to be translated by *as*, see 49.

⁴ Translate by *all this*. With *exspectandam* understand *esse* (200).

⁵ Translate by *of theirs*. For *parātissimae*, *well* or *fully equipped*, see 44, b. Translate *armōrum* by *of appliances*. With *nostrīs* understand *nāvibus*.

⁶ See 149. For the translation of the imperfect see footnote 1 above.

⁷ Translate *erat positum in* by *depended on* (183, c).

⁸ Translate by *over*.

⁹ Translate by *two or three* or by *twos and threes*.

dere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac jam conversis in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat¹, tanta subito malicia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco commovere nōn possent. Quae quidem res ad negotium cōficiendum māximē fuit opportūna : nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum² tōtiusque orae maritimae cōfectum est.

THE FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

Certain German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, hard pressed by their neighbors, cross into Gaul. Caesar, fearing an alliance of Germans and disaffected Gauls, advances to the Rhine, surprises and routs the invaders.

43. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, Usipetēs et item Tencteri mūgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari. Causa trāseundi fuit, quod³ ab Suebis complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Ad extrēmum tamen agris expulsī et multis locis⁴ Germāniae triennium vīgātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt ; quās regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant et ad⁵ utramque ripam flūminis agrōs, aedificia viēdsque habēbant ; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterriti ex iis aedificiis, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et eis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire⁶ prohibēbant.

44. Illi omnia⁷ experti cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custodiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē⁸ in suās sēdēs regiōnēque simulāvērunt, et tridui

¹ Translate by *was blowing*. For *quo* = *in quam* see footnote 7, page 25. Translate *exstitit* by *came* or *ensued*.

² Translate the genitive by *with* or *against* (85, ii).

³ Translate by *that* (198).

⁴ Translate by *through many parts*. For the case see 127, ii.

⁵ Translate by *or*.

⁶ See 22, i, and for the force of the imperfect, 180, d.

⁷ Translate by *every device*, and *vi contendere* by *to force a passage*.

⁸ See 18, iv.

viam prōgressi rursus revertērunt atque omni hōe itinere ūnā nocte equitatū¹ cōfectō inseciōs inopinantesque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs certiōrēs facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque cōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trāsiērunt atque omnibus cōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē cōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

45. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, mātūrius, quam cōsuērat², ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset ea quae fore³ suspicātus erat facta cōgnōvit : missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōnnūllis eivitatibus ad Germānōs quae invitārent eōs, uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, pollicērenturque omnia, quae postulāssent⁴, ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adducti Germāni lātius vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, qui sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Caesar, rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectis⁵, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat.

46. Cum ab hoste octō milia passuum abesset, aciem triplicem institui equitātumque agmen subsequi iussit, et celeriter itinere cōfectō prius⁶ ad hostium castra pervēnit quam, quid agerētur, Germāni sentire possent. Quī celeritate adventūs nostri perterriti, neque cōsiliū habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō⁷, perturbantur, cōpiāsne⁸ adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an

¹ Translate by *with*, literally *by means of*. Translate *itinere . . . cōfectō* by *having covered . . . distance*.

² For the tense see 182, *e*; = *cōsuēverat*.

³ Translate by *would be the case*; = *futura esse*. Translate *facta (esse)* by *had happened*.

⁴ See 187, *b, i*; = *postulāvissent*.

⁵ Translate by *levied*. Omit *locis* in translation, and see footnote 5, page 26.

⁶ *Prius . . . quam* = *priusquam*, to be taken with *possent* (156, *b, i*).

⁷ Translate by *and having no time for holding*, etc.

⁸ Translate *-ne . . . an . . . an* by *whether . . . or . . . or*. See 38 (last example).

fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Qui¹ eeleriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimenta-
que proelium cominīsērunt: at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum m-
lierumque (nam eum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque
trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar
equitātum mīsīt.

*To prevent any further inroads, Caesar builds a bridge across the
Rhine, and crossing into Germany, so overawes the German tribes
that at his approach they flee into the forests of the interior.*

47. Germānī post tergum elāmōre auditō, eum suōs interfici
vidērent, armīs abjectīs signisque militāribus relictis sē ex castris
ējēcērunt, et eum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent,
reliquā² fugā dēspērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen
praecepitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressi
periērunt³. Nostri ad ūnum⁴ omnēs ineolumēs perpauēis vulnerātis
ex tantī bellī timōre⁵, eum hostium numerus capitum quadrin-
gentōrum trīgintā milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.

48. Germāniō bellō cōfectō multis dē causis Caesar statuit
sibi Rhēnum esse trāseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima⁶, quod,
eum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent,
suis quoque rēbus⁷ eōs timēre voluit, eum intellegerent et posse et
audēre populi Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. Itaque, etsi
summa difficultās erat faciendī pontis propter lātitudinem, rapidi-
tatem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen flūmen ponte jungere⁸ dē-
crēvit. Diēbus decem, quibus⁹ māteria coepta erat comportārī,

¹ Translate by *those who*. Translate *suis* below by *their families*.

² Translate by *further*; see footnote 7, page 28.

³ From *pereō*. Translate *oppressi* by *overcome*.

⁴ Translate by *to a man*.

⁵ Translate by *after* (or *relieved from*) *all their dread of a formidable war*. Translate *eum* by *for*. For the case of *millium* see 87, iii.

⁶ Translate by *the strongest*. For *quod* see footnote 3, page 35.

⁷ Translate by *interests* or *security* (79).

⁸ Translate by *to bridge the river*.

⁹ Translate by *within ten days after*, literally *within the ten days within which* (131). For *coepta erat*, *had begun*, see 22, iii.

omni opere effecto exercitus traducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem¹ pontis firmo praesidio relictō in fines Sugambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus² liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci iubet. At Sugambri finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportaverant seque in solitudinem ac silvas³ abdiderant.

49. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis se in fines Ubiorum recepit, atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si⁴ ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent⁵, liberos, uxores suaque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hic Romanorum adventum expectare atque ibi decertare constituisse⁶. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus rebus iis confectis, quarum rerum causa⁷ traducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum injiceret⁸, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubiōs obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

¹ Translate by *end*.

² Translate by *on their asking for*.

³ Translate by *in the solitude of the forests* (127, iii).

⁴ Translate by *in case*. For the subjunctive see 177.

⁵ The three subjunctive clauses depend on the idea of *telling* implied in *nuntios dimisisse*; translate by *instructing them to*, etc. (191).

⁶ Coordinate with *dimisisse*.

⁷ Translate by *having attained all the objects for which*.

⁸ Translate by *namely to inspire*, etc. For the dative see 78, v, c. The *ut* clauses are in apposition with *rebus*.



Roman Sword.

C. JULII CAESARIS
COMMENTARII
DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

Having decided on an expedition to Britain, Caesar tries in vain to get information about the island from Gallic traders.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, (etsi in his¹ locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs,) tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata^{deinde} auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus annī ad² bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābatur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnovisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter³ mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eas regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique⁴ mercātōribus neque quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad mājōrum nāvium multitudinē idonei portūs, reperire poterat.

Caesar sends Volusenus to reconnoitre. Meanwhile he receives offers of submission from several states of Britain. Volusenus returns with but little information.

1 21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret,
 idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā
 2 praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explorātis omnibus rēbus
 3 ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis
 in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in
 4 Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis
 regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum
 5 effecerat classem jubet convenīre. Interim cōsiliō ejus
 cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā com-
 plūribus insulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī
 polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī
 6 obtemperāre. Quibus auditis liberāliter pollicitus hor-
 tātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum
 7 remittit, et eum iis ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus
 superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, eūjus et virtūtem et
 cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur,
 cūjusque auctoritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur,
 8 mittit. Huic imperat, ^{ad e}quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortō-
 turque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter
 9 eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus
 omnibus, quantum ei facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī egredi
 ae sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad
 Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

After receiving the submission of certain of the Morini, Caesar collects his fleet and makes his final arrangements.

1 22. Dum in hīs locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā
 morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērē-

runt qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturum pollicerentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportunè accidissee arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque has tantularum rerum occupationes Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori legatis praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant duodeviginti onerariae navee, quae ex eo loco ab milibus passuum octovento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum venire possent: has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titurio Sabino et L. Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

He reaches Britain, but has difficulty in getting a suitable landing-place.

23. His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et navee conscendere et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas

3 hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cūjus locī haec erat
 nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbatur, utī
 4 ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad
 ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum
 reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs
 5 exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque militum convo-
 cātis et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset, et quae fierī vellet,
 ostendit monuitque, ut rei militāris ratio, māximē ut mari-
 timae rēs postulārent, (ut) quae celere atque instābilem
 mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab
 6 iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissis et ventum et aestum
 unō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis
 ancorīs circiter milia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus
 apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

The Britons, following along the shore, vigorously oppose the landing.

1 24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō praemissō
 equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliis utī
 cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi
 2 prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod
 nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitui nōn
 poterant, militibus autem ignōtis locīs, impedītis manibus,
 māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressis simul et dē nāvibus
 dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus
 3 erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in
 aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimīs
 locīs andācter tēla conjicerent et equōs insuēfactōs in-
 4 citārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūjus
 omninō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritāte ac
 studiō, quō in pedestribus utī proeliis cōsuērunt, utēbantur.

Caesar manoeuvres to dislodge the enemy, while a brave standard-bearer gallantly heads a rush towards the shore.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās quārum 1
et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiō et mōtus ad ūsum ex-
peditiō, paulum removērī ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs
incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui atque inde
fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī
jussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium 2
figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō genere tormentōrum
permōti, barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem ret-
tulērunt. Atque nostris militibus cunetantibus, māximē 3
propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōis aquilam
ferēbat, contestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōi feliciter ēveniret:
“Dēsilitē,” inquit, “militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus
prōdere: ego certē meum rei publicae atque imperātōri
officiū praestiterō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex 4
nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum 5
nostrī cohortāti inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, —
ūnivērsi ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis nāvibus 6
cum cōspexissent subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

The Romans, after much fighting, gain the shore and put the Britons to flight.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrisque ācriter; Nostrī tamen, 1
quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque
signa subsequī poterant atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibus-
cumque signīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere per-
turbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex 2
litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant,
incitātis equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs cir-

cumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in universos tela conjiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum nāvium, item speculātoria nāvigia militibus complēri jussit et, quos laborantēs conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. Nostrī, simul in arido cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis in hostēs impetum fecērunt atque eos in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortunam Caesarī defuit.

The Britons sue for peace.

- 1 27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā
- recēperunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt ;
- obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset factūrōs polliciti sunt.
- 2 Ūnā cum his lēgātīs Commius Atrebas vēnit, quem suprà
- dēmōstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum.
- 3 Hunc illi ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eos orātōris modō
- Caesaris mandāta deferret, comprehenderant atque in vin-
- 4 eula conjecerant, tum proeliō factō remisērunt. In petendā
- pāce ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et
- 5 propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt. ✓ Caesar
- questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem lēgātīs missis
- pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent,
- 6 ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit ; quōrum
- illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus
- 7 locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. ✓ In-
- tereā suos remigrāre in agrōs jussērunt, principēsque un-
- dique convenire et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre
- coepērunt.

*I think
this accord
pardon
demanded*

thus in fact

A portion of Caesar's ships crossing later is dispersed by a storm and driven back to the mainland.

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā post diem quārtam,¹ quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēvigintī, dē quibus suprā dēmōstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appro-² pinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occāsum, māgrō suī cum periculō dējicerentur. Quae tamen³ ancoris jactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō ad- versā nocte in altum profectae continentem petiērunt. L

The same storm does great damage to the vessels which had crossed with Caesar, and causes much alarm in the camp.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs¹ maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Oceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās² nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat quāsque in aridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerariās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūrībus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum essent³ fīnībus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis āmissis ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere, naturally tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs⁴ erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locis in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

Learning of these misfortunes, the Britons who had submitted decide to renew the war, and secretly gather forces.

- 1 30. Quibus rebus cognitis principēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellexerent et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis
2 Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxerunt rebellione factā frūmentō commēatūque nostrōs prohibere et rem in hiemem prōducere, quod hīs superātis aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem postea bellī inferendī causā in
3 Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rursus conjūratiōne factā paulatim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex agris dēducere coepērunt.

Caesar, becoming suspicious, collects provisions in the camp and repairs the shattered fleet.

- 1 31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex eventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābatur.
2 Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agris cotidie in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictāe erant nāvēs, earum mātēriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant
3 ūsuī ex continentī comportārī jubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissis, reliquis ut nāvīgārī commodē posset, effecit.

A legion out foraging is surprised and surrounded by the Britons. Caesar goes to its relief.

- 1 32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuetūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā
- partes tamen*

ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statione erant, Caesarī nūntiāverunt pulverem māiorem, quam cōsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod 2 erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōsiliū, cohortēs, quae in stationibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquīs duās in stationem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum 3 paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premi atque aegrē sustinēre et cōfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conjici animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs 4 partibus dēmesso frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspiciātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvis dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subito 5 adortī paucis interfectis reliquōs incertis ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

A description of the British mode of fighting with chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedis pūgnac. Primō per omnēs 1 partēs perequitant et tēla conjiciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātīm 2 ex proeliō exeēdunt atque ita currūs collocant, ut, si illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem 3 peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclivī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et

chariot
turning
will

that turn

per tēlōnem percurrere et in jugō insistere et sē inde in
currīs citissimē recipere cōsuērunt.

*On Caesar's approach the Britons withdraw, and spend the next few
days in collecting larger forces.*

1 34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs novitāte pūgnae
tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque
ejus adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timore re-
2 cēpērunt. Quō faetō ad lacessendum hostem et ad com-
mittendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē
locō econtinuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs
3 redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis,
4 quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt eon-
tinuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in cas-
5 tris continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim
barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt paucitātemque
nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae
faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur,
6 sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. His
rēbus celeriter māgnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque
coāctā ad castra vērunt.

*When the Britons come against his camp, Caesar meets them and
routs them with great slaughter.*

1 35. Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat,
fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum
effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs eireiter trīgintā quōs
Commīus Atrebas, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trāns-
2 portāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Com-
missō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs
3 ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō

thomas

secūti, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuerunt, complūrēs ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēperunt.

Having received the enemy's submission, Caesar returns to Gaul, the summer being now over.

36. Eōlem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē 1
pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante 2
imperāverat, duplicāvit eosque in continentem adducī jussit,
quod propinquā diē aequinoctiū infirmīs nāvibus hiemī
nāvigātiōnem subjiiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam 3
tempestātem noctis paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs
solvit; quae omnes incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; 4
sed ex iis onerariae duae eōdem, quōs reliquī, portūs capere
nōn potuerunt et paulō infrā delātae sunt.

A detachment of the Romans, after landing, is attacked by the Morini, but is rescued by Caesar.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi milites circiter 1
trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar
in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātēs reliquerat, spē praedae
adducti primō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numero circum-
stetērunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere jussērunt.
Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad elāmōrem 2
hominum circiter milia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē mūntiātā
Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō mīsīt.
Interim nostrī milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque 3
amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt et paucis
vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex his occiderunt. Postea 4
vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs
abjectis armis terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus
est occisus.

After crushing this uprising Caesar arranges his winter camps.

- 1 38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis
legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī
2 rebellīonem fēcerant, mīsit. | Quī cum propter siccitatēs
palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō superiōre
annō perfugiō fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem La-
3 biēnī pervēnērunt. | At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī
in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum
agrīs vāstātis, frūmentis succisīs, aedificiis incēnsīs, quod
Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad
4 Caesarem recēpērunt. | Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum
hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omninō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā
5 obsidēs mīserunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis
ex litteris Caesaris diērum vīginti supplicātiō ā senātū
dēcrēta est.

Some of the people had
no place to retreat
to, owing to the
continued dryness
of the marshes which
they had used as a
refuge the year
before, almost all
of them fell into
Labienus' hands.



Legionary Soldier.

Following on
Caesar's
despatches after
these events, a
thanksgiving
of 20 days
was decreed
by the senate.

LIBER QUINTUS.

Caesar orders more vessels to be built ; he then spends the winter in attending to the affairs of his two other provinces.

1. L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab¹ hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam plurimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrārent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat.² Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēsque paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō mari utī cōsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commutātiōnēs aestuum minus magnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat ; ad onera ac multitudinem jūmentōrum transportandam paulō lātiorēs, quam quibus in reliquīs utimur maribus. Hās³ omnes actuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem humilitās multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs,⁴ ex Hispāniā apportārī jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae⁵ citeriōris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pirūstis finitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitātibus milites imperat certumque in⁶ locum convenīre jubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pirūstae lēgātōs⁷ ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rerum publicō factum cōsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē injūriis satisfacere. Perceptā orātiōne eōrum⁸ Caesar obsidēs imperat eosque ad certam diem adducī jubet ; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō civitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iis ad diem adductis ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter⁹ civitātēs dat, quī litem aestiment poenamque cōstituant.

Returning in the spring he orders the fleet and army to assemble for another expedition to Britain, then goes to the country of the Treveri, whose loyalty was suspected.

What in particular

what

*What is it
tense?*

*What is
quoniam used*

*What is
of abt. of quod*

repeated

1 2. His cōfectis rēbus conventibusque peractis, in cite-
riorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficis-
citur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari
militum studio in summā omnium rerum inopiā circiter
sescentis ejus generis, cūjus suprà demonstrāvimus, naves
et longas viginti octo, invenit instructas, neque multum
3 abesse ab eo, quā paucis diebus deduci possint. Cui confectis
laudatis militibus atque iis qui negotio praefuerant, quid
fieri velit ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire
jubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trā-
jectum esse cōgnoverat, circiter milium passuum trigintā
ā continentī; huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum
4 reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quattuor et equiti-
bus octingentis in fines Trēverorum proficiscitur, quod hī
neque ad concilia veniebant, neque imperiō parēbant, Ger-
mānosque Trānsrhēnānos sollicitare dicebantur.

(1)

(2)

(3)

(4)

Two rival chiefs of the Treveri appeal to Caesar.

1 3. Haec civitas longē plūrimū tōtius Galliae equitatū
valet māgnasque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut
2 suprà demonstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitate duo dē
principatū inter sē contendebant, Indūtiomārus et Cinge-
3 torix; ē quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legionumque
adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum venit; sē suosque omnes in
officiō futurōs, neque ab amicitia populi Rōmānī defectūros
4 cōfirmāvit, quaeque in Trēveris gererentur, ostendit. At
Indūtiomārus equitatum peditatumque cōgere, iisque, qui

*It was a day for launching in a
few days*

① per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduen-
 nam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines
 Trëverorum a flumine Rhënö ad initium Rëmörum pertinet,
 ② bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam nonnulli principes
 ex eä civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et ad-
 ventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt, et
 de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam
 ③ civitati consulere non possent, veritus ne ab omnibus
 desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: sese
 idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo
 facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis
 discessu plebs propter imprudentiam liberetur; itaque esse
 civitatem in sua potestate, seseque si Caesar permitteret,
 ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunäs ejus
 fidei permissurum.

*Caesar decides in favor of Cingetorix, while requiring the submission
 of Indutiomarus.*

4. Caesar, etsi intellegēbat quā de causā ea dicerentur, 1
 quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne
 aetatem in Trëveris cōsumere cogeretur, omnibus ad
 Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad
 se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adductis, in 2
 iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evo-
 caverat, cōsolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in
 officio maneret: nihilō tamen secius principibus Trëverorum 3
 ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit:
 quod cum merito ejus a se fieri intellegēbat, tum magni
 interesse arbitrābatur ejus auctoritatem inter suos quam
 plurimum valere, ejus tam egregiam in se voluntatem

4perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indūtionmārus, suam grātiam inter suōs minui, et quī jam ante inimicō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōe dolōre exārsit.

Coming to the seaport Caesar finds the fleet and army ready.

1 5. Hīs rēbus cōstitutīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum
2legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit sexāgintā nāvēs, quae
in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte rējectās cursum tenēre
nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse ;
reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus in-
3strūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit
numerō milium quattuor, prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitāti-
4bus ; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat,
relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere
dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verē-
bātur.

Dumnorix, a disaffected and ambitious Gaul, causes trouble.

1 6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorix Aeduus, dē quo ante
ab nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōn-
stituerat, quod eum cupidum rēram novārum, cupidum
imperii, magnū animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctoritātis
2cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum
Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferri ;
quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut
dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant.
3Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille
omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā
relinquerētur ; partim quod insuētus nāvigandī mare timē-
4ret : partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Postea-
quam id obstinātē sibi negārī vidit, omnī spē impetrandi

adēptā principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārique coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū ter-
ritāre: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nobilitāte
spoliārētur; id esse cōsiliū Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōspectū
Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam
trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interponere, jūsjurandū
poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, cōmūnī
cōsiliō administrārent. **V**Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem
dēferēbantur. *reput*

*Caesar delays his departure in order to check disaffection. Dumnorix
flees, but is overtaken and slain.*

7. Quā rē cōgnitā, Caesar, quod tantum civitātī Aeduae
dignitātis tribuēbat, coercendū atque dēterrendū, qui-
buscūque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgē statuēbat; quod
longius ejus āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendū, nē
quid sibi ac rei pūblīcae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter
vīgintī quīque in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus
nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis tem-
poris in hīs locīs flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officio
Dumnorīgē continēret, nihilō tamen sēcūs omnia ejus
cōsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem
milites equitēsque cōscendere in nāvēs jubet. At omnium
impeditis animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā
castris īsciēte Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē
nūtiātā Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus
postpositis māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īsequendū
mittit, retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat,
interfici jubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum
arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille enim

revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suorumque fidem implorāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Aednī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Caesar crosses over to Britain and lands unopposed.

- 1 8. Hīs rēbus gestīs Labiēnō in continente cum tribus
legiōnibus et equitum milibus duobus relictō, ut portūs
tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā
gererentur cognōsceret, cōsiliūque pro tempore et prō
- 2 rē caperet, ipse cum quīque legiōnibus et parī numero
equitum, quem in continentī reliquerat, ad solis occāsum
nāvēs solvit, et lēm Africō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte
vento intermissō cursum nō tenuit, et longius dēlātus
aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspexit.
- 3 Tum rūsus aestūs commūtātiōem secūtus rēmīs contendit,
ut eam partem insulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum
- 4 superiōre aestāte cōgnoverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit
militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs
nō intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum
- 5 adaequāunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvi-
bus meridīānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est
- 6 vīsus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cōgnōvit, cum
māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitudīne nāvium per-
territae, quae cum annōtinīs privātisque, quās sui quisque
commodi fēcerat, amplius octingentae unō erant vīsaē tem-
pore, ā litore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Leaving a strong guard with the ships he advances into the interior and drives the enemy from one of their strongholds.

9. Caesar exposito exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō, 1
ubi ex captivīs cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōn-
sēdissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relētis et equitibus
trecentis, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad
hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore
mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancoram relinquēbat; et
praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctū 2
progressus mīlia passuum circiter duodecim hostium cōpiās
cōspicātus est. Illi, equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen 3
progressi, ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium
committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās 4
abdidērunt locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum,
quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbantur, causā jam ante prae-
parāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succīs omnes introitus 5
erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque 6
intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At milites legionis 7
septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adjectō
locum cōpērunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt paucis vulneri-
bus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi 8
vetuit, et quod loci nātūrā ignorābat, et quod magnā
parte diēi cōsumptā mūnitiōnī castrōrum tempus relinqui
volēbat.

As troops are setting out in pursuit, news comes of serious damage caused to the fleet by a storm.

10. Postridiē ejus diēi mātne tripertitō milites equitesque 1
in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs, qui fūgerant, persequerentur.
His aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum jam extrēmū essent 2
in prōspectū, equites ā Q. Atrio ad Caesarem vēērunt, qui

nūntiārent superiōre nocte māximā coortā tempestāte prope
 omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in litore ējectās esse, quod neque
 ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātō-
 3 rēsque vim tempestātis patī possent ; itaque ex eō concursū
 nāvium māgnū esse incommodum acceptum.

*Caesar returns, arranges for the repairing of these losses, and again
 sets out against the enemy, now under Cassivellaunus.*

1 11. His rēbus cōgnītīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque
 revocārī atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad nāvēs
 2 revertitur ; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterisque cōgnō-
 verat, cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter quadrāgintā
 nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidēren-
 3 tur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī
 4 aliōs arcessī jubet ; Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam plūrimās
 posset, iis legiōnibus, quae sunt apud eum, nāvēs instituat.
 5 Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen com-
 modissimū esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subducī et cum
 6 castris unā mūnitiōne conjungī. In his rēbus circiter diēs
 decem cōsumit, nē nocturnis quidem temporibus ad labō-
 7 rem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvibus castrisque
 ēgrege mūnitis eādem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus
 8 reliquit : ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eō cum
 vēnisset, mājorēs jam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britan-
 nōrum convēnerant, summā imperiū bellique administrandī
 commūnī cōsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cūjus finēs ā
 maritimis cīvitatibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tame-
 9 sis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum octōgintā. Huic superiōre
 tempore cum reliquīs cīvitatibus continentia bella interces-
 serant : sed nostrō adventū permōti Britannī hunc tōtī
 bellō imperiōque praefecerant.

A description of the people, products and climate of Britain.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos nātōs 1, in insulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab 2 iis, quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē iis nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus 3 ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bello illātō ibi remān- sērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infīnīta 4 multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicis cōsimilia, pecorum māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur [aut aere] aut nummō 5 aureō aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus exāmīnātis prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāncīs 6 regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ējus exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūjusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abicem. Leporem et gal- 7 linam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgōribus.

The geography of Britain.

13. Insula nātūrā triquetra, cūjus ūnum latus est contrā 1 Galliam. Hūjus lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appellantur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam 2 atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidiō minor, ut aestimātur, quam Britannia; sed parī spatiō 3 trānsmīssus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc 4 mediō cursū est insula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subjectae insulae existimantur; dē quibus insulis nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs trīgintā sub

4 brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percentātiōnibus
 5 reperiebāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviorēs esse
 6 quam in continenti noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūjus est longitūdō
 lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, septingentōrum milium.
 7 Tertium est contrā septentrionēs; cui partī nūlla est objecta
 terra, sed ējus angulus lateris māximē ad Germāniam
 spectat. Hoc milia passuum octingenta in longitūdinem
 esse existimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vicies
 centum milium passuum.

The manners and customs of the Britons.

1 14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantinnū
 incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā
 2 Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta
 nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt
 vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod
 caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in
 3 pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō, atque omni parte
 4 corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs
 habent denī duodēnique inter sē communēs, et māximē
 5 frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberīs; sed, sī quī
 sunt ex hīs nātī, eōrum habentur liberī, quō primum virgō
 quaeque dēducta est.

*The Romans are surprised while building a camp, but drive off the
 enemy.*

1 15. Equitēs hostiūm essedāriūque ācriter proeliō cum
 equitātū nostrō in itinere cōflīxērunt, tamen ut nostrī
 2 omnibus partibus superiōrēs fnerint atque eōs in silvās
 3 īnsecūtī nōnnullōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illi intermissō

spatio imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitiōe
 castrorum subito sē ex silvis ējēcērunt, impetūque in eos
 factō, quī erant in statione prō castris collocāti, ācriter
 pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā 4
 Cesare, atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hac
 perexignō intermissō loci spatio inter sē cōstitissent, novō
 genere pūgnae perterritis nostris, per mediōs audācissimē
 perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. 5
 Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interfecitur. Illi plūri-
 bus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.



Armor and Weapons.

The disadvantages under which the Romans lay in fighting with the Britons.

- 1 16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculis omnium
 ac prō castris dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter
 gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent
 neque ab signis discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad
 2 hūjus generis hostem; equitēs autem māgnō cum periculō
 proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illi etiam cōsultō plērū-
 que cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvis-
 sent, ex essedis dēsilirent, et pedibus disparī proeliō con-
 3 tenderent. Equestris autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et
 4 īnsequentibus pār atque idem periculum īferēbat. Accēdē-
 bat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnisque inter-
 vāllis proeliārentur statīōēsque dispositās habērent, atque
 aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentēs dēfatī-
 gātis succēderent.

The Romans are again attacked, but inflict such a defeat on the Britons that a large part of them disband.

- 1 17. Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus cōn-
 stitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs
 2 equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē cum Caesar
 pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum
 C. Treboniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus
 ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic utī ab signis legiōnibusque
 3 nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in cōs impetū factō rep-
 pulērunt, neque finem sequendī tēcērunt, quoad subsidiō
 cōnfī i equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praccipitēs
 4 hostēs ēgērunt; māgnōque cōrum numerō interfectō neque
 suī colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedis dēsiliendī

facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique⁵ convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis nobīseum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar forces a passage across the Thames.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim¹ in finēs Cassivellannī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omniū locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsiri potest. Eō² eum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Rīpa autem erat³ acutis sudibus praefixis mūnita, ejusdemque generis sub aquā defixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cōgnitis⁴ ā captivīs perfugisque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōfestim legiōnēs subsequi jussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū⁵ milites ierunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstarent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinere nōn possent, rīpāsque dimitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellaunus, avoiding a pitched battle, harasses Caesar's line of march.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, omnī dē-¹ positā spē contentiōnis, dimissis ampliōribus cōpiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat, paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iis regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius² praedandī vāstandique causā sē in agrōs ejēcerat, omnibus viis sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat, et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum iis cōfligēbat atque

3 hoc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. ✓ Relinquēbātur, ut
neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur,
et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiisq̄ue faciendīs hostibus
nocērētur, quantum labōre atq̄ue itinere legiōnārīī militēs
efficere poterant. ✓

The Trinobantes, a powerful British tribe, submit to Caesar.

1 20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiō-
num cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem
secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, cūjus pater
in eā cīvitāte rēgnū obtinuerat, interfectusq̄ue erat ā
Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat, lēgātōs ad
2 Caesarem mittunt pollicenturq̄ue sēsē eī dēditūrōs atq̄ue
3 imperāta factūrōs ✓ petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injuriā
Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atq̄ue in cīvitātem mittat quī prae-
4 sit imperiumq̄ue obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs
quadrāgintā frūmentumq̄ue exercitūi Mandubraciumq̄ue ad
eōs mittit. Illi imperāta eeleriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad
numeri frūmentumq̄ue mīsērunt.

*Many other tribes now submit, and Caesar captures the 'town' of
Cassivellaunus.*

1 21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atq̄ue ab omniū militum in-
juriā prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnū, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī,
2 Cassī lēgatiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs
cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse
silvīs palūdibusq̄ue mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum
3 pecorisq̄ue numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britanni
vocant, cum silvās impeditās vāllō atq̄ue fossā mūniērunt,
quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenīre cōn-
4 suērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit

ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnitum ; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī 5 militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ējēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris re-6 pertus, multīque in fugā sūnt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

A sudden attack on the camp by the sea is repulsed, and Cassivellaunus sues for peace.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur Cassivellaunus ad 1 Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adorianantur atque oppūgnent. Iī cum ad castra vēnissent, 2 nostrī ēruptiōne factā multis eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. ✓ Cas-3 sivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentīs acceptīs, vāsātīs finibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvītātum, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōstituisset hiemāre in 4 continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō 5 Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōstituit ; interdicit atque 6 imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Caesar returns to the mainland.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs 1 invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māg-2 num numerum habēbat, et nōnnūllae tempestāte dēperierant

nāvēs, duobus commeātibus exercitum reportāre instituit.
 3 Ac sic accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigationi-
 bus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis,
 4 quae milītēs portāret, dēsiderārētur; at ex iīs, quae inānēs
 ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, et priōris commeātūs
 expositis militibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrā-
 verat numerō sexāgintā, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae
 5 ferē omnēs rējicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar
 frūstrā exspectāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigatione exclūde-
 rētur, quod acquinocitium suberat, necessariō angustius
 6 milītēs collocāvit, ac summā tranquillitātē cōsecūtā, secūda
 initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēs-
 que incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.



Roman Soldiers on the March.

NOTES ON CAESAR, BOOK IV.

N.B.—The references are to the sections of the Syntax and Composition, beginning at page 100.

The following abbreviations are used: cf.=compare; ch., chap.=chapter; fn.=footnote; lit.=literally; se.=supply, or understand; trans.=translate, translation.

CHAP. 20.

1. **exigua**: emphatic from position. **parte reliqua**: abl. absolute (49); equivalent to an *etsi* clause (48); trans. 'although only a small part . . . and although . . . yet Caesar made an effort.' **omnis**: 'as a whole.' **ad septentriones vergit**: 'lies towards the north.' **bellis**: for case see 130. **hostibus subministrata**: sc. *esse* (14); 'had been furnished to the enemy.'

2. **si**: 'even if.' **gerendum**: see 119. **deficeret**: 'did not enable him,' lit. ? (175; 187, b). **usui**: see 81. **fore**: see 14; the subject is contained in the clauses *si modo . . . cognovisset*. **adisset**: for *adiisset*.* For the mood and tense see 187, b, i.; trans. 'approached,' lit. 'should have approached.' **genus hominum**: 'the character of the inhabitants.' **quae omnia**: 'all of which,' lit. ? (86, iv. a). **fere**: with *omnia*.

* Contracted forms in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses:

(a) Perfects in **-āvī**, **-ēvī**, and also **mōvī** and **nōvī** (from **moveō** and **noveō**), often drop **v** before **-is-**, **-er-** or **-ēr-** and contract the two vowels thus brought together to **ā**, **ē**, **ō** respectively; e.g., **nōrat** for **nōverat**, **cōnsuērunt** for **cōnsuēverunt**, **imperāsse** for **imperāvissē**.

(b) Perfects in **-ivī** also drop **v** before **-is-**, **-er-** or **-ēr-**, but the vowels thus brought together are contracted (to **i**) only before **-is-**; e.g., **adisset** for **adiisset**. Before **-er-** and **-ēr-**, **i** is shortened to **ī**; e.g., **audierat** for **audiiverat**.

But **eō** and its compounds, also **petō** and **dēstinō**, drop **v** also in the first and third singular and first plural of the perfect indicative.

3. *neque . . . quisquam* : 'no . . . one,' lit. ? *illo* : adverb. *iis ipsis* : i.e., *mercatoribus*. *Gallias* : 'Gaul.' The plural has reference to the triple division of Gaul with which Caesar begins his Commentaries on the Gallic War: *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres* (page 13).

4. *vocatis* : trans. by 'although' (48). *quanta esset . . . portus* : depending on *reperire poterat* (35). *belli* : 'in war' (85, ii.). *uterentur* : 'they had' (54). *qui essent . . . portus* : 'what harbors suitable for . . . existed.' *majorum* : 'larger than usual' (98, vi.); the war-galleys and transports being larger than the coasting vessels of those regions. *poterat* : for the imperfect see 180, b.

CHAP. 21.

1. *Ad haec cognoscenda* : with *praemittit*, not with *idoneum* (119). *priusquam faceret* : 'before making' (156, b). *idoneum* : 'a suitable person.' *arbitratus* : see 44, ii.

2. *Huic* : for the case see 52. *ut exploratis . . . revertatur* : for the subjunctive see 27; trans. 'to find out . . . and return' (47, c). *quam primum* : see 174, i.

3. *in* : trans. 'into the country of' (205, j). *inde . . . trajectus* : the straits of Dover are meant.

4. *quam . . . classem* : 'the fleet which' (173, c i.). *ad* : 'for.' *Veneticum bellum* : the year before (56 B.C.) the tribes on the north-west coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combined to recover their liberty, but were defeated by the Romans in a sea-fight.

5. *qui polliceantur* : trans. 'to promise'; see 26. *dare* : irregularly used for *se daturus esse* (17; 22, vi.). *imperio* : see 52.

6. *Quibus, eos* : both referring to *legati* (50, iii. and fn.); trans. *quibus* by 'these' (172). *liberaliter pollicitus* : '(and) having made liberal promises,' lit. ? (203, d). *permanerent* : see 27. *domum* : see 125.

7. *una* : adv. *Commium* : with *mittit*. *superatis* : referring to 'That day he overcame the Nervii' (57 B.C.), with which people

the Atrebatæ were allied (see pages 24-30). **constituerat**: 'had made.' **ibi**: i.e., among the Atrebatæ. **his**: of Gaul, not Britain. **magni habebatur**: 'was valued highly'; for *magni* see 88.

8. **quas . . . civitates**: 'all the states he can,' lit. 'the states which he can'; sc. *adire*. **possit**: see 175. **adeat**: with the same force as *ut adeat*, 'to visit'; so *hortetur* and *nuntiet* (186, 1, c, i.). **ut fidem sequantur**: 'to embrace the alliance,' depending on *hortetur*.

9. **regionibus**: 'country.' **quantum**, etc.: 'so far as one could who,' etc.; more lit. 'so far as opportunity could be given to one who'; for *tantum facultatis quantum* (174, ii.), 'according to such measure of opportunity as could be given.' The whole clause has the value of an adverbial acc. modifying the abl. absol. **auderet**: for mood see 32. **quacque**: = *et quae*. **perspexisset**: see 36, i.

CHAP. 22.

1. **parandarum**: see 119. **moratur**: for the tense see 153. **de . . . consilio**: 'for their previous conduct,' lit. 'with regard to the policy of previous time.' They had joined the Belgian confederacy against Caesar two years before, and the next year had been in alliance with the Veneti. **quod**, etc.: 'in that, being uncivilized,' etc. **consuetudinis**: see 90. This 'custom' was, as the Roman poet Virgil expressed it:

'The ways of peace to proclaim,
Mercy to show to the fallen, the proud with battle to tame.'

populo: trans. by 'on' (79). **fecissent**: for mood see 147. **-que**: joins *excusarent* and *pollicerentur*. **ea quae**: 'whatever.' **imperasset**: see on *adisset*, ch. 20, 2.

2. **satis**: 'quite.' **post tergum**: 'behind him.' **has tantularum**, etc.: 'attention to such trifling matters,' lit. ? (85, ii.). **anteponendas**: sc. *esse*. **Britanniae**: dat. (78, v. c); meaning the expedition against Britain. **iis imperat**: 'requires (or demands) of them' (55, iii.). **Quibus**: the hostages; trans. as in ch. 21, 6. **eos**: the Morini. **in fidem**: 'under his protection.'

3. **coactis contractisque** : the former of impressing into service, the latter of gathering to one place. **quot** : 'the number which,' lit. 'as many as'; **quot** is subject of *esse*. **quod**, etc. : 'all the ships of war he had besides,' lit. ? (86, i.). This clause furnishes the object of *distribuit*.

4. **Huc accedebant** : 'besides this there were,' lit. 'to this were added.' **ab** : used adverbially = 'away'; or trans. 'at a distance of.' **milibus** : see 101. **passuum** : see 86. **tenebantur quo minus**, etc. : 'were detained . . . and prevented from being able.' **Quo minus**, lit. 'whereby the less,' may also be written as one word. **possent** : see 139, a.

5. **ducendum** : for the gerundive with *do*, here agreeing with *exercitum*, see 121.

CHAP. 23.

1. **ad navigandum** : see 114, c. **tertia vigilia** : the time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches (*vigiliae*), and the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve equal hours (*horae*), the length of each varying with the season. **solvit** : se. *naves*. **ulteriorem** : 'farther,' i.e., up the coast. The exact localities are unknown.

2. **A quibus . . . administratum** : 'as these carried out their instructions,' lit. ? For the impersonal passive see 56. For *tardius*, 'too slowly,' see 98, vi. The result was that Caesar reached Britain *cum primis* (not *cum omnibus*) *navibus*. **expositas copias armatas** : 'the armed forces displayed.'

3. **Cujus** : 'this' (172). **haec** : 'as follows'; more fully explained by *atque . . . connebatur*. **ita anguste**, etc. : 'so closely bordered.' [Many editions read *angustis* (with *montibus*), meaning 'steep,' or 'close to the sea.'] **uti** : another form for *ut*; distinguish from *utī*. **in** : trans. 'to.' **posset** : for the mood see 29.

4. **dum convenirent** : depending on *expectavit* : 'till . . . should assemble,' or more freely 'for . . . to assemble' (155, b). **ad** : 'until.'

5. **quae fieri vellet** : 'what he wished done' (21). **monuit . . . administrarentur** : 'instructed them to do everything (promptly)

at the signal and at the (proper) moment, as the science of warfare, and especially naval warfare, required, seeing that this (latter) was subject to rapid and uncertain changes.' **ut ratio . . . ut res :** *ut* = 'as,' and is repeated with each subject. **postularent :** for mood see 170, i. and 175. **ut quae :** i.e., *maritimae res*; 'inasmuch as these'; *ut* might be omitted, and merely heightens the causal force of *quae* and the subjunctive (171 and fn.). **monuit administrarentur :** with the same force as *monuit ut administrarentur*; cf. *adeat*, ch. 21, 8 (186, 1, c. i.). **ad nutum et ad tempus :** the former referring to *celerem*, the latter to *instabilem*.

6. **uno :** 'one and the same.' **dato, sublatis :** trans. by principal clauses (47, c). **litore :** abl. absolute; trans. by 'off.'

CHAP. 24.

1. **quo genere :** 'the sort of force that,' lit. 'which kind (i.e., of warriors),' referring to both *equitatu* and *essedariis* (173, c, ii.). **consuerunt :** cf. on ch. 20, 2, fn. **copiis :** see 103, ii. **egredi :** 'from landing' (22, i.). **prohibebant :** for tense see 180, d.

2. **has :** referring to what follows. **nisi . . . non :** 'only,' lit.? **militibus autem . . . desiliendum erat :** 'while the soldiers had to leap down' (120, ii.); similarly *consistendum* and *pugnandum*. For the dative see 120, i. **ignotis locis :** 'who were unacquainted with the ground'; lit. 'the ground (being) unknown'; abl. absolute (49). So *impeditis manibus*. **oppressis :** dat. agreeing with *militibus*.

3. **cum illi :** 'whereas the enemy.' **ex arido :** modifying *conjicerent*. **omnibus . . . locis :** in contrast to *ignotis . . . manibus*, section 2; 'having all their limbs free and being perfectly familiar with the ground,' lit.? **insuefactos :** 'who were trained (to this).' **conjicerent, incitarent :** see 151, fn.

4. **generis :** see 90. **eadem . . . quo :** for agreement see 11, i.; for *quo* = 'as' see 174. **consuerant :** see ch. 20, 2, fn. **uti, utebantur :** 'display' or 'show.'

CHAP. 25.

1. **Quod :** object of *animadvertit* (172, a). **naves :** subject of *removeri, incitari* and *constitui*. **quarum :** 'whose.' **inusitatio :**

'less familiar,' i.e., than that of the *nares onerariae*. **et motus**, etc.; 'and (whose) movements were quicker for service,' i.e., 'were more easily managed.' **ad**: 'on.' **apertum latus**: i.e., the right side, unprotected by shields. **quae res**: 'a manœuvre which,' lit.? **usui**: as in ch. 20, 2.

2. **remorum motu**: the Britons used only sails with their large vessels. **paulum modo**: 'but only a little.'

3. **atque**; 'and now.' **cunctantibus**: trans. by 'while' (41, a; 47, a.). **qui aquilam ferebat**: 'the eagle-bearer.' For *qui* = *is qui* see 173, a. **ut . . . eveniret**: see 27. **ea res**: 'his (lit. that) undertaking.' **legioni**: see 79. **inquit**: 'cried'; for position and use see 18, vi. **Desilite**: the imperative. **vultis**: from *volo*. **praestitero**: trans. freely by future; for the force of the future perfect see 184, ii.

4. **voce magna**: 'in a loud voice' (103).

5. **inter se**: 'one another,' lit.? (164, ii.). **ne . . . admitteretur**: 'not to incur,' lit.? (27). **dedecus**; i.e., the loss of the eagle. **universi**: 'in a body'; section 6 shows that Caesar is speaking only of those on the same ship as the standard-bearer.

6. **Hos item**, etc.: 'when those in the nearest ships saw them, they also,' etc.; lit. 'when also from the nearest ships they saw these.' **hostibus**: see 52. **appropinquarent**: see ch. 20, 2, fn.

CHAP. 26.

1. **Pugnatum est**: see 56. **alius alia ex navi**: 'the men from the different ships,' lit. '[one man from one ship and] another from another ship.' For this idiom see 168, a. **quibuscumque . . . occurrerat**: 'to whatever . . . they fell in with.' For the dat. see 78, v. c. For the tense see 183, b. So *conspexerant*, section 2, and *conspexerat*, section 4.

2. **vero**: 'while.' **ubi**: 'whenever.' **adoriebantur**: trans. by 'would' (180, b). So *circumsistebant* and *conspiciebant*. **plures**: nominative; see Vocabulary.

3. **in universos**: 'at the main body'; opposed to *singulares*.

4. **item**: '(and) also.' **quos . . . his**: freely, 'to whomsoever,' transposing the clauses; or 'whenever . . . any . . . to them,'

without transposing. *jussit, submittebat*: notice the change of tense; the perfect expresses a single command; for the imperfect see 180, *b*. *his*: see 79.

5. *simul*: = *simul atque*. *suis consecutis*: 'with their comrades following' (50, ii.). *neque*: 'but . . . not.' *longius*: 'any distance' (98, vi.) *ad pristinam*, etc.: 'to complete Caesar's usual good fortune,' lit.? For dat. see 80, *e*.

CHAP. 27.

1. *proelio*: trans. by 'in' (99). *de*: trans. 'to treat for.' *datuos*: sc. *se* (18, x.). *quaeque*: as in ch. 21, 9. *imperasset*: cf. ch. 22, 1.

2. *quem supra*, etc.: 'who, as I stated before, was sent,' etc.; lit.? (18, vi.). *demonstraveram a Caesare*: notice that Caesar the *writer* (first person) is always distinguished from Caesar the *commander* (third person). For the tense see 183, *a*, i.

3. *Hunc, illi*: object and subject respectively of *comprehendunt*. *egressum*: modifying *hunc*; trans. 'on his landing' or 'when he landed.' *cum deferret*: 'although he was bearing' (65, *a*). *modo*: 'in the capacity of'; or freely, 'as' (103). *tum*: trans. by 'now.'

4. *rei*: 'act.' *imprudentiam*: i.e., their ignorance of the customs observed between nations. *ut ignosceretur*: 'that pardon be granted (them),' or 'to be pardoned' (27 and 57; see also 203, *d*).

5. *quod . . . intulissent*: see 147 and 198, *b*. *cum . . . missis . . . petissent*: 'although they had sent . . . and sought,' lit.? (65, *a*). *petissent*: see ch. 20, 2, fn. *ignoscere*: sc. *se*: notice the tense (15, *a*). *imprudentiae*: for dat. see 52.

6. *illi*: see 160, i. *arcessitam . . . daturos*: sc. *esse*; 'that they would send for . . . and give up,' lit.? The tense of *arcessitam* is relative to *datuos*, not to *dixerunt* (41, *b*). *diebus*: see 131.

7. *suos*: subject of *remigrare*. *agros*: 'their lands.'

CHAP. 28.

1. *His rebus*: 'by this means,' lit.? *post diem . . . ventum*: 'three days after he came' = *die quarto postquam*, etc.; *post* (the

adverb) coming before *die quarto* was felt to have the force of a preposition, and made to govern the acc. **quantum**: the Romans in reckoning from one date to another counted in both extremes, where we include but one. **est ventum**: see 56. **naves**: subject of *solverunt*, a rare use. **demonstratum est**: 'mention has been made.' (203, d.) **superiore**: in ch. 23, 1, called *ulteriorem*. **vento**: see 103.

2. **viderentur**: 'were in sight.' **posset**: see 29. So *referrentur* and *dejicerentur*. **inferiorem**: *i.e.*, towards the S.W. **propius occasum**: see 70, i. **sui**: 'to themselves' (85, ii.); another reading is *suo*, with the same trans. (85, iv.).

3. **quae tamen**, etc.: 'and as (*cum*) these had nevertheless (*i.e.*, in spite of the danger) cast anchor, and were filling,' etc.; or *tamen* may apply to the whole sentence, and be opposed to the words just preceeding, 'however as these.' **necessario . . . profectae . . . petierunt**: 'they were compelled to put out . . . and make for,' lit.? **adversa nocte**: 'in spite of the darkness,' lit. 'the night facing them' (46).

CHAP. 29.

1. **nocte**: that of August 30-31, 55 B.C., according to astronomical calculations. **esset**: 'there was' (31). **qui dies**: 'a time which.' (173, c, ii.). **maritimos aestus maximos**: 'very high tides'; our spring-tides. **consuevit**: 'is wont,' or trans. by 'usually.' **incognitum**: the tides at the straits of Dover are 20 or 25 feet high, those in the Mediterranean insignificant.

2. **uno**. as in ch. 23, 6. **naves . . . complebat**: keep the Latin order and trans. by the passive voice. So *onerarias . . . afflictabat*. **quibus**: 'in (lit. with) which.' **transportandum . . . curaverat**: 'had had . . . brought over' (121). **ad**: 'at.' **neque ulla**: 'and no,' lit.? **administrandi, auxiliandi**: the former referring to those on board, the latter to those on shore. **administrandi**: *sc. naves*.

3. **fractis**: trans. both abl. absol. and *cum* by 'as.' **amissis**: trans. 'having lost' or 'through the loss of.' **magna**, etc.: 'great alarm inevitably (or as was inevitable) arose throughout,' etc.;

lit.? *id quod*: 'a thing which' (173, *d*); *id* is in apposition with the clause *magna . . . facta est*, and *quod* is subject of *accidere* (141, *b*). *exercitus*: for case see 85.

4. *neque aliae*: trans. by 'no other.' *possent*: see 32. *omnibus constabat*: 'it was generally agreed'; more lit. 'agreed among all'; for dat. see 80, *b*, ii. *hiemari oportere*: 'that they must winter' (56 and 140, *b*). *in hiemem*: 'for the winter.'

CHAP. 30.

1. This sentence may be conveniently broken into four in English, viz., after *collocuti*, *transportaverat* and *producere* (204); trans. as if the Latin read *collocuti sunt*; *intellegebant et cognoscebant*; *itaque duxerunt*; *nunc confidebant*. *principes*: subject of *duxerunt*, section 2. *inter se*: see 164, ii. *Romanis deesse*: freely, 'that the Romans were without,' lit.? *quae*: referring to *castrorum*. *hoc angustiora*: 'all the smaller' or 'more contracted for this reason' (101, ii. *c* and fn.).

2. *optimum factu*: 'the best thing to do'; for the supine see 117. *duxerunt*: 'concluded.' *rebellione facta*: 'to renew the war and.' *prohibere, producere*: subjects of *esse*. *frumento*: see 93; so *reditu*. *rem*: 'the campaign.' *superatis*: trans. by 'if' (47, *a*; 48). So *interclusa*. *confidebant*: see 146.

3. *rursus*: not 'a second time,' but referring to the return to their former attitude. *agris*: as in ch. 27, 7. *deducere*: 'to bring down,' i.e., to the coast.

CHAP. 31.

1. *ex eventu navium*: 'from what had happened to his ships,' (85, ii.). *ex eo, quod*: 'from the fact that' (198). *fore*, etc.: 'suspected that that would happen which (actually) did occur.' *accidit*: for the mood see 175, i.

2. *ad*: 'for or to meet.' *subsidia comparabat*: 'he set about making provision' (180, *d*). *quae . . . naves, earum* = *earum navium quae*, 'of the ships which' (173, *c*, i.). *quae*: 'whatever'; sc. *ea* as subject of *comportari*. *res*: 'purpose.' *erant*: for the mood see 175, i. *continenti*: see on V. ch. 8, i.

3. **cum . . . administraretur**: 'as the soldiers worked,' cf. ch. 23, 2. **studio**: see 103. **amissis**: trans. by 'although.' **reliquis . . . effecit**: 'he made it possible to sail satisfactorily with the rest,' lit. 'he brought it about (or managed) that the voyage could be made,' etc. **navigari**: see 56. **posset**: see 33, v. **effecit**: notice the tense as compared with that used in section 2 (180, c, iii.).

CHAP. 32.

1. **geruntur**: see 153. **ex consuetudine**: 'as usual'; to be taken with *una*, not *missa*. **frumentatum**: the supine (116). **ad**: 'up to.' **interposita**: 'having arisen' i.e., between the time of the surrender and the present. **cum**: 'as' or 'for,' explaining the preceding words. **hominum**: 'of the people or natives.' **ventitaret**: 'kept coming'; a frequentative verb.* **quam consuetudo ferret**: 'than usual,' 'than was customary,' lit. 'than custom brought' (175). **in ea . . . partem**: 'was visible in the direction in which'; for *partem* see 173, b.

2. **id, quod erat**: 'what was actually the case.' *Id* is explained by the appositive clause *aliquid . . . consilii*. **aliquid consilii**: 'some plan' (86, i.). **initum**: sc. *esse*. **in stationibus**: 'on guard'; the plural because of the four gates of a Roman camp. **ex**: 'of' (86, iii.). **in stationem succedere**: 'to take their place on guard'; the singular of the general idea of guarding. **reliquis**: i.e., four of the ten cohorts in the legion. **armari**: 'to arm themselves' (164, iv.).

3. **paulo longius**: 'some little distance' (98, vi.). **conferta**: trans. by 'as,' giving the reason for *ex omnibus partibus*.

4. **una erat reliqua**: 'only one remained.'

5. **dispensos**: sc. *nostros*; trans. by a 'when' clause; so *occupatos*. **incertis ordinibus**; giving the reason for *perturbaverant*;

* FREQUENTATIVES, INTENSIVES, OR ITERATIVES are verbs of the first conjugation, ending in **-itō** or **-itō**, which denote *repeated* or *vigorous* action; as, **iacitō**, *brandish*, from **iacitō**, *hurl*. They are formed generally from the supine stem of verbs, but when formed from the first conjugation end in **-itō** (not **-itō**). Double frequentatives in **-ititō** occur, based on other iteratives in **-itō**; as **ventititō**, *keep coming*.

it was difficult to find their proper places in the cohorts. The pluperfects in sections 4 and 5 tell what had happened prior to Caesar's arrival in section 3.

CHAP. 33.

1. **hoc**: 'as follows.' **ex essedis pugnae**: 'of chariot fighting'; see 85, iv. fn. **per omnes partes**: 'in all directions.' **ipso terrore equitum**: 'by the very (or mere) terror caused by their horses'; for the gen. see 84. **ordines**: i.e., of their opponents. **equitum**: i.e., their own. Caesar had no cavalry with him. **insinuaverunt**: see 182, c.

2. **ita**: 'in such a way.' **illi**: i.e., those who had dismounted to fight on foot. **premuntur, habeant**: trans. by the pres. indic., and for the mood see 177, i. and 29 respectively, and also 60; or trans. by 'should' and 'would' respectively, and for the mood see 63 (and 29).

3. **tantum efficiunt**: 'become so expert,' lit.? **loco**: 'ground.' **per**: 'along.' **consuerint**; see ch. 20, 2, fn., and for the mood 29.

CHAP. 34.

1. **quibus rebus**: abl. of means. **perturbatis nostris**: may be dative with *auxilium tulit* (79), or abl. absolute. **novitate**: trans. by 'because of' (96). **adventu**: see 130.

2. **quo facto**: 'in spite of this,' more lit., 'although this was done' (48). **ad**: 'for,' depending on *alienum*. **suo loco**: 'on his own ground' (127, ii.). **brevi . . . intermisso**: 'after a short interval,' lit.?

3. **haec**: referring to the whole incident. **occupatis**: trans. by 'while.' **qui erant reliqui**: 'those who remained,' i.e., the Britons spoken of in ch. 32, 1, *pars . . . remaneret* (173, a). **discesserunt**: i.e., from their homes to join their countrymen (see ch. 30, 3).

4. **secutae sunt**: 'there followed' (12, a, iv.). **continerent, prohiberent**: for the mood see 32.

5. **quanta** 'what' or 'how favorable.' **faciendae**: 'for obtaining' (119). **sui liberandi**: see 119, iv. **expulissent**: for the mood and tense see 187, b, i.

CHAP. 35.

1. **idem . . . fore** : 'that the same thing would happen.' **ut . . . effugerent** : 'namely, that . . . would escape,' in apposition with *idem* (197). **si** : 'even if.' **essent pulsi** : for the mood and tense cf. on *expulissent*, ch. 34, 5. **dictum est** : cf. on *demonstratum est*, ch. 28, 1.

2. **diutius** : 'any longer,' *i.e.*, than the beginning of the battle. (98, vi.).

3. **secuti . . . occiderunt** : se. *nostri*. **tanto spatio** : freely, 'as far,' lit. 'by way of (*i.e.*, over) as great a space' (99, ii. a). **quantum . . . efficere** : 'as their speed and strength allowed,' or 'as their running powers held out' (a case of hendiadys), lit.? *Cursus* = rate of running, *vires* = powers of endurance.

CHAP. 36.

2. **His numerum duplicavit** : 'from these he required double the number,' lit., 'for these he doubled,' etc. **die** : 'the time,' or 'the season'; *dies* is sometimes fem. in the sing., chiefly in the sense of a fixed time. **propinqua . . . navibus** : trans. by 'as' (49).

3. **mediam noctem** : 'midnight' (86. iv. b).

4. **quae** : 'the ships.' **ex . . . duce** : we should say 'two of the transports,' lit.? **quos reliqui** : 'as the others,' lit. 'which the other (ere) reached'; *reliqui*, masc., by sense construction (13, N.B.). **infra** : *i.e.*, towards the S.W.

CHAP. 37.

1. **Quibus navibus** : the two just mentioned. **castra** : that of Sulpicius Rufus, ch. 22, 6. **proficiscens** : 'on setting out' (41). **primo** : adverb. **non ita magno** : 'with a not very large,' lit.? **si . . . nollent** : 'if they did not wish to be killed' (175); for *sece*, see 22, v.

2. **ad clamorem** : 'in answer to the shouting.' **hominum** : as in ch. 32, i; with *milium* (86). **suis auxilio** : 'to aid his men' (81).

3. **amplius horis** : 'more than,' etc. *Horis* may be the abl. of

comparison, equivalent to *quam horas* (98), or the abl. of time within which (131, i.), uninfluenced by *amplius* (98, iv.). **paucis**: 'but a few.'

4. **Postea quam**: answering to *primo*, section 1; generally written as one word.

CHAP. 38.

2. **siccitates**: trans. by the singular; in Latin the plural of an abstract noun (here due to the plural *paludum*) is used to denote various instances of a quality or its existence in different objects. **quo . . . habent**: 'had no place to which to retreat,' or 'had no place of retreat,' more lit. 'had not whither they could retreat' (32). **quo . . . usi**: trans. immediately after *paludum*, to which *quo* refers. For the agreement of *quo* see 13, i. **perfugio**: 'as a place of refuge' (55, v.). **fuerant usi**: see 182, i. in **potestatem pervenerunt**: 'fell into the hands,' lit. ?

3. **omnes**: nom. in **silvas**: see 127, iii.

4. **in**: 'among' or 'in the country of' (205, j). **neglexerunt**: add in trans. 'to do so.'

5. **His rebus**: referring to the whole of the summer's campaign. **ex litteris Caesaris**: 'in consequence of despatches from Caesar.' **dierum**: see 87. **supplicatio**: 'a public thanksgiving,' celebrated by solemn sacrifice in the temples at Rome. At the end of the campaign two years before, Caesar had written, "for these acts a thanksgiving for fifteen days was decreed, an honor which up to that time no one had received."



Roman War Galleys.

NOTES ON CAESAR, BOOK V.

CHAP. I.

1. **consulibus**: see 49. **discedens ab**: 'on leaving.' **Italiam**: the province of Cisalpine Gaul (*Gallia Citerior*), in which Caesar spent each winter, attending to its administration. **ut**: 'as,' in which sense it takes the indic. **legionibus**: see 78, v. c. **quam plurimas possent**: sc. *aedificare*; 'as many as they could' (174, i.). For the mood of *possent* see 175. **uti aedificandas curarent**: 'to have built' (121). For the tense of *curarent* see 78, iv.

2. **Ad**: 'for.' **onerandi**: trans. by 'in.' **subductiones**: cf. on *siccitates*, IV., ch. 38, 2. **facit humiliores**: sc. *eas*. **quam quibus**: 'than those which'; sc. *eas* (98, iii.). **nostro mari**: the name Mediterranean was not then in use. **id eo magis**: 'all the more so'; with *id* sc. *facit* ('he does'), and cf. on *hoc*, IV., ch. 30, 1. **minus magnos**: 'smaller.' **feri**: 'are caused.' **transportandam**: for the agreement see 11, i. **reliquis maribus**: the various parts of the Mediterranean were given separate names by the Romans.

3. **actuarías**: pred. adj.; *naves actuarias* were swift galleys, impelled by oars as well as by sails. **feri**: for the infin. pass. with *impero* see 22, vii. **quam ad rem**: 'to which end.'

4. **Ea quae sunt**: 'what is.' **Hispania**: Spain was rich in iron and material for ropes.

5. **Ipse**: in contrast with the *legati* of section 1, who were left to carry out his orders. **conventibus**: the governor of a province was also its supreme judge. **Illyricum**: another of Caesar's three provinces. **finitimam**: i.e., to the *Pirustae*. **audiebat**: 'he heard'; the tense implies that the news came more than once.

6. **imperat**: cf. on IV., ch. 22, 2.

7. *nihil*: 'none,' lit. ? *publico consilio*: 'with the sanction of the community (or state)'; as opposed to the work of irresponsible individuals. *demonstrant*: coordinate with *mittunt*, not with *doceant*. *omnibus rationibus*: 'in every way.' *de*: 'for.'

8. *ad*: 'by.' *diem*: for the gender see on IV., ch. 36, 2. *fecerint*: 'they do.' For the mood and tense see 187, b.

9. *ad diem*: 'at the (appointed) day.' *dat*: 'he appoints.' *aestiment*: 'assess.'

CHAP. 2.

2. *circuitis* . . . *invenit*: 'he visits . . . and finds.' *studio*: with *instructas*. *in summa inopia*: '(although) amidst,' or freely 'in spite of,' or 'although there was,' etc. *cujus*: sc. *genae naves*; trans. freely 'which,' as though it were *quod*, the object of *demonstravimus*. *longas*: sc. *naves*. *neque multum*, etc.: 'and that they are almost ready to be launched'; lit. 'and that it is not far from this but that,' etc. (139, c). *diebus*: see 131.

3. *Collaudatis*: more emphatic than *laudatis*. *negotio*: see 78, v. c. *quid fieri velit*: cf. on IV., ch. 23, 5. *omnes*: sc. *naves*. *portum Itium*: the exact locality is unknown. *militem*: see 87; modifying *trajectum*. *huic rei*: 'for this purpose,' i.e., for bringing the fleet safely to its appointed place. *satis militum*: 'a sufficient force,' lit. ? (86, i.).

4. *concilia*: Caesar regularly established these councils or assemblies among the conquered tribes, whom he thus kept in official relations with himself. *veniebant, parebant*: see 180, b.

CHAP. 3.

1. *plurimum*: adverb. *equitatu*: see 102. *supra*: Book III. speaks of 'the Treveri, who are next to the river Rhine.' The last words of chap. 2 show why he here dwells on their position.

2. *inter se*: 'with each other' (164, ii.).

3. *alter*: here 'the latter,' lit. 'the one.' *cognitum est*: see 56. *se . . . futuros*: with *confirmavit*. *in officio*: 'true to their allegiance,' lit. ? *populi*: objective gen. (85, ii.); trans. by 'with,' not 'of.'

4. *cogere*: depending on *instituit*, and connected by (*is*)*que* with *parare*. *per*: 'by reason of.' *in armis esse*: 'be under arms,' or 'bear arms.' *ingenti magnitudine*: see 105; modifying *quae* with the force of an appositive adj.; freely 'which is of vast extent and,' etc. *medios*: see 86, iv. *b*.

5. *Cingetorigis*: cf. on *populi*, section 3. *de suis privatim rebus petere*: 'to seek their own private advantage,' lit. ? *privatim*: the position makes it almost equal to the adj. *privatis*. *civitati*: see 79; in contrast with *suis privatim rebus*. *possent*: for mood see 147. *ne*: 'lest' or 'that'; for the subjunctive see 138.

6. *sese noluisse*: sc. 'saying' or 'who say,' implied in *legatos mittit* (191); *sese* refers to the subject of *mittit*. *idcirco*: explained by *quo . . . laboretur*. *quo . . . contineret*: see 28, iii. *ne . . . laboretur*: 'lest . . . should' (24). *discessu*: abl. of time, suggesting also the cause.

7. *permitteret*: see 192. *in castra*: see 127, iv. *suis, civitatis*. both modifying *fortunas*.

CHAP. 4.

1. *qua de causa*: 'why.' *instituto*: 'original,' lit. ? *omnibus . . . comparatis*: modifying the preceding words.

2. *in*: 'among.' *filio*: in apposition with *his*. *evocaverat*: sc. *Caesar*. *consolatus*: sc. *est*; because of the enforced exile (as hostages) of himself and his kinsmen.

3. *nihilo*: see 101. *principibus, hos*: the same persons; see 50, iii. fn. *quod*: conjunction. *cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but also.' (151, v.). *merito . . . fieri*: 'that he was treating him according to his desert,' for *a se fieri = se facere*, see 56. *merito*: see 103, iii. *magni interesse*: see 53, b, ii.; the subject is the clause *auctoritatem . . . valere*. *cujus . . . perspexisset*: 'seeing that he had observed his,' etc.; for subj. see 171. *suos*: referring to *ejus* (165, ii.). *tam*: omit in trans.

4. *factum*: noun. *suam . . . minui*: in apposition with *id factum*; 'that . . . should be lessened.' *qui fuisset*: 'whereas (or

while) he had been' (171). *animo*: see 105. *hoc dolore*: 'at this grievance' (96); more lit. 'through indignation at this' (205, c).

CHAP. 5.

2. *factae erant, erant profectae*: for the mood see 175, i. *eodem*: adverb. *omnibus rebus*: 'in all respects,' lit. 'with all things.'

3. *numero*: modifying *milium*; for the abl. see 102. *milium*: modifying *equitatus* (87); trans. 'the cavalry, four thousand in number.'

4. *obsidum loco*: 'as hostages,' lit. ? (127, ii.). *cum abesset*: 'while he was absent,' or 'in his absence,' for the fut. ind. of the actual thought (187, b; 178, ii.).

CHAP. 6.

1. *ante . . . dictum est*: 'we have spoken before.' Book I. tells how four years before Dumnorix had stirred up hostility to Caesar among the Aedui. Caesar had pardoned him, but had ever since carefully watched his conduct. *eum*: sc. *esse*. *animi*: 'pride' or 'ambition'; for the case see 87.

2. *Accedebat huc quod*: 'besides this'; more lit. 'to this was added the fact that' (198). *deferri*: notice the tense (15, a). *quod dictum*: 'a statement which.' *neque*: 'but yet . . . not.'

3. *factum*: sc. *esse*, or as in ch. 4, 4. *Ille*: 'Dumnorix.' *omnibus*: 'all manner of.' *petere contendit*: 'sought earnestly,' lit. ? *quod . . . timeret*: 'on the ground that he was unaccustomed . . . and dreaded'; for the mood see 177. *navigandi*: see 90. *diceret*: for the mood see 177, ii.

4. *id*: the request to be left behind. *sibi*: 'him'; indirect object.

5. *terrificare*: 'he kept alarming'; historical infin. (112); for the form see IV., ch. 32, 1, fn. *feri, esse*: in trans. supply 'saying' from *terrificare* (191). *ut . . . spoliaretur, ut . . . necaret*: see 197, a, and 196, c. *nobilitate*: see 93. *quos*: trans. after its antecedent *hos* (5, i.). *vereretur*: see 175. *ut . . . traductos necaret*: 'to carry over . . . and kill' (43, c; 50, iii.).

6. *reliquis*: i.e., the other *principes* than himself. *interponere*, *poscere*: cf. on *territare*, section 5. *quod*: 'whatever.' *intellexissent*: for the mood and tense see 187, b, i. *ut . . . administrarent*: giving the contents of the oath (196). *communi consilio*: 'by concerted action.' *deferebantur*: not once only, hence imperf.

CHAP. 7.

1. *tantum dignitatis tribuebat*: 'had such respect,' lit? (86, i.). *coercendum*: sc. *esse*. *quibuscumque . . . posset*: 'by whatever means he could'; for the mood see 175.

2. *longius*: 'still farther,' i.e., than at present. *prospiciendum*: sc. *esse statuebat* (56 and 200, a). *quid nocere*: 'to do any harm'; for the acc. see 72. *sibi*: i.e., Caesar. *ne . . . posset*: see 28, i.

3. *commoratus*: 'while waiting,' or 'as he was waiting'; for the tense see 44, ii. *omnis*: omit in trans. *ut . . . contineret*: see 27: so *cognosceret*.

4. *milites*: the infantry, belonging to the Roman legions, as opposed to the cavalry, who were native auxiliaries.

5. *impeditis*: 'while . . . were occupied.' *insciente Caesare*: 'without Caesar's knowledge' (49). *domum*: 'for home' (125).

6. *omnibus rebus*: 'everything (else).' *retrahi*: cf. on *jieri*, ch. 1, 3.

7. *vim faciat*: 'offers violence or makes resistance'; for fut. indic. of direct discourse (187, b). *se absente*: 'in his (i.e., Caesar's) absence.' *qui . . . neglexisset*: 'seeing that he,' etc.; for the mood cf. on *persperisset*, ch. 4, 3. *praesentis*: 'in his presence'; lit. '(of him) while present.' *imperium*: 'authority.'

8. *enim*: 'in fact.' Another reading is *autem*. *clamitans*: see IV., ch. 32, 1, fn. *liberum, liberae civitatis*: both predicates of *esse*; trans. 'a free man and a citizen of a free state' (86).

9. *erat imperatum*: see 57.

CHAP. 8.

1. *continente*: elsewhere in Caesar, *continenti*, with the regular abl. ending of an I-stem. *pro tempore et pro re*: 'as time and circumstances suggested,' lit. 'in accordance with,' etc.

2. *pari quem*: 'the same as' (174). *ad*: 'about.' *provectus*, etc.: 'was carried forward . . . but as the wind fell . . . could not keep,' etc. *longius*: 'too far' (98, vi.). *orta luce*: 'at sunrise,' lit. ? (50, ii.). *sub sinistra*: 'on the left'; the current had carried the vessels out of the Channel into the North Sea. *relictam*: 'behind him.'

3. *qua*: 'where'; adv. See IV., ch. 23, 6. *egressum*: a noun.

4. *admodum laudanda*: 'deserving of great praise' (118). *vectoriis* . . . *navigiis*: 'with transport ships, and those, too, heavily laden.' *non intermisso*: 'without relaxing,' or trans. by principal clause coordinate with *adaequarunt*, for which cf. IV., ch. 25, 6.

5. *Accessum est navibus*: 'the ships reached,' lit. ? (56). *Navibus* is abl. of means. *neque hostis*: 'but no enemy.'

6. *cum*: 'although' (65, a). *quae cum annotinis*, etc.: 'of which, including those of the previous year . . . eight hundred were in sight'; for the nom. *quae* see 86, iv., a. *quisque*: probably confined to rich officers and Gallic nobles. *sui commodi*: 'for his own convenience'; a predicate possessive gen. (83, i.), here expressing purpose. Some editions read *sui commodi causa*. *amplius octingentae*: for the case see 98, iv.

CHAP. 9.

1. *castris*: for the dat. see 78, ii., or 81. *qui . . . essent*: 'to protect the ships,' lit. ? (81). *de tertia vigilia*: 'early in the third watch'; *de* suggests that a portion of the watch had passed. The third of the four night watches would begin at midnight. *eo minus*: cf. on *eo magis*, ch. 1, 2. *navibus*: see 79. *relinquebat*: notice the tense. *et*: omit in trans.; another reading is *Ei*.

3. *equitatu*: see 103, ii. *ex loco superiore*: belonging to the whole clause, not to *prohibere*; the north bank was higher than the south. *nostros prohibere*: 'to check the advance of our men.'

4. *egregie munitum*: 'well protected.' *opere*: 'by art,' lit. 'by fortification'; explained by section 5. *ut videbantur*: 'as it seemed, or apparently,' lit. ? (18, vii.).

6. *ingredi prohibebant*: cf. on IV., ch. 24, 1.

7. *testudine* : a *testudo* was formed by the soldiers holding their shields over their heads so that they overlapped and formed a continuous cover, which received its name from its resemblance to a 'tortoise shell.' *aggere* : this was to put them on a level with those defending the walls. *ad* : 'against or close to.' *paucis* : as in IV., ch. 37, 3.

8. *eos* : i.e., *milites*, subject of *prosequi*. *fugientes* : object of *prosequi* ; see 44, i. a. *longius* : cf. on ch. 8, 2, or on IV., ch. 26, 5. *munitioni* : see 81.



Testudo (From Trajan's Column).

CHAP. 10.

1. *postridie ejus diei* : 'on the very next day,' lit. 'on the morrow of that day' (83, iv.). *in* : 'on,' lit. 'with a view to.' *expeditionem* : strictly, a rapid march of a flying column of *expediti* (ch. 2, 4).

2. *aliquantum itineris* : 'some distance,' lit ? (86, i.). *extremi* : 'only the last (or rearguard),' i.e., of the troops sent out. *in litore* :

another reading is in *litus* (127, iii.). **neque subsisterent**: 'would (lit. did) not hold'; for the mood see 175; for the tense see 180, b.

3. **eo concursu**: 'the colliding thus resulting'; *eo* refers to what is implied in the preceding lines.

CHAP. 11.

1. **revocari**: i.e., from pursuing the enemy. **resistere**: here meaning 'to halt.' Another reading is *itinere desistere* (93).

2. **eadem quae**: 'the same state of affairs as' (174). **sic**: 'to this extent,' or 'with this qualification,' here in a limiting sense, restricting the force of the previous words *eadem . . . perspexit*, and explained by the following *ut* clause (33, vi.). **amissis**, etc.: with concessive force. **reliquae posse viderentur**: 'the rest, it seemed, could,' lit. ? (18, vii.)

4. **scribit ut instituat**: see 28, v. **quam plurimas posset**: cf. on ch. 1, i. **iis legionibus**: 'with the aid of,' etc. (99, i.). **posset, sunt**: for the mood see 175, i. For the change of tense see 190, vi.

5. **multae**: for the agreement see 11, i. **operae ac laboris**: see 87, iii. **commodissimum**: 'the best plan.' **naves subduci**: see 110, fn., or trans. by changing the voice.

6. **ne nocturnis**, etc.: freely 'not allowing the soldiers' work to cease even at night,' lit. ? **ad**: 'with respect to.'

7. **quas ante**: sc. *reliquerat*.

8. **summa imperii**, etc.: 'the chief command and direction of the war,' lit. 'the chief part of the command and of the directing of the war.' **summa**: a noun, abl. absol. **communi consilio**: 'by common consent.' **dividit**: trans. by changing the voice. **a mari**: i.e., from the south shore where Caesar had landed.

9. **Huic cum**, etc.: 'between this man and the other states . . . had arisen'; for the dat. see 78, v. c., as also for *bello imperioque*.

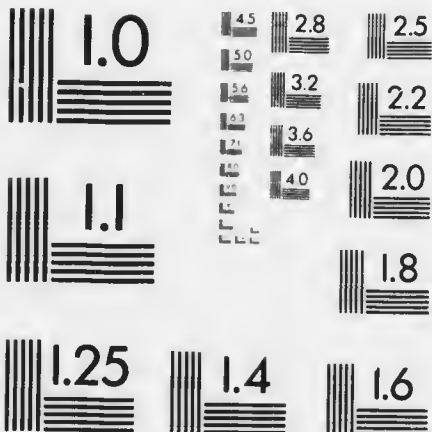
CHAP. 12.

1. **quos . . . dicunt**: *quos* is subject of *natos (esse)*; *proditum (esse)* depends on *dicunt*, and has for its subject *quos natos (esse)*. Trans. 'of whom they themselves state there is a tradition that they were born,' or more freely 'who, according to their own



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5700 - Fax

tradition, were born.' Another reading is *ipsa*, with *insula*. *memoria* : abl. of means.

2. *pars* : sc. *incolitur*. *qui omnes* : 'all of whom' (86, iv., a). *iis* : 'the.' *quibus* . . . *pervenerunt* : freely 'from which they have sprung and have come there.' *civitatis* : see 173, b.

3. *aedificia* : sc. *sunt*. *consimilia* : appositive, not predicative. *Gallicis* : sc. *aedificiis* ; 'those of the Gauls.'

4. *aut* . . . *aut* : 'partly . . . partly.' *ad* . . . *examinatis* : 'of a fixed weight,' lit. ? *pro* : 'as.'

5. *mediterraneis* : the tin mines of Cornwall are referred to, Caesar mistaking the distant west, of which he had heard, for an inland district. *maritimis* : iron was once mined in the south of England, now chiefly in the north. *ejus* : i.e., iron, which, being a hard metal to work, has generally been neglected by native tribes, even where it is abundant. *importato* : in emphatic position, 'the bronze they use is imported' (3, a). *cujusque* : 'every' (169, a). *praeter*, etc. : an error on Caesar's part.

6. *fas* : sc. *esse*. *haec* : neut. plur. referring to the animals just mentioned (13, ii.). *animi* : 'amusement,' lit. 'the feelings.' *Loca* : 'the climate,' lit. 'the country.' *remissioribus* : 'less severe' (44, i., b) ; for the case see 49.

CHAP. 13.

1. *natura* : 'in shape' (102). *triquetra* : sc. *est*. *cujus* : 'of it.' *alter* : 'one,' corresponding to *inferior*. *ad* : 'at.' *quo* : adverb. *appelluntur* : 'put in.'

2. *alterum* : sc. *latus* ; 'the second side.' *ad Hispaniam* : as the ancients had no compasses, and seldom sailed out of sight of land, they easily fell into error as to the relative position of distant places. *qua ex parte* : see 127, v. *dimidio minor* : 'half as large,' lit. ? (101). *pari spatio*, etc. : freely 'at the same distance as the passage from Gaul to Britain' ; lit. 'of the same length of passage across as is (the passage across) from Gaul to Britain.' For the abl. *spatio* see 105 ; with *est* sc. *transmissus* ; for *atque* see 174.

3. *hoc medio cursu* : 'the middle of this passage,' i.e., to Ireland (86, iv. b). *Mona* : this name was afterwards given to Anglesea,

but probably the Isle of Man is here meant. **subjectae**: sc. *esse*. **insulae**: the Hebrides or Orkney islands probably. **nonnulli**: though Caesar was the first Roman to land in Britain, it had been visited by Greeks. **sub**: 'at the time of.' **bruma**: for *brevima* = *brevisima*, sc. *dies*. **esse**: the subject is *noctem*.

4. **Nos**: contrasted with *nonnulli*. For the plural see 157, ii.: cf. the use of *demonstravimus* in ch. 2, 2 and ch. 3, 1. **reperiebamus**: trans. by 'could'; the tense implies frequent attempts during Caesar's stay. **nisi**: 'except that.' **certis mensuris**: 'by exact measurements.' **ex aqua**: 'by water,' i.e., with a water-clock or *clepsydra*, which worked on the principle of the hour-glass.

5. **ut . . . opinio**: 'as their belief goes'; freely 'as they believe.' **illorum**: referring to *nonnulli* of section 3. **milium**: sc. *passuum*; for the case see 87, iii.

6. **Tertium**: sc. *latus*. **angulus**: the same as *alter angulus*, section 1. **milia**: see 128; another reading is *milium*, as in section 5. **in**: 'in'; the acc. because of the notion of extending over space.

7. **vicies centum**: 'two thousand.' **milium**: for the case cf. on section 5.

CHAP. 14.

1. **qui**: see 173, a. **quae regio**: see 173, c. ii. **omnis**: 'entirely.'

2. **Interiores plerique**: 'most of those in the interior'; *plerique*, an adj. modifying *interiores*, which is used as a substantive. **lacte, pellibus**: see 99. **sunt vestiti**: see 164, iv., and 182, e. **hoc**: 'thus,' lit. ? (101, ii. c). **aspectu**: see 102.

3. **sunt**: freely 'they have.' **capillo, parte**: see 105, ii. **rasa**: trans. freely by the active voice.

4. **Uxores communes**: acc. Caesar is probably in error on this point. **deni duodenique**: 'in groups of ten or twelve.' For *-que*, lit. 'and (in other cases),' cf. in English 'three and four times a day.' **inter se**: omit in trans.

5. **si qui**: sc. *liberi*; 'if any' (166, a). **habentur**: 'they are regarded,' with pred. nom. *liberi* (12, c). **quo**: adv. = *ad quos*; 'to whom.'

CHAP. 15.

1. **tamen ut** : 'yet so that.' **omnibus partibus** : 'everywhere.' **fuerint, compulerint** : for the tense see 33, iii.
2. **compluribus** : i.e., of the Britons. **cupidius** : see 98, vi.
3. **illi** : see 160, i. **spatio** : i.e., of time; cf. section 4. **castrorum** : a camp was made at the end of each day's march.
4. **missis** : trans. by 'when.' **subsidio** : 'to their aid' (81). **atque his** : 'and these too.' **primis** : apparently the first cohort of a legion was its best. **cum** : 'although.' **intermisso loci spatio** : 'leaving an interval.' **inter se** : with *intermisso*. **perterritis** : trans. by 'as.' **per medios** : 'between them,' i.e., through the *per-
exiguum spatium*. **seque . . . receperunt** : not meaning 'they got away,' as the last words of section 5 show, but that they charged back again through the open space to their original position.

CHAP. 16.

1. **dimicaretur** : see 56. **nostros** : the legionary soldiers, as contrasted with *equites*, section 2; subject of *esse*. **cedentes** : acc. : 'the retreating enemy' (44, i., a). **possent** : see 175. **ab signis discedere** : they had been trained to fight in solid ranks only. **minus** : 'not well.' **ad** : 'to face.'
2. **autem** : 'while.' **proelio** : see 99. **illi** : 'the enemy.' **cederent** : see 175. **cum** : 'whenever.' **removissent** : for the mood and tense see 149 and 187, b. **nostros** : here = *equites*.
3. **Equestris** : with *proelii*. **autem** : 'moreover.' **ratio** : 'regular method,' or 'ordinary style'; in opposition to the unfamiliar tactics described in the last line of section 2. **cedentibus, insequentibus** : either dat. of the participle, referring to the Romans, or perhaps abl. absolute with *Britannis* understood. In either case Caesar is thinking of the danger to his own native cavalry, due to the superiority of the British horsemen. **inferebat** : 'brought' (180, b).
4. **Accedebat huc ut . . . proeliarentur** : cf. on ch. 6, 2; see 197 and 200, c. **intervallis** : see 103. **stationes** : 'reserves or supports.' **alios alii** : 'one another' (168, a. ii.). **exciperent** : 'relieved.' **-que** : 'and thus.'

CHAP. 17.

1. **rari**: 'here and there' (205, *h*). **lenius**: 'with less vigor.'
2. **tres**: an unusually large force; cf. IV., ch. 32, 1. **cum**: 'under.' **ad . . . advolaverunt**: see 78, v. *b*. **sic uti . . . absisterent**: 'so as to attack even the standards,' etc.; lit. ? They were not afraid to attack even the main body escorting the actual foragers.
3. **subsidio**: for abl. (= 'in') with *confisi* see 107, ii. **praecipites**: predicate acc. **egerunt**: see 155, *a*.
4. **sui colligendi**: see 119, iv.
5. **Ex**: 'after.' **quae . . . auxilia**: the *maiores copiae* of ch. 11, 8. **discesserunt**: 'disbanded.' **summisi copiis**: 'with their full force,' or 'in full force' (103, ii.).

CHAP. 18.

1. **consilio**: that, apparently, which is described in ch. 19. **Tamesim**: certain I-stems with nom. in *-is* (including names of rivers and towns) have the acc. in *-im*, and abl. in *-i*. **in fines**: see 127, iv. **hoc**: 'here,' 'at this'; se. *loco*.
2. **animum advertit**: also written *animadvertit*, and with the same force. **ad**: 'on.'
3. **praeifixis**: driven into the face of the bank. **defixae**: driven into the bed of the river.
5. **ea, eo**: 'such' (159, i.) **cum . . . exstarent**: 'although only their heads were above the water,' lit. ? (101). **-que**: 'but.'

CHAP. 19.

1. **ut demonstravimus**: with *deposita spe*. **supra**: ch. 17, 5. **amplioribus copiis**: 'the greater part of his forces,' lit. ? **relictis**: trans. freely by 'kept.' **servabat**: for the force of this and the succeeding imperfects see 180, *b*. **quibus**: 'where,' or 'through which.'
2. **cum**: 'whenever.' **ejecerat**: for the mood and tense see 149. **liberius**: with *ejecerat*; for the meaning see 98, vi.; so *latius* and *longius*, section 3. **viis**: see 99, ii. *a*. **periculo equitum**: 'danger to cavalry'; for the gen. see 85, ii. **hoc metu**: 'through fear of this,' lit. ? (205, *c*). Cf. *hoc dolore*, ch. 4, 4.

3. **Relinquebatur ut . . . pateretur**: 'the only course left was for Caesar not to allow his men to leave,' etc. For *ut pateretur* as subject clause see 197, fn.; for *discedi* see 56. **tantum noceretur**: freely 'to do as much harm' (72; 57). **in**: 'in the way of.' **labore atque itinere**: 'by laborious marching' (hendiadys), contrasted with the dashing cavalry raids.

CHAP. 20.

1. **Trinobantes**: with *mittunt*, section 2. **ex qua . . . viderat**: this parenthesis may be translated after *legatos . . . mittunt*, section 2, and broken at *cujus pater*, thus: 'The Trinobantes send, etc.; from this state, etc.; his father, etc.; they promise, etc.' **fidem secutus**: 'attaching himself to,' lit. ? **continentem Galliam**: 'the mainland of Gaul' (89, i.). **obtinuerat**: *obtineo* does not mean 'obtain' (203, f, iii.). **ipse**: 'while he himself,' or 'but who himself' (170, iv.).

2. **sese dedituros**: sc. *se* as subject, *sese* being object.

3. **Cassivellauni**: 'on the part of C.' or 'at the hands of C.' (84). **mittat qui praesit**: 'to send (some one) to govern' (173, a).

4. **exercitui**: see 79. **ad numerum**: 'to the required number.' Note the asyndeton in the last sentence (as also with *ipse* in section 1). Note, too, *his*, *eos* and *illi* used of the same persons.

CHAP. 21.

1. **defensis**: i.e., against Cassivellaunus. **militum**: cf. on *Cassivellauni*, ch. 20, 3.

2. **his**: sc. *legatis*, from *legationibus*. **quo**: adverb. **satis magnus**: 'a considerable.' **convenerit**: for the mood and tense see 186, 2; 187, b.

3. **oppidum vocant**: 'call it a town'; the object of *vocant* is found in the clause *cum . . . munierunt*. The Gauls, on the other hand, had regular towns in which they dwelt. **silvas impeditas**: 'a piece of woods difficult of access.' **munierunt**: see 149.

4. **opere**: cf. on ch. 9, 4. **ex**: 'on' (205, b). **hunc**: 'it'; lit. 'this (place).'

5. *morati*: 'after holding out.' *non tulerunt*: 'could not withstand.'

6. *reptus*: sc. *est*. *multi*: 'many (of the enemy).'

CHAP. 22.

1. *quibus regionibus praecerant*: 'over which . . . ruled' (78, v. c). *his*: i.e., the kings. *navalia castra*: see ch. 11, 5.

2. *incolumes*: acc. with *suos*; *sui* is here identical with *nostri*.

3. *per*: 'through the mediation of' (99, i.).

4. *neque multum*: 'and little.' *id*: = *non multum aetatis*, 'that little.' *in annos singulos*: 'yearly,' lit. 'for the years one by one.' *vectigalis*: see 86, i. *penderet*: 'should pay'; for the mood see 186, 1, b, i., and 200, a.

5. *interdicit atque imperat*: emphatic repetition; 'he absolutely forbids . . . to harm,' or 'he expressly orders . . . not to harm.' *neu*: 'or,' lit. ? (28, ii.).

CHAP. 23.

2. *commeatibus*: for the abl. see 103.

3. *tanto numero*: see IV., ch. 22, 3 and 4, and V., ch. 2, 2, and ch. 8, 6. *tot navigationibus*: 'although there were so many passages' (49). *portaret*: 'had on board'; the subj. may be by attraction (177, i.) (so *remitterentur*, section 4, but not *curaverat*, which is not so essential a part of the sentence) or may perhaps be characteristic (32).

4. *et . . . et*: dividing these empty vessels into two classes, to the latter of which *mitterentur*, not *remitterentur*, would more strictly apply; trans. 'both those which had made the first trip . . . and those which,' etc. *prioris commeatus*: sc. *ex navibus* (87). *postea*: i.e., after Caesar had set out for Britain with the fleet built during the winter. *faciendas curaverat*: cf. on ch. 1, 1. *numero*: for the abl. see 102. *sexaginta*: acc. agreeing with *quas*. *locum caperent*: 'reached their destination,' i.e., Britain. *caperent, rejicerentur*: with *sic accidit uti*.

5. *quod*: 'for.' *necessario collocavit*: cf. on IV., ch. 28, 3.

6. *consecuta*: see 50, ii. *cum solvisset*: freely 'he set sail . . . and.' *inita vigilia*: 'at the beginning of the watch,' abl. absol.



Transport Ship.

INDEX OF POINTS OF SYNTAX AND ACCIDENCE IN CAESAR, B. G. IV. 20—V. 23.

A. CASE CONSTRUCTIONS.

- Nominative**: in apposition, iv. 22, 1.—in predicate, iv. 32, 1; v. 9, 6; 11, 8; 13, 3; 14, 5; 16, 4; 17, 1.—of personal pronoun, iv. 25, 3; v. 13, 4; and *ille* or *illi* often.
- Genitive**: (a) *possessive*; in predicate, v. 8, 6.—with *postridiē*, v. 10, 1; with *causā*, v. 9, 4; 12, 6, and often with gerund or gerundive.
- (b) *subjective*; iv. 27, 3; 33, 1; 34, 1; 35, 2; v. 2, 2; 3, 6; 8, 2; 8, 3; 10, 3; 11, 6; 22, 3.
- (c) *objective*; iv. 20, 4; 22, 2; 28, 2; 29, 3; 31, 1; 32, 1; 37, 1; v. 3, 3; 3, 5; 6, 4; 9, 8; 19, 1; 19, 2.—with adjectives; iv. 22, 1; 24, 4; v. 6, 1; 6, 3.
- (d) *partitive*; with neuters, iv. 21, 9; 22, 3; 32, 2; v. 1, 7; 2, 3; 7, 1; 10, 2; 22, 4 (twice).—with *milia*, iv. 37, 2 and often *passuum*, as v. 2, 3; 13, 7.—with superlatives; v. 3, 1; 15, 4; 20, 1.—in predicate; v. 7, 8.

(e) *quality*; iv. 22, 1; 38, 5; v. 2, 2; 2, 3; 5, 3; 12, 5; 16, 1; 18, 3; 23, 4.—in predicate; v. 6, 1; 11, 5; 13, 5; 13, 7.

(f) *price*; iv. 21, 7; v. 4, 3.

Dative: (a) *indirect object*; iv. 22, 1; v. 6, 4; 18, 5; and often.—with adjectives; iv. 20, 2; 21, 7; 29, 1; v. 9, 1 (?); 12, 3.—with special intransitive verbs, iv. 21, 2; 21, 5; 21, 8; 27, 5; v. 1, 1; 2, 4; 7, 2; 19, 3; 22, 1; 22, 5 (twice). [*Imperō* with dat. and acc., iv. 22, 2; v. 1, 6; 20, 4].—with compound verbs; iv. 25, 6; 26, 1; 28, 2; v. 2, 3; 11, 9; 16, 4; 22, 1; and combined with acc., v. 1, 1; 9, 1; 11, 9.

(b) *interest*; iv. 25, 3; 26, 4; 36, 2; v. 3, 5; 9, 1; 20, 4.

(c) *purpose*; iv. 29, 4; 31, 2; v. 1, 4; 2, 3; 9, 1 (?); 9, 8; 15, 4.

(d) *interest and purpose (double dative)*; iv. 20, 2; 25, 1; 37, 2; v. 9, 1; 11, 7.

(e) *possession (with dēsum)*, iv. 26, 5; 30, 1.

(f) *apparent agent*; iv. 24, 2.

Accusative: (a) *predicate acc.*; iv. 21, 7; 23, 2; 26, 2; 26, 4; 37, 1; v. 1, 2; 1, 3; 16, 4; 17, 3; 21, 3; 22, 2; 23, 1; 23, 6.

(b) *limit of motion*; iv. 21, 6; v. 7, 5.

(c) *extent of space*; iv. 23, 6; v. 9, 2; 10, 2; 11, 8; 13, 1; 13, 6.

(d) *duration of time*; iv. 34, 4; v. 7, 3 (twice); 13, 3.

(e) *adverbial*; v. 1, 3; 2, 2; 3, 1; 7, 2; 14, 1; 19, 3.

(f) with *propius*; iv. 28, 2.

Ablative: (a) *separation*; iv. 21, 9; 24, 1; 30, 2 (twice); 34, 5; v. 6, 5; 11, 1 (?).

(b) *cause*; iv. 34, 1; v. 4, 4.

(c) *comparison*; iv. 37, 3 (?).

(d) *means or instrument*; iv. 22, 4; 24, 2; 25, 1; 25, 2; 26, 4; 27, 1; 28, 3; 29, 2; 29, 4; 31, 3; 32, 5; 33, 3; 35, 1; 35, 3; 37, 1; v. 1, 5; 1, 8; 5, 2; 6, 3; 6, 5; 7, 1; 8, 4; 8, 5; 9, 4; 11, 4; 12, 1; 13, 4; 14, 2; 15, 1; 16, 2; 17, 1; 18, 5; 19, 1; 19, 2 (twice); and often.—with *utor* often; in iv. 38, 2, with double abl.

- (e) *measure of difference*; iv. 22, 4; v. 13, 2; so *multō*, v. 4, 4; *nihilō*, v. 4, 3; 7, 3; and *paulō*, iv. 23, 2, and often. *Hōc* or *eō* with comparatives, iv. 30, 1; v. 1, 2; 9, 1; 14, 2.
- (f) *specification*; v. 3, 1; 5, 5; 13, 1; 14, 2; 23, 4.
- (g) *manner and attendant circumstances*; iv. 25, 4; 27, 3; 28, 1; 31, 3; 33, 1; v. 1, 7; 2, 2; 11, 2; 16, 2; 16, 4; 18, 1; 18, 5; 23, 2; of accordance; v. 1, 7; 4, 3; 6, 6; 11, 8.
- (h) *accompaniment*; iv. 24, 1; v. 9, 3; 17, 5.
- (i) *quality*; v. 3, 4; 4, 4; 13, 2; 14, 3.
- (j) *place where*; iv. 34, 2; v. 5, 4; 15, 1; 18, 1; 19, 1; with *cōfidō*, v. 17, 3.
- (k) *time when*; iv. 20, 1; 34, 1; v. 3, 6; 23, 6; and often with words expressing time; (but not *cōsulibus*, v. 1, 1; *lūce*, v. 8, 2; *vigiliā*, v. 23, 6).
- (l) *time within which*; iv. 27, 6; 37, 3(?); v. 2, 2.
- (m) *absolute*; concessive (= *although*); iv. 20, 4; 31, 3; 34, 2; v. 11, 2; 23, 3.—conditional (= *if*); iv. 30, 2.—with pres. partic.; iv. 25, 3; v. 7, 7; 16, 3(?).—with deponent perf. partic.; iv. 26, 5; v. 8, 2; 10, 2 (twice); 23, 6.—with noun or adj. as predicate; iv. 20, 1; 23, 6; 24, 2; 24, 3; 28, 3; 32, 5; 36, 2 (twice); v. 1, 1; 7, 5; 12, 6; 15, 3; 23, 3.—with negative; v. 8, 4; 11, 6.—referring to object in acc.; iv. 21, 6; v. 4, 3.—with subject omitted; v. 16, 3(?).

B. MODAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

- (a) **Final or purpose clauses**: *adverbial*; with *ut* or *nē*; v. 3, 6; 4, 1; 8, 1; 10, 1; 23, 5; with *quō*; v. 3, 6.—*relative*; iv. 21, 5; 22, 1; v. 1, 7; 1, 9; 9, 1; 10, 2; 20, 3.—*substantival*: iv. 21, 2; 21, 6; 21, 8; 25, 3; 25, 5; 27, 4; v. 1, 1; 4, 2; 6, 3; 6, 4; 6, 5; 6, 6; 7, 2; 7, 3; 8, 3; 11, 4; 20, 3; 22, 1; 22, 5 (with *neu*); with *ut* omitted; iv. 21, 8; 23, 5.—with *vereor*; v. 3, 5.—with *quōminus*, iv. 22, 4.—with *quā*, v. 2, 2.
- (b) **Consecutive or result clauses**: *adverbial*; iv. 23, 3; 28, 2; 33, 2; 33, 3; v. 11, 2 (restrictive); 15, 1; 17, 2; 18, 5.—*substantival*; iv. 29, 1; 31, 3; 35, 1; v. 6, 5; 16, 4; 19, 3; 23, 3 and 4.

- (c) **Relative clauses of characteristic** ; iv. 21, 9 ; 29, 4 ; 34, 4 ; 38, 2 ; v. 23, 3 and 4 (?).
- (d) **Indirect questions** ; iv. 20, 4 ; 21, 9 ; 23, 5 ; 34, 5 ; v. 2, 3 ; 3, 3 ; 4, 1 ; 8, 1 ; 9, 1.—**deliberative** ; v. 22, 4.
- (e) **Relative clauses** [see also under a, c, g, i.].—often with **qui** or **ut** (= *as*) and the indic.—in indirect discourse in subj. ; iv. 21, 8 ; 22, 1 ; 23, 5 ; 27, 1 ; 32, 1 (twice) ; v. 1, 1 ; 6, 5 ; 6, 6 ; 7, 1 ; 11, 4 ; 21, 2.—in subj. by attraction, v. 23, 3 and 4 (?).—in indic., though with indirect discourse ; iv. 30, 1 ; 31, 1 ; 31, 2 ; 32, 2 (twice) ; 35, 1 ; v. 5, 2 (twice) ; 11, 4.—with **quicumque**, iv. 26, 1 (indic.) ; v. 7, 1 (subj. in indirect discourse).
- (f) **Temporal clauses** : **ubi** and indic. ; iv. 25, 1 ; 26, 2 (frequentative) ; v. 9, 1.—**simul (atque)** and indic. ; iv. 26, 5 ; 27, 1 ; v. 3, 3.—**posteaquam** and indic. ; iv. 37, 4 ; v. 3, 5 ; 6, 4.—**postquam** and indic. ; iv. 28, 1.—**dum** (= *while*) and indic. ; iv. 22, 1 ; 32, 1 ; 34, 3 ; v. 22, 1.—**dum** (= *until*) and subj. ; iv. 23, 4.—**quoad** and indic. ; v. 17, 3.—**priusquam** and subj. ; iv. 21, 1.—**cum**, frequentative and indic. ; iv. 33, 1 ; v. 19, 2 ; 21, 3 ; with subj. in indirect discourse ; v. 16, 2.—**cum** and subj. ; iv. 25, 4 ; 25, 6 ; 26, 4 ; 28, 2 ; 32, 3 ; 37, 1 ; 37, 2 ; v. 1, 6 ; 2, 2 ; 10, 2 ; 16, 1 ; 17, 2 ; 18, 2 ; 22, 2 ; 23, 5 ; 23, 6 ; in v. 5, 4, in indirect discourse for the fut. indic.
- (g) **Causal clauses** : often with **quod** and indic.—with **quod** and subj. in indirect discourse ; iv. 22, 1 ; 27, 5 ; v. 6, 3 (twice, *diceret* exceptional) ; 10, 2 ; 16, 1 ; 16, 2.—with **quoniam** and subj., in virtual indirect discourse ; v. 3, 5.—with **cum** and subj. ; iv. 23, 2 ; 28, 3 ; 29, 3 ; 30, 1 ; 31, 3 ; 32, 1 ; 38, 2 ; v. 17, 3 ; 22, 4.—with **qui** and subj. ; iv. 23, 5 ; v. 4, 3 ; 7, 7.—with **quod** = *the fact that* ; v. 6, 2.
- (h) **Conditional clauses** : in direct discourse ; iv. 25, 3 ; v. 13, 4.—in indirect discourse ; iv. 20, 2 (twice) ; 33, 2 (perhaps attraction) ; 34, 5 ; 35, 1 ; 37, 1 ; v. 1, 8 ; 3, 7 ; 7, 7.
- (i) **Concessive or adversative clauses** : with **etsi** and indic. ; iv. 20, 1 ; 31, 1 ; 35, 1 ; v. 4, 1 ; 11, 5.—with **cum** and subj. ; iv. 24, 3 ; 27, 3 ; 27, 5 ; v. 8, 6 ; 15, 4 ; 18, 5.—with **qui** and subj. ; v. 4, 4.
- (j) **Infinitive** : *complementary* ; with **polliceor**, iv. 21, 5 ; with **imperō**, v. 1, 3 ; 7, 6.—with **prohibeō**, iv. 24, 1 ; v. 9, 6 ; 19, 2.—with **vereor**, v. 6, 5.

- in indirect discourse*; introduced informally, v. 3, 6; 6, 5.—with subj. nec. omitted, iv. 27, 1; 27, 5; v. 20, 2.—with **statuō**, v. 7, 1; 11, 5.—*substantival*; iv. 30, 2; v. 4, 3; 4, 4; 11, 5; 12, 6.—*historical*; v. 6, 5; 6, 6.
- (k) **Gerund**: *genitive*; with **causā**, v. 6, 2; 17, 2; 19, 2; with other nouns, iv. 29, 2; v. 1, 2; 6, 4; 8, 4; 17, 3; 17, 4; with adjective, v. 6, 3.—*accusative*; with **ad**, iv. 23, 1; 23, 4; 29, 3; v. 5, 2.—*ablative*; with **in**, iv. 32, 5.
- (l) **Gerundive**: as mere predicate adj., v. 8, 4.—passive periphrastic; iv. 22, 2; 24, 2; 36, 2; v. 7, 1; 7, 2.—gerundive construction; *genitive*, with **causā**, iv. 22, 1; 30, 2; v. 12, 2; 21, 3.—with other nouns, iv. 22, 2; 34, 5; v. 11, 8.—with **suī**, iv. 34, 5; v. 17, 4.—*accusative*, with **ad**, iv. 20, 2; 21, 1; 22, 3; 29, 4; 31, 2; 34, 2; v. 1, 2; 1, 4; 7, 6.—*ablative*, with **in**, iv. 27, 4; v. 19, 3.—*predicatively*, with **cūrō**, iv. 29, 2; v. 1, 1; 23, 4; with **dō**, iv. 22, 5.
- (m) **Supine**: in **-um**, iv. 32, 1; in **-ū**, iv. 30, 2.
- (n) **Participles**: used as substantives, iv. 27, 3; v. 4, 3; 4, 4; 6, 3 (?); 9, 8; 16, 1; 16, 3 (?); 16, 4; 20, 2; 20, 4.—used as adj. and compared, v. 12, 6.—as predicative complement, iv. 22, 2; 26, 2; 26, 4; 37, 1; v. 2, 2; 16, 4; 23, 1.—present part., iv. 25, 3; 26, 2; 26, 4; 37, 1; v. 1, 1; 7, 7 (twice).—perfect partic. with future reference, iv. 27, 6; 30, 2; v. 6, 5; 22, 1.—perfect partic. with force of present, v. 7, 3; and often with verbs of *thinking*.

C. USE OF TENSES.

- Present**: historical present: with primary sequence, iv. 21, 2; 21, 5; 21, 8; and often with secondary sequence, iv. 21, 9; v. 1, 1; 11, 2; 22, 4; with shift of sequence, v. 7, 7; 11, 4.—present subj., in indirect discourse for fut. indic.; v. 7, 7.—with **dum** (= *while*); iv. 22, 1; 32, 1; 34, 3; v. 22, 1.
- Imperfect**: as past progressive, iv. 29, 2; v. 3, 2.—of repeated or habitual action (or repeated failure), iv. 20, 4; 25, 3; 26, 1-4; 31, 2; v. 1, 5; 2, 4; 6, 6; 10, 2; 13, 4; 16, 2; 16, 3; 19, 1; 19, 2.—inceptive, iv. 31, 2 (*comparābat*).—conative; iv. 24, 1; v. 9, 6.—with peculiar force, **accēdēbat** and **relinquēbātur**,¹ iv. 22, 4; v. 6, 2; 16, 4; 19, 3.—imperf. subj. in indirect discourse for fut. indic.; iv. 20, 2; v. 5, 4.

¹ In view of the literal meaning of these verbs, we should expect the pluperfect.

Perfect: rendered by present (*cōsuēvi*), iv. 24, 1; 20, 1; 33, 3; v. 1, 2; 7, 3; 21, 3.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 33, 1; v. 14, 5; 21, 3.—perf. subj., in clause of result; v. 15, 1.—perf. subj., in indirect discourse for fut. perf. indic.; v. 1, 8.

Pluperfect: rendered by past (*cōsuēveram*), iv. 24, 4; v. 1, 1.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 26, 1; 26, 4; v. 16, 2; 19, 2.—plupf. subj. in indirect discourse for fut. perf. indic., iv. 20, 2; 22, 1; 27, 1; 34, 5; 35, 1; v. 6, 6.—*ūsī fuerant*, iv. 38, 2.—*dispositās habērent*, v. 16, 4.

Future perfect: iv. 25, 3.

D. MISCELLANEOUS.

- (a) impersonal passive; iv. 23, 2; 24, 2; 26, 1; 27, 4; 28, 1 (twice); 29, 4; 31, 3; 35, 1; v. 3, 3; 4, 3; 6, 1; 7, 2; 7, 9; 8, 5; 16, 1 (twice); 19, 3 (thrice).
- (b) passive with reflexive force; iv. 32, 2; v. 14, 2.
- (c) **videor** and **dicor** used personally; v. 2, 4; 9, 4; 11, 2.
- (d) **necesse est**, iv. 29, 3; **oportet**, iv. 29, 4; **interest**, v. 4, 3.
- (e) **quam** with superlative; iv. 21, 2; v. 4, 3; with **possum** added, v. 1, 1; 11, 4.
- (f) comparative with standard of comparison unexpressed; iv. 20, 4; 23, 2; 25, 1; 26, 5; 30, 1; 32, 3; 35, 2; v. 7, 2; 8, 2; 9, 8; 15, 2; 16, 1; 19, 2 (twice); 19, 3; 23, 5.
- (g) **amplius** with **quam** omitted; iv. 37, 3; v. 8, 6.
- (h) distributive numerals; v. 6, 4; 14, 4; 22, 4.—numeral adverb; v. 13, 7.
- (i) relative pronoun and pronominal adjective [see also under Modal Constructions, a, c, e, g, i].
with coordinating force; iv. 23, 3; 24, 4; and often; in adverbial dependent clause; iv. 23, 2; 25, 1; 28, 2; and often.—with antecedent omitted (= *is qui*); iv. 22, 3; 25, 3; 27, 1; 31, 2; 34, 3; v. 1, 2 (twice); 2, 3; 6, 6; 14, 1; 20, 3.—with antecedent repeated; iv. 32, 1; v. 2, 3; 12, 2; 13, 3.—with antecedent following; iv. 26, 4; 31, 2; v. 6, 5; 17, 5.—with antecedent incorporated into relative clause; iv. 21, 4; 21, 8; 24, 1; 29, 1; 31, 2; v. 6, 2; 14, 1; 22, 1.—**quicumque**, iv. 26, 1; v. 7, 1.—**īdem quī**, iv. 24, 4; 35, 1; 36, 4; v. 11, 2; 11, 7.—**pār quī**, v. 8, 2 [**pār atque**, v. 13, 2].—**tantus quantus**, iv. 35, 3; v. 19, 3; with **tantus** omitted, iv. 21, 9.

- (j) **is** (= *such*): v. 18, 5.—**hōc mētū** = **hūjus rei metū**; v. 19, 2; similarly 4, 4.
- (k) **ille**, marking change of subject; iv. 24, 3; 27, 3; 27, 6; 33, 2; 37, 2; v. 6, 3; 7, 8; 7, 9; 9, 3; 15, 3; 15, 5; 16, 2; 20, 4.
- (l) indefinite pronouns and pronominal adjectives: **quis (quī)**; v. 7, 2; 14, 5.—**quisquam**; iv. 20, 3 (twice).—**ūllus**; iv. 29, 2; 32, 1; v. 23, 3.—**nūllus**; iv. 28, 2; v. 13, 6.—**aliquis**; iv. 26, 2; 32, 2.—**nōnnūllī**; v. 3, 5; 13, 3; 15, 2; 23, 2.—**alius**; iv. 26, 3; 29, 4; v. 11, 3; 21, 5; repeated, iv. 26, 1; 28, 2; v. 16, 4.—**alter**; v. 3, 3; 13, 1; 18, 2; (= *the second*) 13, 2.—**cēteri**; v. 6, 1.—**quisque**; v. 8, 6; 12, 5; 14, 5.—**uterque**; iv. 26, 1.
- (m) **inter sē**: (= *one another*); iv. 25, 5; 30, 1; v. 3, 2; 14, 4.
- (n) **post diem quartum quam**; iv. 28, 1.
- (o) **cum . . . tum**; v. 4, 3.
- (p) **nē . . . quidem**; v. 11, 6.
- (q) **inquit**; iv. 25, 3.
- (r) **medius**; iv. 36, 3; v. 3, 4; 8, 2; 13, 3.
- (s) adjective with adverbial force; v. 9, 6; 16, 4; 17, 1.
- (t) plural of abstract nouns; iv. 38, 2; v. 1, 2.
- (u) first plural = *I*; **nōs**, v. 6, 1; 13, 4; cf. also, v. 2, 2; 3, 1; 19, 1; 22, 1.
- (v) concords: apposition; v. 3, 4; 4, 2; 20, 1 (twice).—agreement with nearer noun; iv. 24, 4; v. 1, 2; 11, 5.—sense construction; iv. 36, 4.

E. ACCIDENCE.

- (a) third declension, I-stems; accus. in **-im**, v. 18, 1; abl. in **-ī**, **nāvi**; iv. 21, 9, and often; **continentī**, iv. 31, 2, and often, but **continente**, v. 8, 1.
- (b) **jūsjurandum**; v. 6, 6; **rēs pūblica**, iv. 25, 3; v. 7, 2; **vīs, vīrēs**, iv. 35, 2; v. 7, 7; 10, 2; **fās**, v. 12, 6; **locus, loca**, v. 8, 6, and often.
- (c) **firmiter**; iv. 26, 1.
- (d) **nōbiscum**; v. 17, 5; **sēcum**, iv. 32, 2; 35, 1; v. 5, 4; 6, 1.
- (e) frequentative verbs; iv. 32, 1; v. 6, 4; 7, 8.
- (f) contracted verbal forms; iv. 20, 2; 22, 1; 24, 1; 24, 4; 25, 6; 27, 1; 27, 5; 33, 3; v. 1, 1; 8, 4; 21, 3; 28, 5.

VOCABULARY

TO

CAESAR DE BELLO GALLICO

A.

A., an abbreviation for Aulus.

ā, ab, (abs), prep. with **abl.**, (**ā** before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants; **abs** once before **te**), *away from, from, at a distance of; by; on the side of, at, on, in*.

ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *hide, conceal; part. abditus, a, um, as adj., hidden, secluded*.

ab-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, carry off*.

ab-eō, ire, -ī (-ivī), -itum, *go away, depart*.

abi-ēs, -etis, f., fir.

ab-iciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw away; throw*.

ab-jungō, ere, -jūnxī, -junctum, *detach, separate, part*.

ab-ripiō, ere, -ripul, -reptum, *carry off, snatch*.

abs, see **ā**.

abs-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cisum, *cut off, cut, cut away; cut down*.

absēns, -entis, *absent*

absimilis, e, *unlike*.

ab-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitutum, *withdraw, keep away from*.

abs-tineō, ere, -tinui, -tentum, *refrain, abstain, spare*.

abs-trahō, ere, trāxī, tractum, *drag away, carry off*.

absūm, abesse, āful, *be absent, be wanting; be far, be distant; take no part in, keep aloof; lack, be lacking*.

abundō, āre, āvi, ātum, *abound, be strong in*.

ac (shorter form for **atque**, used only before vowels), *and, and further; in comparisons, than, as*.

ac-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *approach, draw near, come up; be added*.

accelerō, āre, āvi, ātum, *hasten*.

acceptus, a, um, from **accipio**.

ac-cidō, ere, -cidī, -fall, *be fall, happen, occur; turn out*.

ac-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cisum, *cut into, cut*.

ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *receive, take; suffer, meet with; accept; find; hear; part. accep-tus, a, um, as adj., acceptable, popular*.

acclivis, e, *rising, sloping*.

acclivitas, -tātis, f., *ascent, slope, steepness*.

Accō, -ōnis, m., a chief of the Senones.

accommodō, āre, āvi, ātum, *fit, adjust; adapt, suit*.

accūrātē, adv., *carefully, elaborately*.

accurrā, ere, -curri or -eucurri, -cursum, *run up, rush up, hasten*.

- accūsō, āre, āvl, ātum, accuse,**
find fault, censure.
- acer, cris, cre, sharp, keen, violent,**
severe.
- acerbē, adv., bitterly, keenly;**
acerbe ferre, be distressed by.
- acerbitās, -tātis, f., bitterness;**
suffering, distress.
- acerbus, a, um, bitter, painful.**
- acervus, l, m., heap, pile.**
- acēlēs, ēl, f., keenness, fierce glance;**
line of battle; battle.
- ac-quirō, ere, -quisvl, -quis-**
lum, gain, gain advantage.
- acriter, adv., (acerius, acerrimē),**
fiercely, hotly, desperately.
- actuārius, a, um, light, swift.**
- actus, a, um, from ago.**
- acūtus, a, um, sharp, pointed.**
- ad, prep. with acc., to, towards;**
with a view to, for; according to;
near, by, in, among; (with nu-
merals), about.
- adactus, a, um, from adigo.**
- adaequō, āre, āvl, ātum, equal;**
make equal.
- adamō, āre, āvl, ātum, love**
greatly, become enamored of, take
a fancy to.
- ad-dō, ere, -didl, -ditum, add,**
join; make an addition.
- ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxl, -ductum,**
lead, bring; bring in, conduct;
draw towards, draw taut; induce,
influence, force.
- adēptus, a, um, from adimo.**
- adeō, adv., so, so much.**
- ad-eō, ire, -il (-ivl), -itum, go**
to, advance; attack; visit; reach,
get at; approach.
- adeptus, a, um, from adipiscor.**
- adequitō, āre, āvl, ātum, ride**
up.
- ad-haerēscō, ere, -haesl,**
-haesum, adhere, cling to, catch
fast to.
- adhibeō, ēre, vl, itum, call in,**
admit; bring along; use, show.
- adhorter, ārl, ātus sum, urge,**
exhort, encourage.
- adhūc, adv., till now, up to the**
present, as yet.
- Adlatunnus, l, m., a chief of the**
Sontiates.
- ad-igō, ere, -ēgl, -āctum, drive**
up; drive in; hurl, cast; move
up; force, bind.
- ad-imō, ere, -ēmī, -ēptum,**
take away, destroy; cut off.
- ad-ipiscor, l, -eptus sum, ob-**
tain, win.
- aditus, ūs, m, approach, access,**
means of approach; right of
approaching, admittance; inter-
course.
- adjaceō, ēre, vl, be adjacent,**
border upon.
- ad-jiciō, ere, -jēcl, -jectum,**
cast; add; throw up.
- adjūdicō, āre, āvl, ātum, ad-**
judge.
- ad-jungō, ere, -jānxl, -jānc-**
tum, join, unite, ally; annex.
- adjutor, ōrls, m., assistant, ally.**
- ad-juvō, āre, -jūvl, -jūtum,**
assist, help; aid; be of assistance,
further.
- Admagetobriga, ae, f., a town in**
Gaul, of uncertain position.
- admātūrō, āre, āvl, ātum,**
mature; hasten.
- administer, trl, m., assistant,**
priest.
- administrō, āre, āvl, ātum,**
carry out, execute, attend to;
manage; issue.
- admiror, ārl, ātus sum, wonder**
at, admire, be surprised.
- ad-mittō, ere, -misl, -missum,**
allow, incur; commit; let go;
part. admissus, at full speed.
- admodum, adv., very, very much,**
exceedingly; with numerals, fully,
quite.
- admoneō, ēre, vl, itum, warn,**
advise.
- adolēscēns, see adulescens.**
- adolēscēntia, see adulescentia.**
- adolēscēntulus, see adulescen-**
tulus.

- ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvi, -ultum,** *grow up.*
ad-orior, iri, -ortus sum, *attack, assault.*
ad-sclscō, ere, -sclvi, -scltum, *join, unite, take.*
ad-sistō, see assisto.
ad-sum, esse, -fui, be present, be at hand, be near; aid, assist.
Aduātuca, ae, f., a stronghold in the north-east of Gaul.
Aduātucl, ōrum, m., the Aduatuci, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.
adulēscēns, -entis, m., young man; the younger.
adulēscētia, ae, f., youth.
adulēscēntulus, l, m., a mere youth.
adventus, ūs, m., arrival, approach, coming.
adversārius, l, m., opponent, enemy.
adversus, a, um, opposite, facing, in front; adverse, unsuccessful.
adversus, prep. with acc., against.
ad-vertō, ere, -verti, -versum, *turn towards; w. animum, observe, notice.*
advocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call, summon.
advolō, āre, āvi, ātum, fly to, rush upon or to.
aedificium, l, n., building.
aedificō, āre, āvi, ātum, build.
Aeduus, l, m., an Aeduan; in plur., the Aedui, a tribe in the centre of Gaul.
aeger, gra, grum, sick.
aegrē, adv., (aegrus, aeger-rimē), scarcely, with difficulty.
Aemilius, l, m., Lucius Aemilius, a cavalry officer with Caesar.
aequaliter, adv., uniformly.
aequinoctium, l, n., equinox.
aequitās, -tātis, f., fairness, justice; w. animi, contentment.
aequō, āre, āvi, ātum, make equal, equalise.
aequus, a, um, level; fair, just; even, equal; favorable; contented, calm, resigned.
aerārius, a, um, of copper, copper.
aes, aeris, n., bronze; copper; money; aes alienum, debt.
aestās, -tātis, f., summer.
aestimātiō, -ōnis, f., valuation, estimate.
aestimō, āre, āvi, ātum, estimate, value, regard.
aestivus, a, um, of summer.
aestuārium, l, n., estuary, inlet.
aestus, ūs, m., heat; tide.
aetās, -tātis, f., age, years.
aeternus, a, um, perpetual, unending.
afferō, afferre, attuli, allatum, bring; bring forward, announce; cause, bring about, produce.
af-ficō, ere, -feci, -fectum, affect, visit, treat; translate freely in act. by cause, produce, inflict; in pass. by suffer, experience, enjoy, be afflicted with, be subjected to, be in.
af-fligō, ere, -flixi, -fixum, fasten, attach.
af-fingō, ere, -fingi, -fictum, invent further, or in addition.
affinitās, -tātis, f., relationship, marriage.
affirmātiō, -ōnis, f., assurance, assertion.
affixus, a, um, from affigo.
afflictō, āre, āvi, ātum, buffet, toss about; damage, wreck.
afflictus, a, um, from affigo.
af-fligō, ere, -flixi, -flictum, shatter, damage, wreck; throw down, bear down.
affore, from adsum.
Āfricus, l, m., south-west wind.
Agedincum, l, n., a town in the north central part of Gaul.
ager, agri, m., field, land, country, territory.
agger, eris, m., mound; heap of earth; dam, rampart.

- ag-gredior, I, -gressus sum,** *attack.*
aggregō, āre, āvi, ātum, attach, *join.*
agltō, āre, āvi, ātum, discuss.
agmen, -minis, n., army on the *march, line of march, column;*
w. primum, the van; w. novissimum, the rear.
agō, ere, ēgi, ātum, drive, carry *off; bring up, advance; take;*
drive down; run; do, carry on,
work, act; treat, plead, discuss,
confer; hold; express.
agricultūra, ae, f., agriculture, *tilling the land, farming.*
alacer, cris, ere, eager.
alacritās, -tātis, f., eagerness, *ardor.*
ālārī, ōrum, m. plur., auxiliaries *(usually placed on the wings).*
albus, a, um, white.
alcēs, is, f., elk.
Alesia, ae, f., a town in the central *part of Gaul.*
aliās, adv., at another time; alias *... alias, at one time... at another, now... now.*
allēnō, āre, āvi, ātum, alienate, *estrangle; deprive of reason,*
frenzy, distract.
allēnus, a, um, of another, of *others, another's; unfavorable;*
strange, foreign; out of place.
allō, adv., elsewhere.
allquamdū, adv., for some time.
allquandō, adv., at some time; at *last, at length.*
allquantō, adv., somewhat.
allquantus, a, um, some; neut. *as subst., some portion, a considerable part.*
aliquī, qua, quod, some, any.
aliquis, quid, someone, something.
aliquot, indeclinable, several, some.
aliter, adv., otherwise, in a dif- *ferent manner, else.*
alius, a, ud, other, another; dif- *ferent; alius... alius, one... another; alii... alii, some... others.*
allātus, a, um, from affero.
al-lēlō, ere, -lexi, -lectum, *entice, allure, attract.*
Allobroges, um, m., the Allo- *brogēs, a tribe in the northern part of the Province.*
alō, ere, alui, altum, nourish, *support, feed; maintain, keep;*
strengthen, increase, foster.
Alpēs, ium, f. plur., the Alps.
alter, era, erum, the other; the *second; another; alter... alter,*
the one... the other.
alternus, a, um, alternate.
altitūd-ō, -inis, f., height; depth; *thickness.*
altus, a, um, high, lofty; deep; *neut. as subst., altum, l, n., the deep, deep water, the sea.*
alūta, ae, f., leather.
ambactus, I, m., vassal, retainer.
Ambarrī, ōrum, m., the Ambarri, *a tribe north of the Province, on the Rhone.*
Ambiānī, ōrum, m., the Ambiani, *a tribe in the north of Gaul, on the Channel.*
Ambibariī, ōrum, m., the Ambi- *barii, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*
Ambiliāti, ōrum, m., the Am- *billati, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*
Ambiorix, Igis, m., a chief of the *Eburones.*
Ambivareti, ōrum, m., the Am- *bivareti, a tribe in the centre of Gaul.*
Ambivariti, ōrum, m., the Am- *bivariti, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*
ambō, ae, ō, in plur. only, both.
amentia, ae, f., madness, folly.
amentum, I, n., thong (for throw- *ing a javelin).*
amfractus, see anfractus.
amicitia, ae, f., friendship, alli- *ance.*
amicus, a, um, friendly, devoted.
amicus, I, m., friend; ally.

- â-mittô, ere, -misi, -missum.** lose; let slip.
- amor, ôris, m.** love, affection.
- amplê, adv.,** largely, generously; compar. **amplius,** more, further, besides.
- amplificô, âre, âvi, âtum, in-**crease, heighten.
- amplitû-dô, -dinis, f.,** size, extent; greatness.
- amplus, a, um,** large, great; magnificent, noble, high.
- an, conj.,** or.
- Anartês, lum, m.,** the Anartes, a tribe in Dacia, north of the Danube.
- Ancalites, um, m.,** the Ancalites, a tribe in Britain.
- an-ceps, -cipitis,** double, twofold.
- ancora, ae, f.,** anchor.
- Andecumborius, l, m.,** one of the Remi.
- Andês, lum, m.,** the Andes, a tribe near the mouth of the Loire.
- ânfrâctus, ūs, m.,** bend, circuit, winding.
- angulus, l, m.,** corner, angle.
- angustê, adv.,** closely; sparingly.
- angustiae, ârum, f. plur.,** narrow pass, defile; strait, trouble, difficulty.
- angustus, a, um,** narrow, small, contracted; steep; neut. as subst., critical position.
- anima, ae, f.,** soul.
- animadver-tô, ere, -ti, -sum,** notice, observe; attend to, punish.
- anim-al, -âlis, n.,** animal, living being.
- animus, l, m.,** soul, mind, heart, spirit, will; feelings; courage; character, disposition; consciousness; pride, ambition; pleasure, amusement.
- anuôtinus, a, um,** of the year before.
- annus, l, m.,** year.
- annuus, a, um,** yearly, for a year.
- ânsér, eris, m.,** goose.
- ante, prep. w. acc.,** before; adv., before, formerly, previously; above.
- anteâ, adv.,** before, formerly, previously; hitherto.
- ante-cedô, ere, -cessi, -cessum,** go before, go in advance, precede; outstrip, anticipate; surpass, excel.
- antecursor, ôris, m.,** scout, vanguard, advance guard.
- ante-ferô, -ferre, -tuli, -lâtum,** prefer, consider superior.
- auteuna, ae, f.,** sail-yard.
- ante-pônô, ere, -posui, -positum,** place before, regard of more importance than.
- antever-tô, ere, -ti, -sum,** prefer.
- antiquitus, adv.,** from early times, in olden times, of old, long ago.
- antiquus, a, um,** ancient, old, remote.
- Antistius, l, m.,** Caius Antistius Reginus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- Antônus, l, m.,** Marcus Antonus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- Ap.,** a contraction for **Applius.**
- aper-lô, Ire, ui, -tum,** open; perf. part. pass. **apertus** as adj., open, unprotected, uncovered, exposed; clear; unchecked.
- apertê, adv.,** openly.
- Apoll-ô, -inis, m.,** Apollo, a Roman god.
- apparô, âre, âvi, âtum,** prepare, make ready.
- appellô, âre, âvi, âtum,** call, name; address, call upon, accost.
- ap-pellô, ere, -puli, -pulsum,** bring in to shore, land, bring to land.
- ap-petô, ere, -petivi, -petitum,** seek, aim at; approach.
- Applius, l, m.,** a Roman praenomen.
- applicô, âre, âvi, âtum,** apply; with reflexive, lean against.
- apportô, âre, âvi, âtum,** bring.

- approbō, āre, āvi, ātum, ap-**
prove of, commend.
- appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum,**
approach, draw near.
- appulsus, a, um, from appello,**
ere.
- Aprills, e, aij., of April.**
- aptus, a, um, suited, suitable, apt.**
- apud, prep. w. acc., at, with, among,**
near, in the presence of; in one's
opinion.
- aqua, ae, f., water.**
- aquātīlō, -ōnis, f., getting water.**
- aquila, ae, f., eagle, the ensign of**
a Roman legion.
- Aquilēla, ae, f., a Roman colony**
at the head of the Adriatic.
- aquilifer, eri, m., eagle-bearer,**
standard-bearer.
- Aquitānia, ae, f., Aquitania, the**
southwestern part of Gaul, be-
tween the Garonne and the Pyre-
nees.
- Aquitānus, I, m., an Aquitanian;**
in plur., the Aquitani, a people
akin to the Spaniards rather than
to the Gauls, dwelling in the
southwestern part of Gaul.
- Ar-ar, -aris, m., the Arar, a river**
flowing south into the Rhone.
- arbiter, tri, m., arbitrator.**
- arbitrium, I, n., pleasure, will,**
judgment.
- arbitror, āri, ātus sum, think,**
consider, judge.
- arbor, oris, f., tree.**
- arecess-ō, ere, -ivi, -itum, sum-**
mon, send for; invite, call in.
- Ardeō, ēre, āraī. Arsum, burn,**
be on fire, be inflamed.
- Arducuna, ae, f., a forest in the**
north-east of Gaul.
- arduus, a, um, difficult; steep.**
- Arecomiel, ōrum, m. plur., the**
Arecomici, a tribe in the Province
near the Pyrenees.
- Aremoricus, a, um, Armorican;**
Aremorca was a collective name
given to many tribes in the north-
west of Gaul.
- argentum, I, n., silver.**
- argilla, ae, f., clay.**
- āridus, a, um, dry; neut. as**
subst., dry land.
- ari-ēs, -etis, m., ram, battering-**
ram; buttress.
- Arlovistus, I, m., a chief of the**
Germans.
- Aristus, I, m., Marcus Aristius, a**
military tribune with Caesar.
- arma, ōrum, n. plur., arms; tack-**
ling.
- armāmenta, ōrum, n. plur., tack-**
ling, rigging.
- armātūra, ae, f., armor, equip-**
ment.
- armō, āre, āvi, ātum, arm,**
equip; perf. part. in plur. as subst.,
armed men.
- Armoricus, a, um, see Are-**
moricus.
- Arpiācius, I, m., Caius Arpineius,**
a Roman knight with Caesar.
- ar-riplō, ere, -ripul, -reptum,**
seize, lay hold of, secure.
- arroganter, adv., with presump-**
tion, insolently.
- arrogantia, ae, f., presumption,**
arrogance, insolence.
- ars, artis, f., art.**
- artē, adv., closely, tightly, com-**
pactly.
- articulus, I, m., joint.**
- artificium, I, n., handicraft; ac-**
complishment, skill; artifice,
craft.
- artus, a, um, dense, thick.**
- Arvernus, I, m., an Arvernian; in**
plur., the Arverni, a tribe south of
the centre of Gaul.
- arx, arcis, f., citadel, stronghold.**
- a-scendō, ere, -scendi, -scēn-**
sum, climb, ascend, mount.
- ascēsus, ūs, m., ascent, ascend-**
ing; means of ascent.
- aspectus, ūs, m., appearance,**
sight.
- asper, era, erum, severe, fierce,**
violent.

- assiduus, a, um, constant, continued, incessant.**
assistō, ere, astitī, stand near, appear.
assuē-faciō, ere, -fēci, -factum, accustom, train.
assuē-scō, ere, -vi, -tum, become accustomed.
at, conj., but; yet, at least.
atque, conj., and, and further; in comparisons, than, as.
Atre-bas, -batis, m., an Atrebatian; in plur., the Atrebates, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul, near the straits of Dover.
Atrius, l, m., Quintus Atrius, an officer of Caesar's.
at-texō, ere, -texui, -textum, weave on, weave.
at-tingō, ere, -tigi, -tactum, touch, border on; reach.
attrib-uō, ere, -ui, -utum, assign, give.
attuli, from affero.
auctor, ōris, m., adviser, approver, advocate, instigator.
auctōri-tās, -tātis, f., influence, weight, prestige; power.
auctus, a, um, part of augeo, increased, advanced, strengthened.
audācia, ae, f., boldness.
audācter, adv., boldly, confidently, fearlessly.
audeō, ēre, ausus sum, dare, venture, attempt.
audiō, Ire, Ivi, Itum, hear, listen to, hear of; pres. part., audiēns, -entis, obedient.
auditō, -ōnis, f., hearsay, rumor.
augeō, ēre, auxi, auctum, increase, strengthen, promote.
Auleri, ōrum, m. plur., the Auleri, a race in the north-west of Gaul, divided into four tribes, the Ebuovices, Brannovices, Diablintes and Cenomani.
Aulus, l, m., a Roman praenomen.
aureus, a, um, of gold, golden.
auriga, ae, m., charioteer.
auris, is, f., ear.
- Aurunculēus, l, m., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.**
Ausci, ōrum, m. plur., the Ausci, a tribe near the Pyrenees.
ausus, a, um, from audeo.
aut, conj., or, or else; repeated, either....or.
autem, conj., but, whereas, while; moreover, now.
autumnus, l, m., autumn.
auxi, from augeo.
auxiliāris, e, auxiliary; plur. as subst., the auxiliaries.
auxilior, āri, ātus sum, give aid, help, assist.
auxilium, l, n., aid, help, assistance; resource, support; in plur., auxiliaries, reinforcements.
Avaricēnsis, e, of Avaricum.
Avaricum, l, n., a town in central Gaul, near the Loire.
avaritia, ae, f., greed, covetousness.
ā-vehō, ere, -vexi, -vectum, carry off.
āver-tō, ere, -ti, -sum, turn away, turn or put aside; alienate.
avis, is, f., bird.
avus, l, m., grandfather.
Axona, ae, f., a river in the north of Gaul, joining the Seine.

B.

- Bacēnis, is, f., a forest in Germany.**
Baculus, l, m., Publius Sertius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.
Baleāris, is, m., Balearic, from the Balearic islands.
balteus, l, m., belt, sword-belt.
Balventius, l, m., Titus Balventius, a centurion in Caesar's army.
barbarus, a, um, foreign, uncivilized, rude, barbarian; m. as subst., barbarus, l, m., a barbarian.
Basilus, l, m., Lucius Minucius Basilus, an officer with Caesar.

- Batavi**, *ōrum*, m. plur., *the Batavians*, a tribe at the mouth of the Rhine.
- Belgae**, *ārum*, m. plur., *the Belgians*, a people occupying the north-east of Gaul, and largely of German origin.
- Belgium**, *i*, n., *Belgium*, the country of the *Belgae*.
- bellēsus**, *a, um*, *wartlike*.
- bellens**, *a, um*, *of war, in war*.
- bellō**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, *make war, fight*.
- Bellovacī**, *ōrum*, m. plur., *the Bellovacī*, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.
- bellum**, *i*, n., *war*.
- bene**, *adv.*, (*melius, optimē*), *well, successfully*.
- beneficium**, *i*, n., *kindness, service, favor*.
- benevolentia**, *ae, f.*, *good will; kindness*.
- Bibracte**, *is, n.*, the chief town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.
- Bibrax**, *-actis, f.*, a town of the Remi, in the northern part of Gaul.
- Bibroci**, *ōrum*, m. plur., *the Bibroci*, a tribe of Britain.
- biduum**, *i*, n., *two days, space of two days*.
- biennium**, *i*, n., *two years*.
- Bigerriōnes**, *um*, m. plur., *the Bigerriōnes*, a tribe near the Pyrenees.
- binī**, *ae, a*, *two each, two by two, two*.
- bi-partitō**, *adv.*, *in two divisions*.
- bipedālis**, *e*, *two feet (thick)*.
- bi-partitō**, see *bi-partitō*.
- bis**, *adv.*, *twice*.
- Bituriges**, *um*, m. plur., *the Bituriges*, a tribe in the centre of Gaul, on the Loire.
- Boduōgnātus**, *i*, m., a leader of the Nervii.
- Boii**, *ōrum*, m. plur., *the Boii*, the *Boians*, a nation originally living in Germany on the Danube.
- bonitās, -tātis, f.**, *goodness, excellence, fertility*.
- bonus**, *a, um* (*melior, optimus*), *good*; n. as subst., *bonum, i*, *advantage*; in plur., *goods, property*.
- bōs, bovis, m.**, *ox*.
- bracchium**, *i*, n., *arm*.
- Brannovices**, *um*, m. plur., *the Brannovices*, a branch of the Auleri, in the north-west of Gaul.
- Brannovī**, *ōrum*, m. plur., *the Brannovī*, a tribe in Gaul.
- Bratuspantium**, *i*, n., a town of the Bellovacī, in the north of Gaul.
- brevi**, *e*, *short*; as *adv.*, *brevi*, *in a short time*.
- brevitās, -tātis, f.**, *shortness; short, stature*.
- breviter**, *adv.*, *briefly*.
- Britanni**, *ōrum*, m. plur., *the Britons*.
- Britannia**, *ae, f.*, *Britain*.
- Britannicus**, *a, um*, *of Britain, of or with the Britons*.
- brūme**, *ae, f.*, *the winter solstice*.
- Brūtus**, *i*, m., *Decimus Brutus*, a lieutenant with Caesar.

C.

- C.**, an abbreviation of *Gaius* (or *Calus*).
- Cabillōnum**, *i*, n., a town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.
- Cabūrus**, *i*, m., *Caius Valerius Caburus*, a Romanized Gaul.
- cacūmen, -inīs, n.**, *top, point*.
- cadāver, -cris, n.**, *dead body, corpse*.
- cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsum**, *fall, be slain*.
- Cadureus**, *i*, m., *one of the Cadurci*; in plur., *the Cadurci*, a tribe in Aquitania.
- caedēs, is, m.**, *slaughter, massacre, murder*.
- caedō, ere, cecidi, caesum**, *cut down, fell*.
- caelestis, e**, *heavenly*; m. plur. as subst., *the gods*.

- caerimōnia**, *ae. f.*, ceremony, sacred rite.
- Caeroesi**, *ōrum. m. plur.*, the *Caeroesi*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.
- caeruleus**, *a. um.* blue, dark blue.
- Caesar**, *aris. m.*, *Caius Julius Caesar*, a Roman general; also *Lucius Caesar*, a lieutenant with Caesar.
- Calus**, *l. m.*, see *Gaius*.
- calamitās**, *-tātis. f.*, disaster, defeat, loss.
- Calendae**, *ārum. f. plur.*, the *Calends*, the first day of each month.
- Caletēs**, *um.* and **Caletl**, *ōrum. m. plur.*, the *Caletes* or *Caleti*, a tribe at the mouth of the Seine.
- callidus**, *a. um.* shrewd, cunning.
- cālō**, *ōnis. m.*, soldier's servant, camp-follower.
- campester**, *tris. tre.* of or on the plain; level.
- campus**, *l. m.*, field, plain.
- Camulogenus**, *l. m.*, a chief of the Auleri.
- Caninius**, *l. m.*, *Caius Caninius Rebilus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
- canē**, *ere, cecini, cantum. sing.* sound.
- Canabrl**, *ōrum. m. plur.*, the *Canabrians*, a tribe in the north of Spain.
- Cantium**, *l. n.*, Kent, in the south-east of England.
- caper**, *pri. m.*, goat.
- capillus**, *l. m.*, hair.
- caplō**, *ere, cēpl, captum.* take, catch, seize; get, occupy, reach; captivate, overcome; take up, choose, adopt.
- capra**, *ae. f.*, she-goat.
- captivus**, *l. m.*, captive, prisoner.
- captus**, *ūs. m.*, capacity, nature.
- cap-ut**, *-itis. n.*, head; person; life; mouth (of a river).
- careō**, *ēre, ul.* be without, go without.
- carina**, *ae. f.*, keel.
- Carnutēs**, *um. m. plur.*, the *Carnutes*, a tribe in central Gaul on the Loire.
- carō**, *carnis. f.*, flesh, meat.
- car-pō**, *ere, -psi, -ptum.* criticize, blame.
- carrus**, *l. m.*, cart, wagon.
- cārus**, *a. um.* dear, valuable.
- Carvilius**, *l. m.*, a king ruling in Kent.
- casa**, *ae. f.*, hut.
- cāseus**, *l. m.*, cheese.
- Cassl**, *ōrum. m. plur.*, the *Cassi*, a tribe in Britain.
- Cassianus**, *a. um.* of or with *Cassius*.
- cassia**, *-idis. m.*, helmet.
- Cassius**, *l. m.*, *Lucius Cassius*, a Roman general, consul in B.C. 107.
- Cassivellaunus**, *l. m.*, a British chief.
- castellum**, *l. n.*, fort, stronghold.
- Casticus**, *l. m.*, a chief of the Sequani.
- castra**, *ōrum. n. plur.*, camp, encampment.
- cāsus**, *ūs. m.*, happening, occurrence; accident, chance; fate, disaster; emergency.
- Catamantaloedes**, *is. m.*, a chief of the Sequani.
- catēna**, *ae. f.*, chain.
- Caturiges**, *um. m. plur.*, the *Caturiges*, a tribe in the Province, near the Alps.
- Catuvoleus**, *l. m.*, a chief of the Eburones.
- causa**, *ae. f.* cause, reason; case; pretext, excuse; condition; in abl. sing., for the sake of, for the purpose of.
- cautē**, *adv.*, cautiously, with caution.
- cautēs**, *is. m.*, sharp rock, reef.
- Ca'arillus**, *l. m.*, a chief of the Aedui.
- Cavarinus**, *l. m.*, king of the Senones.
- caveō**, *ēre, cāvi, cautum.* be on one's guard; give security.

- cédō, ere, cessi, cessum, retreat,**
give way, retire; yield; with-
draw.
- celer, eris, ere, swift, speedy,**
sudden.
- celeritas, -tatis, f., swiftiness,**
speed, rapidity.
- celeriter, adv., (celerius, celer-
rimē), swiftly, quickly, rapidly.**
- cēlō, āre, āvi, ātum, conceal,**
hide.
- Celtae, ārum, m. plur., the Celts,**
or Gauls, one of the three great
nations inhabiting Gaul.
- Celtillus, i, m., a chief of the**
Arverni.
- Cēnabēnsis, is, m., a man of**
Cenabum; in plur., the people of
Cenabum.
- Cēnabum, i, n., a town of central**
Gaul, on the Loire.
- Cēnimāgni, ōrum, m. plur., the**
Cenimagni, a tribe of Britain.
- Cenomāni, ōrum, m. plur., the**
Cenomani, a tribe in the north-
west of Gaul.
- cēns-eō, ēre, -ul, -um, be of opin-**
ion, think; hold, decree; advise.
- cēnsus, ūs, m., census, enumera-**
tion.
- centum, a hundred.**
- centurīō, -ōnis, m., centurion** (an
officer in the Roman army).
- cēpl, from caplo.**
- cernō, ere, crēvi, crētum, per-**
ceive, see, make out.
- certāmen, -minis, n., contest;**
engagement.
- certē, adv., certainly, with cer-**
tainty; at least.
- certus, a, um, certain, fixed, speci-**
fied, sure, definite; trustworthy;
certiorem facere, to inform.
- cervus, i, m., stag; fork-shaped**
branch.
- cēs-pes, -pitis, m., sod, turf.**
- cēteri, ae, n, the others, the rest.**
- Centrones, nm, m. plur., the**
Centrones, 1. a tribe in the Alps;
2. a tribe of the Belgae.
- Cevenna, ae, f., the Cevennes, a**
mountain range in the south-east
of Gaul, west of the Rhone.
- Chērusci, ōrum, m. plur., the**
Cherusci, a German tribe.
- elbārius, a, nm, of food; n. plur.**
as subst., food, provisions.
- elbus, i, m. food.**
- Cicerō, ōnis, m., Quintus Tullius**
Cicero, one of Caesar's lieutenants,
and a brother of the orator.
- Cimberius, i, m., a chief of the**
Suebi.
- Cimbri, ōrum, m. plur., the**
Cimbri, a German tribe that in-
vaded Gaul about 110 B.C.
- Cingetorix, -igis, m., 1. a chief of**
the Treveri; 2. a king of Kent.
- cin-gō, ere, -xi, -etum, sur-**
round, encircle; man.
- elppus, i, m., post, stake, palisade.**
- cirelnus, i, m., pair of compasses**
- cirelter, adv. and prep. w. acc.,**
about.
- cireultus, a, um, perf. part. of**
cireumeo.
- cireultus, ūs, m., circumference,**
circuit; detour, circuitous route.
- cireum, prep. w. acc., around,**
about, near.
- cireum-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum,**
cut around, cut; perf. part. pass.
isolated, steep.
- cireumclū-dō, ere, -si, -sum,**
encircle, line, put a rim around.
- cireum-dō, -dare, -dedi,**
-datum, put around; surround,
encircle.
- cireum-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -duc-**
tum, lead around; draw around.
- cireum-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum**
or **cireultum**, go around, sur-
round; make the rounds of, visit.
- cireum-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fū-**
sum, pour around, hence, in
pass., rush in from all sides, crowd
around; surround.
- cireum-jicō, ere, -jēcī, -jec-**
tum, place around.
- cireum-mittō, ere, -misi, -mis-**
sum, send around.

- circum-mūnīō, ire, ivi, itum,** fortify all round, protect.
- circum-plector, i, -plexusum,** surround; embrace, include.
- circum-stātō, ere, -steti,** surround, hem in, crowd around; rally around.
- circum-spiclō, ere, -spexi, -spectum,** look about for, look carefully at; consider, examine carefully.
- circum-stō, -stāre, -steti,** surround.
- circumvallō, āre, āvi, ātum,** surround with walls, invest, blockade.
- circum-vehō, ere, -vexi, -vectum,** carry around; in pass., ride around.
- circum-venīō, ire, -veni, -ventum,** surround, get round, outflank; outwit, betray, deceive, defraud.
- clā, prep. w. acc.,** on this side of.
- Cisalpinus, a, um,** Cisalpine, on this (i.e. the Italian) side of the Alps.
- Clarhēnānus, a, um,** on this (i.e. the western) side of the Rhine.
- Cita, ae, m.,** Caius Fufius Cita, a Roman knight.
- cliterior, ius, (comparative)** hither, nearer.
- cltō, adv., (cltius, cltissimē),** quickly.
- cltō, āre, āvi, ātum,** hasten; perf. part., cltātus, as adj., swift.
- cltrā, prep. w. acc.,** on this side of.
- cltrō, adv.,** hither.
- civis, is, m.,** citizen.
- civiltās, -tātis, f.,** state; citizenship.
- clam, adv.,** secretly.
- clāmltō, āre, āvi, ātum,** cry out, keep shouting.
- clāmor, -ōris, m.,** shout, shouting, cry.
- clandestinus, a, um,** secret.
- clārus, a, um,** loud, distinct.
- classis, is, f.,** fleet.
- Claudius, i, m.,** Appius Claudius, consul in 51 B.C.
- claudō, ere, clausi, clausum,** close; w. agmen, bring up the rear.
- clāvus, i, m.,** nail.
- clēmētia, ae, f.,** mercifulness, moderation, forbearance.
- cllēns, -entis, m.,** dependant, retainer, vassal.
- cllentēla, ae, f.,** dependency, vassalage; protection; in plur., dependants.
- clivus, i, m.,** slope, ascent.
- Clōdīus, i, m.,** Publius Clodius, a bitter partisan of Caesar.
- Cn.,** an abbreviation for Gnaeus.
- concernō, āre, āvi, ātum,** heap up, crowd together.
- coāctus, a, um,** from cogo.
- coāctus, ūs, m.,** compulsion.
- coagmentō, āre, āvi, ātum,** fasten together.
- Cocosātes, um, m. plur.,** the Cocosates, a tribe of Aquitania.
- coēgi, from cogo.**
- co-emō, ere, -ēmi, -emptum,** buy up.
- co-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum,** unite, join.
- coepi, iase, coeptus sum,** began, have begun.
- coerceō, ēre, ui, itum,** restrain, check.
- cōglitō, āre, āvi, ātum,** consider, think, reflect, have thoughts; take thought, plan.
- cōgnātīō, -ōnis, f.,** kinship; kinsmen, clan, family connections.
- cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvi, -gnitum,** perceive, learn, find out, ascertain, become acquainted with; inquire into; in perf. tenses, know, be aware.
- cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctum,** collect, gather, get together; compel, force, be urgent.
- co-hors, -hortis, f.,** a cohort, one tenth of a legion.

- cohortatîlô, -ônîs, f.,** *encouraging, address.*
cohortor, ârl, ât is sum, *encourage, address, urge.*
coire, from coco.
collâtus, a, um, from confero.
collaudô, âre, âvl, âtum, *praise, extol, highly commend.*
colligô, âre, âvl, âtum, *fasten, pin together.*
col-llgô, ere, -lêgl, -lêctum, *gather, collect; acquire; with se, collect one's self, recover, rally.*
collis, is, m., *hill.*
collocô, âre, âvl, âtum, *place, station; arrange, stow; settle; give in marriage.*
colloquium, l, n., *conversation, interview, conference.*
col-loquor, l, -locûtus sum, *converse, confer, have an interview.*
colô, ere, colui, cultum, *till, cultivate; worship.*
colônla, ae, f., *colony, settlement.*
color, ôrla, m., *color.*
com-hûrô, ere, -bussal, -bûs-tum, *burn up.*
com-es, -itls, m., *companion, attendant.*
comltia, -ôrum, n. plur., *comitia, election.*
comitor, ârl, âtus sum, *accompany.*
commeâtus, ñs, m., *supplies, provisions; passage, trip.*
commemorô, âre, âvl, âtum, *mention, speak of, relate.*
commendô, âre, âvl, âtum, *commend.*
commecô, âre, âvl, âtum, *visit, resort, go to and fro.*
comminus, adv., *hand to hand, in close combat.*
commissura, ae, f., *juncture, joining.*
com-mittô, ere, -misi, -missum, *join; w. proellum, begin; ex trust, put trust in; allow, commit, do; leave it possible, allow to come about.*
Commilus, l, m., *a king of the Atrebatas.*
commodê, adv., *easily, to advantage, effectively, conveniently.*
commodus, a, um, *fitting, suitable, advantageous, favorable; neut. as subst., commodum, l, advantage, interest, convenience, blessing.*
commone-faciô, ere, -fêcl, -factum, *remind.*
commoror, ârl, âtus sum, *stay, delay, linger.*
com-moveô, êre, -môvl, -môtum, *move; alarm, disturb; influence, impress.*
communleô, âre, âvl, âtum, *communicate, share, consult, impart; join, add.*
communlô, îre, îvl, itum, *strongly fortify, secure; build.*
communla, e, *common, general, joint, concerted.*
commutâtîlô, -ônîs, f., *change; turn.*
commûtô, âre, âvl, âtum, *change, exchange.*
comparô, âre, âvl, âtum, *compare; prepare, provide, procure, raise, get.*
com-pellâ, ere, -pull, -pulsuni, *drive, drive in, gather.*
compendium, l, n., *gain, profit.*
com-perlô, îre, -perl, -pertum, *learn, find out, discover; perf. part. as adj., certain.*
com-plector, l, -plexus sum, *embrace; include, enclose.*
compl-cô, êre, -êvl, -êtum, *fill, fill up; man.*
complûrês, a, *several, many, a great many.*
comportô, âre, âvl, âtum, *bring in, collect.*
compre-hendô, ere, -hendl, -hensum, *seize, grasp, catch, capture; take.*
comprobô, âre, âvl, âtum, *ap-prove, justify, confirm.*
compulsus, a, um, from com-pello.

- cōnātum**, *I*, *n.*, attempt, under-taking.
- cōnātus**, *ūs*, *m.*, attempt.
- con-cēdō**, *ere*, -*cessi*, -*cessum*, grant, allow, permit; yield, give in.
- concertō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, contend, fight.
- ce** *sensus*, *ūs*, *m.*, permission.
- con-cidō**, *ere*, -*cidi*, fall, fall down.
- con-cidō**, *ere*, -*cidi*, -*cisum*, cut down, slay; perf. part. as adj., cut up, broken.
- concellō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, win over; gain, obtain.
- concellum**, *I*, *n.*, meeting, assembly, council.
- conclisus**, *a*, *um*, from *conclido*.
- conclō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, arouse, stir up, call out.
- conclāmō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, cry out, call out, shout.
- con-clūdō**, *ēre*, -*clūsi*, -*clūsuum*, shut up, enclose.
- Conconnectodumnus**, *I*, *m.*, a leader of the Carnutes.
- concrep-ō**, *āre*, -*ui*, -*itum*, clash, make a clashing noise.
- con-currō**, *ere*, -*curri* (-*cucurri*), -*cursum*, run together, rally, rush up, hasten, flock.
- concurso**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, run to and fro.
- concursum**, *ūs*, *m.*, running together, rally, crowd; rush, onset, charge; collision.
- condeunō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, declare guilty.
- condicō**, -*ōnis*, *f.*, terms, agreement, condition; state.
- condōnō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, give up, forgive for the sake of.
- Condrasi**, *ōrum*, *m.* plur., the *Condrasi*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.
- con-dūcō**, *ere*, -*dūxi*, -*ductum*, gather, assemble: hire.
- cōn-fercō**, *ire*, -*feri*, -*fertum*, pack closely; perf. part. *confer-tus*, *a*, *um*, crowded, in close array, in close order.
- cōnferō**, *cōnferre*, *contuli*, *col-lātum*, gather, collect, bring in, convey; with *se*, betake one's self; compa; put off, postpone; lay the blame on, ascribe.
- confertus**, *a*, *um*, from *conferelo*.
- confestim**, *adv.*, immediately, at once.
- cōn-ficō**, *ere*, -*feci*, -*fectum*, finish, carry out, complete, accomplish; make out, work up; exhaust, wear out.
- cōn-fidō**, *ere*, -*fisi* *sum*, trust, rely on, have confidence.
- cōn-flgō**, *ere*, -*fixi*, -*fixum*, fasten.
- cōnflis**, *e*, adjacent, neighboring.
- cōnfluum**, *I*, *m.*, neighborhood, borders.
- cōn-flō**, -*fieri*, irregular pass. of *conficō*.
- cōnfirmatō**, -*ōnis*, *f.*, assurance, assertion.
- cōnfirmō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, strengthen; establish, fix; declare, give pledge; encourage, reassure, confirm, rouse.
- cōnfius**, *a*, *um*, from *confido*.
- cōn-fiteor**, *ēri*, -*fessus* *sum*, confess, acknowledge.
- confixus**, *a*, *um*, from *configo*.
- conflagrō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, be on fire, be in flames.
- cōnflētō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, harass.
- cōnflgō**, *ere*, -*fixi*, -*fletum*, contend, engage, fight.
- cōnfluens**, *entis*, *m.*, confluence, juncture.
- cōn-fluō**, *ere*, -*fluxi*, gather, flock.
- cōn-fuglō**, *ere*, -*fūgi*, flee for refuge, flee.
- cōn-fundō**, *ere*, -*fūdi*, -*fūsum*, mix, gather together.
- con-gredior**, *I*, -*gressus* *sum*, meet; engage, contend, fight.

- congressus** ūs, m., engagement, conflict.
- conjectūra**, ae, f., conjecture, guess.
- con-jicō**, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, hurl, cast, throw; drive; put, place; w. **sc**, rush.
- con-junctini**, adv., jointly, together.
- con-jungō**, ere, -jānxī, -jānctum, join, connect, unite.
- con-jānx**, -jānxī, m. and f., husband; wife.
- con-jurātiō**, -ōnis, f., conspiracy, combination, league.
- con-jūrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, take a (joint) oath, conspire, combine.
- cōnor**, āri, ātus sum, try, attempt, undertake, make an attempt.
- conquiescō**, ere, -ēvī, -ētum, rest.
- con-quirō**, ere, -quīsvī, -quīsitum, search for, hunt up, collect.
- cōnsanguineus**, l, m., kinsman.
- cōn-scendō**, ere, -scēndī, -scēnsūm, ascend, mount; embark on, go on board.
- cōnscientia**, ae, f., consciousness.
- cōn-sciō**, ere, -sciī, -scltum, resolve on; w. **sibi mortem**, commit suicide.
- cōnscius**, a, um, conscious.
- cōn-scribō**, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, write; enlist, enroll, levy.
- cōnsecrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, consecrate.
- cōnsector**, āri, ātus sum, follow up, pursue.
- cōnsecutus**, a, um, from **consequor**.
- cōnsēdī**, from **consido**.
- cōnsēnsiō**, -ōnis, f., unanimity.
- cōnsēnsus**, ūs, m., agreement, consent.
- cōn-sentiō**, ire, -sēnsī, -sēnsūm, agree, combine, conspire.
- cōn-sequor**, l, -secutus sum, follow, overtake; attain, obtain, secure; succeed.
- cōnservō**, āre, āvī, ātum, preserve, save, spare, protect; observe, maintain.
- Cōnsilius**, l, m., Publius Consilius, one of Caesar's soldiers.
- cōn-sidō**, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, encamp, take up a position; settle; hold a session.
- cōnsiliūm**, l, n., deliberation, consultation; plan, design, resolve, purpose; prudence, discretion; counsel, advice; council.
- cōn-similis**, e, very similar, like.
- cōn-sistō**, ere, -stitī, take up position, stand, get a footing; halt, stop, make a stand; ground; settle; consist of, depend on.
- cōnsobrinus**, l, m., cousin.
- cōnsōlor**, āri, ātus sum, console.
- cōnspectus**, ūs, m., sight, view, presence.
- cōn-spicō**, ere, -spexī, spectum, catch sight of, observe, see.
- cōn-spleor**, āri, ātus sum, catch sight of, observe, see.
- cōnspirō**, āre, āvī, ātum, combine, conspire.
- cōnstanter**, adv., uniformly; firmly, steadily.
- cōnstantia**, ae, f., firmness, steadfastness, constancy.
- cōnsternō**, āre, āvī, ātum, dismay, impress.
- cōn-sternō**, ere, -strāvī, -stratum, cover, floor.
- cōnstipō**, āre, āvī, ātum, crowd, press.
- cōnstītī**, from **constito**.
- cōnstīt-ūc**, ere, -uī, -ūtum, establish, arrange, appoint, fix; decide, resolve, determine; place, station, draw up.
- cōn-stō**, āre, -stitī, -stātum, cost; depend on; remain, be unchanged; impersonal use, it is certain, agreed, established, evident.

- cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvi, -suētum,** *become accustomed; in perfect tenses, be accustomed.*
- cōnsuētū-dō, -dinis, f.,** *custom, habit.*
- cōn-sul, -sulla, m.,** *consul, the chief magistrate of Rome, of whom there were two, elected for a year.*
- cōnsulātus, ūs, m.,** *consulship.*
- cōnsul-ō, ere, -ul, -tum,** *consult, discuss, deliberate; provide for, take thought for, have regard for.*
- cōnsultō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *deliberate, take counsel.*
- cōnsultō, adv.,** *designedly, on purpose.*
- cōnsultum, l, n.,** *decree.*
- cōn-sūmō, ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptum,** *spend; consume, exhaust.*
- cōn-surgō, ere, -surrexi, -surrectum,** *rise up.*
- contabulō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *build up (by stories).*
- contagīō, -ōnis, f.,** *contact, contagion.*
- contaminō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *contaminate, stain.*
- con-tegō, ere, -tēxi, -tēctum,** *cover up.*
- con-temnō, ere, -tempsi, temptum,** *despise.*
- contemptiō, -ōnis, f.,** *contempt.*
- contemptus, ūs, m.,** *scorn; object of contempt.*
- conten-dō, ere, -di, -tum,** *hasten, make one's way, push on; strive, exert one's self; struggle, fight, contend; maintain, insist.*
- contentiō, -ōnis, f.,** *struggle, contest.*
- contentus, a, um,** *content, satisfied.*
- contestor, āri, ātus sum,** *call upon, invoke.*
- contex-ō, ere, -ui, -tum,** *weave, join, construct.*
- contigi, from contingo.**
- continēns, entis, f.,** *the continent, mainland.*
- continenter, adv.,** *continually, uninterruptedly, without stopping.*
- continentia, ae, f.,** *self-control, self-restraint.*
- con-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum,** *hold together; contain, hem in, restrain, keep, hold; bound, surround, occupy; present part. as adj., continens, -entis, continual, incessant, uninterrupted, unbroken, continuous.*
- con-tingō, ere, -tigi, -tāctum,** *touch, reach, extend to; happen, fall to the lot of.*
- continuātiō, -ōnis, f.,** *continuance, succession.*
- continuō, adv.,** *at once, immediately.*
- continuus, a, um,** *successive, unbroken, continuous.*
- cōntiō, -ōnis, f.,** *assembly, meeting.*
- cōntiōnor, āri, ātus sum,** *address.*
- contrā, l, adv.,** *against; otherwise; contra atque, contrary to what; 2. prep. w. acc., opposite, over against; against.*
- con-trahō, ere, -trāxi, -trāctum,** *make smaller, reduce; collect, gather together.*
- contrārius, a, um,** *opposite; ex contrario, on the contrary.*
- contrōversia, ae, f.,** *quarrel, dispute, feud.*
- contumēlia, ae, f.,** *disgrace, insult, affront; buffeting, violence.*
- convul-escō, ere, -ui,** *recover, regain health.*
- convallis, is, f.,** *(enclosed) valley.*
- con-vehō, ere, -vexi, -vectum,** *gather, bring in.*
- con-veniō, ire, -veni, -ventum,** *come together, meet, assemble, gather; come, arrive; be agreed upon; be fitting.*
- conventus, ūs, m.,** *meeting, assembly; assizes.*
- conver-tō, ere, -ti, -sum,** *turn, turn about; change, alter; w. signa, wheel about.*

- Convictolitāvis**, *is*, *m.*, an Aeduan of high rank.
- con-vincō**, *ere*, -*vici*, -*victum*, *prove, bring home.*
- convocō**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *call together, call, summon.*
- co-orior**, *iri*, -*ortus sum*, *arise, spring up, break out.*
- cōpla**, *ae*, *f.*, *supply, abundance, quantity; resources, wealth; in plur., forces, troops.*
- cōplōsus**, *a*, *um*, *well-supplied, rich.*
- cōpula**, *ae*, *f.*, *grappling hook.*
- cor**, *corāis*, *n.*, *heart; cordi esse, be dear, be cherished.*
- cōram**, *adv.*, *in person, face to face.*
- corium**, *l*, *n.*, *skin, hide.*
- cornū**, *ūs*, *n.*, *horn; wing (of an army).*
- corōna**, *ae*, *f.*, *garland; circle; sub corona, at auction.*
- corp-us**, -*oris*, *n.*, *body, person; dead body, corpse; system.*
- cor-rumpō**, *ere*, -*rūpi*, -*ruptum*, *destroy.*
- cort-ex**, -*icis*, *m.*, *bark.*
- Cōrus**, *l*, *m.*, *the north-west wind.*
- cotidīānus**, *a*, *um*, *daily; regular, usual.*
- cotidīē**, *adv.*, *daily, every day.*
- Cotta**, *ae*, *m.*, *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- Cotus**, *l*, *m.*, *an Aeduan of high rank.*
- crassitū-dō**, -*dinis*, *f.*, *thickness.*
- Crassus**, *l*, *m.*, 1. *Marcus Licinius Crassus, a Roman general, consul 55 B.C.; 2. his son, Marcus Crassus, quaestor in Caesar's army; 3. a younger son, Publius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- crātēs**, *is*, *f.*, *hurdle, wickerwork.*
- crēber**, *bra*, *brum*, *frequent, numerous, crowded.*
- crēbrō**, *adv.*, *frequently, at short intervals.*
- crē-dō**, *ere*, -*didi*, -*ditum*, *believe; trust.*
- cremō**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *burn.*
- creō**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *appoint, elect.*
- Crēs**, **Crētis**, *m.*, *a Cretan.*
- crēscō**, *ere*, *crēvi*, *crētum*, *grow, become powerful, rise.*
- Crītōgnātus**, *l*, *m.*, *a chief of the Arverni.*
- cruciātus**, *ūs*, *m.*, *torture, cruelty.*
- crūdēlītās**, -*tātis*, *f.*, *cruelty.*
- crudēlīter**, *adv.*, *cruelly.*
- crūs**, **crūris**, *n.*, *leg.*
- cubile**, *is*, *n.*, *bed, resting place.*
- culmen**, -*minis*, *n.*, *height, summit.*
- culpa**, *ae*, *f.*, *blame, fault.*
- cultus**, *ūs*, *m.*, *refinement, civilization, style of life; care, habit.*
- cum**, *prep. w. abl.*, *with, together with.*
- cum**, *conj.*, *when, whenever, while; as, since; although; cum primum, as soon as; cum...tum, both...and, not only...but also.*
- cunctātiō**, -*ōnis*, *f.*, *hesitation, delay.*
- cunctor**, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, *hesitate, delay.*
- cūctus**, *a*, *um*, *all, all together.*
- cuncātum**, *adv.*, *in the form of a wedge, in a compact mass.*
- cuneus**, *l*, *m.*, *wedge.*
- cuniculus**, *l*, *m.*, *burrow; mine.*
- eupldē**, *adv.*, *eagerly.*
- eupldītās**, -*tātis*, *f.*, *eagerness, eager desire.*
- eupldus**, *a*, *um*, *eager, desirous, fond, ambitious.*
- eup-lō**, *ere*, -*ivi*, -*itum*, *be eager; be well disposed.*
- eūr**, *adv.*, *why.*
- cūrā**, *ae*, *f.*, *care; curae esse, be one's care, be carefully attended to.*
- Curiosolites**, *um*, *m.*, *the Curiosolites, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*

cūrō, āre, āvi, ātum, attend to, take care; with gerundive, cause to be (done), have (done).

currō, ere, cucurri, cursum, run.

currus, ūs, m., chariot.

cursus, ūs, m., running, speed, pace; course; voyage, passage.

custōdia, ae, f., guard, garrison.

custōdiō, irc, ivi, itum, guard.

eus-tōs, -tōdis, m., guard; watch, spy.

D.

D., an abbreviation for **Declinus**.

Daci, ōrum, m. plur., the Dacians, a tribe of central Europe, living north of the Danube.

damnō, āre, āvi, ātum, condemn, find guilty; perf. part. as subst., **damnātus, i, m.**, criminal, out-law.

damnum, i, n., loss.

Danuvius, i, m., the Danube.

dē, prep. w. abl., from, down from; in accordance with, for; of, out of; about, concerning, of.

dēbeō, ēre, ui, itum, owe; ought, should, cannot help; in pass., be due.

dē-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, withdraw, depart; keep aloof, shun; die.

decem, ten.

dēceptus, a, um, from **decipio**.

dē-cernō, ere, -crēvi, -crētum, decide, determine; decree, order.

dē-certō, āre, āvi, ātum, fight, fight a decisive battle, decide the issue.

dē-cessi, from **decedo**.

dē-cessus, ūs, m., departure; ebb.

Decetia, ae, f., a town of the Aedui, on the Loire.

dē-cidō, ere, -cidi, fall.

declinus, a, um, tenth.

Declinus, i, m., a Roman praenomen.

dē-clipō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, deceive.

dē-clārō, āre, āvi, ātum, declare, proclaim.

dē-clivis, e, sloping; neut. as subst., slope.

dē-clivitās, -tātis, f., downward slope.

dē-crētum, i, n., decree, decision.

dē-crētus, a, um, from **decerno**.

dē-crēvi, from **decerno**.

decumānus, a, um, w. porta, the rear gate.

decuriō, -ōnis, m., decurion, a cavalry officer.

dē-currō, ere, -curri(-cucurri), -cursum, run down.

dē-dec-us, -oris, n., disgrace.

dedi, from **do**.

dēdidī, from **dedo**.

dē-diti-clus, a, um, surrendered; m. as subst., one who has surrendered, prisoner, subject.

dē-ditiō, -ōnis, f., surrender, submission, capitulation.

dē-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, surrender, give up; devote.

dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead away, take away, withdraw, remove; bring; influence; launch; lead (home), marry.

dē-fatigātiō, -ōnis, f., exhaustion.

dē-fatigō, āre, āvi, ātum, weary, exhaust, wear out.

dē-fectiō, -ōnis, f., revolt.

dē-fe-dō, ere, -fendi, -fensum, repel; defend, protect.

dē-fēnsiō, -ōnis, f., defence, protection.

dē-fēnsor, -ōris, m., defender.

dē-forō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, carry, bring, convey; in pass., drift, fall, be turned aside; report; give, confer.

dē-fessus, a, um, worn out, weary, exhausted.

dē-ficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, fail, give out, be wanting; revolt, forsake.

- dē-sigō, ere, -sīxi, -sīxum, *fix, set, fasten, plant firmly.*
dē-siniō, ire, ivi, itum, *fix, assign.*
dē-fluō, ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, *flow off, divide.*
dēfore, fut. infin. of desum.
dēfōrmis, e, *ill-shaped, unsightly, unattractive.*
dē-fugiō, ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, *avoid, shun.*
deinceps, adv., *in turn, after that.*
deinde, adv., *then, thereupon, next.*
dējectus, ūs, m., *slope, abrupt side.*
dē-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, *throw down, cast down; carry down, overthrow; drive off, dislodge; disappoint.*
dēlātus, a, um, *from deferō.*
dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātum, *delight; in pass., take pleasure in.*
dēlectus, ūs, m., *levy.*
dēlectus, a, um, and dēlēgi *from deligo, ere.*
dēi-cō, ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *destroy, overthrow; wipe out.*
dēlīberō, āre, āvi, ātum, *discuss, consider, deliberate.*
dēlībrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *strip of bark, peel.*
dēlictum, i, n., *offence, fault.*
dēllgō, āre, āvi, ātum, *fasten, tie, moor.*
dē-llgō, ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *pick out, choose, select.*
dēlīt-ēscō, ere, -ul, *hide, lurk, lie concealed.*
dēmentia, ac, f., *madness, folly.*
dē-metō, ere, -messul, -messum, *cut, reap.*
dēmigrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *depart, move away, abandon.*
dēmīn-uō, ere, -ul, -ūtum, *diminish, lessen, take away, detract, abate.*
dē-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *let down, lower; w. se. descend, be disheartened; perf. part., dē-missus, bowed, drooping, low-lying.*
dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, *take down.*
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *point out, explain, state, mention.*
dēmōror, āri, ātus sum, *delay, retard.*
dēmum, adv., *at last, at length.*
dēnegō, āre, āvi, ātum, *refuse, deny.*
dēni, ae, a, *ten each, in groups of ten.*
dēnique, adv., *at length, finally; at least.*
dēnsus, a, um, *dense, close, thick.*
dēnūtiō, āre, āvi, ātum, *announce, give notice, warn, threaten.*
dē-pellō, ere, -pulsum, *drive off, or away; dislodge.*
dēper-dō, ere, -ditum, *lose, forfeit.*
dēper-cō, -ire, -il, *perish, be lost.*
dē-pōnō, ere, -posul, -positum, *lay aside, give up; deposit, store; place.*
dēpōlōr, āri, ātus sum, *lay waste, ravage.*
dēportō, āre, āvi, ātum, *carry off, remove.*
dē-poscō, ere, -poposci, *demand, call for.*
dēpositus, a, um, *from depono.*
dēprecātor, -tōris, m., *intercessor, advocate.*
dēprecōr, āri, ātus sum, *beg off, avert by prayer, petition against, request (not); pray for mercy.*
dēpre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsūm, *catch, seize, surprise, come upon.*
dēpūgnō, āre, āvi, ātum, *fight desperately.*
dēpulsus, a, um, *from depello.*
dērlvō, āre, āvi, ātum, *divert, draw.*
dērogō, āre, āvi, ātum, *with-draw, take away.*
dē-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *descend, go down; resort, have recourse, yield.*
dēsec-ō, āre, -ul, -tum, *cut off.*

- dēser-ō, ere, -ul, -tum,** *desert, abandon, forsake*; perf. part. as adj., *solitary, lonely*.
- dēsertor, -tōris, m.,** *deserter*.
- dēsiderō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *desire, wish for*; lose, miss.
- dēsīdīa, ae, f.,** *idleness, indolence*.
- dēsīgnō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *indicate, point at, aim at*.
- dē-sillō, Ire, -sillui, -sultum,** *leap down*.
- dē-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum,** *stop, cease*; abandon, give up, desist from.
- dēspectus, a, um,** from **despicō**.
- dēspectus, ūs, m.,** *view down, prospect (from a height)*; height.
- dēspērātō, -ōnis, f.,** *despair*.
- dēspērō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *give up hope, despair*; perf. part. as adj., *desperate*.
- dē-spīcō, ere, -spexi, -spectum,** *look down*; look down upon, despise.
- dēspoliō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *strip, deprive*.
- dēstinō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *fasten, make fast*; appoint, set.
- dēstit-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum,** *abandon, desert*.
- dē-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum,** *draw*.
- dēsūm, deesse, dēfui,** *be lacking, be missing, be wanting, fail*; neglect.
- dēsūper, adv.,** from above.
- dēterior, ius,** (comparative), *inferior, less valuable*.
- dēterreō, ēre, ui, itum,** *deter, discourage, prevent*.
- dētestor, āri, ātus sum,** *curse, denounce*.
- dē-tīnēō, ēre, -tīnuī, -tentum,** *detain, hinder*; delay.
- dētrāctō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *avoid, escape*.
- dē-trahō, ere, -trāxi, -trāctum,** *take from, withdraw, remove*; snatch from.
- dētrectō, āre,** see **detractō**.
- dētrīmentōsus, a, um,** *detrimental, disadvantageous, hurtful*.
- dētrīmentum, i, n.,** *loss, injury, damage*; defeat.
- dē-trūdō, ere, -trūsī, -trūsūm,** *strip off, remove*.
- dētullī,** from **defero**.
- dēturbō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *drive off, dislodge*.
- de-ūrō, ere, -ussī, -ūstum,** *burn down*.
- deus, i, m.,** *god*.
- dē-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum,** *bring, convey*.
- dē-veniō, Ire, -vēnī, -ventum,** *come (down)*.
- dēvexus, a, um,** *sloping, descending*; neut. as subst., *descent, incline*.
- dē-vīncō, ere, -vīcī, -vīctum,** *subdue, conquer (completely)*.
- dēvocō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *call*; bring.
- dē-voveō, ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum,** *vow, consecrate, devote*; perf. part. as subst., *devoted follower*.
- dexter, tra, trum,** *right, on the right*; fem. **dextra,** as subst., (sc. manus), *the right hand*.
- dl, or dlī,** from **deus**.
- Diablintes, um, m.,** the **Diablintes**, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.
- dīcō, -ōnis, f.,** *sway, rule, power*.
- dīcō, āre, āvi, ātum,** *consecrate, adjudge*; give over.
- dīcō, ere, dīxi, dictum,** *say, state, mention*; appoint, name; plead: adjudge, administer.
- dīctō, -ōnis, f.,** *pleading*.
- dictum, i, n.,** *word, order, command*.
- dī-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum,** *divide, separate*.
- dīēs, ēī, m. (rarely f.),** *day*; time; in **dīes,** *daily*.
- dīfferō, differre, distuli, dlā-tum,** *differ, be different*; spread, scatter; put off, postpone.
- dīffīcīlis, e,** *difficult*.

- difficultas, -tātis, f., difficulty.**
dis-fidō, ere, -fusus sum, distrust, lack confidence, despair.
dis-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, spread out; extend.
digitus, I, m., finger.
dignitas, -tātis, f., worth, esteem; reputation, rank, standing; dignity, honor.
dignus, a, um, worthy, worth.
dijudicō, āre, āvi, ātum, decide.
dilēctus, a, um, from diligō.
diligenter, adv., carefully, exactly, punctually, scrupulously.
diligentia, ae, f., carefulness, care, pains, zeal, attention.
diligō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, love.
dimētor, Iri, -mēnsus sum, measure out, proportion.
dimicātio, -ōnis, f., struggle, contest.
dimicō, āre, āvi, ātum, fight, struggle, contend, engage.
dimidius, a, um, half; neut. as subst., half.
dimittō, ere, -misi, -missum, send out, despatch; dismiss, send away; lose, let slip; abandon, give up.
directē, adv., straight, exactly.
dirigō, ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, form (in straight line), arrange; perf. part. as adj., directus, a, um, straight.
dirimō, ere, -ēmi, -ēptum, break up.
diripiō, ere, -ripiui, -reptum, plunder, pillage, seize.
Dis, Ditis, m., Pluto, the god of the lower world.
dis-cedō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, go away, withdraw, depart; with ab, leave; forsake, abandon; swerve from.
disceptātor, -āris, m., judge, umpire.
dis-cernō, ere, -crēvi, -crētum, distinguish.
discessus, ūs, m., departure, withdrawal.
disciplina, ae, f., training, instruction, learning, system.
dis-clūdō, ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, keep apart, separate.
discō, ere, didici, learn, be instructed.
diserimen, -minis, n., crisis, danger, critical condition.
dis-entlō, ere, -cussi, -cussum, disperse, remove.
dis-jlelō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, break up, scatter; tear off.
dis-pār, -paris, unequal; inferior.
disparō, āre, āvi, ātum, separate.
dis-pergō, ere, -spersi, -persum, scatter, disperse.
dis-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, place at intervals, dispose, post, arrange, set, array.
disputātiō, -ōnis, f., discussion, debate.
disputō, āre, āvi, ātum, discuss, engage in discussion.
dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f., dissension, disagreement, dispute, strife.
dis-sentiō, Irc, -sēnsi, -sēsum, dissent, differ, disagree.
dis-serō, ere, -sevi, -situm, plant here and there, scatter about.
dissimulō, āre, āvi, ātum, conceal.
dissipō, āre, āvi, ātum, scatter, disperse, rout.
dis-suādēō, ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, dissuade, oppose.
dis-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, keep apart, separate; keep at a distance.
di-stō, -stāre, be apart, stand apart, be distant.
dis-trahō, ere, -trāxi, -trāctum, tear apart, wrench asunder.
distrib-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, assign, allot, distribute, divide.
distuli, from differo.
ditissimus, superlative of dives.

- diū**, adv., (diūtius, diūtissimē), long, for a long time; **quam diu**, as long as.
- diurnus**, a, um, by day, during the day.
- diūtius**, a, um, long, long-continued.
- diūturnitas**, -tātis, f., length, long duration.
- diūturnus**, a, um, long, prolonged.
- diver-tō**, ere, -ti, -sum, separate; perf. part. as adj., **diversus**, a, um, distant, at a distance, remote; facing in a different direction; different; separate, apart.
- div-es**, -itis, rich.
- Divleō**, -ōnis, m., a leader of the Helvetii.
- di-vldō**, ere, -visi, -visum, divide, separate, distribute.
- divinus**, a, um, divine, sacred.
- Divitiācus**, I, m., 1. a leader of the Aedui; 2. a king of the Suesiones.
- dō**, dare, dedi, datum, give, grant, allow, afford; cause; **inter se dare**, exchange; w. **in fugam**, put; **operam dare**, take pains, see to it.
- doc-eō**, ēre, -ui, -tum, teach, inform, show, state.
- documentum**, I, n., evidence, lesson, example, warning.
- doleō**, ēre, ui, grieve, be pained, suffer.
- dolor**, -ōris, m., grief, pain, distress; annoyance, vexation, chagrin, resentment.
- dolus**, I, m., deceit, guile, artifice.
- domesticus**, a, um, at home; w. **bellum**, intestine, civil.
- domicellum**, I, n., home, house, dwelling-place.
- dominor**, āri, ātus sum, rule, be master.
- dominus**, I, m., master, lord.
- Domitius**, I, m., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul 54 B.C.
- domus**, ūs, f., home, house; **domi**, locative, at home.
- Donnotaurus**, I, m., Caius Valerius Donnotaurus, a Romanized Gaul.
- dōnō**, āre, āvi, ātum, grant, give; present.
- dōnum**, I, n., gift, present.
- dorsum**, I, n. or **dorsus**, I, m., ridge.
- dōs**, dōtis, f., dowry.
- druides**, um, m., the druids, the priests of the Gauls.
- Dūbis**, is, m., a river of eastern Gaul, flowing into the Arar.
- dubitātō**, -ōnis, f., doubt, hesitation.
- dubitō**, āre, āvi, ātum, hesitate; doubt, have doubts.
- dubius**, a, um, doubtful, uncertain.
- ducenti**, ae, a, two hundred.
- dūcō**, ere, dūxi, ductum, lead, draw, bring; make, construct, run; marry; put off, prolong; reckon, regard, consider.
- ductus**, ūs, m., leadership.
- dum**, conj., while; until.
- Dumnorix**, Iglis, m., a leader of the Aedui.
- duo**, ae, o, two.
- duodecim**, twelve.
- duodecimus**, a, um, twelfth.
- duodēni**, ae, a, twelve each, twelve.
- duodēviginti**, indecl., eighteen.
- dupl-ex**, -leis, twofold, double.
- duplēō**, āre, āvi, ātum, double.
- dūrtia**, ae, f., hardship; hardness, endurance.
- dūrō**, āre, āvi, ātum, harden.
- Durocortorum**, I, n., a town of the Remi, in northern Gaul.
- dūrus**, a, um, hard, difficult, severe; inclement.
- Dūrus**, I, m., Quintus Laberius Dūrus, a military tribune with Caesar.
- dux**, ducis, m., leader, guide

E.

- ê, see ex.
- Eburônes, um, m. plur., the Eburones, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.**
- Eburovices, um, m. plur., the Eburovices, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.**
- ê-diseô, ere, -didici, learn by heart.**
- êditus, a, um, from edo.**
- ê-dô, ere, -didi, -ditum, put forth, exhibit, exercise; perf. part. as adj., êditus, a, um, elevated, raised, rising, high.**
- êdoc-eô, êre, -ul, -tum, explain (fully), inform, show.**
- ê-dueô, ere, -dûxi, -dnetum, lead out, lead forth; draw.**
- ef-farciô, ire, -farsi, -fertum, fill up, stop up.**
- effeminô, âre, âvi, âtum, soften, weaken, enervate, make effeminate.**
- effero, efferre, extuli, elatum, take away, take; disclose, divulge, publish; lift up; elate.**
- ef-felô, ere, -feci, -fectum, make, render, cause, produce; bring about, accomplish, bring to pass; complete, finish, cover; get together, furnish.**
- ef-fodiô, ere, -fodi, -fossam, dig out, tear out.**
- ef-fuglô, ere, -fugi, -fugitum, escape.**
- egeô, êre, ul, be in need, lack; pres. part. as adj., egens, -entis, needy.**
- egestas, -tatis, f., need, poverty, destitution.**
- ego, mei, I.**
- ê-gredlor, I, -gressus sum, go out, depart, leave, quit; sally out; land, disembark.**
- êgreglê, adv., excellently, well, admirably.**
- êgregius, a, um, eminent, marked, admirable, remarkable.**
- êgressus, a, um, from egredlor.**
- êgressus, us, m., landing.**
- ê-jiclô, ere, -jeci, -jectum, fling out, drive out, cast up; w. se, rush.**
- êjasmodi, such, of such a nature, of that sort.**
- ê-lâbor, I, -lâpsus sum, slip away, escape.**
- êlatus, a, um, from efferro.**
- Elaver, -oris, n., the Elaver, a river of Central Gaul, a tributary of the Lolre.**
- êlectus, a, um, from eligo.**
- elephantus, I, m., elephant.**
- Eleuteti, orum, m. plur., the Eleuteti, a tribe of southern Gaul.**
- ê-llelô, ere, -lleul, entice, draw.**
- ê-ligô, ere, -legi, -lêctum, choose, pick.**
- Elusâtes, um, m. plur., the Elusâtes, a tribe of Aquitania.**
- emigrô, âre, âvi, âtum, remove, emigrate.**
- êmineô, êre, ul, project, stand out.**
- êndnus, adv., from or at a distance.**
- ê-mittô, ere, -misi, -missum, send out; hurl, cast; throw aside, drop.**
- emô, ere, emi, emptum, buy.**
- ê-nâscor, I, -natus sum, grow out.**
- enim, conj., for, now.**
- ênuntlô, âre, âvi, âtum, disclose, divulge, tell, reveal.**
- eô, ire, ii (ivi), itum, go, march, pass, proceed.**
- eô, adv., thither, there, to that place, to them (it, etc.); thereon, on or in them; w. comparatives, the, all the.**
- eodem, adv., to the same place, in the same direction.**
- ephipplatus, a, um, equipped with saddle-cloths, using saddle-cloths.**
- ephipplum, I, n., saddle-cloth.**
- epistola, ae, f., letter.**
- Eporedorix, -igis, m., the name of two chiefs of the Aedul.**

epulum, I, n., in plur., **epulae arum**, f., banquet.

equ-es, -itis, m., horseman, horse-soldier; in plur., cavalry; knight, a Roman of rank next to a senator.

equester, tris, tre, of cavalry, cavalry.

equitatus, ūs, m., cavalry.

equus, I, m., horse.

Eratosthenēs, Is, m., a Greek writer and scholar of Alexandria, who lived from 276 to 196 B.C.

erectus, a, um, from **erigo**.

ereptus, a, um, from **eripio**.

ergā, prep. w. acc., towards.

ergō, adv., then, therefore.

ē-rigō, ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, raise; perf. part. as adj., **erectus, a, um**, upright, high.

ē-ripiō, ere, -ripui, -reptum, take away, destroy; save, rescue.

errō, āre, āvi, ātum, be mistaken.

ē-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, sally out.

eruptiō, -ōnis, f., sally.

essedarius, I, m., charioteer, chariot-fighter.

essedum, I, n., chariot, war-chariot.

Esubii, ōrum, m. plur., the Esubii, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

et, conj., and; **et....et**, both.... and.

etiam, conj., also, further; even, still.

etsi, conj., even if, although.

ē-vādō, ere, -vāsi, -vāsum, escape.

ē-vellō, ere, -velli, -vulsum, pull out.

ē-veniō, ire, -veni, -ventum, turn out, result.

eventus, ūs, m., outcome, result; chance; experience.

ēvocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call out, summon; challenge; call, invite; perf. part. as subst., **ēvocāti, ōrum**, m., veterans (who had re-entered service).

ēvolō, āre, āvi, ātum, rush out, burst out.

ex, (sometimes **ē** before consonants), prep. w. abl., from, out of; of; after, upon; in accordance with; in consequence of; of direction, on; above.

exāctus, a, um, from **exigo**.

exagitō, āre, āvi, ātum, harass.

exāminō, āre, āvi, ātum, weigh, test.

exanimō, āre, āvi, ātum, kill; weaken, exhaust; perf. part. as adj., **exanimatus, a, um**, out of breath, breathless.

ex-ārdescō, ere, -ārsi, -ārsum, blaze forth; become enraged, become incensed.

exaudiō, ire, ivi, itum, hear clearly, hear.

ex-eādō, ere, -eessi, -cessum, go out, withdraw, leave, quit.

ex-cellō, ere, -cellui, -celsum, excel, be eminent; perf. part. as adj., **excelsus, a, um**, lofty, high.

exceptō, āre, āvi, ātum, catch up, take hold of.

ex-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum, cut down.

ex-cipiō, ere, -eci, -ceptum, receive, meet; catch, come upon; take up, catch up, follow, succeed.

excitō, āre, āvi, ātum, rouse, incite, stimulate; raise; kindle.

ex-clūdō, ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, cut off, shut out, prevent.

excōgitō, āre, āvi, ātum, think of.

exercuō, āre, āvi, ātum, torture, torment.

excubitor, -tōris, m., picket, sentinel.

excubō, āre, -ui, -itum, watch by night, keep watch, be on the watch.

exculeō, āre, āvi, ātum, tread or trample down.

excursiō, -ōnis, f., sally

excūsatiō, -ōnis, f., apology.

- exensō, āre, āvi, ātum, excuse;**
w. se, apologize.
- exemplum, I, n., example, pre-**
cedent; warning, punishment.
- ex-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum, go**
out, go forth, leave, remove, pro-
ceed.
- exerecō, ēre, ul, itum, train,**
exercise, practise, drill, busy.
- exercitatio, -ōnis, f., training,**
exercise, practice.
- exercitō, āre, āvi, ātum, train,**
practise.
- exercitus, ūs, m., army.**
- ex-hauriō, ire, -hausi, -haus-**
tum, remove, carry off.
- exigō, ere, -ēgi, -āctum, spend,**
end; pass., be over.
- exiguē, adv., scantily; barely,**
scarcely.
- exiguitas, -tatis, f., scantiness,**
smallness, small extent, shortness,
meagreness.
- exiguus, a, um, small, scanty.**
- eximius, a, um, remarkable, high.**
- existimatio, -ōnis, f., opinion.**
- existimō, āre, āvi, ātum, think,**
believe, consider; estimate.
- exitus, ūs, m., outlet, passage;**
departure; outcome, result; end.
- expediō, ire, ivi, itum, free;**
get ready, arrange; perf. part.
as adj., **expeditus, a, um, unin-**
cumbered, free; rapid, active; in
light marching order, light-armed;
easy.
- expeditio, -ōnis, f., expedition.**
- ex-pellō, ere, -pull, -pulsum,**
drive out, banish; remove, dispel.
- experior, iri, -tus sum, try,**
make an attempt, test, experience;
await.
- explō, āre, āvi, ātum, atone for,**
retrieve, repair.
- expl-eō, ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, fill**
up; make up, make good; reach,
attain.
- explorator, -tōris, m., scout.**
- explorō, āre, āvi, ātum, ex-**
amine, inquire, investigate, recon-
noitre, try to find out; perf. part.
as adj., **exploratus, a, um, cer-**
tain, assured.
- ex-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum,**
display; disembark, land; set
forth, state.
- exportō, āre, āvi, ātum, carry**
off, remove.
- ex-poscō, ere, -poposci, demand.**
- ex-primō, ere, -pressi, -pres-**
sum, extort, elicit; raise.
- expugnatio, -ōnis, f., storming,**
taking by storm.
- expugnō, āre, āvi, ātum, storm,**
take by storm, capture; subdue,
conquer.
- expulsus, a, um, from expello.**
- ex-quirō, ere, -quisivi, -quisi-**
tum, seek out; ask for.
- ex-sequor, I, -secutus sum,**
follow out, maintain, enforce.
- ex-aerō, ere, -aerui, -aertum,**
put out; bare, uncover.
- ex-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum,**
stand out, project; spring up,
arise.
- exspectō, āre, āvi, ātum, look**
for, await, wait for, wait to see,
wait; expect.
- exspoliō, āre, āvi, ātum, de-**
prive.
- ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxī, -stin-**
tum, extinguish, destroy.
- exstili, from exsisto.**
- exstō, āre, stand out, project.**
- ex-struō, ere, -struxi, -struc-**
tum, pile up, raise, build.
- exsul, -sulis, m., exile.**
- exter, or exterius, era, erum,**
outward, foreign; compar. **ex-**
terior, outer; superl., **extrē-**
mus, farthest, most distant, last,
extreme.
- exterreō, ēre, ul, itum, frighten,**
terrify.
- ex-timēscō, ere, -timui, fear,**
dread.
- ex-torqueō, ēre, -torsī, -tor-**
tum, force, extort.

extrā, prep. w. acc., *outside of, beyond.*

ex-trahō, ere, -trāxi, trāctum, *drag out, waste by delay, fritter away.*

extrēmus, superl. of *exter.*

extrūdō, ere, -trūsi, -trūsum, *thrust out, force back, shut out.*

ex-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, *deprive, strip, despoil.*

ex-ūrō, ere, -ūsi, -ūtum, *burn up, burn.*

F.

faber, bri, m., *workman, engineer.*

Fabius, i, m., 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, a Roman general, B.C. 121; 2. *Caius Fabius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 3. *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

facile, adv., *easily, readily.*

facilis, e, *easy.*

facinus, -oris, n., *deed, crime.*

faciō, ere, feci, factum, pass., fci, fieri, factussum, *make; do, act; form, build, construct; render; bring about; in passive, take place, come to pass, happen, result.*

factiō, -ōnis, f., *party, faction.*

factum, i, n., *deed, act, action.*

facultās, -tātis, f., *opportunity, chance, power; supply; in plur., resources, means.*

fāgus, i, m., *beech.*

fallō, ere, fefelli, falsum, *deceive; disappoint.*

falsus, a, um, *false, empty.*

falx, falcis, f., *sickle, hook.*

fāma, ae, f., *rumor, report.*

fāmēs, is, f., *hunger, starvation, famine.*

famīlia, ae, f., *household, house, family.*

famīliāris, e, *of a household; masc. as subst., intimate friend.*

famīliāritās, -tātis, f., *intimacy, friendship.*

fās, n. indecl., *right (by divine law).*

fastigatē, adv., *obliquely, sloping.*

fastigium, i, n., *slope, elevation, inclination.*

fastigō, āre, āvi, ātum, *bring to a point; perf. part. as adj., sloping, inclined.*

fātum, i, n., *fate, lot.*

favēō, ēre, fāvi, fautum, *favor, be favorable to.*

fax, facis, f., *torch, brand.*

fēlicitās, -tātis, f., *good fortune, success.*

fēliciter, adv., *happily, prosperously, successfully.*

fēmina, ae, f., *woman; female.*

fem-ur, -inis, n., *thigh.*

fera, ae, f., *wild beast.*

ferāx, ācis, *fertile, fruitful.*

ferē, adv., *almost; about; generally, usually, for the most part; w. negatives, scarcely.*

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, *bear, bring, carry; endure, take, stand; experience, suffer, feel; receive, win; run, go; regard; call; in pass., rush; signa ferre, advance; w. auxilium, lend; w. condiclonem, offer; w. injurias, commit.*

ferrāmentum, i, n., *(iron) tool.*

ferrāria, ae, f., *iron mine.*

ferreus, a, um, *of iron, iron.*

ferrum, i, n., *iron, iron point, sword.*

fertilis, e, *fertile, fruitful, rich.*

fertilitās, -tātis, f., *fertility, richness.*

ferus, a, um, *wild, fierce, ferocious.*

ferve-faciō, ere, -feci, -factum, *heat, make red hot.*

fer-veō, ēre, -bul, *be glowing, be red hot.*

fibula, ae, f., *brace.*

fictus, a, um, *from fingo.*

fidēlis, e, *faithful.*

- fidēs**, ei, f., *pledge, word; trustworthiness, honor; trust, faith, confidence; devotion, loyalty, fidelity; protection, dependence, allegiance, alliance; fidem facere, give a pledge, gain belief.*
- fiducia**, ae, f., *reliance, confidence.*
- figūra**, ae, f., *shape.*
- filia**, ae, f., *daughter.*
- fillus**, i, m., *son.*
- figō**, ere, **finxi**, **fectum**, *make up, invent.*
- finis**, ire, **ivi**, **itum**, *limit, bound; determine, measure, describe.*
- finis**, is, m., *end, limit; in plur., borders, territory, land, district.*
- finitimus**, a, um, *neighboring, adjacent, bordering; masc. plur. as subst., neighbors.*
- fio**, fieri, **factus sum**, *pass of facio, be made, be done; take place, come to pass, happen, result.*
- firmiter**, adv., *firmly, steadily.*
- firmitas**-dō, -dius, f., *strength.*
- firmō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, *strengthen, secure.*
- firmus**, a, um, *strong, powerful.*
- fitūca**, ae, f., *pile-driver, rammer.*
- Flaccus**, i, m., *Caius Valerius Flaccus, governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.*
- flagitō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, *demand.*
- flamma**, ae, f., *flame, fire.*
- flectō**, ere, **flecti**, **flexum**, *bend, turn.*
- fleo**, ere, **flevi**, **fletum**, *weep, be in tears.*
- fletus**, ūs, m., *weeping.*
- flo**, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, *blow.*
- florēō**, ēre, **ri**, *bloom; pres. part. as adj., flourishing, prosperous, influential.*
- flōs**, **flōris**, m., *flower.*
- fluctus**, ūs, m., *wave.*
- flumen**, -inis, n., *river.*
- fluō**, ere, **fluxi**, **fluxum**, *flow.*
- fodiō**, ere, **fōdī**, **fossū**, *dig.*
- foedus**, -eris, n., *treaty.*
- fore**, fut. **indū**, of **sum**.
- foris**, adv., *outdoor; without, outside.*
- fōrma**, ae, f., *shape, form; structure.*
- fors**, **forte**, f., (other cases wanting), *chance; in abl., perchance, perhaps.*
- fortis**, e, *brave, courageous.*
- fortiter**, adv., *bravely, gallantly, stoutly.*
- fortitū-dō**, -dius, f., *bravery, courage.*
- fortuito**, adv., *by chance, accidentally.*
- fortūna**, ae, f., *fortune, chance, lot, situation; good fortune, success; in plur., possessions, fortunes.*
- fortunatus**, a, um, *fortunate.*
- forum**, i, n., *market place.*
- fossa**, ae, f., *trench, ditch.*
- fovea**, ae, f., *pit, pitfall.*
- fragō**, ere, **frēgi**, **fractum**, *shatter, wreck; crush.*
- frāter**, tris, m., *brother.*
- frāternus**, a, um, *brotherly, of a brother.*
- fraus**, **fraudis**, f., *deception, treachery.*
- frenitūs**, ūs, m., *din, noise.*
- frequēns**, entis, *numerous, in large numbers.*
- frētus**, a, um, *relying on, w. abl.*
- frigidus**, a, um, *cold.*
- frig-us**, -oris, n., *cold, frost, cold weather.*
- frōns**, **frontis**, f., *forehead; front.*
- fructuōsus**, a, um, *fruitful, fertile.*
- fructus**, ūs, m., *fruit, crops; advantage; profit, income.*
- frūgēs**, um, *see frux.*
- frumentarius**, a, um, *of grain; fertile, productive; res frumentaria, supply of corn, grain, provisions.*

frumentatilo, -onis, f., getting grain, foraging.
frumentor, ari, ātus sum, get grain, forage.
frumentum, l, n., grain, corn, crops, provisions.
fruo, l, fructus sum, enjoy, w. abl.
frustrā, adv., in vain, without effect.
frax, frūgis, (sing. very rare in Latin), crops.
Fufius, l, m., Caius Fufius Cita, a Roman knight.
fuga, ae, f., flight, rout; in **fugam convertere, coniecere** or **dare, to put to flight.**
fugio, ere, fugi, fugitum, flee, escape; avoid, shun.
fugitivus, l, m., runaway slave.
fugō, āre, āvi, ātum, put to flight, rout.
fūmō, āre, āvi, ātum, smoke.
fūmus, l, m., smoke.
funda, ae, f., sling.
fundi-tor, -toris, m., slinger.
fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour; scatter, rout.
fungor, l, fāctus sum, discharge, perform, w. abl.
fūlis, is, m., rope, cable.
fūnus, -eris, n., funeral.
furor, -ōris, m., madness, frenzy, rage.
furtum, l, n., theft.
fūsis, e, molten, softened.
fusus, a, um, from fundo.
futūrus, a, um, from sum.

G.

Gabali, ōrum, m. plur., the Gabali, a tribe in the south of Gaul.
Gabinus, l, m., Aulus Gabinus, consul 58 B.C.
gaesum, l, n., javelin, spear.
Gālus, l, or Cālus, l, m., a Roman praenomen.

Galba, ae, m., 1. *Servius Galba*, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a king of the Suesstones.

galea, ae, f., helmet.

Gallia, ae, f., Gaul. 1. The Roman provinces of Gaul, *Gallia Cisalpina* or *Citerior*, the northern part of Italy; and *Gallia Transalpina* or *Ulterior*, the south-eastern part of France. 2. The country west of the Rhine and the Alps and north of the Pyrenees, thus including France, Switzerland, Belgium and part of Holland and Germany. 3. The central and largest of the three parts into which Gaul in the previous sense is divided, the *Belgae* and the *Aquitani* holding the other two.

Galliens, a, um, of Gaul, of the Gauls, Gallic.

gallina, ae, f., hen.

Gallus, l, m., 1. a Gaul; 2. *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, one of Caesar's officers.

Garumna, ae, m., the Garonne, a river of south-western Gaul.

Garumni, ōrum, m. plur., the Garumni, a tribe near the Pyrenees.

Gates, um, m. plur., the Gates, a tribe in the south-west of Gaul.

gaudeō, ēre, gavissus sum, rejoice.

Geidumni, ōrum, m. plur., the Geidumni, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

Genāva, ae, f., Geneva, a town of the Allobroges, at the extreme north-east of the Province.

gener, eri, m., son-in-law.

generatim, adv., by tribes.

gens, gentis, f., tribe, race, nation, clan.

genus, -eris, n., race, family; species; kind, sort, class.

Gergovia, ae, f., Gergovia, a town of the Arverni, in the centre of Gaul.

Germania, ae, f., Germany, the region east of the Rhine.

Germānicus, a, um, German, of
or with the Germans.

Germānus, I, m., a German.

gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, man-
age; carry on, wage; hold; do;
in pass., go on.

gladius, I, m., sword.

glæba, ac, f., clod, lump.

glāns, glandis, f., acorn; ball,
bullet.

glōria, ac, f., glory, fame, reputa-
tion.

glōrior, ārī, ātus sum, boast of,
w. abl.

Gnaeus, I, m., Gnaeus, or Cneius, a
Roman praenomen.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m., a man of
rank among the Arverni.

Gorgobina, ac, f., a town in the
country of the Aulul, in central
Gaul.

Græcus, a, um, Greek, Grecian;
masc. as subst., a Greek.

Grālocellī, ōrum, m. plur., the
Graioceli, an Alpine tribe between
Gaul and Italy.

grandis, e, large.

grātia, ac, f., favor, good will;
influence; gratitude, thanks;
gratias agere, render thanks,
thank; **gratiam referre, make**
a grateful return, requite; **gra-**
tiam habere, feel gratitude, be
grateful; **gratiam inire, win**
gratitude.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, f., congratula-
tion; joy, rejoicing.

grātulor, ārī, ātus sum, con-
gratulate, offer congratulations.

grātus, a, um, acceptable, pleas-
ing; neut. as subst., a favor.

gravis, e, heavy; severe, bitter,
serious; solemn; w. **aetas, ad-**
vanced.

gravitās, -tātis, f., weight;
strength, importance.

graviter, adv., heavily, with ef-
fect; severely, bitterly, seriously;
graviter ferre, be annoyed,
feel keenly.

gravor, ārī, ātus sum, be reluc-
tant, object.

Grudii, -ōrum, m. plur., the
Grudii, a tribe in the extreme
north-east of Gaul.

gubernātor, -tōris, m., pilot,
helmsman.

gustō, āre, āvi, ātum, taste, eat.

Gntruātus, I, m., a leader of the
Carnutes.

H.

habeō, ēre, ui, itum, have, pos-
sess, occupy; keep; hold; w. **ora-**
tionem, deliver, make; treat, re-
gard, consider; se habere, to
be; w. perf. part. pass., much like
Eng. auxiliary verb *have*.

haestō, āre, āvi, ātum, stick
fast, be caught.

hāmus, I, m., hook.

harpagō, -ōnis, m., hook, grap-
pling-iron.

Harūdes, um, m. plur., the Haru-
des, a German tribe which had
crossed into Gaul.

haud, adv., not.

Helvēticus, a, um, Helvetian, of
or with the Helvetii.

Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian, of
the Helvetii; masc. plur. as subst.,
the Helvetii, a tribe of Gaul dwell-
ing in modern Switzerland.

Helvī, ōrum, m. plur., the Helvī,
a tribe in the Province.

Hereynius, a, um, w. silva,
the Hercynian forest, extending
through southern and central
Germany.

hērēditās, -tātis, f., inheritance.

hiberna, ōrum, n. plur., winter
camp, winter-quarters.

hibernācula, ōrum, n. plur.,
winter-quarters.

Hibernia, ac, f., Ireland.

hic, hūc, hōc, this; he; the fol-
lowing; the present; such; often
loosely, that; hōc, neut. abl. as
adv., in this way, on this account,
and w. comparatives, the.

- hic**, adv., *here, herein*.
hiemō, āre, āvi, ātum, *winter, pass the winter*.
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather*.
hinc, adv., *from this point, hence*.
Hispania, ae, f., *Spain*.
Hispanus, a, um, *Spanish*.
homi-ō, -inis, m. and f., *man, person*; in plur., *man, mankind, people*.
honestus, a, um, *honorable, of rank, distinguished*.
honor, -ōris, m., *honor, dignity, distinction*; *respect*; *high position*.
honorificus, a, um, *honorable, complimentary*.
hōra, ae, f., *hour, (one-twelfth of the daylight)*.
horreō, ēre, uī, *shudder at, dread*.
horribilis, e, *dreadful, formidable*.
horridus, a, um, *horrible, frightful*.
hortor, āri, ātus sum, *urge, encourage, exhort, cheer on*.
hosp-es, -itis, m., *guest, friend*.
hospitium, i, n., *friendship, hospitality*.
hostis, is, m., *enemy*.
hūc, adv., *to this, to this point, to this place, hither, here*.
hūjusmodi, *of this sort, to this effect*.
hūmānitās, -tātis, f., *refinement, accomplishments*.
hūmānus, a, um, *civilized, refined*.
humilis, e, *low, inferior, humble, of little importance, obscure*.
humilitās, -tātis, f., *lowness; weakness, insignificance*.
- I.**
- ibi**, adv., *there*.
ieclius, i, n., *a leader of the Remi*.
ictus, ūs, m., *blow, stroke*.
ideirēō, adv., *on that account, for this reason*.
idem, eadem, idem, *the same; also*.
identidem, adv., *again and again*.
idōneus, a, um, *suitable, fit*.
Idūs, uum, f. plur., *the Ides* (the 13th of each month, but in March, May, July and October the 15th).
ignis, is, m., *fire; camp fire*.
ignōbilis, e, *unknown, obscure*.
ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace*.
ignōrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *not know, be unacquainted with*.
ignōscō, ere, ignōvi, ignōtum, *forgive, pardon, w. dat.*
ignōtus, a, um, *unknown*.
illātus, a, um, *from infero*.
ille, illa, illud, *that, he*.
illie, adv., *there, in that place*.
illigō, āre, āvi, ātum, *bind, attach, fasten*.
illō, adv., *to that point, thither, there*.
illāstris, e, *distinguished, remarkable*.
Illyrieum, i, n., *a district along the eastern coast of the Adriatic*.
imbēcillitās, -tātis, f., *weakness, feebleness*.
im-ber, -bris, m., *rain, rainstorm*.
imitor, āri, ātus sum, *imitate*.
immānis, e, *huge, enormous*.
immineō, ēre, uī, *be near at hand; threaten*.
im-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *send against, hurl; let down, sink, let in*.
immolō, āre, āvi, ātum, *sacrifice*.
immortālis, e, *immortal*.
immūnis, e, *free from taxation or tribute*.
immūnitās, -tātis, f., *freedom, exemption from public service*.
imparātus, a, um, *unprepared*.
impedimentum, i, n., *hindrance, in plur., baggage, baggage-train, baggage-horses*.

- Impediō, ire, ivi, itum, hinder, obstruct, entangle, embarrass; perf. part. as adj., Impeditus, a, um, hampered, occupied, intricate, difficult, impassable.**
- Im-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, urge, instigate, incite.**
- Impendeō, ēre, overhang.**
- Impēnsus, a, um, expensive, high.**
- Imperātor, -tōris, m., commander (in chief).**
- Imperātum, i, n., order, command.**
- Imperfectus, a, um, unfinished, unaccomplished.**
- Imperitus, a, um, inexperienced, unacquainted, w. gen.**
- Imperium, i, n., command, order; power, supreme power, control, rule, supremacy.**
- Imperō, āre, āvi, ātum, levy upon, demand, require, order to furnish; order, command, rule.**
- Impetrō, āre, āvi, ātum, obtain, obtain one's request, accomplish, prevail on.**
- Impetus, ūs, m., attack, charge; fury, rush, violence.**
- Implus, a, um, wicked, unholy.**
- Implē-ō, āre, āvi, ātum, or -ui, -itum, interweave, interlace.**
- Implorō, āre, āvi, ātum, beg, entreat, beseech.**
- Im-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, place on, put on, mount; levy, impose.**
- Importō, āre, āvi, ātum, bring in, introduce, import.**
- Imprimis, or in primis, especially, particularly.**
- Improbis, a, um, wicked, unprincipled.**
- Improvīsus, a, um, unforeseen; abl., Improviso, as adv., so de Improviso, unexpectedly, unawares.**
- Imprūdēns, -entis, unsuspecting, off one's guard.**
- Imprudentia, ae, f., thoughtlessness, indiscretion.**
- Impūb-ēs, -eris, chaste, unmarried.**
- Impūgnō, āre, āvi, ātum, attack, fight.**
- Impulsus, a, um, from impello.**
- Impulsus, ūs, m., instigation.**
- Impūne, adv., with impunity.**
- Impūnitās, -tātis, f., impunity, exemption from punishment.**
- Imus, a, um, superlative of inferus.**
- In, prep. (1) w. abl., in, at, within, on; among, in the country of; over; considering, in view of; in the case of, in regard to; (2) w. acc., into, to; towards, against, upon, on; until; for, with a view to, according to; in.**
- Inānis, e, empty, idle, mere.**
- Ineautē, adv., carelessly, incautiously.**
- Incautus, a, um, careless, off one's guard.**
- Inceadlum, i, n., fire, burning.**
- In-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēsum, set on fire, burn; arouse, inflame.**
- Incertus, a, um, uncertain, untrustworthy, confused.**
- In-eldō, ere, -eldi, -cāsum, fall in with, come upon; happen, occur.**
- In-eldō, ere, -eldi, -cīsum, cut into.**
- In-elplō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, begin.**
- Inelus, a, um, from Incido.**
- Ineltō, āre, āvi, ātum, urge on, impel, set in motion; arouse, excite; w. se, rush on, rush in; perf. part. w. equus, at full speed.**
- Incōgnitus, a, um, unknown.**
- Incol-ō, ere, -ui, inhabit, dwell, live.**
- Incolumis, e, safe, unharmed, in safety, without loss.**
- Incommodē, adv., disastrously, unfortunately, badly.**
- Incommodum, i, n., disadvantage, misfortune, disaster, loss, reverses.**

- incredibilis**, e, *incredible, extraordinary.*
- inreplitō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *reproach, upbraid, taunt.*
- in-cumbō**, ere, -cubul, -cublitum, *apply or devote one's self.*
- incursiō**, -ōnis, f., *raid, inroad.*
- incursus**, ūs, m., *attack, incursion.*
- incensō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *blame, attack, censure.*
- inde**, adv., *from that place, thence; then, next.*
- indiciū**, i, n., *information.*
- in-dicō**, ere, -dixi, -dictum, *appoint, proclaim, call.*
- indictus**, a, um, (1) *from Indico*; (2) *unpleaded, unheard.*
- indignē**, adv., *unworthily, undeservedly.*
- indignitas**, -tātis, f., *indignity, disgrace.*
- indignor**, āri, ātus sum, *be indignant.*
- indignus**, a, um, *unworthy, unbecoming.*
- indiligēns**, -entis, *careless, indifferent.*
- indiligenter**, adv., *carelessly.*
- indilligētia**, ae, f., *indifference, lack of energy.*
- in-ducō**, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead on, influence, induce; cover.*
- indulgentia**, ae, f., *indulgence, leniency.*
- indul-geō**, ēre, -si, -tum, *favor, w. dat.*
- ind-uō**, ere, -ui, -ūtum, *put on; w. se, fall upon, get entangled.*
- industriē**, adv., *actively, zealously.*
- indūtia**, ārum, f. plur., *truce.*
- Indūtionarius**, i, m., *a chief of the Treveri.*
- in-eō**, -ire, -ii(-iv), -itum, *enter upon, adopt, form, make; estimate; begin; win.*
- inermis**, e, or **inermus**, a, um, *unarmed.*
- in-ers**, -ertis, *lazy, unmanly.*
- Infamia**, ae, f., *dishonor, disgrace, disrepute.*
- Infans**, -antis, m., *infant, child.*
- Infectus**, a, um, *undone, unaccomplished.*
- Inferō**, **Inferre**, **Intuli**, **iliātum**, *bring in, put in or upon; introduce, import; cause, inflict, inspire; w. bellum, make, wage (offensive); w. signa, advance; w. causam, advance, allege.*
- Inferns**, a, um, *low; compar. Inferior, lower; inferior; superl. Infimus, lowest, at the foot or base; neut. as subst., the bottom, the foot.*
- Infestus**, a, um, *hostile.*
- in-ficō**, ere, -feci, -fectum, *stain.*
- Infidēlls**, e, *unfaithful.*
- in-figō**, ere, -fixi, -fixum, *fasten to, fix on.*
- Infimus**, a, um, *superl. of Inferus.*
- Infinitus**, a, um, *endless, boundless, vast.*
- Infirmitas**, -tātis, f., *weakness, fickleness, inconstancy.*
- Infirmus**, a, um, *weak.*
- Influxus**, a, um, *from Infigo.*
- in-flectō**, ere, -flexi, -flexum, *bend.*
- in-fluō**, ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, *flow, empty.*
- in-fodlō**, ere, -fodi, -fossū, *bury.*
- Infra**, (1) *adv., below, farther down; (2) prep. w. acc., below, less than.*
- ingēns**, entis, *huge, very large.*
- ingrātus**, a, um, *displeasing, unacceptable.*
- in-gredior**, i, -gressus sum, *enter.*
- Inimicitia**, ae, f., *enmity, feud.*
- Inimicus**, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile; masc. as subst., enemy.*
- Iniquitas**, -tātis, f., *injustice, unfairness; disadvantage, unfavorable nature or position.*

- Iniquus, a, um, uneven; unfavorable; unfair, unjust.**
- Initium, i, n., beginning, first; edge, frontier, borders; elements.**
- Initus, a, um, from inco.**
- In-jicō, ere, -jēcl, -jectum, put on, lay on; inspire, infuse, cause.**
- In-jungō, ere, -jānxl, -jūnc-tum, impose.**
- Injuria, ae, f., wrong, injustice, wrong-doing, injury, violence, outrage.**
- Injussū, abl. used as adv., without one's orders.**
- In-nāscor, i, -nātus sum, spring up in; in perf., be inborn, be innate.**
- In-nitor, i, -nīsus or -nīxus sum, lean on.**
- Innocēns, entis, innocent, guiltless.**
- Innocentia, ae, f., innocence, integrity.**
- Inopia, ae, f., want, scarcity, lack, privation.**
- Inopināns, -antis, not expecting, unawares, unprepared, off one's guard.**
- In-quāt, inquit, defective verb, say.**
- Inscēns, entis, not knowing, being unaware.**
- Inscientia, ae, f., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.**
- Inscius, a, um, ignorant, unaware.**
- In-sequor, i, -secutus sum, follow up, pursue.**
- In-serō, ere, -serui, -sertum, insert.**
- Insidiae, ārum, f. plur., ambush, stratagem, treachery.**
- Insidior, āri, ātus sum, lie in wait.**
- Insignis, e, marked, notable, signal; n. as subst., insigne, is, ensign, badge, token, decoration.**
- In-sillō, ire, -silui, -sultum, leap at or on.**
- Insinuō, āre, āvi, ātum, charge, accuse.**
- Insinuō, āre, āvi, ātum, insinuate; w. sc, work one's way in.**
- In-sistō, ere, -stiti, stand, keep one's footing; enter upon, pursue, adopt, devote one's self.**
- Insolenter, adv., insolently, haughtily, immoderately.**
- Inspectō, āre, āvi, ātum, look on.**
- Instābills, e, unsteady, changeable.**
- Instar, accus. as adv., like, w. gen.**
- Instigō, āre, āvi, ātum, urge on, incite.**
- Instit-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, undertake, begin, set to; adopt, establish, settle; equip, get ready; train, teach; draw up.**
- Institutum, i, n., custom, practice.**
- In-stō, āre, -stiti, -stātum, press forward, press on; be at hand; threaten, impend.**
- Instrūmentum, i, n., equipment, furniture.**
- In-struō, ere, -struxi, -strūctum, draw up, arrange; build, set up, equip.**
- Insuē-faciō, ere, -fēcl, -factum, train.**
- Insuētus, a, um, unaccustomed.**
- Insula, ae, f., island.**
- Insuper, adv., above, on top.**
- Integer, gra, grum, unimpaired, fresh, untouched, complete.**
- In-tegō, ere, -tēxi, -tēctum, cover over, cover.**
- Intel-legō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, understand, be aware, perceive, see, know, learn.**
- Inten-dō, ere, -di, -tum, stretch, strain; perf. partic., intent, occupied, engrossed, eager.**
- Inter, prep. w. acc., between, among, during; Inter se, one another, to or with one another.**
- Inter-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, come between, be between, intervene, elapse, exist betwixt.**
- Inter-clipō, ere, -cēpi, -cep-tum, intercept, cut off.**
- Inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, cut off.**

- inter-dicō, ere, -dixī, -dictum.** forbid, warn; prohibit, exclude.
- interdiū, adv.,** by day, in the day-time.
- interdum, adv.,** sometimes.
- intereā, adv.,** meanwhile, in the meantime.
- inter-eō, -īre, -II (-Ivī), -itum,** perish.
- interest, from Intersum.**
- inter-ficō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** slay, put to death, kill.
- interim, adv.,** meanwhile.
- interior, comparative adj.,** inner, interior; plur., those living in the interior.
- interitus, ūs, m.,** death, destruction.
- inter-jicō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,** place between, interpose; in pass., be between, intervene, come at intervals.
- inter-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** leave off, interrupt, stop, break off, discontinue; cease, neglect; let pass, in pass., go by, intervene, elapse; separate; leave free, leave open.
- interneclō, -ōnis, f.,** destruction, annihilation, extermination.
- interpellō, āre, āvī, ātum,** interrupt, disturb, interfere with.
- inter-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum,** interpose; allege; pledge; put forward; in pass., intervene.
- inter-pres, -pretis, m.,** interpreter.
- interpretor, ārī, ātus sum,** interpret, explain.
- interrogō, āre, āvī, ātum,** question.
- inter-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum,** break down, destroy.
- inter-scindō, ere, -scidi, -scissum,** cut down, break down, destroy.
- inter-sum, -esse, -ful,** be between, be engaged in, take part in; as impersonal verb, **interest, it is of importance, it concerns.**
- intervallum, I, n.,** interval, distance.
- inter-venīō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum,** come up, appear.
- interventus, ūs, m.,** intervention, coming on.
- intex-ō, ere, -ui, -tum,** weave together, plait.
- intoleranter, adv.,** eagerly, recklessly.
- Intrā, prep. w. acc.,** within.
- Inritus, a, um,** unexhausted, fresh, not fatigued.
- Intrō, āre, āvī, ātum,** enter.
- Intrō-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum,** lead in, bring in.
- Intro-eō, -īre, -II (-Ivī), -itum,** come in, enter.
- Introitus, ūs, m.,** entrance, approach.
- Intrō-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** send in, let in, admit.
- Intrōrsus, adv.,** within, into the interior, inside.
- Intrō-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum,** break in, burst in.
- Intueor, ēri, itus sum,** gaze on, look at.
- Intuli, from Infero.**
- Intus, adv.,** within, inside.
- Inusitatus, a, um,** unusual, strange, novel, unfamiliar.
- Inutilis, e,** useless, unserviceable, unsuitable.
- In-venīō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum,** come upon, find; learn.
- Inventor, -tōris, m.,** inventor, discoverer.
- Inveter-ascō, ere, -āvī, -ātum,** become established, settle.
- Invicem, adv.,** in turn.
- Invictus, a, um,** unconquered, invincible.
- In-videō, ēre, -vidī, -visum,** envy, be jealous of, w. dat.
- Invidia, ae, f.,** envy, jealousy.
- Inviolatus, a, um,** inviolate.
- Invitō, āre, āvī, ātum,** invite, induce, allure.

- invictus**, a, um, *uncilling, against one's will.*
ipse, a, um, *himself, he himself, itself, etc.; very.*
iracundia, ae, f., *wrath, anger, passion.*
iracundus, a, um, *passionate.*
ir-rideō, ēre, -risi, -risum, *ridicule, jeer at.*
irridenſe, adv., *without humor.*
ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *burst in, break in, rush, dash.*
irruptiō, -ōis, f., *attack, assault.*
is, en. *Id, that; he, she, it, they; w. rel., the; such; abl. eō as adv., so much, the, on that account.*
iste, a, ud, *that of yours, that.*
ita, adv., *so, thus, in this way, as follows, accordingly.*
Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*
itaque, adv., *therefore, so, accordingly.*
item, adv., *likewise, also, in the same way.*
iter, **itineris**, n., *route, march, road, journey; magnum iter, a forced march; iter facere, to march.*
iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*
Itius, adj. *with portus, a harbor on the north-east coast of Gaul.*

J.

- jaceō**, ēre, uī, **itum**, *lie, be fallen, be dead.*
jaclō, ere, **jēcl**, **jaetum**, *throw, cast, hurl; throw up.*
jaetō, āre, āvi, ātum, *shake, toss, fling; discuss.*
jaetūra, ae, f., *loss, sacrifice; offer.*
jaculum, I, n., *javelin.*
jam, adv., *now, at length, already; w. negatives, any more, longer.*
juba, ae, f., *mane.*
jubeō, ēre, **jussī**, **jussum**, *order, bid, command.*

- jūdicium**, I, n., *trial; judgment, decision, opinion; abl. judicio, by design, purposely.*
jūdicō, āre, āvi, ātum, *judge, decide, consider, think, pronounce.*
jugum, I, n., *yoke; ridge, summit, crest.*
jumentum, I, n., *beast of burden, horse.*
jaetūra, ae, f., *joining.*
jungō, ere, **jāxi**, **jaetum**, *join, unite.*
jūnior, comparative of **juvenis**.
jūnius, I, m., *Quintus Junius, one of Caesar's officers.*
Juppiter, **Jovis**, m., *Jupiter, the supreme god of the Romans.*
Jūra, ae, m., *a mountain range in Eastern Gaul.*
jūrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *swear, take an oath.*
jūs, **jūris**, n., *right, rights, law, justice.*
jūsjurandum, **jūrisjurandi**, n., *oath.*
jussū, abl. used as adv., *by order.*
justitia, ae, f., *justice, fairness.*
justus, a, um, *just, right, lawful, fair; proper, regular, due.*
juvenis, e (comparative **jūnior**), *young; m. as subst., a young man.*
juven-tūs, -tūtis, f., *youth; as collective, youth, young men.*
juvō, āre, **jūvi**, **jūtum**, *aid, help, assist.*
jūxtā, adv., *near, close by.*

K.

- Kalendae**, ārum, f. plur., *the Calends, the first day of the month.*

L.

- L.**, an abbreviation for **Lucius**.
Laberius, I, m., *Quintus Laberius Dursus, a military tribune with Caesar.*
Labienus, I, m., *Titus Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

- labor**, -ōris, m., *toil, hardship, labor, exertion; endurance, hardiness.*
- lābor**, l., *lāpsus sum*, *slip; err, do wrong, fall away; fail, be disappointed.*
- labōrō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *toil, strive, be anxious; be in difficulty, be hard pressed.*
- labrum**, l, n., *lip; edge, rim.*
- lāe**, laetis, n., *milk.*
- laccess-ō**, ere, -ivi, -itum, *provoke, harass, attack, assail.*
- laerima**, ae, f., *tear.*
- laerimō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *weep.*
- lacus**, ūs, m., *lake.*
- laedō**, ere, laesi, laesum, *injure; violate, break.*
- laetatiō**, -ōnis, f., *joy, rejoicing.*
- laetitla**, ae, f., *joy, gladness.*
- laetus**, a, um, *glad, joyful, rejoicing.*
- languidē**, adv., *with little energy.*
- languidus**, a, um, *weary, faint, listless, not active.*
- languor**, -ōris, m., *exhaustion, listlessness.*
- lap-is**, -idis, m., *stone.*
- lāpsus**, a, um, *from lābor.*
- laqueus**, l, m., *noose.*
- largior**, iri, itum, *give bountifully; bribe; supply, afford.*
- largiter**, adv., *abundantly, greatly.*
- largitiō**, -ōnis, f., *lavishness, bounty, liberality.*
- lassitū-dō**, -dinis, f., *fatigue, exhaustion.*
- lātē**, adv., *widely, far.*
- latebra**, ae, f., *hiding-place.*
- lateō**, ēre, ul, *lurk, lie concealed; escape notice.*
- lātitū-dō**, -dinis, f., *width, breadth, extent.*
- Latovici**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Latovici, neighbors of the Helvetii.*
- latrō**, -ōnis, m., *robber.*
- latrōcinium**, l, n., *robbery, raid.*
- lat-us**, -eris, n., *side, flank.*
- lātus**, a, um, and **lāturus**, a, um, *from fero.*
- lātus**, a, um, *broad, wide, extensive.*
- laudō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *praise, commend.*
- laus**, laudis, f., *praise, merit, glory, fame.*
- lavō**, āre, āvi, ātum, or **lāvi**, *lautum* or **lōtum**, *wash; in pass., bathe.*
- luxō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *loosen, extend, open out.*
- lēgātīō**, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*
- lēgātus**, l, m., *ambassador, envoy; lieutenant, an officer next in rank to the commander-in-chief.*
- legiō**, -ōnis, f., *legion, a body of soldiers of the nominal strength of 6000, divided into ten cohorts.*
- legiōnārius**, a, um, *of a legion, legionary.*
- Lemannus**, l, m., *a lake now called Geneva, in eastern Gaul.*
- Lemovices**, um, m. plur., *the Lemovices, a tribe in south-western Gaul.*
- lēnis**, e, *gentle, light.*
- lēnitās**, -tātis, f., *gentleness, sluggishness.*
- lēnlter**, adv., *gently, slightly, with little vigor.*
- Lepontii**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Lepontii, an Alpine tribe.*
- lep-us**, -oris, m., *hare.*
- Leuci**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Leuci, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.*
- Levaci**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Levaci, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.*
- levis**, e, *light; slight, trifling; weak, fickle.*
- levitās**, -tātis, f., *lightness; fickleness, thoughtlessness, inconstancy.*
- levō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *free, relieve*
- lēx**, lēgis, f., *law.*
- Lexovii**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Lexovii, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.*

- libenter**, adv., *willingly, gladly, with pleasure.*
- liber**, **era**, **erum**, *free, independent; unrestricted, undisturbed, untrammelled, unincumbered.*
- liberālitās**, **-tātis**, *f.*, *generosity, liberality.*
- liberāliter**, adv., *generously, graciously, kindly.*
- liberē**, adv., *freely, without check or restraint.*
- liberī**, **ōrum**, *m. plur.*, *children.*
- liberō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *free, set free.*
- libertās**, **-tātis**, *f.*, *liberty, freedom.*
- librillīs**, *e*, *of a pound weight.*
- licentia**, *ae*, *f.*, *recklessness, lawlessness.*
- liceor**, **ēri**, **itus sum**, *bid (at auction).*
- licet**, **ēre**, **licuit**, *it is permitted, allowable; freely, may, might.*
- Liger**, **-eris**, *m.*, *the river Loire, in the central part of Gaul.*
- lignātiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.*, *getting wood.*
- lignātor**, **-tōris**, *m.*, *wood-cutter, gatherer of wood.*
- lilium**, *l*, *n.*, *lily.*
- linea**, *ae*, *f.*, *line.*
- Lingones**, *um*, *m. plur.*, *the Lingones, a tribe in the eastern part of central Gaul.*
- lingua**, *ae*, *f.*, *tongue; language, speech.*
- lingula**, *ae*, *f.*, *little tongue; tongue of land, headland.*
- linter**, **-tris**, *f.*, *small boat, skiff.*
- limum**, *l*, *n.*, *flax.*
- lis**, **litis**, *f.*, *lawsuit, dispute; damages.*
- Liscus**, *l*, *m.*, *a leading man of the Aedui.*
- Litaviceus**, *l*, *m.*, *a leading man of the Aedui.*
- littera**, *ae*, *f.*, *letter, character; in plur., letter, despatch; documents, records.*
- lit-us**, **-oris**, *n.*, *shore.*
- locus**, *l*, *m.*; *in plur., loca, ōrum*, *n.*; *place, spot, point, position, ground, situation, country; rank; light, character; opportunity, chance; in plur., space, ground, district, region, country, place.*
- locūtus**, *a*, *um*, *from loquor.*
- longē**, adv., *far; long.*
- longinquus**, *a*, *um*, *distant, remote; long, long-continued, protracted.*
- longitū-dō**, **-dinis**, *f.*, *length.*
- longurius**, *l*, *m.*, *long pole.*
- longus**, *a*, *um*, *long; distant; tedious; navis longa, war-ship, galley.*
- loquor**, *l*, **locūtus sum**, *speak, say, converse.*
- lorica**, *ae*, *f.*, *coat of mail; breast-work.*
- Lūcānus**, *l*, *m.*, *Quintus Lucanius, a centurion in Caesar's army.*
- Lūcius**, *l*, *m.*, *a Roman praenomen.*
- Luclerius**, *l*, *m.*, *a leading Gaul, belonging to the Cadurci.*
- Lugotor-Ix**, **-igis**, *m.*, *a Briton of rank.*
- lūna**, *ae*, *f.*, *moon.*
- Lutētia**, *ae*, *f.*, *a town of the Parisii, on the Seine.*
- lūx**, **lūcis**, *f.*, *light, dawn; prima lux, daybreak, dawn.*
- luxuria**, *ae*, *f.*, *luxury, luxurious living.*

M.

M., an abbreviation for **Marcus**.

mācerla, *ae*, *f.*, *wall.*

māchinātiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, *machine, engine.*

maestus, *a*, *um*, *sad, sorrowful.*

magis, comparative adv., (see **magnopere**), *more, rather.*

magistrātus, **ūs**, *m.*, *magistrate; office, magistracy.*

māgnificus, *a*, *um*, *splendid, grand.*

māgnitū-dō, **-dinis**, *f.*, *greatness, vastness, great size; size, extent.*

- māgnopere**, adv. (*magis, māj-lmē*), *greatly, very, strongly, earnestly*.
- māgnus**, a, um (*mājor, māj-lmus*), *great, large; loud; serious, extensive; māgnī*, as adv., *highly, greatly*.
- mājestās, -tātis**, f., *dignity, majesty*.
- mājor**, comparative of *māgnus*; in m. plur. as subst., *elders, ancestors, fathers*.
- malacia**, ae, f., *calm, lull*.
- male**, adv. (*pējns, pessimē*), *badly, ill, unsuccessfully*.
- maleficium**, I, n., *mischievousness, harm*.
- Mallus**, I, m., *Lucius Mallius*, a Roman praenomen defeated by the Aquitani, B.C. 78.
- mālō, mālīe, mālīnī**, prefer.
- mālus**, I, m., *masl*, (upright) beam.
- mandātum**, I, n., *order, commission, instruction, message*.
- mandō, āre, āvī, ātum**, order, instruct; *entrust, give up, commit, betake*.
- Mandubii**, ōrum, m., plur., *the Mandubii*, a tribe in central Gaul.
- Mandubracius**, m., a Briton of high rank among the Trinobantes.
- māne**, adv., *in the morning*.
- maneo, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm**, stay, remain; *abide by, stand by*.
- manipulāris**, is, m., *one belonging to a company or manipulus, comrade*.
- manipulus**, I, m., *maniple, company* (one-third of a cohort).
- mānsuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum**, tame.
- mānsuēfīō**, passive of *mānsuefacio*.
- mānsuētū-dō, -dīnis**, f., *gentleness, clemency*.
- manus, ūs**, f., *hand; band, force; manu, by art, by force; māns dare, yield, give in*.
- Marcomani**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Marcomani*, a German tribe.
- Mārcus**, I, m., *Marcus*, a Roman praenomen.
- mare, maris**, n., *sea*.
- maritimus**, a, um, *on or of the sea, on the coast, maritime, naval*.
- Marius**, I, m., *Caius Marius*, a famous Roman general and popular leader, who lived from B.C. 157 to 86.
- Mārs, Mārtis**, m., *Mars*, the god of war.
- mās, maris**, m., *male*.
- matara**, ae, f., (*Celtic*) *javelin, pike*.
- māter, -tris**, f., *mother; mater familiae, matron*.
- māterla**, ae, f., *timber, wood, material*.
- māterlēs, ēl**, f., *timber, wood, material*.
- māterlor, ārī, ātus sum**, get timber, collect wood.
- Matiseō, -ōnis**, f., *a town of the Aedui*.
- mātrīmōnium**, I, n., *marriage*.
- Matrona**, ae, f., *the river Marne*, in northern Gaul.
- mātūrē**, adv. (*mātūrlus, mātūrlmē*), *early, soon*.
- mātūr-ēscō, ere, -ul**, ripen.
- mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum**, hasten, make haste.
- mātūrus, a, um**, *early; ripe*.
- māxlmē**, superlative adv. (see *māgnopere*), *very greatly, very much, chiefly, most, especially*.
- māxlmus, a, um**, superlative of *māgnus*.
- Māxlmus**, I, m., *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, a Roman general, B.C. 121.
- medeor, ērl**, *remedy, relieve*.
- medlocris, e**, *moderate, ordinary, common*.
- medlocriter**, adv., *in a slight or small degree*.
- Mediomatriei**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Mediomatrici*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.
- mediterrāneus, a, um**, *inland, central, interior*.

- medius, a, um, middle, central ; intermediate ; generally rendered by middle or half-way.**
- Meldi, ōrum, m. plur., the Meldi, a tribe in northern Gaul.**
- mellor, comparative of bonus.**
- Metolūnum, l. n., a town of the Senones in northern Gaul.**
- membrum, l. n., limb.**
- memini, isse, in perf. tenses only, remember, recollect.**
- memoria, ac, f., memory, recollection, remembrance, tradition ; time.**
- Menapii, ōrum, m. plur., the Menapii, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.**
- mendacium, l. n., lie, falsehood, false statement.**
- mēns, mentis, f., mind, intellect.**
- mēnsis, is, m., month.**
- mēnsūra, ae, f., measure.**
- mentio, -ōnis, f., mention.**
- mercātor, -toris, m., trader, merchant.**
- mercātūra, ae, f., trading, traffic, commerce.**
- mer-cēs, -cēdis, f., pay, hire.**
- Mercurius, l. m., Mercury, one of the Roman gods.**
- mereō, ēre, ul, itum, and mereor, ēri, itus sum, deserve, win, earn ; serve.**
- meridiānus, a, um, of midday, of noon.**
- meridiēs, ēi, m., midday, noon ; the south.**
- meritum, l. n., service, merit, desert ; fault.**
- Messala, ae, m., Marcus Valerius Messala, consul B.C. 61.**
- mēttor, lri, mēnsus sum, measure, measure out, distribute.**
- Metlosedum, l. n., a town in northern Gaul.**
- Mētiūs, l. m., an envoy of Cæsar's.**
- metō, ere, messui, messum, reap, cut grain.**
- metus, ūs, m., fear.**
- mens, a, um, my, mine.**
- mil-es, -itis, m., soldier, man ; as collective, the soldiers, soldiery.**
- militāris, e, military, of war.**
- millia, ae, f., (military) service.**
- milie, indeclinable adj. ; in plur., milia, inum, n. ; thousand.**
- Minerva, ae, f., Minerva, a Roman goddess.**
- minimē, adv., superlative of parum, by no means, very little ; least.**
- minimus, superlative of parvus.**
- minor, comparative of parvus.**
- Minucius, l. m., Lucius Minucius Basilus, one of Cæsar's officers.**
- min-uō, ere, -ui, -itum, lessen, diminish, decrease ; settle ; ebb.**
- minus, adv., comparative of parum, less ; not ; not very, not so well.**
- miror, āri, ātus sum, wonder at, wonder.**
- mirus, a, um, wonderful, strange, surprising.**
- miser, era, erum, wretched, poor, miserable.**
- misericordia, ae, f., pity, mercy, clemency.**
- misror, āri, ātus sum, bewail, deplore, lament.**
- missus, ūs, m., sending, despatch.**
- mitis, e, gentle ; superl. adv., mitissimē, gently, mildly.**
- mittō, ere, misi, missum, send, despatch ; hurl, throw.**
- mōbilis, e, fickle, changeable.**
- mōbilitās, -tātis, f., fickleness ; quickness, activity.**
- mōbilit̄er, adv., easily.**
- moderor, āri, ātus sum, manage, check, control, restrain.**
- modestia, ae, f., self-control, moderation.**
- modo, adv., only, but, merely ; just, but now, but recently.**
- modus, l. m., measure, amount ; fashion, style, manner, kind, sort.**

- moenla, lum, n. plur., walls, fortifications.**
môlēs, ls, f., mass; dyke, dam.
molestē, adv., grievously; moleste ferre, to be annoyed, be vexed.
môlimentum, l, n., trouble, difficulty.
molltus, a, um, from molo.
mollō, ire, ivl. itum, soften, lessen; make easy.
mollis, e, weak, yielding, changeable, not firm; smooth, level.
mollitia, ae, f., weakness, feebleness.
mollitlēs, ēl, f., weakness, lack of endurance.
mol-ō, ere, -ul, -itum, grind.
mōmentum, l, n., weight, influence, importance.
Mona, ae, f., an island in the Irish channel.
moneō, ēre, ul. itum, warn, advise, remind, urge.
mōns, montis, m., mountain; mountain range; hill.
mora, ae, f., delay.
morbus, l, m., disease, sickness.
Morini, ōrum, m. plur., the Morini, a tribe in the north of Gaul.
morior, mori, mortuus sum, die.
Moritasgus, l, m., a chief of the Senones.
moror, āri, ātus sum, delay, wait, stay, linger; hinder, retard.
mors, mortis, f., death.
mortuus, a, um, from morior.
mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, way; in plur., habits, character.
Mosa, ae, m., the Meuse, a river in north-eastern Gaul.
mōtus, ūs, m., movement, motion, change; uprising, disturbance, revolt.
moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, move; influence.
mulier, -eris, f., woman.
mūllō, -ōnis, m., muleteer, mule-driver.
multitū-dō, -dinis, f., large number, great number, large body, multitude; number, amount; the common people.
multō, āre, āvi, ātum, fine; deprive.
multum, adv. (plūs, plūrimum), much, often, very.
multus, a, um (plūs, plūrimus), much; in plur., many; w. dies or nox, far advanced; multo as adv., much, far.
mūlus, l, m., mule.
Munātinus, l, m., Lucius Munatius Plancus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
mundus, l, m., world, universe.
mūnimentum, l, n., fortification, defence.
mūnlō, ire, ivl. itum, fortify, protect, defend, secure; w. iter, build, make.
mūnltō, -ōnis, f., fortification, construction; fortified works, defences.
mūn-us, -eris, n., duty, task, service; gift, present.
mūralls, e, of a wall, used for or from walls, mural.
mūrus, l, m., wall.
mūsculus, l, m., shed, penthouse, covered hut.
mutilus, a, um, maimed, broken.
mūtō, āre, āvi, ātum, change.

N.

- nactus, a, um, from nanciscor.**
nam, conj., for, now.
Nannēlus, l, m., a leading man of the Helvetii.
Nannetes, um, m. plur., the Nannetes, a tribe at the mouth of the Loire.
namque, conj., for.
nanciscor, l, nactus or nactus sum, find, get, come upon, obtain, secure.

- Nantuātes**, um, m. plur., *the Nantuates*, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.
- Narbō, ōnis**, f., a town in the southern part of the province.
- nāscor**, 1, **nātus** sum, *be born, be sprung from, arise, be bred; of metals, be found.*
- Nasum**, ae, m., a leader of the Suebi.
- nātālis**, e, *of birth; dies natalis, birthday.*
- nātiō, -ōnis**, f., *race, people, tribe, nation.*
- nātivus**, a, um, *natural.*
- nātūra**, ae, f., *nature, character.*
- nātus**, a, um, *from nascor.*
- nātus, is**, m., *birth.*
- nauta**, ae, m., *sailor.*
- nauticus**, a, um, *naval, nautical.*
- nāvālis**, e, *naval, of ships.*
- nāvicula**, ae, f., *small boat, skiff.*
- nāvigātiō, -ōnis**, f., *sailing, navigation, voyage.*
- nāvigium**, 1, n., *ship, vessel.*
- nāvigō, āre, āvi, ātum**, *sail.*
- nāvis**, is, f., *ship, boat, vessel; navis longa, warship; navis oneraria, transport.*
- nāvō, āre, āvi, ātum**, *do energetically; operam navare, do one's best or utmost.*
- nē**, conj., *that not, lest; w. verbs of urging, asking, etc., not to; w. verbs of hindering, from; w. verbs of fearing, that, lest; w. subj. standing for imperative, not.*
- nē**, adv., *not; ne...quidem, not even.*
- ne**, enclitic interrogative particle, in direct questions untranslated; in indirect questions, *whether; necne, or not.*
- nec**, see **necue**.
- necessarius**, a, um, *necessary, urgent, pressing; critical; m. as subst., connection, intimate friend, relative; necessariō, abl. as adv., of necessity, unavoidably.*
- necesse**, indecl. adj., *necessary, inevitable; necesse est, often to be rendered by must, can but.*
- necessitas, -tatis**, f., *necessity, need; urgency, exigency; interest.*
- necessitū-dō, -dinis**, f., *intimacy, close friendship.*
- necne**, conj., *or not.*
- necō, āre, āvi, ātum**, *kill, put to death.*
- necubi**, conj., *that nowhere.*
- nefarius**, a, um, *wicked, atrocious, infamous.*
- nefas**, n. indecl., *wrong, crime.*
- neg-legō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum**, *neglect, slight, disregard; overlook, be indifferent to.*
- negō, āre, āvi, ātum**, *deny, say...not; refuse.*
- negōtior, āri, ātus** sum, *do business, carry on business.*
- negōtium**, 1, n., *business, enterprise; task, trouble, difficulty; dare negotium, instruct.*
- Nemetes**, um, m. plur., *the Nemetes*, a German tribe on the Rhine.
- nēmō (nēmōnis)**, m., gen. and abl. *not in use, no one, nobody.*
- nēquāquam**, adv., *by no means.*
- neque**, or sometimes **nec** before consonants, adv. and conj., *and not, nor; when repeated, neither...nor.*
- nēquiquam** or **nēquidquam**, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*
- Nervicus**, a, um, *of or with the Nervii.*
- Nervius**, a, um, *Nervian, of the Nervii.*
- Nervii, ōrum**, m. plur., *the Nervii*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.
- nervus**, 1, m., *sineu; strength, vigor, power.*
- neu**, see **neve**.
- neuter, tra, trum**, *neither; in plur., neither side.*
- nēve** or **neu**, or **not**, and **that not**, and **not to, nor.**
- nex, neclis**, f., *death.*

nihil, *n.* indecl. *nothing*; *acc.* as *adv.*, *not at all*.

nihilum, *l. n.*, *nothing*; **nihillo**, *abl.* as *adv.*, *nore, no, w. comparatives*.

nimis, *adv.*, *too*.

nimis, *a. um.*, *excessive, too great*.

nisi, *conj.*, *if not, unless, except*.

Nitiobroges, *um. m. plur.*, *the Nitiobroges, a tribe on the Garonne*.

nitor, *l. nixus and nixus sum*, *rely on, w. abl.*; *strive, endeavor*.

nix, *uivis, f.*, *snow*.

nobilis, *e.*, *noble, of high birth*; *well-known*; *m. as subst.*, *a noble*.

nobilitas, *-tatis, f.*, *high birth*; *the nobility, the nobles*.

nocēō, ēre, nī. itum, *harm, injure, do harm to, molest, w. dat.*; *part. nocēns, -entis, guilty*.

noctū, *abl.* as *adv.*, *by night*.

nocturnus, *a. um.*, *by night, in the night, nightly*.

nōdus, *l. m.*, *joint*.

nōlō, nolle, nōlul, *be unwilling, not wish*; *in imperative, do not*.

nōmen, *-minis, n.*, *name*; *reputation, prestige*; *in abl.*, *under the name or pretence of, as, on account*.

nōminātīm, *adv.*, *by name*.

nōminō, āre, āvī, ātūnī, *name, call, mention*.

nōn, *adv.*, *not, no*.

nōnāgintā, *ninety*.

nōndum, *adv.*, *not yet*.

nōnnihil, *adv.*, *somewhat*.

nōnnūllus, *a. um.*, *some*.

nōnnunquam, *adv.*, *sometimes*.

nōnus, *a. um.*, *ninth*.

Nōrēla, *ac. f.*, *chief town of the Norici*.

Nōricus, *a. um.*, *Norican, of the Norici, a tribe living inland north of the Adriatic*.

nōs, *plur. of ego*.

nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtūn, *learn, become acquainted with*; *in perf.*, *know*; *part. nōtus, a. um.*, *known, well-known, familiar*.

nostr, *tra, trum*, *our*; *m. plur.* as *subst.*, *our men, troops or forces*.

nōtita, *ac. f.*, *knowledge, acquaintance with*.

novem, *nine*.

Novlodūnum, *l. n.*, (1) *a town of the Suessones*; (2) *a town of the Aedui*; (3) *a town of the Bituriges*.

novitas, *-tatis, f.*, *novelty, strangeness*.

novus, *a. um.*, *new, fresh*; *in superlative, latest, last, rear*; **novae res**, *political change, change of government, revolution*.

nox, *uocis, f.*, *night*.

noxa, *ac. f.*, *crime, offense*.

nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *marry*.

nūdō, āre, āvī, ātūnī, *bare, expose*; *strip, clear*.

nūds, *a. um.*, *uncovered, naked, unprotected, bare*.

nūllus, *a. um.*, *no, none*; *in gen. dat. and abl.* supplies cases of *nemo, no one*.

num, *interrogative particle expecting negative answer, not translated*.

nūmen, *-minis, n.*, *divinity, divine power*.

numerus, *l. m.*, *number*; *amount*; *account*; *in numero, in the light, as*.

Numida, *ac. m.*, *Numidian, from the north coast of Africa*.

nummus, *l. m.*, *coin, money*.

nunquam, *adv.*, *never*.

nunc, *adv.*, *now*.

nunquam, *adv.*, *never*.

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātūnī, *announce, report, bring word, tell*.

nūntius, *l. m.*, *messenger*; *news, report, message, tidings*.

nūper, *adv.*, *lately, recently*.

nusquam, *adv.*, *nowhere*.

nūtus, ūs, m., nod, beck; gestures, signs.

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., on account of, because of, for; quum ob rem, why.

obacratūs, a, um, indebted; m. as subst., debtor.

ob-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum throw out, carry.

ob-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, attend to.

oblūtus, ūs, m., destruction.

ob-ilelō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, place in the way, throw up, set, oppose; expose; pass., lie opposite, be in the way.

oblātus, a, um, from offero.

obliquē, adv., obliquely.

obliquus, a, um, slanting, oblique.

ob-lyscor, i, -lītus sum, forget, w. gen.

obsecrō, āre, āvi, ātum, entreat, beseech.

obsequentia, ac, f., compliance, regard.

obseruo, āre, āvi, ātum, keep, observe, regard, follow; watch, note.

ob-ses, -sīdis, m., hostage.

obsessio, -ōnis, f., siege, blockade.

ob-sīdeō, ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, besiege, blockade, beset.

obsīdlō, -ōnis, f., siege, blockade; pressure.

obsignō, āre, āvi, ātum, seal.

ob-sistō, ere, -stiti, resist, withstand, w. dat.

obstinātē, adv., steadily, firmly, persistently.

ob-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum, bind, put under obligation.

ob-struō, ere, -struxī, -strūctum, barricade, close.

obtemperō, āre, āvi, ātum, submit to, obey, w. dat.

obtestor, āri, ātus sum, implore, call upon.

ob-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, hold, possess, occupy, maintain.

obtuli, from offero.

ob-venlō, ire, -veni, -ventum, fall to, be assigned to; encounter.

obvlam, adv., in the way, to meet, w. dat.

occāslō, -ōnis, f., opportunity, time; surprise.

occāsus, ūs, m., setting; solis occasus, sunset, the west.

oc-eldō, ere, -eldi, -cāsum, set; fall, be slain.

oc-eldō, ere, -eldi, -cīsum, slay, kill.

occultātō, -ōnis, f., concealment.

occultē, adv., secretly.

occultō, āre, āvi, ātum, hide, conceal.

occultus, a, um, concealed, hidden, secret; in or ex occulto, in secret.

occupātō, -ōnis, f., engagement, occupation.

occupō, āre, āvi, ātum, seize, get possession of; occupy, engage; cover.

oc-currō, ere, -curri(-cencurri), -cursum, fall in with, meet, come upon, find; resist; provide for; occur.

occurrō, āre, āvi, ātum, rush upon, charge.

Ōceanus, l, m., (often with mare), the Ocean.

Ocelum, l, n., a town on the eastern side of the Alps.

ocelus, adv., quickly, swiftly.

octāvus, a, um, eighth.

octingenti, ac, a, eight hundred.

octo, eight.

octōdecim, eighteen.

Octodūrus, l, m., a town of the Veragri, in the Alps.

octōgintā, eighty.

octōni, ac, a, eight at a time, eight each, eight.

oculus, l, m., eye.

- oddi, isse, perf. w. pres. meaning, hate.**
- odium, I, n., hatred.**
- of-fendō, ere, -fendi, -fensum, hurt, wound; cause harm or mishap.**
- offensio, -ōnis, f., wounding, hurting.**
- offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum, present, offer, hold out, give, afford, render; put in one's way or power.**
- officium, I, n., service, duty, allegiance.**
- Ollovlcō, -ōnis, m., a king of the Nitobroges.**
- o-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, neglect, give up, leave; throw away.**
- omniū, adv., altogether, in all; w. negatives, at all; w. numerals, only.**
- omnis, e, all, every, whole.**
- onerārius, a, um, for burdens; navis oneraria, a transport.**
- onerō, āre, āvi, ātum, load.**
- on-us, -eris, n., burden, weight, bulk; cargo, freight.**
- opera, ae, f., work, exertion; pains, attention; services, aid, agency; operam dare, take pains, see to it.**
- opiniō, -ōnis, f., opinion, impression, idea; expectation, anticipation; reputation.**
- oportet, ēre, oportuit, impersonal verb, it behoves, it is necessary; render freely by ought.**
- oppidānus, a, um, of a town; m. plur. as subst., townspeople.**
- oppidum, I, n., town.**
- op-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, oppose; pass., lie in the way.**
- opportūnē, opportunely, conveniently.**
- opportunitas, -tatis, f., fitness; convenience, suitable or favorable nature, convenient opportunity, advantage.**
- opportūnus, a, um, opportune, convenient, advantageous.**
- op-primō, ere, -pressi, -pressum, overwhelm, crush, surprise; burden, weigh down.**
- oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., assault, attack; mode of attack.**
- oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātum, attack, assault, storm.**
- (ops), opis, f., help, aid; in plur., resources, power, strength.**
- optimē, adv., superlative of bene, well, excellently.**
- optimus, a, um, superlative of bonus, best, very good, most excellent.**
- optō, āre, āvi, ātum, desire; perf. part. as adj., optātus, a, um, desirable, acceptable.**
- op-us, -eris, n., work, fortification, fortifying, structure; trade, handicraft; opere w. munitus, by art; quanto opere, how much, how greatly, as much as; tanto opere, so much, so earnestly, so vigorously; magno opere, see magnopere.**
- opus, n. indecl., need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need.**
- ōra, ae, f., shore, coast.**
- ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., speech, address, words, statement, appeal.**
- ōrātor, -tōris, m., ambassador.**
- orbis, is, f., circle; orbis terrarum, the whole world.**
- Orcynia, ae, f., a name given by Greek writers to the Hercynian forest.**
- ōr-dō, -dinis, m., rank, row, course, tier; grade, class; arrangement, order.**
- Orgetor-Ix, -ixis, m., a leading man of the Helvetii.**
- orior, iri, ortus sum, rise, arise, spring, be born; spring up, begin, start; part. oriens, -entis, as adj., rising; oriens sol, sunrise, the east.**
- ōrnāmentum, I, n., ornament, honor.**
- ōrnō, āre, āvi, ātum, adorn, distinguish; supply, equip, furnish.**

orō, āre, āvl, ātum, pray, beg, entreat.

ortus, a, um, from orior.

ortus, ūs, m., rising.

ōs, ōris, n., face, mouth.

Osismi, ōrum, m. plur., the Osismi, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

osten-dō, ere, -di, -tum, show, point out, explain, declare, state; reveal, unmask, display.

ostentātiō, -ōnis, f., show, display; boastfulness, pride; pretence, deception.

ostentō, āre, āvl, ātum, show, display, exhibit, parade.

ōtium, l, n., rest, leisure, quiet.

ōvum, l, n., egg.

P.

P., an abbreviation for Publius.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, f., foraging.

pābulātor, -tōris, m., forager

pābulor, ārl, ātus sum, forage.

pābulum, l, n., fodder, forage.

pācō, āre, āvl, ātum, subdue, reduce; part. pācātus, a, um, as adj., peaceful, quiet.

pactum, l, n., manner, way; quo pacto, how.

Padus, l, m., the Po, a river in Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy).

Paemāni, ōrum, m. plur., the Paemāni, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

paene, adv., almost.

paenit-et, ēre, -ult, impersonal. w. acc. of person and gen. of thing, render by be sorry, regret.

pāgus, l, m., district, canton.

palam, adv., openly, publicly.

palma, ac, f., palm, hand.

pal-ūs, -ūdis, f., marsh, swamp, fen.

palūster, tris, tre, marshy.

pandō, ere, pandi, passum, spread out, outstretch; in pass. w. capillus, be dishevelled.

pār, paris, equal, like, the same; a match.

parcē, adv., sparingly.

parcō, ere, peperci, parsum or parclum, spare, w. dat.; be economical.

parēns, -entis, m. and f., parent.

parentō, āre, āvl, ātum, avenge, w. dat.

pārcō, ēre, ul, itum, obey, submit, w. dat.

parlō, ere, peperci, partum, get, acquire, secure, win.

Parisi, ōrum, m. plur., the Parisii, a tribe in northern Gaul on the Seine.

parō, āre, āvl, ātum, prepare, get ready, arrange; procure, get, acquire; part. parātus, a, um, as adj., ready, prepared.

pars, partis, f., part, portion, share; quarter, direction, side; party; way, point, respect.

partim, adv., partly; when repeated, often rendered by some... others.

partior, iri, itus sum, divide.

partus, a, um, from pario.

parum, adv., (minus, mininē), little, too little, not much.

parvulus, a, um, very small, slight, trifling, insignificant; ab parvulis, from early childhood.

parvus, a, um, (minor, minimus), small, trifling.

passim, adv., in all directions.

passus, a, um, from pando or patior.

passus, ūs, m., pace (five feet); one thousand paces make one mille.

pate-faciō, ere, -feci, -factum, open, throw open.

pate-flō, -fieri, -factus sum, pass. of patefacio.

pateō, ēre, ul, extend, spread out; be open, stand open; part. patēns -entis, as adj., open, exposed.

pater, -tris, m., father; in plur. forefathers, ancestors.

patienter, adv., patiently.

patientia, *ae*, *f.*, endurance, patience, forbearance.

patior, *I*, **passus sum**, suffer, allow, permit; bear, endure, withstand.

patrius, *a*, *um*, of one's fathers, ancestral.

patrōnus, *I*, *m.*, patron, lord.

patruus, *I*, *m.*, uncle (on father's side).

pauci, *ae*, *a* (sing. not in Caesar), few, but few.

paucitas, *-tātis*, *f.*, small number.

paulatim, *adv.*, gradually, by degrees; gently.

paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time.

paulō, *adv.*, a little, slightly, somewhat.

paululum, *adv.*, very slightly, a very little.

paulum, *adv.*, a little.

pāx, *pācis*, *f.*, peace.

peccō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, do wrong, commit a wrong.

pect-us, *-oris*, *n.*, breast.

pecūnia, *ae*, *f.*, money.

pec-us, *-oris*, *n.*, cattle; flesh, meat.

pedālis, *e*, measuring a foot, a foot thick.

ped-es, *-itis*, *m.*, foot-soldier; in plur., infantry.

pedester, *tris*, *tre*, on foot, on or by land; of infantry.

peditātus, *ūs*, *m.*, infantry.

Pedius, *I*, *m.*, Quintus Pedius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

pējor, **pējus**, (comparative of *malus*), worse.

pellis, *is*, *f.*, skin, hide; sub **pellibus**, in tents.

pellō, *ere*, **pepull**, **pulsum**, drive, dislodge, repulse, defeat, rout.

pendō, *ere*, **pependi**, **pēnsum**, weigh; pay.

penes, *prep.* *w.* *acc.*, in the power or hands of.

penitus, *adv.*, completely, utterly.

per, *prep.* *w.* *acc.*, through; by means of, by; by way of, over, along; by reason of; **per se**, by or in one's self, so far as (he was) concerned.

per-agō, *ere*, **-ēgi**, **-āctum**, finish, bring to an end.

perangustus, *a*, *um*, very narrow.

per-ciplō, *ere*, **-cēpi**, **-ceptum**, get, acquire; hear, hear of, learn; gain, reap.

percontatiō, *-ōnis*, *f.*, inquiry.

per-currō, *ere*, **-curri** (**-eucurri**), **-cursum**, run along.

per-cutiō, *ere*, **-cussi**, **-cussum**, hit, strike down.

per-discō, *ere*, **-didici**, learn thoroughly, master.

per-dō, *ere*, **-didici**, **-ditum**, ruin; part. **perditus**, *a*, *um*, as adj., abandoned, desperate.

per-ducō, *ere*, **-dūxi**, **-ductum**, carry or bring over, bring; prolong; carry, make.

perendinus, *a*, *um*, after tomorrow.

per-eō, **-ire**, **-ii** (**-ivi**), **-itum**, perish, be killed.

perequitō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, ride through, ride about.

perexiguus, *a*, *um*, very small.

perfacilis, *e*, very easy.

per-ferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, endure, bear, submit to; carry, convey, report.

per-ficiō, *ere*, **-fēci**, **-fectum**, carry out, finish, accomplish, bring about; build, make.

perfidia, *ae*, *f.*, faithlessness, treachery.

per-fringō, *ere*, **-frēgi**, **-frāctum**, break through.

perfuga, *ae*, *m.*, deserter.

per-fuglō, *ere*, **-fūgi**, flee, escape; desert.

perfugium, *I*, *n.*, refuge, place of refuge.

per-gō, *ere*, **-rēxi**, **-rēctum**, proceed, advance.

- perlelltor**, *ārl*, *ātus sum*, *run risk*, be exposed to danger; try, make a test.
- periculōsus**, *a*, *um*, dangerous.
- periculum**, *I*, *n.*, danger, risk; test, trial, attempt.
- peritus**, *a*, *um*, skilled, experienced, familiar, *w. gen.*
- perlātus**, *a*, *um*, from *perfero*.
- per-legō**, *ere*, *-lēgi*, *-lēctum*, read through.
- per-luō**, *ere*, *-lul*, *-lūtum*, wash; in pass., bathe.
- perināgnus**, *a*, *um*, very large.
- per-maneō**, *ēre*, *-mānsi*, *-māsum*, continue, remain, persist, abide.
- per-misceō**, *ēre*, *-miscui*, *-mixtum* (*-mistum*), mix, mingle.
- per-mittō**, *ere*, *-misi*, *-missum*, give up, yield, entrust, leave; allow, grant permission, permit.
- per-moveō**, *ēre*, *-mōvi*, *-mōtum*, move, influence, induce; arouse, alarm, excite.
- per-mulceō**, *ēre*, *-mulsi*, *-mulsum*, soothe, calm, quiet.
- perniciēs**, *ēl*, *f.*, destruction.
- perpauci**, *ae*, *a*, very few.
- perpendiculum**, *I*, *n.*, plumb-line.
- per-petior**, *I*, *-pessus sum*, endure, suffer.
- perpetuus**, *a*, *um*, continuous, unbroken, solid; perpetual, lasting; whole, entire; incessant; in *perpetuum*, for ever; *abl.* as *adv.*, *perpetuō*, for ever, constantly, uninterruptedly.
- per-quirō**, *ere*, *-quisivi*, *-quistum*, inquire into or about.
- per-rumpō**, *ere*, *-rūpi*, *-ruptum*, break through, break, force a way or passage or entrance.
- per-scribō**, *ere*, *-scripsi*, *-scriptum*, write out, report, describe fully.
- per-sequor**, *I*, *-secūtus sum*, pursue, follow up; avenge; attack.
- perseverō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, persist.
- per-solvō**, *ere*, *-solvi*, *-solutum*, pay.
- per-spiciō**, *ere*, *-spexi*, *-spectum*, see, see through; perceive, understand; observe, examine, inspect, survey; learn, ascertain, find out, become acquainted with.
- per-stō**, *āre*, *-stiti*, *-stātum*, persist, abide, be firm.
- per-suadeō**, *ēre*, *-suāsi*, *-suāsum*, persuade, induce, prevail on, convince, *w. dat.*
- perterreō**, *ēre*, *ui*, *litum*, terrify, frighten, alarm; in pass., be panic-stricken; dismay, demoralize.
- per-timēscō**, *ere*, *-timui*, fear greatly, be much afraid.
- pertinācia**, *ae*, *f.*, obstinacy.
- per-tineō**, *ēre*, *-tinui*, *-tentum*, extend, reach, stretch; lead, tend, have a tendency; concern, relate, belong to.
- pertuli**, from *perfero*.
- perturbātiō**, *-ōnis*, *f.*, alarm, confusion, panic.
- perturbō**, *āre*, *avi*, *ātum*, throw into confusion, disconcert, disturb, alarm; in pass., be at a loss.
- per-vagor**, *ārl*, *ātus sum*, roam about.
- per-venlō**, *ire*, *-vēni*, *-ventum*, come, reach, arrive.
- pēs**, *pedis*, *m.*, foot; *pedibus*, on foot, by land; *pedem referre*, to fall back, retire, retreat.
- pet-ō**, *ere*, *-ivi*, *-itum*, ask, request; seek, ask for, beg, sue for; make for, aim at, attack.
- Petrocorii**, *ōrum*, *m. plur.*, the *Petrocorii*, a tribe in south-western Gaul on the Garonne.
- Petrōnīus**, *I*, *m.*, *Marcus Petronius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.
- Petrosidius**, *I*, *m.*, *Lucius Petrosidius*, the standard-bearer of one of Caesar's legions.
- phal-anx**, *-angis*, *f.*, phalanx, column, compact body.
- Pictōnes**, *um*, *m. plur.*, the *Pictōnes*, a Gallic tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

- pletās, -tātis, f.**, *duty or devotion (to country), patriotism.*
- pllum, I, n.**, *javelin, spear.*
- pllus, I, m.**, *a manipule or division of a Roman legion; the senior centurion of the first manipule was chief centurion of the legion.*
- pllna, ae, f.**, *parapet, battlement.*
- Pirustae, ārum, m. plur.**, *the Pirustae, a tribe in Illyricum.*
- plscis, ls, m.**, *fish.*
- Pisō, -ōnis, m.**, 1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso, a Roman legatus, slain by the Tigurini, B.C. 107; 2. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, grandson of the above, consul B.C. 58, and Caesar's father-in-law; 3. Marcus Piso, consul B.C. 61; 4. an Aquitanian of rank.*
- plx, plcis, f.**, *pitch.*
- placeō, ēre, ul, itum, please, w. dat.**; *placet, impersonal, it is decided, (one) resolves.*
- placidē, adv.**, *calmly, quietly.*
- plācō, āre, āvi, ātum, appease.**
- Plancus, I, m.**, *Lucius Munatius Plancus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- plānē, adv.**, *clearly; quite, altogether.*
- plānltlēs, ēl, f.**, *plain, level ground.*
- plānus, a, um, level, flat.**
- plēbēs, or plēbs, plēbls, f.**, *the common people.*
- plēnē, adv.**, *entirely, completely.*
- plēnus, a, um, full, complete.**
- plērique, plēraque, plēraque.** *the most, the majority, the greater number.*
- plērumque, adv.**, *generally, usually, in most cases.*
- Pleumoxii, ōrum, m. plur.**, *the Pleumoxii, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*
- plumbum, I, n.**, *lead; plumbum album, tin.*
- plūrimum, adv.**, *most, very much.*
- plūrimus, a, um, superlative of multus, most, very much, very many.**
- plūs, plūris, comparative of multus, more; in plur., several, many.**
- pluteus, I, m.**, *screen, moveable breastwork, defence.*
- pōculum, I, n.**, *drinking-cup.*
- poena, ae, f.**, *penalty, punishment; satisfaction.*
- poenitet, see paenitet.**
- poll-ex, -leis, m.**, *thumb.*
- polliceor, ēri, itus sum, promise, make a promise.**
- pollicitatō, -ōnis, f.**, *promise, offer.*
- Pompēlus, I, m.**, *Pompey, 1. Cneius Pompeius, consul B.C. 55, proconsul of Spain B.C. 54-50. 2. Cneius Pompeius, an interpreter with the Roman army.*
- pond-us, -eris, n.**, *weight.*
- pōnō, ere, posui, positum, place, set, station; w. castra, pitch; rest, base, make dependent; lay down; in pass., be situated, be dependent.**
- pōns, pontis, m.**, *bridge.*
- poposci, from posui.**
- populātō, -ōnis, f.**, *ravaging, raid.*
- populor, āri, ātus sum, ravage, lay waste, devastate.**
- populus, I, m.**, *people, nation.*
- por-rigō, ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, stretch forward; part. porrēctus, a, um, as adj., extended.**
- porrō, adv.**, *further, moreover.*
- porta, ae, f.**, *gate.*
- portō, āre, āvi, ātum, carry, bring, convey.**
- portōrlum, I, n.**, *customs duty, toll, tax.*
- portus, ūs, m.**, *harbor, port.*
- poscō, ere, poposci, ask for demand.**
- positus, a, um, from pono.**
- possessō, -ōnis, f.**, *possession, occupation; in plur. lands.*
- pos-sideō, ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, possess, hold.**
- pos-sidō, ere, -sēdi, -sessum, seize, occupy.**

- possum, posse, potui**, be able, can, be possible; be powerful or strong, have weight or influence.
- post**, 1. adv., afterwards, after; 2. prep. w. acc., after, behind.
- postea**, adv., afterwards; hereafter.
- posteaquam**, conj., after, when.
- posterus**, a, um, next, following; m. plur. as subst., descendants, posterity.
- post-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum**, postpone, set aside, disregard.
- postquam**, conj., after, when.
- postrēmō**, adv., finally, lastly, at last.
- postridie**, adv., the next day, on the morrow.
- postulātum**, I, n., demand.
- postulō, āre, āvi, ātum**, ask, ask for, demand, require.
- potēns, entis**, partic. of **possum**, powerful, influential.
- potentātus**, ūs, m., supremacy, chief power, leading position.
- potentia**, ae, f., power.
- potestas, -tātis**, f., power, control; opportunity, chance, permission.
- potior**, Irl. **Itus sum**, get control or possession of, gain, obtain, w. abl. or gen.
- potius**, comparative adv., rather, sooner, more.
- potui**, from **possum**.
- prae**, prep. w. abl., in comparison with; on account of, for.
- praecūsus**, a, um, sharpened at the end, pointed.
- praebeō, ēre, ui, itum**, furnish, afford, give, cause.
- prae-caveō, ēre, -cāvi, -cautum**, take precautions, be on one's guard.
- prae-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum**, excel, surpass.
- prae-ceps, -cipitis**, headlong; abrupt, steep.
- praeceptum**, I, n., order, instructions, injunction.
- prae-ciplō, ere, -cēpi, -cep-tum**, order, instruct, give instructions; anticipate.
- praecipitō, āre, āvi, ātum**, fling, hurl.
- praecipuē**, adv., especially.
- praecipuus**, a, um, special, particular.
- prae-clūdō, ere, -clūsi, -clūsum**, close, barricade.
- praecō, -ōnis**, m., herald.
- Præconinus**, I, m., Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- prae-currō, ere, -curri (-en-curri), -cursum**, hasten on before; anticipate.
- praeda**, ae, f., plunder, booty.
- praedicō, āre, āvi, ātum**, announce, declare, assert, boast.
- praedor, āri, ātus sum**, plunder, get plunder, pillage.
- prae-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum**, construct in front, carry out.
- praefectus**, a, um, from **prae-ficio**.
- praefectus**, I, m., officer, commander (especially of cavalry), prefect.
- prae-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum**, place before, prefer, esteem more highly; **se praeferre**, to surpass, outdo.
- prae-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum**, put or set over, place in command of, give charge of, w. acc. and dat.
- prae-figō, ere, -fixi, -fixum**, fix before, place at the edge.
- praemet-uō, ere, -ui**, be anxious, fear.
- prae-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum**, send in advance, send on before, send forward.
- praendūm**, I, n., reward, prize.
- praeoccupō, āre, āvi, ātum**, seize beforehand, seize, take possession of.
- praeoptō, āre, āvi, ātum**, prefer.
- praeparō, āre, āvi, ātum**, prepare or get ready beforehand.

- prae-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum,** place or set over, put in command of, w. acc. and dat.
- prae-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum,** break off, snap; part. **prae-ruptus, a, um,** as adj., abrupt, precipitous.
- prae-saeplō, ire, -saepi, -saepitum,** block up, barricade.
- prae-scribō, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum,** prescribe, direct, dictate.
- praescriptum, i, n.,** bidding, dictation.
- praesens, -entis, partic. of praesum,** present, instant, in person.
- praesentia, ae, f.,** the present; presence; in **praesentia,** for the moment, at the time.
- prae-sentiō, ire, -sēsi, -sēsum,** learn of or find out beforehand, have foresight.
- praesertim, adv.,** especially, particularly.
- praesidium, i, n.,** guard, garrison, (protecting) force; protection, support, escort.
- praestō, adv.,** at hand; **praesto esse,** to meet.
- prae-stō, āre, -stiti, -stitum or -statum,** exhibit, show, display; discharge, do; excel, be superior, w. dat.; **praestat,** impersonal, it is better.
- prae-sum, esse, -fui, be over, be at head of, have command of; be in charge of, hold; w. dat.**
- praeter, prep. w. acc.,** beyond, past; except, besides; contrary to.
- praeterea, adv.,** besides, moreover.
- praeter-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum,** pass over, pass by; part. as adj., **praeteritus, a, um,** past; n. plur. as subst., the past.
- praeter-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** let go by, let pass, lose; pass over, neglect.
- praeterquam, adv.,** except.
- praetor, -tōris, m.,** commander; praetor, a Roman magistrate.
- praetōrius, a, um,** of a commander or praetor; **praetoria cohors,** body-guard.
- prae-ūrō, ere, -ussi, -ūstum,** burn at the end or point.
- prae-vertō, ere, -verti, -versum,** anticipate, prevent, w. dat.
- prāvus, a, um,** poor, wretched; wicked, vicious, perverse.
- precēs, um, f. (sing. defective and not found in Caesar),** prayers, entreaties.
- premō, ere, pressi, pressum,** press, press hard; crowd; harass, oppress.
- prendō, ere, prendi, prēsum,** seize, grasp.
- pretium, i, n.,** price.
- (prex), **preciis, f.,** see **preces.**
- pridie, adv.,** the day before, on the previous day.
- primipilus, i, m.,** chief centurion; see **pilus.**
- primō, adv.,** at first.
- primum, adv.,** first, in the first place; **cum or ubi primum,** as soon as; **quam primum,** as soon as possible.
- primus, a, um,** superlative of **prior,** first, foremost, in the van; in **primis,** especially.
- prin-ceps, -cipis, first, chief,** leading; m. as subst., leading man, leader, chief.
- principatus, ūs, m.,** leadership, chief position, first place, lead.
- prior, ius, comparative, former,** earlier; in front; first (of two).
- pristinus, a, um,** former, previous; of former days, old-time.
- prius, comparative adv.,** earlier, sooner; **prius...quam,** before, w. negatives until.
- priusquam, conj.,** before.
- privatim, adv.,** privately, as individuals, as private persons.
- privatus, a, um,** private, individual, personal; m. as subst., a private person, individual.

- prō**, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; on behalf of, for; instead of, in place of, as; in return for; in accordance with, according to; in proportion to, in comparison with; considering, in view of; as far as concerned.*
- probō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *prove; test, put to the test; approve of, favor, recognize, think highly of.*
- prō-cēdō**, ere, -cessi, -cessum, *go forward, advance.*
- Proculus**, I, m., *Caius Valerius Proculus, a Romanized Gaul of rank.*
- proclīnō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *bend forward; res proclīnātū, a falling cause.*
- prōcōn-sul**, -sulis, m., *proconsul, an ex-consul in charge of a province.*
- procul**, adv., *at a distance.*
- prō-cumbō**, ere, -cumbi, *bend or slope forward, incline; lie down, fall, sink, lodge.*
- prōcūrō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *attend to, have charge of.*
- prō-eurrō**, ere, -eurrī (-curri), -cursum, *run or rush forward, rush out, charge.*
- prōd-eō**, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum, *go forth, come out, advance.*
- prōdesse**, from *prosum*.
- prōditō**, -ōnis, f., *treachery, treason.*
- prōditor**, -tōris, m., *traitor.*
- prō-dō**, ere, -didi, -ditum, *give forth, publish, report; hand down, bequeath, transmit; betray.*
- prō-dūcō**, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead forth or out, bring out; pro-long, protract.*
- proellor**, āri, ātus sum, *fight.*
- proellum**, I, n., *battle, engagement, fighting, fight.*
- profectiō**, -ōnis, f., *departure.*
- profectus**, a, um, from *proficiscor*.
- profectus**, a, um, from *proficelo*.
- prō-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *bring forth, bring out.*
- prō-ficiō**, ere, -feci, -fectum, *gain advantage, gain, effect; advance.*
- pro-fiescor**, I, -fectus sum, *set out, depart, start, go, proceed.*
- prō-fiteor**, ēri, -fessus sum, *declare, state openly, offer, profess, avow.*
- prōfligō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *rout, put to flight.*
- prō-fluō**, ere, -flūxi, *flow forth, rise.*
- pro-fuglō**, ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, *flee, escape.*
- prōgnātus**, a, um, *sprung, descended; m. as subst., descendant.*
- prō-gredior**, I, -gressus sum, *go forward, come forth, advance, proceed, go.*
- prohibeō**, ēre, ul, itum, *restrain, keep, prevent, hold, hinder, cut off; protect.*
- proinde**, adv., *therefore.*
- prō-jeciō**, ere, -jēci, -jectum, *throw down or away, hurl, fling; abandon, renounce.*
- prōlātus**, a, um, from *profero*.
- prōmineō**, ere, ul, *lean forward.*
- prōmiscuē**, adv., *promiscuously, indiscriminately.*
- prō-mittō**, ere, -misi, -missum, *let grow; part. prōmissus, a, um, as adj., long, flowing.*
- prōmontōrium**, I, n., *headland, promontory.*
- prō-moveō**, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *move forward, advance.*
- promptus**, a, um, *ready, alert.*
- prōnē**, adv., *bending forward*
- prōnūntiō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *state publicly, declare, tell, announce; give notice, give orders, make proclamation.*
- prope**, adv. (*propius, proximē*), *near; nearly, almost; also as prep. w. acc., near.*
- prō-pellō**, ere, -puli, -pulsum, *drive off, repel, dislodge, defeat.*
- properō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *hasten.*

- propinquitas, -tatis, f.,** neighborhood, vicinity, nearness, proximity; relationship, kinship.
- propinquus, a, um, near, close;** related; m. as subst., relative, kinsman.
- propior, ius, comparative, nearer;** see **proximus**.
- proplus, adv.,** see **prope**.
- prō-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, place or set before; display;** set forth, explain, state, disclose; offer, present; promise, propose.
- proplus, a, um, one's own, private, particular;** belonging to, peculiar to; n. as subst., a mark, a sign.
- propter, prep. w. acc., on account of, because of.**
- propterea, adv., on this account, for this reason; propterea quod, because.**
- propugnator, -toris, m., defender.**
- propugnō, āre, āvi, ātum, defend, rush out to fight.**
- propulsō, āre, āvi, ātum, drive off, repel.**
- prōra, ae, f., prow, bow.**
- prō-ruō, ere, -rui, -rutum, pull down, demolish.**
- prō-sequor, i, -secutus sum, pursue, follow; accompany, escort; dismiss, address.**
- prōspectus, ūs, m., view, outlook, sight.**
- prō-spicō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, provide for, take precautions, take care.**
- prō-sternō, ere, -strāvi, -stratum, cast down, destroy.**
- prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prove an advantage, be of service.**
- prō-tegō, ere, -tēxi, -tēctum, cover, protect.**
- prō-terreo, ēre, ui, itum, frighten away, drive off.**
- prōtinus, adv., at once, immediately.**
- prōturbō, āre, āvi, ātum, drive off (in confusion), dislodge.**
- prō-vehō, ere, -vexi, -vectum, carry forward; in pass., be carried, be driven, sail.**
- prō-venlō, ire, -vēni, -ventum, grow up, come up, yield.**
- prōventus, ūs, m., outcome, issue, result.**
- prō-videō, ēre, -vidi, -visum, foresee, have foresight; provide for, secure, procure, make provision; take care, see, arrange.**
- prōvincia, ae, f., province; especially 'the province' of Gallia Transalpina.**
- prōvinciālis, e, of the province.**
- prōvolō, āre, āvi, ātum, rush forth, rush out.**
- proximē, adv., superlative of prope, last, most recently, very lately.**
- proximus, a, um, nearest, next; last, recent; see propior.**
- prudentia, ae, f., foresight, prudence, discretion.**
- Ptiani, ōrum, m. plur., the Ptianii, a tribe of Aquitania.**
- pūb-ēs, -eria, adult, full-grown; m. as subst., adult, full-grown man.**
- pūblicē, adv., publicly, officially, in the name of the state, as a state.**
- pūblicō, āre, āvi, ātum, confiscate.**
- pūblicus, a, um, public, official, of the state or people; in publicum or in publico, in public; res publica, see respublica.**
- Pūblius, i, m., Publius, a Roman praenomen.**
- pudet, ēre, puduit, it shames, w. acc. of person; render freely, (one) is ashamed.**
- pudor, -ōris, m., shame, sense of shame.**
- puer, eri, m., boy, child; a pueris, from childhood.**
- puerilis, e, of a child, of boyhood.**
- pūgna, ae, f., fight, fighting, battle.**
- pūgnō, āre, āvi, ātum, fight; in pass., pugnatur, impersonally, the battle goes on, freely (they) fight.**

pulcher, *chra, chrum*, beautiful, fine.

Pullō, -ōnis, m., *Titus Pulio*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

pulsus, a, um, from **pello**.

pulsus, ūs, m., *stroke, propulsion*.

pulv-is, -eris, m., *dust, cloud of dust*.

puppis, is, f., *stern*.

pūrgō, āre, āvi, ātum, *excuse, clear, free from blame*.

putō, āre, āvi, ātum, *think, believe, hold, consider, suppose*.

Pyrēnaeus, a, um, w. *montes*, the Pyrenees, between Gaul and Spain.

Q.

Q., an abbreviation for **Quintus**.

quā, adv., *where, at which point, by which road*.

quadrāgēni, ae, a, *forty each, forty*.

quadrāgintā, *forty*.

quadrīngenti, ae, a, *four hundred*.

quaerō, ere, quaestvi, quaestum, *ask, enquire, make enquiry; seek, look for*.

quaestio, -ōnis, f., *investigation, enquiry, examination*.

quaestor, -ōris, m., *quaestor*, the officer in charge of the finances of a province or army.

quaestus, ūs, m., *gain, gaining, acquisition*.

quālis, e, of *what sort, what*.

quam, adv., *how; w. comparatives, than; w. superlatives, as...as possible*.

quāmlū, adv., *as long as*.

quamobrem, adv., *why, wherefore*.

quamvis, adv., *however*.

quandō, adv., *at any time, at times, ever*.

quantus, a, um, *how great, how much; as great as, as much as, as; quanto...tanto, by how much...by so much, the...the*.

quān-tusvis, -tavis, -tumvis, *however great, no matter how great*.

quārē, adv., *wherefore, why, for which, on account of which*.

quārtus, a, um, *fourth*.

quasi, conj., *as if*.

quattuor or **quatuor**, *four*.

quattuordecim, *fourteen*.

-que, enclitic conjunction, *and*.

quemadmodum, adv., *how, as*.

queror, I, **questus sum**, *complain, complain of; lament, bewail*.

qui, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that; he who; as coordinating relative, this, he; after idem, as*.

qui, **quae**, **quod**, interrogative adj., *what, which*.

qui, **qua**, **quod**, indefinite adj. or rarely pron., *some, any; anyone*.

quicquam, from **quisquam**.

quicunque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *whoever, whatever, whichever*.

quidam, **quaedam**, **quiddam** or **quoddam**, *a certain one, a certain one, a sort of*.

quidem, adv., *certainly, at least; ne...quidem, not even*.

qui-ēs, -ētis, f., *rest*.

quies, a, um, *quiet, at rest, settled, peaceable*.

quīn, conj., *but that, that, so that not, as not; often best rendered by from, w. verbal in -ing*.

quīn, -lv., *nay, in fact*.

quīnam, **quacūnam**, **quodnam**, *who, which, what*.

quīn-c-unx, -āncis, f., *quincunx; in quincuncem, in the form of a quincunx*.

quīndecim, *fifteen*.

quīngenti, ae, a, *five hundred*.

quīnī, ae, a, *five each, five at a time, five*.

quīnquāgintā, *fifty*.

quīnque, *five*.

quintus, a, um, *fifth*.

Quintus, I, m., *Quintus*, a Roman praenomen.

quis, quae, quid, Interrog. pron., *who, what*; n. quid as adv., *why*.

quis, qua, quid, Indefinite pron., *any one, anything*; n. quid as adv., *in any respect, at all*.

quisplam, quaeplam, quodplam or quidplam, *any one, any*.

quisquam, quidquam or quicquam, *any one, anything, any*.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, *each, each one*; w. superlatives freely rendered by *all*.

quisquis (quaeque), quidquid or quicquid, *whoever, whatever*.

quisvis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, *any one, any, any whatever*.

quô, abl. of qui, as conj., *that, in order that; because*.

quô, abl. of qui, as adv., *by how much, w. comparatives the; for quo minus see quominus*.

quô, adv., 1. Interrog., *whither, where*. 2. relative, *whither, where, to, at or into which*. 3. Indefinite, *somewhere, anywhere*.

quoad, conj., *until, as long as*.

quod, conj., *because, that, in that; as for the fact that, as to, as for; the fact that; quod si, but if, if therefore*.

quominus or quô minus, conj., *so that not; freely rendered by from; w. recuso, to*.

quoniam, conj., *since, as, whereas*.

quoque, conj., *also, too, as well*.

quôqueversus (um), or quôquoversus (um), adv., *in every direction*.

quot, indeclin., *how many*.

quotannis, adv., *yearly, every year*.

quotidianus, a, um, see cotidianus.

quotidie, see cotidie.

quoties, adv., *how often; as often as*.

quum, conj., see cum.

R.

râd-ix, -icis, m., *root (of tree); spur, base, foot (of mountain)*.

râ-dô, ere, -si, -sum, *shave*.

râmus, I, m., *branch, bough*.

rapiditâs, -tâtis, f., *swiftness*.

rapina, ae, f., *plundering*.

rârus, a, um, *scattered, few, in detached groups, in small bodies*.

râsus, a, um, from rado.

ratîo, -ônis, f., *calculation, account, list; method, system, plan, way; theory, science; regard, consideration, thought; reason*.

ratîs, is, f., *raft*.

Raurici, ôrum, m. plur., *the Raurici, a tribe on the Rhine near Switzerland*.

rebellîo, -ônis, f., *renewal of war*.

Rebîlus, I, m., *Cains Caninius Rebîlus, one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

re-cédô, ere, -cessi, -cessum, *withdraw, retire*.

recêna, -entis, *new, recent, late; fresh*.

re-cênsêo, êre, -cênsul, -cênsuum, *muster, review*.

receptâculum, I, n., *refuge, retreat*.

receptus, ūs, m., *retreat*.

recessus, ūs, m., *retreat, opportunity to retreat*.

re-cidô, ere, -cidi, -câsum, *fall back, recoil, befall*.

reciperô, âre, âvi, âtum, *recover, regain*.

re-clipô, ere, -cêpi, -ceptum, *regain, get back; receive, admit; se recipere, (1) recover one's self, recover, (2) retreat, fall back, betake one's self, return*.

recltô, âre, âvi, âtum, *read out*.

reclinô, âre, âvi, âtum, *make to lean; se reclinare, to lean; pass. part., reclinâtus, leaning*.

rectê, adv., *properly, rightly*.

- rēctus**, a, um, *straight*.
recuperō, āre, āvi, ātum, *re-gain, recover*.
recusō, āre, āvi, ātum, *refuse, object to, decline, spurn, repudiate*.
rēda, ae, f., *wagon*.
redāctus, a, um, from *redigo*.
red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give back, return, restore, render, grant, pay*.
redēmp-tus, a, um, from *redimo*.
red-cō, -ire, -ii (-ivī), -itum, *go back, come back, return; decline; be reduced; depend on, be referred to*.
red-igō, ere, -ēgi, -āctum, *re-duce, render, make, bring*.
red-imō, ere, -ēmi, -ēptum, *buy, purchase, obtain; lease, farm*.
redintegrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *re-new, restore, revive*.
reditō, -ōnis, f., *return, returning*.
reditus, ūs, m., *return, returning*.
Redones, um, m. plur., *the Redones, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul*.
re-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead back, bring back, move back*.
referō, *referre*, rettuli (or retuli), relātum, *bring back, carry back, bring; report, announce, tell; refer; pedem referre, retreat, fall back; gratiam referre, show gratitude, make return*.
re-ficō, ere, -fēci, -fectum, *re-pair; refresh, recruit*.
re-fringō, ere, -frēgi, -frāctum, *break in, break open, break*.
re-fuglō, ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, *retreat, flee back, escape*.
Rēginus, i, m., *Caius Antistius Reginus, one of Caesar's lieutenants*.
reglō, -ōnis, f., *region, district, part, country; direction, line*.
rēglus, a, um, *royal*.
rēgnō, āre, āvi, ātum, *rule, reign*.
rēgnum, i, n., *royal power, sovereignty, kingdom*.
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctum, *rule, direct, control, manage*.
re-gredior, i, -gressus sum, *re-treat*.
re-jielō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, *throw or hurl back, drive back, throw aside; cast off, reject*.
re-langnēscō, ere, -langui, *be-come weak, lose energy*.
relātus, a, um, from *refero*.
relēgō, āre, āvi, ātum, *remove, banish*.
relletus, a, um, from *relinquo*.
religlō, -ōnis, f., *religious rite, observance or scruple; religion, religious matter; superstitious beliefs or fancies*.
re-linquō, ere, -liqui, -lictum, *leave, leave behind; abandon, give up; give; allow; in pass., remain*.
reliquis, a, um, *remaining, other, left, else, further, future; generally to be rendered by the rest of*.
re-maneō, ēre, -mānsi, -mān-sum, *remain, remain behind, stay*.
rēm-ex, -igis, m., *rower, oars-man*.
Rēmī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Remi, a tribe in northern Gaul*.
rēmigō, āre, āvi, ātum, *row*.
remigrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *move back, return*.
remulsecor, i, *call to mind, remember*.
re-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *send back, hurl back, give back; relax, weaken, give up, lose; part*.
remissus, a, um, as adj., *mild, not severe*.
remollēscō, ere, *become weak or enervated*.
re-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *remove, send away; withdraw, draw away; part, as adj., remō-tus, a, um, distant, remote*.
remuneror, āri, ātus sum, *re-ward*.
Rēmūs, i, m., *a Roman, one of the Remi*.

rēmus, I, m., oar.

renovō, āre, āvi, ātum, renew.

renūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum, report, bring back word; declare elected.

re-pellō, ere, reppul (or repul), -pulsum, drive back, defeat; ab spe repelli, to be disappointed in a hope.

repente, adv., suddenly.

repentinus, a, um, sudden, hasty; ad. repentinō as adv., suddenly.

re-periō, ere, repperi, -pertum, find, find out, discover; originate.

re-petō, ere, -petivi, -petitum, demand, demand back.

repl-eō, ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, amply supply.

reportō, āre, āvi, ātum, carry back.

reposeō, ere, demand, require.

repraesentō, āre, āvi, ātum, do at once.

repre-hendō, ere, -hendi, -hensum, blame, censure, find fault with.

re-primō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, check, stop.

repudiō, āre, āvi, ātum, reject.

repugnō, āre, āvi, ātum, resist, defend one's self; be an obstacle.

repulsus, a, um, from repello.

re-quirō, ere, -quisivi, -quisitum, require, demand; miss.

rēs, rei, f., thing, matter, affair, circumstance, fact, object, interest, situation; the context will generally suggest a more exact rendering.

resar-ciō, Ire, -tum, repair, make good.

re-scindō, ere, -scidi, -scissum, break down, tear down, destroy.

re-sciō, ere, -scivi, -scitum, learn, find out.

re-scribō, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, transfer, promote, enroll.

reservō, āre, āvi, ātum, keep back, reserve, keep.

re-sideō, ēre, -sedi, remain.

re-sidō, ere, -sedi, settle down, become calm.

re-sistō, ere, -stisti, resist, withstand, hold one's ground, make resistance, w. dat.; part. resis-tens, -entis, as adj., firm, steadfast.

re-spiclō, ere, -spexi, -spec-tum, look back or behind; consider, have regard to.

re-spondeō, ēre, -spondi, -spensum, answer, make answer, reply.

responsum, I, n., answer, reply.

respūblica, respūblicae, f., state, public affairs or interests; often written as two words.

re-spuō, ere, -spui, reject, spurn.

re-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stin-ctum, extinguish.

restit-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, re-store, replace, rebuild, re-establish, renew.

re-tineō, ēre, -tinuei, -tentum, detain, hold, restrain; keep, maintain, preserve; keep back.

re-trahō, ere, -traxi, -trac-tum, bring back (by force).

re-vellō, ere, -velli, -vulsam, tear or wrest away, pull up.

rever-tō, ere, -ti, -sum (chiefly in perf. tenses), return, come back; turn back.

rever-tor, I, -sus sum (chiefly in pres. tenses), return, come back.

re-vincō, Ire, -vinxi, -vinc-tum, bind fast, fasten, make fast, brace.

revocō, āre, āvi, ātum, recall, call back; call away, entice.

rēx, rēgis, m., king.

rhēnō, -ōnis, m., reindeer.

Rhēnus, I, m., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, I, m., the Rhone.

ripa, ae, f., bank.

rivus, I, m., brook, stream.

rōb-ur, -oris, n., oak.

rogō, āre, āvi, ātum, ask, ask for, request; w. sacramento, enlist.

Rōma, ae, f., *Rome*.

Rōmānus, n. um, *Roman*; m. as subst., a *Roman*.

Roscius, l. m., *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rōstrum, l. n., *beak*.

rota, ae, f., *wheel*.

rubus, l. m., *bramble*.

Rūfus, l. m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rūmor, -ōris, n., *rumor, report*.

rūpēs, ls, f., *rock, cliff*.

rūrsus, adv., *again, back again, in turn*.

Rutēni, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ruteni*, a tribe in southern Gaul.

Rutillus, l. m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

S.

Sabinus, l. m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Sabis, ls, m., *the Sabis*, now *Sambré*, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

sacer-dōs, -dōtis, m., *priest*.

sacramentum, l. n., *military oath*.

sacrificium, l. n., *sacrifice*.

saepe, adv. (*saeplus*, *saeplis-simē*), *often*.

saepe-numerō, adv., *often, frequently*.

saepe, ls, f., *hedge*.

saevlō, lre, lvi, lrum, *rage, be violent*.

sagitta, ae, f., *arrow*.

sagittārius, l. m., *archer*.

sagnum, l. n., (*military*) *cloak*.

saltus, ūs, m., *defile, glen, pass*.

sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, welfare, protection*.

Samarobriva, ae, f., a town of the Ambiani, in northern Gaul.

sancilō, lre, sānxi, sānetum, *make a solemn agreement, ratify, enact*; part. *sanctus*, a. um, as adj., *sacred, holy, inviolable*.

sangu-is, -inis, m., *blood*.

sānitās, -tātis, f., *sound mind, sober mind, good sense*.

sānō, āre, āvi, ātum, *remedy, make good*.

Santones, um, or **Santoniorum**, m. plur., *the Santones*, a tribe on the west coast of Gaul.

sānus, n. um, *sound, sane*; **pro sano**, like a discreet man, *sensibly, prudently*.

sup-lō, ere, -lvi, *be wise*.

sarcina, ae, f., in Caesar always in plur., *pack, (personal) baggage*.

sar-clō, lre, -si, -tam, *repair, make good*.

sarmentum, l. n., *fagot*.

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently; tolerably, quite, considerably*; often as subst., *enough, sufficient*.

satis-faciō, ere, -fēci, -factum, *do enough, do one's duty; make amends, satisfy, apologize*.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, f., *apology, excuse*.

saucius, a. um, *wounded*.

saxum, l. n., *stone, rock*.

scāla, ae, f., *ladder*.

Scaldia, ls, m., *the Scaldia*, now *Scheldt*, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

scapha, ae, f., *skiff, small boat*.

scelerātus, a. um, *wicked, villainous*.

scel-us, -eris, n., *crime*.

sceler, adv. (compar. *scelentius*), *skilfully, cleverly*.

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance*.

scindō, ere, scidi, scissum, *tear down, break down*.

sciō, lre, lvi, lrum, *know*.

scorpiō, -ōnis, m., *scorpion*, a machine for hurling missiles.

scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum, *write, state*.

scrobia, ls, m., *ditch, trench*.

scūtum, l. n., *shield*.

seclus, set *seclus*.

sec-ō, āre, -ul, -tum, cut, reap.

sēcrētō, adv., *privately*.

sectiō, -ōnis, f., *booty*.

sector, āri, ātus sum, pursue, follow after.

sectūra, ae, f., mine.

secundum, prep. w. acc., along, according to; besides; next to.

secundus, a, um, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundo flumine, down stream.

secūris, is, f., axe, borne by victors as a symbol of authority.

secus, adv. (compar. **sēcius**), otherwise; nihilo secius, none the less.

secutus, a, um, from sequor.

sed, conj., but.

sēdecim, sixteen.

sēdēs, is, f., seat, abode, settlement.

sēditō, -ōnis, .i., insurrection, rising, revolt.

sēditiosus, a, um, seditious

Sednilius, I, m., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūni, ōrum, m. plur., the Seduni, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.

Sedusii, ōrum, m. plur., the Sedusii, a German tribe.

seg-es, -etis, f., crop; field of grain, corn field.

Sēgni, ōrum, m. plur., the Segni, a German tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

Segontiaci, ōrum, m. plur., the Segontiaci, a tribe in Britain.

Segov-ax, -actis, m., a king ruling in Kent.

Segusiāvi, ōrum, m. plur., the Segusiavi, a tribe in central Gaul.

semel, adv., once; semel atque iterum, more than once.

sēmentis, is, f., sowing of grain.

sēmita, ae, f., path, by-path.

semper, adv., always.

Semprōnius, I, m., Marcus Sempromius. Rutilius, one of Caesar's officers.

senātor, -tōris, m., senator.

senātns, ūs, m., senate.

sen-ex, -is, m., old man.

sēni, ae, a, six each, six.

Senones, um, m. plur., the Senones, a tribe in central Gaul on the Seine.

sententia, ae, f., opinion, view, idea; scheme, purpose; sentence, judgment.

sentiō, Ire, sēnsi, sēsumi, feel, be aware, know, perceive, learn; think, have an idea, hold an opinion.

sentis, is, m., thorn, briar.

sēparātim, adv., separately, by themselves, privately.

sēparō, āre, āvi, ātum, separate; part. as adj., sēparātns, a, um, separate.

septeni, seven.

septentriō, -ōnis, m. (chiefly in plur.), the seven stars of the constellation of the Great Bear; hence the north.

septimus, a, um, seventh.

septingenti, ae, a, seven hundred.

septuāgintā, seventy.

sepultūra, ae, f., burial.

Sēquana, ae, f., the Sequana, now Seine, a river in northern Gaul.

Sēquanus, a, um, Sequanian, of the Sequani; m. as subst., a Sequanian, in plur., the Sequani, a tribe in Gaul north of the province.

sequor, I, secutus sum, follow, pursue; accompany, attend, attach one's self to; result, ensue.

sarmō, -ōnis, m., conversation, intercourse, discussion.

rō, ere, sēvi, satum, sow.

sērō, adv., too late.

Sertōrius, I, m., Quintus Sertorius, a Roman general, who in a time of civil war, held Spain from 80 to 72 B.C.

servilis, e, of slaves, slavish.

serviō, Ire, Ivi, Itum, be a slave, follow blindly, devote one's self to.

- servitūs, -tūtis, f.,** slavery, bondage, subjection.
- Servius, I, m.,** a Roman praenomen.
- servō, āre, āvi, ātum, keep, hold, maintain; watch, save, preserve.**
- servus, I, m.,** slave.
- sescenti, ae, n, six hundred.**
- sēsē, for se, from sul.**
- sēsquipedālis, e, a foot and a half.**
- seu, see sive.**
- sevēritās, -tātis, f.,** strictness, severity, rigor.
- sēvocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call aside.**
- sēvum, I, n.,** tallow.
- sex, six.**
- sexāgintā, sixty.**
- sexcenti, ae, n, see sescenti.**
- Sextius, I, m., 1. Titus Sertius, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. Publius Sertius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.**
- si, conj., if, even if; whether, to see whether.**
- Sibuzātes, um, m. plur., the Sibuzates, a tribe in Aquitania.**
- sic, adv., thus, in this way; so, in such a way; as follows.**
- siccitās, -tātis, f.,** drying up, dryness, drought.
- sicubi, conj., if anywhere.**
- sicut, conj., just as, just like.**
- sicuti, conj., just as, just as if.**
- sid-us, -eris, n.,** star, constellation, heavenly body.
- signifer, eri, m.,** standard-bearer.
- significātiō, -ōnis, f.,** signal, announcement, intimation.
- significō, āre, āvi, ātum, indicate, announce, make known, intimate, show.**
- signum, I, n.,** signal; standard; **signa convertere, to wheel about; signa ferre or inferre, to advance.**
- Silānus, I, m.,** Marcus Silanus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- silentium, I, n.,** silence; **abl. silentio as adv., in silence, silently.**
- Silius, I, m.,** Titus Silius, one of Caesar's officers.
- silvū, ae, f.,** wood, forest.
- silvestris, e, wooded.**
- similis, e, like, similar, w dat. or gen.**
- similitū-dō, -dinis, f.,** resemblance, similarity.
- simul, adv., at the same time; repeated, both...and; simul atque or sometimes simul alone, as soon as.**
- simulācrum, I, n.,** image, figure.
- simulātiō, -ōnis, f.,** pretence, show, deceit, insincerity.
- simulō, āre, āvi, ātum, pretend, feign.**
- simultās, -tātis, f.,** rivalry, feud.
- sine, conj., but if.**
- sincērē, adv., honestly, truthfully.**
- sine, prep. w. abl., without.**
- singulātīm, adv., singly, individually, one by one.**
- singulāris, e, single, one by one, by one's self; extraordinary, unparalleled, admirable, distinguished.**
- singuli, ae, a, one each, one at a time, one by one, singly, several, one.**
- sinister, tra, trum, left; fem. sinistra as subst., left hand (sc. manus).**
- sinistrōsus, adv., to the left.**
- sino, ere, sivi, situm, allow, permit.**
- siquidem, conj., since.**
- situs, ūs, m.,** position, situation.
- sive or seu, conj., or if; repeated, whether...or, either...or.**
- socer, eri, m.,** father-in-law.
- societās, -tātis, f.,** alliance.
- socius, I, m.,** ally.
- sōl, sōlis, m.,** sun; **oriens sol, the east; occidens sol, the west.**
- sōlācium, I, n.,** consolation.
- soldurius, I, m.,** an Aquitanian word for a retainer sworn to die with his leader.

- soleō, ēre, solitus sum, be wont ;**
often best rendered by *usually*.
- solicitō, āre, see sollicito.**
- sōlitū-dō, -dinis, f., solitude, wil-**
derness, desert.
- solertia, ae, f., skill, shrewdness,**
ability.
- sollicitō, āre, āvi, ātum, stir up,**
instigate, urge, tempt, try to bribe,
try to win over.
- sollicitū-dō, -dinis, f., anxiety.**
- solum, l, n., soil, ground ; bottom.**
- solum, adv., only, alone.**
- solus, a, um, alone, only.**
- solvō, ere, solvi, solvum, loose ;**
with or without *naves*, weigh
anchor, set sail.
- sonitus, ūs, m., sound, noise.**
- Sontlates, um, m. plur., the Sonti-**
ates, a tribe of Aquitania.
- sonus, l, m., sound.**
- soror, -ōris, f., sister.**
- sors, sortis, f., lot.**
- spatium, l, n., space, extent ; dis-**
tance, interval ; pause, time.
- speciēs, ēl, f., appearance, form ;**
show, resemblance.
- spectō, āre, āvi, ātum, look,**
face, slope, lie ; look at, consider,
regard.
- speculātor, -tōris, m., spy.**
- speculātōrius, a, um, of a spy.**
for spying, reconnoitring.
- speculator, āri, ātus sum, spy,**
act as spy.
- spērō, āre, āvi, ātum, hope ;**
hope for ; expect.
- spēs, el, f., hope ; in spem venire,**
begin to have hope, entertain a hope.
- spiritus, ūs, m., pride, airs.**
- spoliō, āre, āvi, ātum, strip, de-**
prive, despoil.
- spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.), defect-**
ive noun f. ; in abl., of one's own
accord, by one's self.
- stabilis, ire, ivi, itum, make**
steady or firm.
- stabilitās, -tātis, f., steadiness,**
firmness.
- statim, adv., at once.**
- statiō, -ōnis, f., guard, sentry,**
outpost, picket.
- stat-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, set up,**
fix ; decide, determine, resolve ;
take measures, punish.
- statūra, ae, f., stature, size.**
- status, ūs, m., position, condition,**
state.
- stimulus, l, m., goad, spur, prick.**
- stipendlārius, a, um, tributary ;**
m. as subst., a tributary, vassal.
- stipendium, l, n., tribute.**
- stip-es, -itis, m., stake, post.**
- stirps, stirpis, f., stock, race.**
- stō, āre, steti, statum, stand ;**
abide by.
- stramentum, l, n., straw, thatch ;**
covering, saddle.
- streptus, ūs, m., noise, din, clat-**
ter, confusion.
- structūra, ae, f., gallery, mine.**
- studeō, ēre, ui, strive, be eager**
for, be bent upon ; be devoted to,
pay attention to.
- studiosē, adv., eagerly, zealously.**
- studium, l, n., eagerness, zeal, de-**
votion, energy, enthusiasm ; pur-
suit.
- stultitia, ae, f., folly.**
- sub, prep. (1) w. abl., under, beneath ;**
at the foot of, close by, near to ;
(2) w. acc., under, close to ; of time,
towards, just before.
- subactus, a, um, from subigo.**
- subdolis, a, um, crafty, cunning,**
deceitful.
- sub-ducō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum,**
draw off, lead off ; draw up, haul
up, beach.
- subductiō, -ōnis, f., hauling on**
shore, beaching.
- sub-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum,**
come up, approach ; enter ; under-
go, submit to.
- sub-fodiō, ere, -fodi, -fossam,**
stab from beneath or in the belly.
- sub-igo, ere, -ēgi, -actum,**
force, compel, constrain.

subitō, adv., suddenly.

subitus, a, um, sudden, hasty.

sub-jielō, ere, -jēcl, -jectum, throw from beneath; place below; bring under, subject, expose, force to submit; in pass., lie near, be subject.

sublātus, a, um, from tollo.

sublevō, āre, āvl, ātum, support, raise up; assist, relieve, help.

sublica, ae, f., pile, stake.

sub-luō, ere, -lūtum, wash.

subministrō, āre, āvl, ātum, supply, furnish.

sub-mittō, ere, -misl, -missum, send (to aid), send to one's aid.

sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvl, -mōtum, remove, drive off, dislodge.

sub-ruō, ere, -rul, -rutum, dig under, dig out, undermine.

sub-sequor, I, -secūtus sum, follow (closely), follow up, succeed.

subsidium, I, n., aid, assistance; support; reserves, reinforcement.

sub-sidō, ere, -sēdl, -sessum, remain.

sub-sistō, ere, -stltl, halt, make a stand; hold.

sub-suin, -esse, -ful, be near, be close at hand.

sub-trahō, ere, -trāxl, -trāctum, remove, take away, withdraw.

subvectiō, -ōnis, f., transportation, conveyance.

sub-vehō, ere, -ve tl, -vectum, bring up.

sub-veniō, Ire, -vēnl, -ventum, come to the support of, come to help, aid.

suc-cēdō, ere, -cessl, -cessum, succeed, take the place of, relieve, w. dat.; come close to; come up, advance; be successful.

suc-cendō, ere, -cendl, -cēnsum, set on fire.

successus, ūs, m., approach, advance.

suc-cidō, ere, -cidl, -cisum, cut down.

suc-cumbō, ere, -cubul, -cubitum, give way, succumb, give up under.

suc-currō, ere, -currl, -cursum, run to aid, run up.

sudis, is, f., stake.

sūdor, -ōris, m., sweat; toil, exertion.

Suēbl, ōrum, m. plur., the Suebi, a German tribe on the Rhine.

Suesslōnes, um, m. plur., the Suessiones, a tribe in northern Gaul.

suf-ficiō, ere, -fēcl, -fectum, be sufficient, hold out.

suffrāglum, I, n., vote.

Sugambri, ōrum, m. plur., the Sugambri, a German tribe on the Rhine.

suggestus, ūs, m., platform, tribune.

sul, sibi, sē or sēsē, reflex. pron., himself, itself, themselves; him, it, them; inter se (to, with, from, etc.) one another; per se, of or by one's self, as far as one is concerned.

Sulla, ae, m., a great Roman general and political leader, living from 138 to 78 B.C.

Sulpicius, I, m., Publius Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

sum, esse, ful, be, exist; w. gen., belong to, be a part or mark of.

summa, ae, f., total, sum; chief part, main body; chief control, command, management, control.

summus, a, um, superlative of **superus**, highest, greatest, chief, supreme, very great, very high, extreme, most important, perfect, entire.

sūmō, ere, sūmsl, sūmptum, take, assume; inflict; spend.

sūmptuōsus, a, um, costly.

sūmptus, ūs, m., expense.

superbē, adv., haughtily, arrogantly, arbitrarily.

superior, ius, comparative of **superus**, higher, upper; former, previous; superior, more successful.

- superō, āre, āvl, ātum**, conquer, defeat, overcome, be victorious, prevail; be superior, surpass, overtop; survive.
- super-sedeō, ēre, -sēdi, -ses-sum**, abstain, refrain.
- super-sum, -esse, -ful**, remain, survive.
- suppet-ō, ere, -lvi, -ltum**, be at hand, be at one's service; hold out.
- supplémentum, l, n.**, reinforcements.
- suppl-ex, -lols**, suppliant.
- supplicatō, -ōnis, f.**, thanksgiving.
- suppliciter, adv.**, as suppliants.
- supplicium, l, n.**, punishment, penalty.
- supportō, āre, āvl, ātum**, bring up.
- suprā, adv. or prep. w. acc.**, above, before.
- sus-clipō, ere, -cēpl, -ceptum**, undertake, take on one's self.
- sus-spicō, ere, -spexi, -spec-tum**, suspect; in pass., be an object of suspicion.
- suspicō, -ōnis, f.**, suspicion.
- suspicio, āri, ātus sum**, suspect.
- sustentō, āre, āvl, ātum**, hold out, maintain one's self, sustain, bear up against.
- sus-tineō, ēre, -tinal, -tentum**, sustain, withstand, hold out, bear; check; hold up, rein in, endure, undertake.
- sustull, from tollo.**
- suis, a, um, his, her, its, their; his own, etc.; m. plur. as subst., sui, ōrum**, his (their) friends, comrades, men, countrymen; n. plur. as subst., **sua, ōrum**, his (their) possessions, property.
- T.**
- T.**, an abbreviation for Titus.
- tabernāculum, l, n.**, tent.
- tabula, ae, f.**, list, document.
- tabulātum, l, n.**, story.
- taceō, ēre, ul, ltum**, be silent, be silent about; part. as adj., **tacitus, a, um**, silent.
- tālea, ae, f.**, bar, rod.
- tālis, e, such, of such a sort.**
- tam, adv.**, so.
- tamen, adv.**, still, however, yet; at least.
- Tamesis, is, m.**, the Thames.
- tametsi, conj.**, although.
- tandem, adv.**, at least; in questions, pray.
- tangō, ere, tetigi, tactum**, touch, border on.
- tantopere, adv.**, so much, so earnestly.
- tantulus, a, um**, so trifling, so small.
- tantum, adv.**, only.
- tantummodo, adv.**, only, merely.
- tantundem, adv.**, just so far, just as much.
- tantus, a, um**, so great, so much, such; as great, as much; n. **tantum** as adv., so much, so far; **tanti**, locative, of such value.
- Tarbelli, ōrum, m. plur.**, the Tarbelli, a tribe in Aquitania.
- tardē, adv.**, slowly.
- tardō, āre, āvl, ātum**, retard, check, delay, hinder.
- tardus, a, um**, slow, inactive, dispirited.
- Tarusātes, um, m. plur.**, the Tarusates, a tribe of Aquitania.
- Tasgetius, l, m.**, a man of high rank among the Carnutes.
- taurus, l, m.**, bull.
- Taximagulus, l, m.**, a king ruling in Kent.
- taxus, l, m.**, yew.
- Tectosages, um, m. plur.**, the Tectosages, a branch of the Volcae, a Gallic tribe in the province, which had penetrated into Germany.
- tectum, l, n.**, roof, house.
- tectus, a, um**, from tēgo.
- tegimentum, l, n.**, covering.

- tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctum, cover, hide, protect.
- tēlum, l, n., weapon, missile, dart.
- temerārius, a, um, reckless, rash.
- temerē, adv., rashly, hastily; without cause, without good reason.
- temeritās, -tātis, f., recklessness, rashness, thoughtlessness.
- tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (of chariot).
- temperantia, ae, f., moderation.
- temperō, āre, āvi, ātum, control, restrain, refrain; part. as adj., temperātus, a, um, temperate, mild.
- tempestās, -tātis, f., weather; storm.
- temptō or tentō, āre, āvi, ātum, try; try to force, make an attempt on; tempt.
- temp-us, -oris, n., time, season; occasion, crisis, emergency; reliquum tempus, the future.
- Teneteri, ōrum, m. plur., the Tenceteri, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.
- tendō, ere, tetendi, tēsum or tentum, stretch, stretch out; pitch a tent, encamp.
- tenebrae, ārum, f. plur., darkness.
- teneō, ere, ul, tentum, hold, have, keep, maintain; occupy, comprise; restrain, bind, detain.
- tener, era, erum, tender, young.
- tentō, see temptō.
- tenuis, e, slight, ifling, insignificant; feeble, delicate.
- tenuitās, -tātis, f., feebleness, poverty.
- tenulter, adv., thinly, thin.
- ter, adv., three times.
- ter-es, -etis, round, rounded.
- tergum, l, n., back, rear; tergum vertere, to flee, take to flight.
- terni, ae, a, three at a time, three each, three.
- terra, ae, f., earth, land; ground; country; in terris, in the world.
- Terrasidius, l, m., Titus Terrasidius, an officer with Caesar.
- terrēnus, a, um, of earth.
- terreō, ēre, ul, itum, frighten, alarm, terrify.
- terrītō, āre, frighten, terrify.
- terror, ōris, m., alarm, panic, terror.
- tertius, a, uni, third.
- testāmentum, l, n., will.
- testimōnium, l, n., proof, evidence, testimony.
- testis, is, m., witness.
- testū-dō, -dinis, f., testudo, shelter of overlapping shields; shelter, covered gallery.
- Teutomatus, l, m., king of the Nitobroges.
- Teutonl, ōrum, or Teutones, uni, the Teutones, a German tribe that invaded Gaul about 110 B.C.
- tignum, l, n., beam.
- Tigurīnus, a, um, Tigurine; m. plur. as subst., Tigurīni, ōrum, the Tigurini, one of the four divisions or cantons of the Helvetii.
- timeō, ere, ul, fear, feel or have fear, be anxious, be afraid.
- timidē, adv., timidly; non timide, fearlessly.
- timidus, a, uni, full of fear, frightened, cowardly.
- timor, -ōris, m., fear, alarm, dread, panic, cowardice.
- Titārius, l, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- Titus, l, m., Titus, a Roman praenomen.
- tolerō, āre, āvi, ātum, bear, endure, hold out, sustain.
- tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātum, raise; take away, remove, destroy, do away with, put an end to; in pass., be elated.
- Tolōsa, ae, f., Toulouse, a city in the southern part of the province.
- Tolōsātes, um, m. plur., the people of Toulouse.
- tortmentum, l, n., torture; engine (for throwing missiles).
- torreō, ēre, ul, tostum, scorch.

- tot**, indeclinable, *so many*.
totidem, indeclinable, *as many, the same number*.
tôtus, a, um, *whole, entire, all*; often rendered freely by *entirely, altogether*.
trabs, trabis, f., *beam*.
trâ-dô, ere, -didî, -ditum, *hand over, give up, surrender; pass on; hand down; entrust, recommend; teach, impart*.
trâ-dûcô, ere, -dûxî, -ductum, *lead across, bring over, lead; win over; transfer, promote*.
trâgula, ae, f., *javelin, lance*.
trahô, ere, trâxî, tractum, *drag along, draw*.
trâjectus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.
trâ-jiclô, ere, -jêcl, -jectum, *pierce, strike*.
trânô, âre, âvî, âtum, *swim across*.
tranquillitâs, -tâtis, f., *stillness, calm*.
trâne, prep. w. acc., *across, over, beyond, on the other side of*.
Trânsalpinus, a, um, *Transalpine, beyond the Alps (from Rome)*.
trân-scendô, ere, -scendî, -scensum, *climb over; cross over, board*.
trânsûcô, see **trâdûcô**.
trâns-eô, -ire, -ii (-ivî), -itum, *cross, cross over, pass through, go or come over; migrate; pass, go by*.
trâns-ferô, -ferre, -tull, -lâtum, *bring over, transfer*.
trâns-flgô, ere, -fixî, -fixum, *pierce*.
trâns-fodlô, ere, -fôdl, -fossum, *pierce through*.
trâns-gredlor, l, -gressus sum, *step over or across; cross*.
trânsitus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.
trânsjiclô, see **trâjiclô**.
trânsmarînus, a, um, *beyond the sea, foreign*.
trânsmissus, ūs, m., *passage across*.
trâns-mittô, ere, -misl, -missum, *transport, take across*.
trânsportô, âre, âvî, âtum, *carry, lead, bring or take over*.
Trânsrhênânus, a, um, *living across the Rhine (from Gaul); m. plur. as subst., those across the Rhine*.
trânstrum, l, n., *cross-beam, thwart*.
trânversus, a, um, *cross, transverse, oblique*.
Trebius, l, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus, one of Caesar's officers*.
Trebônîus, l, m., *Caius Trebonius, 1. one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a Roman knight*.
trecentl, ae, a, *three hundred*.
trepldô, âre, âvî, âtum, *hurry, be in a hurry, be in confusion, be alarmed*.
três, tria, *three*.
Trêverl, ôrum, m. plur., *the Treveri, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul, on the Rhine*.
Triboes, um, or **Triboel**, ôrum, *the Triboci, a German tribe on the Rhine*.
tribûnus, l, m., *tribune, (an officer in the Roman army)*.
trib-uô, ere, -ul, -ûtum, *grant, give, bestow, have regard, give credit, do for the sake of*.
tribûtum, l, n., *tribute, tax*.
trlduum, l, n., *space of three days, three days*.
triennî, l, n., *three years*.
trigintâ, *thirty*.
trinl, ae, a, *three at a time, three, triple*.
Trinobantes, um, *the Trinobantes, a tribe in Britain*.
tripertitô, adv., *in three divisions*.
tripl-ex, -lels, *triple, threefold*.
triquetrus, a, um, *triangular*.
tristis, e, *sad, dejected*.
tristitia, ae, f., *sadness, dejection*.

truncus, *I, m., trunk.*

tū, *tul, thou, you.*

tuba, *ae, f., trumpet.*

tueor, *ērl, tūtus (or tultus) sum, protect, guard, keep safe, maintain.*

Tullngi, *ōrum, m. plur., the Tullingi, a German tribe near the Helvetians.*

Tullius, *I, m., Quintus Tullius Cicero, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

Tullus, *I, m., Caius Volcatius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers.*

tum, *adv., then, at that time; cum...tum, both...and, not only...but also.*

tumultuor, *ārl, ātus sum, make an uproar or noise.*

tumultuōsē, *adv., noisily, with much disorder.*

tumultus, *ūs, m., noise, uproar, commotion, disorder; uprising, rebellion.*

tumulus, *I, m., mound, rising ground.*

tunc, *adv., then, at that juncture.*

turma, *ae, f., squadron.*

Turones, *um, or Turoni, ōrum, m. plur., the Turones, a tribe in north-western Gaul.*

turpis, *e, disgraceful, base.*

turpiter, *adv., disgracefully, basely, shamefully.*

turpitū-dō, *-dinis, f., disgrace.*

turris, *is, f., tower.*

tūtus, *a, um, safe, secure; abl. as adv., tūtō (compar. tūtius), safely, in or with safety.*

tuus, *a, um, thy, your.*

U.

ubi, *adv., where; when; ubi primum, as soon as.*

ubicumque, *adv., wherever.*

Ubi, *ōrum, m. plur., the Ubi, a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.*

ubique, *adv., anywhere.*

ulciscor, *I, ultus sum, punish, avenge.*

ūllus, *a, um, any; as subst., any one.*

ulterior, *ius, comparative, further, more remote.*

ultimus, *a, um, superlative, farthest, most remote, last.*

ultrā, *prep. w. acc., beyond.*

ultrō, *adv., beyond; besides, even; of one's own accord, voluntarily, without provocation; ultro citroque, to and fro, hither and thither.*

ultus, *a, um, from ulciscor.*

ululātus, *ūs, m., howling, yell.*

umerus, *I, m., shoulder.*

unquam, *adv., ever.*

ūnā, *adv., at the same time, together, along, jointly.*

unde, *adv., whence, from which or whom.*

undecim, *eleven.*

undecimus, *a, um, eleventh.*

undique, *adv., from all sides, on all sides.*

universus, *a, um, all, the whole, entire, in a body; as subst., all together, the whole body.*

unquam, *adv., ever.*

ūnus, *a, um, one, a single; alone, only; one and the same; ad unum, to a man.*

urbānus, *a, um, of or in the city (i.e. at Rome).*

urbs, *urbis, f., city.*

urgeō, *ēre, ursi, press hard.*

ūrus, *I, m., bison, wild ox.*

Uspetes, *um, m. plur., the Uspetes, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.*

ūstātus, *a, um, customary, common, familiar.*

usque, *adv., quite up to, until, even, to such a degree.*

ūsus, *a, um, from utor.*

ûsus, ūs, m., *experience, use, employment, practice, management, enjoyment; advantage, service; need, necessity; ex usu, of advantage, advantageous; usu venire, to happen, turn out.*

ut, or uti, that, in order that, generally best rendered by infin. w. to; w. verbs of fearing, that not; even if; as; when; seeing that, since; how.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both; m. plur., both sides.

uti, see ut.

ûtilis, e, useful, of use, serviceable.

ûtilitās, -tātis, f., advantage.

ûtor, i, ūsus sum, use, employ, make use of, adopt, show, display, practise, exercise, maintain, avail one's self of, enjoy, have, w. abl.

utrimque, adv., on both sides.

utrum, conj., whether.

uxor, -ōris, f., wife.

V.

Vaculus, i, m., a branch of the Rhine near its mouth.

vacatō, -ōnis, f., freedom, exemption.

vacō, āre, āvi, āturi, be unoccupied, lie waste.

vacuus, a, um, empty.

vadum, i, n., ford; shoal, shallow.

vāgīna, ae, f., scabbard.

vagor, āri, ātus sum, wander, roam about.

valeō, ēre, ul, be strong, be powerful, have weight or influence; avail, be effective.

Valerius, i, m., *Valerius, 1. Caius Valerius Flaccus, governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.; 2. Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman lieutenant, slain in Aquitania about 78 B.C.; 3. Caius Valerius Caburus, with his two sons Procillus and Donnotaurus, Gauls who became Roman citizens.*

Valetiacus, i, m., an Aeduan of rank.

valētū-dō, -dinis, f., health.

vallēs or vallīs, is, f., valley.

vāllum, i, n., rampart, wall.

vāllus, i, m., stake.

Vangiones, um, m. plur., the Vangiones, a German tribe on the Rhine.

varietās, -tātis, f., variety, diversity.

varius, a, um, various, diverse, different.

vāstō, āre, āvi, āturi, lay waste, ravage.

vāstus, a, um, vast, boundless, immense.

vātīcinātīō, -ōnis, f., divination, prophecy.

vectig-al, -ālis, n., tax, tribute; revenue.

vectigālis, e, tributary.

vectōrius, a, um, for carrying; vectorium navigium, a transport-ship.

vehementer, adv., severely, strongly, vigorously, desperately, exceedingly.

vehō, ere, vexi, vectum, carry, bring.

vel, 1. conj., or; vel...vel, either...or; 2. adv., even.

Velānius, i, m., *Quintus Velanius, one of Caesar's officers.*

Vellocasses, um, or Vellocassi, ōrum, m. plur., the Vellocasses, a tribe in northern Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine.

Vellaunodūnum, i, n., a town of the Senones, in central Gaul.

Vellāvi, ōrum, m. plur., the Vellavi, a tribe in southern Gaul, near the province.

vēlōcītās, -tātis, f., speed, swiftness.

vēlōciter, adv., (vēlōcīus, vēlōcissimē), swiftly, quickly.

vēlōx, -ōcis, swift, active.

vēlum, i, n., sail.

velut, adv., just as.

- vênâtîô, -ônîs, f.,** *hunting, hunt, the chase.*
- vênâtor, -tôrîs, m.,** *hunter, huntsman.*
- vên-dô, ere, -dîdî, -dîtum, sell.**
- Venellî, ôrum, m. plur.,** *the Venelli, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*
- Venetî, ôrum, m. plur.,** *the Veneti, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*
- Venetîa, æ, f.,** *the country of the Veneti.*
- Venetîeus, n, um, of or with the Veneti.**
- venîa, æ, f.,** *pardon, favor.*
- venîô, îre, venî, ventum, come.**
- ventîô, âre, âvî, âtum, come often, resort, visit.**
- ventus, l, m.,** *wind.*
- vêr, vêrîs, n.,** *spring.*
- Veragri, ôrum, m. plur.,** *the Veragri, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.*
- Verbligenus, l, m.,** *one of the four cantons or divisions of the Helvetii.*
- verbum, l, n.,** *word; verba facere, speak.*
- Vercassivellaunus, l, m.,** *a leading man among the Arverni.*
- Vercingetor-ix, -îgîs, m.,** *a leader of the Arverni.*
- vereor, êrl, itus sum, fear, be afraid.**
- vergô, ere, incline, lie, face.**
- vergobretus, l, m.,** *the title of the chief magistrate among the Aedui.*
- vêrîsimîls, e, probable, likely.**
- verîtus, a, um, from vereor.**
- vêrô, indeed, in fact; but; often untranslated.**
- versô, âre, âvî, âtum, turn about, change; in pass. as dep., engage in, be occupied or busied, remain, be.**
- versus, ūs, m.,** *line, verse.*
- versus, adv., and prep. w. acc. preceding, towards.**
- Vertîeô, ônîs, m.,** *a Nervian.*
- ver-tô, ere, -tî, -sum, turn; terga vertere, to flee, take to flight.**
- Veraclotius, l, m.,** *an Helvetian of rank.*
- vêrus, a, um, true; right, fair.**
- verûtum, l, n.,** *dart, javelin.*
- Vesontîô, -ônîs, f.,** *a town of the Sequani in eastern Gaul.*
- vesper, erl, m.,** *evening.*
- vester, tra, trum, your, yours.**
- vestigium, l, n.,** *footprint, track; spot; moment.*
- vestîô, îre, lvi, itum, clothe, cover.**
- vestîs, îs, f.,** *clothing, garments.*
- vestîtus, ūs, m.,** *clothing, dress.*
- veterânus, n, um, veteran.**
- vet-ô, âre, -ul, -itum, forbid, order not.**
- vet-us, -erîs, old, former, long-standing, veteran.**
- vexîllum, l, n.,** *flag.*
- vexô, âre, âvî, âtum, harass, annoy; ravage, overrun.**
- via, æ, f.,** *way, road, street, route, journey.*
- vlâtor, -tôrîs, m.,** *traveller.*
- vîcênl, ne, n, twenty each, twenty.**
- vîcêsimus, a, um, twentieth.**
- vîcêls, adv.,** *twenty times.*
- vîcînitâs, -tâtîs, f.,** *neighborhood; as collective, the neighbors.*
- vîels, gen. (nom. not found), f.,** *change; in vicem, in turn.*
- vîctîma, æ, f.,** *victim.*
- vîctor, -tôrîs, m.,** *victor; as adj., victorious, triumphant.*
- vîctôrîh, æ, f.,** *victory, success.*
- vîctus, a, um, from vîco.**
- vîctus, ūs, m.,** *living, mode of living, life; food.*
- vîcus, l, m.,** *village.*
- vîdeô, êre, vîdî, vîsum, see; in pass., be seen, seem, appear, seem good or best.**
- Vienna, æ, f.,** *a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone.*

- vigilla**, *ae. f.*, watch, watching (a watch was one-fourth of the night time).
- viginti**, *twenty*.
- vimen**, *-minis, n.*, twig, willow, osier, wickerwork.
- vinclō**, *ire, vinxi, vinctum, bind*.
- vinculum**, *I. a shortened form of vinculum.*
- vincō**, *ere, vici, vletum, conquer, defeat; overcome, exceed; gain a victory, prevail, carry one's point.*
- vinculum**, *I. n.*, chain; often in plur., prison.
- vindicō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, claim, assert, defend; in libertatem vindicare, assert the liberty of; vindicare in w. acc., punish.*
- vineā**, *ae. f.*, vine-arbor; covered shed, movable shed, vinea.
- vinum**, *I. n.*, wine.
- violō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, do violence to, harm, injure.*
- vir**, *virī, m.*, man; husband.
- virēs**, *lum*, from *vis*.
- vir-gō**, *-ginis, f.*, maiden.
- virgultum**, *I. n.* (only in plur.), brushwood, bushes.
- Viridomarus**, *I. m.*, a leading man of the Aedui.
- Viridovix**, *-icis, m.*, a leader of the Veneii.
- virītim**, *adv.*, man by man, to each.
- Viromandui**, *ōrum, m. plur.*, the Viromandui, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.
- vir-tūs**, *-tūtis, f.*, manliness, valor, bravery, courage; vigor, energy; merit, excellence, good quality.
- vis**, *vim, vi, plur. vires, lum, f.*, force, strength, power; fury, violence, furious attack; vigor, energy, influence; number, quantity; plur., strength, powers.
- visus**, *a, um*, from *video*.
- vita**, *ae. f.*, life, course of life.
- vitō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, avoid, escape.*
- vitrum**, *I. n.*, wood.
- vivō**, *ere, vixi, vletum, live; w. abl., live on.*
- vivus**, *a, um*, alive, living.
- vix**, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly, with difficulty.
- Vocātes**, *um, m. plur.*, the Vocates, a tribe in Aquitania.
- Vocelō**, *-ōnis, m.*, a king of the Noriel.
- vocō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, call, summon, invite.*
- Vocontii**, *ōrum, m. plur.*, the Vocontii, a tribe in the province, near the Alps.
- Volcae**, *ārum, m. plur.*, the Volcae, a tribe in the southern part of the province, with two branches, the *V. Tectosages* and the *V. Arecomici*; a branch of the former of these settled in central Germany.
- Volcātius**, *I. m.*, Caius Volcātius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers.
- volō**, *velle, volui, wish, be willing, desire, want; sibi velle, to want, to mean.*
- voluntārius**, *a, um*, voluntary; *m. as subst., volunteer.*
- voluntās**, *-tātis, f.*, wish, will, desire, inclination; willingness, consent, approval, good will.
- voluptās**, *-tātis, f.*, pleasure.
- Volusēnus**, *I. m.*, Caius Volusenus, a military tribune with Caesar.
- Vorēnus**, *I. m.*, Lucius Vorenus, a centurion with Caesar.
- vōs**, *plur. of tū.*
- Vosegus**, *I. m.*, the Vosges Mountains, in eastern Gaul.
- voeō**, *ēre, vōvi, vōtum, vow.*
- vōx**, *vōcis, f.*, voice, utterance, statement, cry, shout, word.
- Vulcānus**, *I. m.*, Vulcan, the Roman god of fire and metallurgy.
- vulgō**, *adv.*, commonly, generally, everywhere.
- vulgus**, *I. n.*, the common people, the public, general body.
- vulnerō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, wound.*
- vuln-us**, *-eris, m.*, wound.
- vultus**, *ūs, m.*, countenance, expression, look.



Attack on a Walled City.

RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

INTRODUCTORY.¹

I. ORDER OF WORDS.

1. Because of its wealth of inflections, Latin admits much greater freedom of order than English does, without a corresponding loss of clearness.

The order of words in Latin is not, however, purely haphazard, although no invariable rules exist for their position in a sentence; there are certain arrangements which are normal or usual, and which should be varied only for some definite purpose, such as to secure emphasis or to promote euphony.

2. In the normal arrangement of a simple sentence, the subject, followed by its attributes, comes first; the verb comes last, preceded by its modifiers or objects; as,

All these differ from one another in language: Hī omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.

3. This order is often changed, especially in the case of:

(a) **EMPHASIS.**—This is often secured by putting words other than the subject at the beginning of a sentence, or words other than the verb at the end; as,

¹ As these introductory sections are intended chiefly for reference, and find their application in all the exercises that follow, no special exercise has been based upon them.

Greece was freed by the sagacity of one man: Ūnius virī prūdentīā Graecia liberāta est.

Other route had they none: Aliud iter habēbant nūllum.

i. Often, too, emphasis is secured by separating two words in agreement. Antithesis (or emphatic opposition) is frequently expressed by reversing in the second clause the order of the first (*Chiasmus*).

(b) CONNECTION OF SENTENCES.—At the beginning of a sentence are regularly placed words or phrases which refer to the previous sentence or some part of it, and which thus serve as a connecting link, leading from the known to the unknown;¹ as,

Within those woods (just mentioned) the enemy kept themselves in hiding: Intra eas silvas hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant.

The same day envoys came to Caesar: Eōdem diē lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt.

4. (a) The modifiers of a noun.—i. Cardinal numerals, adjectives denoting size and weight, and pronominal adjectives (except possessives) commonly precede; as, *Four days: Quattuor diēs. Large forces: Magnae cōpiae. This part: Haec pars. Without any danger: Sine ullō periculō.*

ii. Ordinal numerals, other adjectives (unless emphatic), genitives and words in apposition commonly follow; as, *The third year: Annus tertius. The Roman people: Populus Rōmānus. Part of the summer: Pars aestātis.*

iii. Where a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the preferred order is adjective, genitive, noun; as, *Immense size of frame: Ingēns corporum māgnitūdō.* This does not apply to the partitive genitive, however; as, *A large part of Gaul: Māgna pars Galliae.*

iv. When two adjectives or two genitives connected by a conjunction modify a noun, it is commonly placed either before both or after both.

When an adjective or a genitive modifies two nouns connected by a conjunction, it commonly precedes both.

¹ To mark this connection Latin constantly uses *qui* for *he* or *is*; see section 172.

(b) **The modifiers of a verb.**—Either the direct object or an adverb directly qualifying the action of the verb is, as a rule, placed immediately before a verb; the indirect object commonly precedes the direct object; and farthest removed of all are adverbial expressions of place, time, cause or means.

(c) **Pronouns.**—i. Relative and interrogative pronouns are regularly the first words in their clause, preceding even a conjunction and (if used adjectively) a preposition; as, *When Caesar was informed of these things*: **Quibus dē rēbus cum Caesar certior factus esset.**

ii. Personal pronouns are apt to be placed in emphatic positions, and where two personal or possessive pronouns occur in the same clause they are generally placed close together.¹

(d) **Adverbs** commonly precede the words they modify. But *quoque* and *quidem* always, and *ferē* generally, follow.

(e) **Prepositions.**—i. These precede the words they govern, with the exception of *cum*, which is regularly suffixed to the ablative of the personal, reflexive and relative pronouns.

ii. A preposition is often separated from its noun by a modifier of that noun; as, *Into the land of the Ædui*: **In Aeduōrum finēs.**

iii. A monosyllabic preposition is often placed between an adjective and its noun; as, *On the other side*: **Alterā ex parte.**

(f) **Negatives** are regularly placed before the word modified. When the whole sentence is negatived, the negative is either connected with the verb, or more often comes at the beginning of the sentence (so regularly when *neque* can be substituted for *and* followed by a negative).

Nē . . . quidem enclose the word or words modified; as, *Not even the first attack*: **Nē primus quidem impetus.**

(g) **Verbs.**—i. The Copula or link verb *esse* is seldom placed at the end of its clause; it is generally followed by some important word or words belonging to the predicate; as, *This side is opposite Gaul*: **Hōc latus est contrā Galliam.** Frequently, however, the copula is omitted.

ii. A dependent infinitive, as a rule, precedes the verb on which it depends; as, *The river can be crossed*: **Flūmen trānsiri potest.**

iii. *Inquam*, *inquit* follow one or more words of the quotation.

¹ The same is true of *quisque* with the reflexive, and of *alius* when doubled.

(h) **Conjunctions.**—i. These are the first words in their own clauses. But they are regularly preceded by a relative pronoun, sometimes by other emphatic or connecting words; as, *If this were done*: *Id sī fieret*.

ii. *Autem*, *enim* and *vērō* never, and *igitur* very seldom, come first in a sentence.

iii. The particles *que*, *ne* (interrogative), *ne* are enclitics;¹ as, *The senate and people of Rome*: *Senātus populusque Rōmānus*.

II. ORDER OF CLAUSES.

5. Noun and Adjective clauses are, as a rule, in the position a noun or adjective of similar value would have.

i. A relative clause, however, very frequently, especially when emphatic, precedes a general antecedent, such as *is* or *hic*; as, *He spoils what he alters*: *Quae mūtāt, ea corrumpit*.

ii. Indirect questions generally follow the verb on which they depend. So also does the accusative and infinitive construction when extended to any length.

6. Adverbial clauses are placed, as a rule, as corresponding adverbial phrases would be.

i. Adverbial clauses that are preparatory to the thought of the principal clause, or express some attending circumstance, regularly either precede the principal clause, or very frequently are inserted in it. Such are the temporal, conditional, causal and concessive clauses.

ii. Adverbial clauses that are explanatory of, or complementary to, the thought of the principal clause regularly follow. Such are the consecutive clauses, and causal sentences where the emphasis lies on the reason advanced.

Final or purpose clauses, on the whole, more frequently follow than precede, the general principle being to place last the clause on which the emphasis falls.

7. Participial clauses generally precede, or are inserted in, the principal sentence, and very seldom follow it as in English; as, *After settling this affair he set sail, having met with suitable weather*: *His cōstitutis rēbus, nactus idōneam tempestātem, solvit*.

¹ Enclitics are unaccented words which are always appended to some other word.

8. In narrative prose the *order of time* is almost invariably observed in the arrangement of the various clauses of a sentence ; as,

The Germans threw away their arms when they saw that their comrades were being slain, and rushed out of the camp: Germānī, cum suōs interfici vidērent, armīs abjectis sē ex castris ējēcērunt.

9. THE PERIODIC STRUCTURE is much commoner in Latin than in English. A period is a complex sentence, whose subordinate clauses are inserted in the principal clause in such a way that the sense and grammatical construction of the whole are incomplete without the final words, upon which also the chief emphasis rests. The example given in section 8 above is a period in the Latin, but not in the English.

i. In the Latin period, the subject of the principal and subordinate clauses should as far as possible be the same. In such cases it should be placed at the beginning of the period, and thus do duty for both clauses ; as, *When Caesar learned that the Suebi had retired to the forest, he determined not to advance farther: Caesar postquam comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius.*

But where a subordinate clause is introduced by a relative with the force of a demonstrative (see section 3, b, footnote), this holds the first place ; as, *When Caesar learned this, he withdrew to Gaul: Quod ubi Caesar comperit, sē in Galliam recēpit.*

III. CONCORDS.

The following are the general rules of agreement :

10. APPPOSITION.—A word placed in apposition with another agrees with it in case ; as,

He persuades Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus: Dumnorigī, frātri Divitiāci, persuādet.

The city of Rome: Urbs Rōma.

i. The possessive may have an appositive in the genitive, especially with *ipse* ; as, *My own fault* : **Mea ipsius culpa.**

ii. The appositive word may agree with an unexpressed subject ; as, *I, Themistocles, have come to you* : **Themistoclēs vēni ad tē.**

11. ATTRIBUTIVE WORDS.—An adjective (including the numerals), a pronoun or a participle agrees in gender, number and case with the word to which it belongs.

i. If it belongs to more than one word, it regularly agrees with the nearest ; as, *It was a matter requiring great effort and labor* ; **Rēs erat multae operae ac labōris.**

12. THE PREDICATE.—(a) The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

i. Where compound or periphrastic forms of the verb are used, the participle follows the rules for predicate adjectives (see b).

ii. (a) Where there is more than one subject, the verb may be plural, or may be singular, agreeing with the nearest and being understood with the others ; as, *The Matrona and Sequana separate the Gauls from the Belgians* : **Gallōs ā Belgis Mātrona et Sēquana dividit.**¹

(b). The verb may also be singular when two singular subjects form but one notion ; as, *A loud din and shouting arose* : **Clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur.** (Cf. 'The tumult and the shouting dies.') So regularly with **Senātus populusque Rōmānus.**

iii. Where the subjects are of different persons and the plural is used, the first person takes precedence, then the second ; as, *Cicero and I are well* : **Ego et Cicerō valēmus.**

iv. For the unemphatic introductory word *there*, and also for *it* when used as an impersonal or representative subject, Latin has no equivalent ; as, *And there were no other ships* : **Neque nāvēs erant aliae.** *It is dangerous to enter* : **Intrāre est periculōsum.**

(b) A predicate adjective (or a participle in the compound tenses of the verb) agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number and case ; as,

¹ In a somewhat similar way a singular noun may agree with the nearer of two adjectives and be understood with the other ; as, *The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions* ; **Legiōnis nōnae et decimae milites.**

Everything was unknown: Omnia erant incōgnita.

The supply seems to be small: Exigua vidētur esse cōpia.

He was informed that the ascent was easy: Certior factus est facilem esse ascēsum.

i. Predicate adjectives are used with the verb *sum*, verbs of *seeming*, *becoming*, and passive verbs of *making*, *thinking*, *calling*.

ii. Where there is more than one subject, the predicate adjective may be either singular or plural, following the number of the verb (see a, ii.).

If it be singular, it will agree in gender with the nearest subject; as, *The cavalry and the charioteers were sent forward: Praemissus est equitātus et essedārii.*

If it be plural, with subjects of different genders, it will be masculine when the subjects refer to living beings, otherwise neuter; as, *Father and mother are dead: Pater et māter mortui sunt. The city and temple were taken: Urbs templumque capta sunt.*

(c) A predicate noun agrees with its subject in case; as,

He found that now Galba was king: Reperiēbat nunc esse rēgem Galbam.

Arriovistus had been called king and friend by the senate: Ariovistus rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus erat.

i. Predicate nouns are used with the verb *sum*, verbs of *seeming*, *becoming*, and passive verbs of *making*, *thinking*, *calling*.

ii. The dative of purpose is used with much the force of a predicate noun (see section 81).

13. PRONOUN AND ANTECEDENT.—A relative or demonstrative pronoun agrees in gender, number and person with the word (termed the antecedent) to which in sense it refers; as,

For many reasons, of which this was the strongest: Multis dē causis, quārum illa fuit iūstissima.

i. But these pronouns by preference agree with a predicate noun rather than with their antecedent ; as, *To Vesontio, which is the largest town* : **Ad Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum m̄ximum.**

ii. A pronoun referring to two or more antecedents in common follows the rules given for predicate adjectives in section 12, b, ii.

N.B.—By a **sense construction**, the number or the gender of predicates and relative pronouns is often determined by the meaning, not the form, of the words to which they refer ; as, *A great throng was hurling weapons* : **M̄gna multitūdō tēla conjiciēbant.** *He sends forward the cavalry to see* : **Equitātum praemittit, qui videant.** *Six thousand men left the camp at nightfall* : **Hominum milia sex primā nocte ē castris ēgressi sunt.**

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

14. After verbs meaning *to say, think, believe, know, perceive, feel*, and the like (*verba sentiendī et dēclārandī*), Latin uses the infinitive with a subject accusative, where in English we have a noun clause introduced by *that* ; as,

They bring back word that the ascent is easy : **Renūntiant facilem esse ascēsum.**

They perceive that the strongest nations have been conquered : **Intellegunt m̄ximās n̄tiōnēs superātās esse.**

15. Rules for the Use of TENSES are as follows :

(a) When the time of the infinitive is the *same* as that of its principal verb, use the *present* infinitive ;

(b) When the time of the infinitive is *prior* to that of its principal verb, use the *perfect* infinitive ;

(c) When the time of the infinitive is *subsequent* to that of its principal verb, use the *future* infinitive ; as,

(a) *He was informed that the legion was being hard pressed* : **Certior factus est legiōnem premi.**

He will see that the legion is being hard pressed : **Vidēbit legiōnem premi.**

(b) *They will think that the Helvetians have moved their camp:* **Existimābunt Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.**

He learned that the Helvetians had moved their camp: **Cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.**

(c) *They think that Caesar will make peace:* **Existimant Caesarem pācem esse factūrum.**

He answered that Caesar would make peace: **Respondit Caesarem pācem esse factūrum.**

Or, to put the rule in another way: let the student imagine himself using the very words uttered or thought, and then use the corresponding tense of the infinitive (the perfect infinitive doing duty for the imperfect,¹ perfect or pluperfect of the original words).

In the above examples, for instance, the words actually uttered or thought would be: (a) *The legion is being hard pressed:* **Legiō premitur**; (b) *The Helvetians have moved their camp:* **Helvētīi castra mōvērunt**; (c) *Caesar will make peace:* **Caesar pācem faciet.**

16. (a) As the infinitive is without personal endings, for *I, we, you* the subject accusatives **mē, nōs, tē, vōs**, should be expressed.

For *he, she, they*, when denoting the same person as the subject of the verb of *saying, thinking*, etc., **sē** will be used; but when denoting a different person, the accusative of *is*, or for greater emphasis **ille**;² as,

They answered that they would make peace with him: **Respondērunt sēsē cum eō pācem esse factūrōs.**

Caesar had decided to keep Dumnorix with him, because he had discovered that he was eager for power: **Caesar Dumnorigem sēcum habēre cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum esse imperiū cōgnōverat.**

(b) In the compound forms of the infinitive containing **esse**, care must be taken to have agreement with the subject accusative in gender, number and case. (See *superātās* in section 14 above.)

¹ For instance, **Dicō urbem obsessam esse, I tell you that the city was being besieged**, for an original **obsūtēbātur**.

² This distinction applies to all uses of the words *him, them*, etc.; for *his* and *their*, **suus** or **ejus** and **eōrum**, respectively, are used.

17. After verbs signifying *to hope, promise, threaten*, and the like, English generally uses the simple infinitive, instead of a noun clause introduced by *that*. In Latin the subject accusative with the *future* infinitive is used in accordance with the above rules (section 15, c); as,

These tribes promise to give hostages: Hae nātiōnēs sē obsidēs datūrās (esse) pollicentur.

18. i. In English *that* is often omitted; as, *He says he will go.*

ii. Not only single verbs, but also phrases, *sciendū et dēclārandū* occur; as, *certiōrem faciō, memoriā teueō, fama est, spem habēō.*

iii. *Esse* is very often omitted in the compound or periphrastic forms of the infinitive.

iv. Verbs of *pretending* are regularly followed by the accusative and infinitive, not, as often in English, by the simple infinitive; as, *They pretend to return home: Domum reverti sē simulant.*

v. Instead of *dicō* followed by a negative, Latin prefers *negō*; as, *He says he can grant no one the right of passing through the province: Negat sē posse iter ulli per provinciā dare.*

vi. Verbs of *saying* and *thinking* (except *inquā* and *crēdō*) are not used parenthetically in Latin as in English; as, *You are, I maintain, mistaken: Errāre vōs dicō. He sends messengers to Kent, which, we have already said, is on the sea: Ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōstrāvimus, nūtiōs mittit.* For the position of *inquā* see section 4, g, iii.

vii. With passive verbs of *saying, thinking, etc.*, the personal construction is used in Latin (but chiefly with *videor*, and the third person of the present, imperfect and future of other verbs); as, *It was said that the Germans had been invited: Germāni arcessitī esse dicēbantur*, not *Germānōs arcessitōs esse dicēbātur*. In the perfect the impersonal construction is used.

viii. *Would have* is expressed by the future participle with *fuisse*; as, *He answered that if there had been any need, he would have come to Caesar: Respondit, si quid opus esset, sēsē ad Caesarem ventūrum fuisse.*

ix. Instead of the future infinitive after verbs of *hoping, posse* with the present infinitive is common.

x. The subject accusative is not infrequently omitted when easily understood from the context; but this should not be imitated by the beginner in Latin.

VERBS WHICH TAKE THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

<i>Announce, report, nūntiō.</i>	<i>Point out, dēmōnstrō, ostendō.</i>
<i>Answer, reply, respondeō.</i>	<i>Promise, polliceor.</i>
<i>Ascertain, learn, cōgnōscō.</i>	<i>Remember, memini.</i>
<i>Believe, crēdō.</i>	<i>Report, bring back word, renūntiō</i>
<i>Deny, negō.</i>	<i>Say, dicō.</i>
<i>Hear, audiō.</i>	<i>Say . . not, negō.</i>
<i>Hope, spērō.</i>	<i>See, videō.</i>
<i>Inform, certiōrem faciō.</i>	<i>Suspect, suspicor.</i>
<i>Know, sciō, cōgnōvī.</i>	<i>Think, existimō, arbitror.</i>
<i>Notice, observe, perceive, animad-</i>	<i>Understand, be aware, intellegō.</i>
<i>vertō, cōspiciō, sentiō.</i>	<i>Write, scribō.</i>

EXERCISE 1.

A.

1. He replied that Caesar had conquered Gaul. 2. He thinks that the Roman leader will easily vanquish the Belgians. 3. We saw that the nights were shorter in Britain than on the continent. 4. The enemy sent ambassadors to Caesar, and promised to give hostages. 5. Word was brought to Caesar that the hill was held by the Roman soldiers. 6. To these envoys Caesar replied that the Gauls had been conquered by the Roman army. 7. The general hears that the enemy are hurling javelins at the soldiers. 8. The enemy, he answered (18, vi.), had been hurling javelins at Caesar's cavalry. 9. He learned from the scouts that all the Belgians had encamped on the other side of that river. 10. It is said (18, vii.) that Caesar set out for Gaul, and defeated the Helvetians on the other side of the river Rhone. 11. To that embassy he replied that he would come to the enemy's camp. 12. It was reported to Caesar that the soldiers would not advance.

B. (Caesar B. G. IV., 20).

1. He had found out that the traders themselves did not visit this harbor. 2. They answered that the summers were early in all these islands. 3. He writes that almost all the tribes have these customs. 4. We ascertained that auxiliaries were being furnished to Caesar. 5. They promised not to furnish ships to Caesar. 6. I hoped to set out for Britain. 7. They bring back word that the larger harbor is not suitable. 8. He denied having summoned anyone. 9. He pointed out that a large part of the winter was left. 10. They believe that this is unknown to almost all. 11. He thought they had set out. 12. We had heard that our enemies had great experience (had had great experience). 13. He hopes to become acquainted with the country. 14. He said that the character of the inhabitants had not been ascertained.

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

19. The present infinitive (active or passive) is often used like the infinitive with *to* in English, to complete the meaning of certain verbs, whose reference would otherwise be incomplete. These verbs are often called *modal* verbs, and the infinitive when so used is termed the *complementary* infinitive.

20. (a) With modal verbs the present infinitive without a subject expressed is used to denote another action or condition of the *same* subject ; as,

They attempt to cross the river : Flūmen trānsire cōnantur.

The wind began to be violent : Saevire ventus coepit.

They are able to defend themselves : Sē dēfendere possunt.

The river can be crossed : Flūmen trānsiri potest.

He was unwilling to leave : Discēdere nōlēbat.

They were compelled to give hostages : Obsidēs dare coācti sunt.

i. A predicate noun or adjective with the complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the modal verb ; as,

We can be useful friends : Possumus ūtilēs esse amīci.

21. (b) With modal verbs the present infinitive with a subject accusative is used to denote the action or condition of a different subject ; as,

They allow the Helvetians to go: **Helvētiōs ire patiuntur.**

He ordered the gates to be closed: **Portās claudī jussit.**

He wished the Germans to be alarmed: **Germānōs timēre voluit.**

He did not wish that place to be unoccupied: **Nōluit eum locum vacāre.**

22. i. **Prohibeō** takes the accusative and complementary infinitive ; as,

They prevent the Germans from crossing: **Germānōs trānsire prohibent.**

ii. Some verbs expressing emotion, such as *doleō* (grieve) and *gaudeō* (rejoice) often take the accusative and complementary infinitive. (See also section 147, ii.)

iii. Where the complementary infinitive is passive, *coeptus sum* is used in place of *coepī*, with the same force ; as, *Javelins began to be hurled:* **Tēla conjici coepta sunt.**

iv. With *jubeō* the subject accusative is sometimes omitted, when obvious from the context ; as, *He gives orders to fortify a camp:* **Castra mūnire jubet.**

v. *Volō*, *nōlō* and *mālō* often take the accusative and infinitive even when the subject is the same, chiefly with *esse* or a passive infinitive ; as, *They did not wish to be put to death:* **Sēsē interfici nōlēbant.**

vi. *Polliceor* and *spērō* are sometimes treated as modal verbs.

vii. Many of the verbs of *will* and *desire* are followed by *ut* and the subjunctive ; so regularly the verbs of *ordering*, except *jubeō*. *Imperō* also may be used with the passive infinitive ; as, *He orders him to be brought back:* **Eum retrahi imperat.** (See section 27.)

viii. This construction is more restricted in Latin than in English. (See especially sections 23 and 27.) But in poetry Latin more nearly approaches English usage, the complementary infinitive being used not only with verbs and phrases which do not ordinarily admit it, but also with nouns and adjectives. The poets also use the infinitive freely to express purpose.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



4.5

5.0

5.6

6.3

7.1

8.0

9.0

10

11.2

12.5

14

16

18

20

22.4

25

28

32

36

40

45

50

56

63

71

80

90

100

112

125

140

160

180

200



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

VERBS WHICH TAKE THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

<i>Allow, patior, sinō.</i>	<i>Forbid, vetō.</i>
<i>Attempt, cōnor.</i>	<i>Hasten, contendō, mātūrō, properō.</i>
<i>Be able, can, possum.</i>	<i>Hesitate, dubitō.</i>
<i>Be accustomed, be wont, cōnsuēvi, soleō.</i>	<i>Order, jubeō.</i>
<i>Be unwilling, nōlō.</i>	<i>Ought, dēbeō.</i>
<i>Be willing, volō.</i>	<i>Permit, patior, sinō.</i>
<i>Begin, incipiō, instituō.</i>	<i>Prefer, mālō.</i>
<i>Began, coepi.</i>	<i>Prepare, parō.</i>
<i>Cease, dēsino, dēsistō.</i>	<i>Prevent, prohibeō.</i>
<i>Compel, cōgō.</i>	<i>Resolve, see decide.</i>
<i>Dare, audeō.</i>	<i>Strive, contendō, nitor.</i>
<i>Decide, determine, cōstituō, dēcernō, statuō.</i>	<i>Try, cōnor.</i>
<i>Desire, cupiō.</i>	<i>Venture, audeō.</i>
	<i>Wish, volō.</i>

EXERCISE 2.

A.

1. The troops began to storm the town. 2. The Helvetians are accustomed to receive, not give, hostages. 3. Stones had begun (22, iii.) to be hurled from all sides against the rampart. 4. Caesar will not permit the Gauls to be crushed. 5. The enemy were unwilling to depart from the Rhine. 6. The cavalry had prevented fires from being made. 7. They will not attempt to cross the rivers. 8. The Germans did not hesitate to engage in battle. 9. The soldiers were ordered to return to the camp. 10. The Romans compelled the enemy to give hostages. 11. He determined to pass the winter there. 12. The Britons will not dare to make war. 13. Caesar was not able to set out. 14. The soldiers were compelled to make a promise to remain at home. 15. We wish him to be a soldier, but he prefers to be a merchant.

B. (Caesar, B. G. IV., 21.)

1. He ordered a warship to be sent in advance. 2. They themselves hasten to set out. 3. He will attempt to conquer the barbarians. 4. We are unable to return home. 5. He had wished to be made king. 6. They do not wish that design to be reported to Caesar. 7. Caesar began to make liberal promises. 8. He promised to disembark. 9. Volusenus was ordered to visit all the states and ascertain these things. 10. He hopes to ascertain this. 11. He orders a fleet to be built and hostages to be given. 12. They could not be compelled to return to him. 13. Several were unwilling to allow the envoys to be heard. 14. He had not ventured to examine the neighboring districts. 15. The barbarians resolved to embrace the alliance of the Roman people and to be faithful to Caesar. 16. The troops can quickly assemble to this place from every quarter.

FINAL CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF PURPOSE).

23. In English the purpose or end of an action is commonly expressed either by the infinitive with *to*, or by a clause introduced by *that* or *lest*; as, *They remained to avoid suspicion*, or *They remained that they might avoid suspicion*.

But in Latin prose the infinitive should never be used to express purpose.

24. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.—One of the commonest modes of expressing purpose in Latin is by *ut* (or *utī*) with the *subjunctive*—in negative clauses *nē*; as,

They remained in order to avoid suspicion: Ut suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant.

He is setting out to attack the enemy's camp: Proficiscitur ut castra hostium oppūgnet.

In order that they may not be (or in order not to be) surrounded by the enemy, they will make a sally: Nē ab hostibus circumveniantur, eruptionem facient.

Outposts are stationed lest a sally be made: Stationēs pōnuntur nē ēruptiō fiat.

25. Rules for the SEQUENCE OF TENSES are as follows:

(a) *Primary* tenses—viz., present, future, and future perfect—are followed by the *present* subjunctive.

(b) *Secondary* (or historical) tenses—viz., imperfect, perfect¹, and pluperfect—are followed by the *imperfect* subjunctive.

Thus the present subjunctive is used where English could use *that . . . may*; the imperfect subjunctive where English could use *that . . . might*.

(For examples see the sentences given in section 24 above.)

26. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.—After certain verbs, especially those of *sending* and *appointing*, relative clauses of purpose are found, *ut* being replaced by *quī*; as,

He sends scouts in advance to choose a suitable place for the camp: Explōrātōrēs praemittit, quī locum idōneum castris dēligant (literally *who are to choose*).

i. Purpose clauses may be introduced also by relative adverbs, such as *ubi*, *unde*, *quō*.

27. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.—After verbs of *urging*, *asking*, *commanding*, *advising*, *persuading*, *striving* (verbs of *will* and *aim*), Latin does not use the infinitive; it regards the following clause as expressive of the end desired, and therefore uses the subjunctive of purpose with *ut* (*uti*) and *nē*; as,

He urges them to take up arms: Hortātur ut arma capiant.

He induced Custicus to seize the chief power: Persuāsit Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret.

They begged of him not to do that: Ab eō petēbant nē id faceret.

¹ The perfect indicative, when translated by *have*, may take primary sequence, but as a rule it is followed by the imperfect subjunctive.

Jubeō and *cōnor* are important regular exceptions to this rule; so also verbs of *striving* and *resolving*, when the subject of both verbs is the same (where English also has the infinitive).

28. i. In clauses of purpose *ut* is not followed by a negative, *nē* being used instead. Hence where *not*, *no one*, *nothing*, *no* (adjectival) and *never* occur, use *nē*, *nē quis*, *nē quid*, *nē quī* (or *quis*) and *nē umquam*; as,

He ordered the gates to be closed that the townspeople might receive no hurt: Portās claudī jussit nē quam oppidānī injūriam acciperent.

He asked him to allow none to cross: Postulāvit nē quōs trānsire paterētur.

ii. A second final clause, if negative, is connected by *nēve* (or *neu*), not by *neque*; as, *He issues orders that they are to hurl their weapons from a distance, and not approach nearer: Prōnūntiat ut procul tēla conjiciant neu propius accēdant.*

iii. When the clause of purpose contains a comparative, *quō* is commonly used in place of *ut*; as, *They ask for reinforcements, that they may more easily withstand the enemy: Subsidiū rogant, quō facilius hostēs sustinēre possint.*

iv. After the historical present either primary or secondary sequence may be used.

v. Certain verbs are used both in the construction given in section 27, and as *verba dēclārāndī* with the accusative and infinitive: as, *He writes to Labienus to build the vessels: Labiēnō scribit ut nāvēs instituat. He writes that he has set out: Scribit sē profectum esse.* So also *moneō* and *persuādeō*. (See section 200.)

vi. With verbs of *asking* and *commanding* the subjunctive sometimes occurs without *ut*. This should not be imitated by the beginner in prose.

vii. In poetry, verbs of *urging* and *asking* are found with the present infinitive. (See section 22, viii.)

viii. Sometimes *ut nē* is found for *nē*, but not in Caesar.

ix. Other modes of expressing purpose exist in Latin, the most important being by means of the gerund and gerundive. (See sections 114 and 119, and also 124.)

x. For verbs of *causing*, see section 33, v.

VERBS WHICH TAKE SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

<i>Advise, moneō, admoneō.</i>	<i>Instruct, praecipiō.</i>
<i>Ask, petō, rogō.</i>	<i>Permit, concēdō, permittō.</i>
<i>Beg, beseech, ōrō, obsecrō.</i>	<i>Persuade, suādeō, persuādeō.</i>
<i>Command, imperō, praecipiō, mandō.</i>	<i>Prevail on, impetrō.</i>
<i>Commission, mandō.</i>	<i>Request, require, petō, rogō, postulō.</i>
<i>Determine, cōstituō, dēcernō, statuō.</i>	<i>Resolve, see determine.</i>
<i>Exhort, hortor, adhortor, cohortor.</i>	<i>Strive, contendō, nitor; so id agō, operam dō.</i>
<i>Incite, instigate, impellō.</i>	<i>Urge, hortor, adhortor.</i>
	<i>Warn, moneō, admoneō.</i>

EXERCISE 3.

A.

1. They sent Caesar into Gaul to carry on war with the Helvetians. 2. The Gauls had sent envoys to Caesar to ask for peace and to beg him not to storm their town. 3. He instructed the cavalry to take possession of the camp, and not (28, ii.) to pursue the enemy. 4. In order to defeat the Britons, he sent forward the cavalry and the slingers to attack them in the rear. 5. Caesar exhorted the soldiers to fight valiantly, lest they should allow the enemy to cross the river. 6. The Gauls sent a messenger to report to their allies that the Roman troops had built a bridge over the river in order to (28, iii.) pursue the enemy more easily. 7. He asked the Helvetians to go forth from these territories. 8. They ordered the bridge to be destroyed in order that no one might be able to cross the river. 9. He warned the soldiers (28, v.) that the Gauls were at hand; he advised us not to leave the camp. 10. He replied that Caesar had praised the soldiers that they might fight the more valiantly. 11. Caesar ordered (*imperō*) his soldiers to press forward and not to hurl any weapon whatever at the enemy.

B. (Caesar, B. G. IV., 22.)

1. He urged Caesar not to demand hostages. 2. On account of the season he advises Caesar to do nothing. 3. In order that he may reach Britain, he orders (*jubeō*) ships of war to be collected. 4. He leaves a garrison to hold the harbors. 5. Lest he should be detained by the wind, he did not delay in these parts. 6. Envoys come to ask Caesar not to make war on the Menapii. 7. He promised to receive them under his protection. 8. In order the more easily (*facilius*) to wage war, he advised the lieutenants to collect transports. 9. They warn Caesar to leave no enemy behind him. 10. To excuse themselves, they point out that they are inexperienced. 11. He gives orders to the Morini to bring the hostages to Britain. 12. He left Cotta in the same harbor to procure ships. 13. In order to carry over a larger number of foot-soldiers he determined to leave the cavalry. 14. That this may not happen, he allots ships to the two legions.

CONSECUTIVE OR RESULT CLAUSES. CLAUSES OF
CHARACTERISTIC.

29. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF RESULT. — Dependent clauses expressing result are in English introduced by *that* or *as to*, following *so* or *such*. In Latin result or consequence is expressed by *ut* (or *utī*) with the subjunctive (in negative clauses by *ut nōn*) ; as,

They advanced with such swiftness that the enemy took to flight :
Eā celeritāte iērunť ut hostēs sē fugae mandārent.

I am not so uncivilized as not to know this : **Nōn tam barbarus sum ut nōn haec sciam.**

30. The tenses of the English and the Latin verbs in clauses of result as a rule correspond ; the Latin imperfect,

however, is generally used for the English past (indefinite) tense, as in the first example in section 29.

31. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT.—After certain verbs, chiefly those of *happening* and *resulting*, clauses introduced by *that* are rendered by Latin consecutive clauses with *ut* or *ut nōn* and the subjunctive; as,

It happened that there was a full moon: **Accidit ut esset lūna plēna.**

The result was that the Germans were summoned: **Factum est utī Germānī arcesserentur.**

32. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.—Clauses of characteristic are introduced by the relative pronoun or relative adverbs. In these clauses the antecedent is referred to as belonging (or not belonging) to a class characterized by a certain quality. The subjunctive (generally akin to the subjunctive of result,¹ but sometimes, as in the fourth example, to the potential subjunctive, see section 136) is regularly used in these clauses; as,

Nor was there anyone who was intent on looting: **Neque fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret.**

But I am not the man to be frightened by danger: **Neque is sum quī periculō terrear.**

There were two roads by which they could leave home: **Erant itinera duo quibus domō exire possent.**

Nor had they any place to which they could retreat: **Neque quō sē recipere habēbant².**

i. This subjunctive of characteristic is especially common after such general phrases of existence as *sunt quī*, *nēmō est quī*, *ūnus est quī*, *sōlus est quī*, *quis est quī?* *nōn is est quī*; also after *dignus*, *indignus* and *idōneus*; as, *He will not be a fit person to be sent:* **Nōn erit idōneus quī mittātur.**

ii. The relative clause of characteristic has sometimes a restrictive force; as, *So far as I know:* **Quod sciam.**

¹ In such cases the relative may often be replaced by the phrase *such* or *such that*.

² By some this is regarded as a relative clause of purpose (section 26, i).

33. i. As *that not* in clauses of result is *ut nōn*, so where *no one, nothing, no* (adjectival) and *never* occur, use *ut nēmō, ut nihil, ut nūllus, ut namquam*; as,

He put the enemy so speedily to flight that no one held his ground at all: **Tam celeriter hostēs in fugam dedit uti omninō resisteret nēmō.**

ii. *Quin* is often found instead of *quī nōn* in relative clauses of characteristic after negative phrases; as, *No one is so brave as not to be disturbed*: **Nēmō est tam fortis quin perturbētur.**

iii. Sometimes the *perfect* subjunctive instead of the *imperfect* is found corresponding to our *past (indefinite) tense*. In such cases either (1) the writer is calling attention to the independent fact rather than dwelling on the relation of cause and effect; or (2) the action is summed up as a single whole, and not regarded as continuing; as, *Our men captured the vessels, so that very few reached land*: **Nostri nāvēs expūgnāverunt, ut perpaucæ ad terram pervēnerint.**

iv. A common use of the consecutive clause is to form with a preceding *fore* (or *futūrum esse*) a substitute for the future infinitive passive, and sometimes also for the future infinitive active, especially with verbs that lack the supine stem; as, *He hoped that Ariovistus would abandon his obstinacy*: **Spērābat fore uti Ariovistus pertināciā dēsisteret.**

v. Verbs of *causing* are followed sometimes by a substantive clause of purpose, sometimes by one of result. Hence the negative is sometimes *nē*, sometimes *ut nōn*.

vi. *Ita* (or *sic*) with *ut* and the subjunctive may express restriction or limitation.

EXERCISE 4.

A.

1. So great a panic seized our soldiers that we did not dare to join battle with the enemy. 2. It happened that no ship reached its destination. 3. We are not so inexperienced as to believe that the Roman people can be conquered by our forces. 4. There is no one but (33, ii.) knows that the Helvetians are marching through our province. 5. Such was the valor of the soldiers that no one withdrew from the ramparts. 6. We have been so taught by our ancestors that we are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages.

7. Caesar said that from these circumstances it had resulted that they roamed about less widely. 8. So great is the scarcity of boats that we cannot cross. 9. He had judged this cavalryman a suitable person (32, i.) to send to Caesar. 10. He crossed the river with such a large body of cavalry that the Germans were terrified. 11. The messengers made answer to Caesar that the bridge had been so bravely defended by the enemy that no portion of the army had been able to cross. 12. There followed storms which (32) prevented the enemy from attempting to attack the camp.

B. (Caesar, B. G. IV., 23.)

1. So suitable was the place that he ordered the soldiers to disembark. 2. So great are the forces of the enemy that nothing can be done. 3. It happened that he met with favorable weather. 4. So swift were the foremost vessels that they reached Britain the fourth hour of the day. 5. So quickly (*celeriter*) do the soldiers embark that in the third watch he gives the signal and orders the anchors to be weighed. 6. It happens that the shore is clear and the tide favorable. 7. He pointed out that a weapon could be thrown to the shore from the ship. 8. He gave orders (*imperō*) that the cavalry should follow him and that the other troops should advance to the higher ground. 9. So slowly is everything done that no one is able to set sail. 10. So rapid is the movement of naval warfare that nothing is more uncertain.

QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

34. A DIRECT QUESTION is a principal clause introduced by

(a) An interrogative pronoun, pronominal adjective or adverb, or

(b) One of the interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōne*, or *num*¹; as,

¹ None of these particles, *-ne*, *nōne* or *num*, should be used when the sentence contains some other interrogative word.

What do they seek? Quid petunt?

Whither are we setting out? Quō proficiscimur?

Do you not see? Nōnne vidēs?

i. -**Ne, Nōnne, Num.** -*Ne* is an enclitic, appended to an emphatic word, which is regularly at the beginning of the question.

-**Ne** asks for information, and is impartial or non-committal; as, *Is he writing? Scribitne?*

Nōnne asks for confirmation of belief, and invites the answer *yes*; as,

Is he not writing? (or He is writing, is he not?) Nōnne scribit?

Num asks for confirmation of disbelief, and invites the answer *no*; as,

Surely he is not writing? (or He is not writing, is he?) Num scribit?

35. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—A subordinate clause introduced by any of the interrogative words mentioned above is called a *dependent* or *indirect question*, and always has its verb in the subjunctive; as,

He asked what they sought: Quaesivit quid peterent.

He asks whither we are setting out: Quaerit quō proficiscāmur.

He wonders what the reason is: Quae causa sit, mirātur.

In English we do not usually consider the clause as a dependent question unless the principal verb is of an interrogative nature, but in Latin it may be a verb meaning *to learn, find out, know, tell, point out, see or decide*; as,

He learns what is being done: Cōgnōscit quae gerantur.

He reported what he had seen: Quae perspexisset renūntiāvit.

We perceived where they were betaking themselves: Animadvertimus quō sē reciperent.

They cannot decide in which direction it flows: In utram partem fluat, iudicāre nōn possunt.

i. -*Ne* and *num* in dependent questions express *whether*, without any difference of meaning; as, *He asked whether they were happy: Quaesivit num beāti essent (or beātine essent).*

36. Rules for the Use of TENSES are as follows :

In indirect questions as a rule the English tenses will be a sufficient guide.¹ The future is represented by the subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (see section 123).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

Primary Sequence.

<i>He asks, learns,</i>	}	<i>Quaerit, cōgnōscit,</i>	}
<i>He will ask, learn,</i>		<i>Quaeret, cōgnōscet,</i>	
<i>what they are doing :</i>	}	<i>quid faciant.</i>	}
<i>what they have done :</i>		<i>quid fēcerint.</i>	
<i>what they did :</i>		<i>quid fēcerint.</i>	
<i>what they will do :</i>		<i>quid factūri sint.</i>	

Secondary Sequence.

<i>He was asking, learning,</i>	}	<i>Quaerēbat, cōgnōscēbat,</i>	}
<i>He asked, learned,</i>		<i>Quaesivit, cōgnōvit,</i>	
<i>He had asked, learned,</i>		<i>Quaesiverat, cōgnōverat,</i>	
<i>what they were doing :</i>	}	<i>quid facerent.</i>	}
<i>what they had done :</i>		<i>quid fēcissent.</i>	
<i>what they did :</i>		<i>quid fēcissent.</i>	
<i>what they would do :</i>		<i>quid factūri essent.</i>	

i. The historical present may take either primary or secondary sequence.

37. After the verbs mentioned in section 35, English abstract nouns such as *size, number, character, reason, time, place*, and many verbal nouns such as *opinion, intention*, are best rendered into Latin by dependent interrogative clauses ; as,

¹ The chief exceptions are : (a) After a primary tense the perfect subjunctive takes the place of the imperfect ; as, *I know what he was doing : Scio quid fēcisset.*

(b) After the perfect tense secondary tenses are used, even where we should expect primary tenses ; as, *I have shown what resources you have : Quae subsidia habēris, exposui.* (This last peculiarity is found sometimes also in clauses of result.)

You see the extent of the danger : Vidētis quantum sit periculum.

He reported his discoveries : Quae cōgnōvisset renūtiāvit.

They had learned the situation of affairs : Quō in locō rēs esset, cōgnōverant.

He could not discover their intentions : Quae factūrī essent, cōgnōscere nōn poterat.

38. DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.—Where two questions are connected by *or*, involving an alternative choice, we have a *disjunctive*, *alternative* or *double* question as opposed to a *simple* question. The first alternative is in Latin regularly introduced by *utrum* (*whether*) or *-ne*, the second by *an* (*or*). Such questions when dependent are of course in the subjunctive ; as,

Does duty or fear weigh more with them ? Utrum apud eōs officium an timor plūs valet ?

They were debating whether it was better to lead their forces against the enemy or to defend the camp. Dēliberābant cōpiāsne adversum hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere praestāret.

39. i. *Or not*, in the direct disjunctive question, is *annōn* ; in the indirect, *neque*.

ii. *Utrum* is often omitted in disjunctive questions, in which case *-ne* is sometimes used for *an* in indirect questions. In simple direct questions also *-ne* is sometimes omitted, especially in impassioned interrogations.

iii. *Yes* and *no* in answers are usually expressed by repeating the verb of the question (with or without *nōn*), or by some other emphatic word, e.g., *certē*, certainly ; *sānē*, to be sure ; *nōn*, no ; *minimē*, by no means.

iv. In indirect questions, *nōnne*, *whether .. not*, is used only after *quaerō*.

v. It is of great importance, but not always easy, to distinguish the dependent interrogative clause from the dependent relative clause with the antecedent omitted, the latter being regularly in the indicative. For instance, in *They could not prevent what had been done*, and *I can go where they can go*, *what* and *where* are to be taken as relatives ; in *They could not tell what had been done*, and *I can find out where they can go*, as interrogatives. After the verbs mentioned in section 35, however, doubtful clauses will generally be interrogative ; after other verbs, generally relative.

EXERCISE 5.

A.

1. Who were leading the forces into our territories? 2. He asked what they wished to be done. 3. He told who had persuaded the soldiers to leave the camp. 4. Caesar had sent horsemen in advance to observe in what direction the enemy were marching. 5. Did you not know that he had asked whether (35, i.) the Roman people would make peace with the enemy? No (39, iii.). 6. Of whom did you ask the date of his return to the city? 7. He sent scouts across the river to ascertain what was going on in the enemy's camp. 8. Are you a Roman soldier or not (38; 39, i.)? What is your reason for coming into these territories? 9. Surely he will not ask whether (38) we have waged war with the Helvetians or not (39, i.)? 10. He could not find out what villages the Gauls had beyond the Rhone, or their size. 11. They wished to learn the strength and the position of the enemy's forces. 12. For what reason did the officers not lead the troops against the enemy to prevent their crossing the river? 13. He sent spies in order to learn with whom the leader of the Gauls had been holding communication.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 24, 25.*)

1. What kind of ship has been sent in advance? 2. With whom were they fighting? 3. Has the plan been discovered? 4. Are they not accustomed to use cavalry? 5. They had ascertained how great was the depth of the sea. 6. He asks where our men will land. 7. He perceives for what reasons we are unable to follow. 8. He observes what ~~real~~ the Romans are accustomed to display. 9. What keeps our men from leaping down into the waves? 10. He pointed out what was keeping our men from advancing. 11. Why do you hesitate? Surely you are not going to retreat? Are you not willing to leap down? 12. He pointed out how great a disgrace they were incurring (had incurred, would incur). 13. He was unable to ascertain the reason for the weapons being hurled. 14. All could see who was bearing the eagle; we cannot see in which hand he carries the eagle.

THE PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

40. The participle is a verbal adjective. In Latin, like the adjective, it is inflected to agree with its substantive, while, like the verb, it has distinctions of voice and tense, and has the same case relations as the verb from which it is formed.

The Present Participle has active force, whether formed from active or deponent verbs; the Perfect Participle when formed from active verbs has passive force, but when from deponents, active force.

41. The *time of the participle* is in Latin relative to that of its principal verb.

(a) The *Present* Participle denotes the *same* time as that of its verb.

(b) The *Perfect* Participle denotes time *prior* to that of its verb.

Hence whenever the English, as is so often the case, uses the present participle to denote something that takes place *before* the action expressed by its main verb, the present participle must not be used in Latin, but either the perfect participle or some equivalent; as,

Returning to the harbor, he found the ships ready: Ad portum reversus (or cum ad portum rediisset), nāvēs parātās invēnit.

Being defeated in battle, they sent envoys: Proeliō superātī, lēgātōs misērunt.

42. THE APPOSITIVE OR CIRCUMSTANTIAL PARTICIPLE.—

The most important use of the participle in Latin is its use in the appositive relation to its substantive to define the circumstances of an action, expressing the relation of *time* or *cause* or (less frequently) of *condition* or *concession*; as,

(a) Present Participle :—*He is slain while fighting bravely* : **Fortissimē pugnāns interficitur.**

They slew Roscius while returning home : **Domum redeuntem (or revertentem) Roscium occidērunt.**

(b) Perfect Participle Passive :—*Being repulsed by the cavalry, they hid in the woods* : **Repulsi ab equitātū, sē in silvās abdidērunt.**

He brought aid to his brother, when hemmed in by the enemy : **Frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium tulit.**

Though thrown into confusion, still they did not retreat : **Perturbāti, tamen pedem nōn rettulērunt.**

He will come if asked : **Rogātus veniet.**

(c) Perfect Participle Deponent :—*Having encouraged the soldiers, he leaped down* : **Cohortātus militēs, dēsiluit.**

Fearing a scarcity of provisions, he returned : **Inopiam frūmenti veritus, rediit.**

Notice that although the English participle is frequently preceded by such words as *while, when, if, though*, the corresponding Latin words are not used.

43. It is generally advisable to render this Latin participle more freely into English, using either

(a) a dependent clause introduced by *while, when, after, as, because, if, although* ; or

(b) the prepositions *on, after*, with a verbal noun, especially the gerund in *-ing* ; or

(c) a coordinate sentence followed by *and* or *but* ; or

(d) a relative clause.

And conversely all such expressions are commonly best rendered into Latin (where possible) by the circumstantial participle. For instance, in place of the English sentences given in section 42, we may have, corresponding to the same Latin sentences :

They slew Roscius while (or as) he was returning home, or, They slew Roscius, who was returning home.

On being repulsed by the cavalry (or, After their repulse by the cavalry), they hid in the woods.

He brought aid to his brother when he had been hemmed in by the enemy, or, who had been hemmed in by the enemy.

Though they were thrown into confusion, still they did not retreat, or, They were thrown into confusion but still did not retreat.

He will come if he is asked.

After he had encouraged the soldiers (or, After encouraging the soldiers) he leaped down, or, He encouraged the soldiers and leaped down.

He returned, because he feared a scarcity of provisions, or, As he feared a scarcity of provisions, he returned.

44. i. Other uses of the Participle are :

(a) As a *substantive*, chiefly in the oblique cases and especially in the plural ; as, *He followed up the fugitives: Fugientēs prōsecūtus est. Opportunity for resting is given to the wounded: Vulnerātis facultās quietis datur.*

Note that *those fleeing, those wounded* is not in Latin *ii fugientēs* or *ii vulnerāti*.

(b) As an *adjective* ; as, *This state was large and flourishing: Haec civitās fuit ampla atque florēns. They thought they were ready: Sē parātōs esse arbitrāti sunt.*

Parātus and many other participles are in fact compared like adjectives.

(c) As a *predicative complement* of certain verbs, especially (a) the present participle with *videō, audiō, faciō*, and other verbs of *perceiving* or *representing* ; as, *He noticed a certain man writing: Animadvertit quendam scribentem* ; and (b) the perfect participle passive with *habēō*, very like the English perfect with *have* ; as, *He sends forward the cavalry which he had collected from the whole province: Equitātum, quem ex omni prōvinciā coāctum habēbat, praemittit.* (See section 182, ii.)

ii. The perfect participle of many deponent verbs appears often to have the force of the present ; for instance, there is no appreciable difference between *arbitrātus* and *existimāns*. Other words so used are *veritus, diffusus, suspicātus, ūsus* ; as, *Suspecting that this would happen, Labienus was advancing, employing the same pretence: Quae fore suspicātus, Labienus eādem ūsus simulatiōne progrediēbātur.* In most cases the perfect is defensible as specifying the cause which leads to subsequent action.

iii. The participle occasionally has its force defined more exactly by the use of *nisi* (*except*), *ut* or *tamquam* (*as if*), *etsi* or *quamquam* (*although*), *utpote* (*inasmuch as*).

iv. The lack of a present participle passive is supplied by a subordinate clause with *dum*, *cum*, or *quī*; that of the perfect participle active (where a deponent verb is not available) by a subordinate verb with *cum*, *sī*, *etsi*, etc., or by the ablative absolute construction (see section 46).

EXERCISE 6.

A.

1. They threw the ambassador into chains while he was attempting to speak. 2. The envoys, after being dismissed, returned home. 3. The cavalry made an attack upon the Gauls, who were scattered and in despair. 4. Thinking the ambassadors would not return, Caesar crossed the river. 5. After encouraging the cavalry the tribunes returned to Caesar. 6. He replied that the Germans would come if asked. 7. Our men attacked the enemy and slew a great number of them. 8. Promising to return in a short time, he followed up the fugitives. 9. He comes upon the soldiers, who are fighting bravely. 10. On his return he found the soldiers engaged in the work. 11. The cavalry, being ordered to cross the river, brought aid to our men, who were resisting with the utmost bravery. 12. He said that the cavalry, though thrown into confusion, still would not retreat.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 25, 26.*)

1. Alarmed by all these things, he began to retreat. 2. We saw the enemy approaching and the soldiers hurling missiles. 3. He will attack our men as they are disembarking (after they have landed). 4. He exhorts his men to follow and leaps into the sea. 5. The ships, after being removed a short distance, are urged forward. 6. Attacking the barbarians, who had been thrown into confusion, they put (them) to flight. 7. An attack was made on our men while they were hesitating. 8. They surrounded Caesar who was fighting vigorously. 9. The boats were filled with soldiers and stationed on the exposed flank. 10. If the troops are driven off and dislodged, they will incur disgrace. 11. While pursuing the enemy they could not keep their ranks. 12. As he leaps down he observes a soldier in difficulty. 13. Though hindered by the shoals, he was still able to reach the island.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

45. In translating into Latin participial phrases (or their equivalents), such as have been described in sections 42 and 43, two difficulties often arise :

(a) The participle required is a perfect participle *active*, which does not exist in Latin (except in the case of deponents) ; as,

Having heard this, he departed.

After receiving hostages, he made peace.

They made an attack and drove the enemy back.

(b) The subject of the verb in the English subordinate clause cannot be brought into direct relation with any single word in the main sentence ; as,

When the arms had been surrendered, he made peace.

Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town.

46. In such cases recourse may generally be had to the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE construction, in which a noun (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement are used, in the ablative case ; as,

Having heard this, he departed : **His rēbus audītis, discessit.**

After receiving hostages, he made peace : **Obsidibus acceptis, pācem fēcit.**

They made an attack and drove the enemy back : **Impetū factō, hostēs reppulērunt.**

When the arms had been surrendered, he made peace : **Trāditis armis, pācem fēcit.**

Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town : **Paucis defēdentibus, oppidum expugnāre nōn potuit.**

47. There is a similar nominative absolute construction in English ; as, *Their arms having been surrendered, he made peace.* But the English construction is of comparatively rare occurrence, and seldom furnishes a suitable translation for the Latin ablative absolute, which should rather be rendered freely, for instance by a change of voice, or according to the methods suggested in section 43, viz. :

(a) a dependent clause introduced by *while, when, after, as, because, if, although* ;

(b) the prepositions *on, after*, with a verbal noun, especially the gerund in *-ing* ; or,

(c) a coordinate sentence followed by *and* or *but*.

48. In the cases described in section 45, we may also have in place of the ablative absolute, *dependent clauses* expressing *time, cause, concession, or condition* ; for instance, in place of the present participle, *cum* with the imperfect subjunctive or *dum* with the present indicative, and in place of the perfect participle, *cum* with the pluperfect subjunctive or *ubi* or *postquam* with the perfect indicative ; as, *Having heard this, he departed* : *Cum haec audivisset* (or *ubi haec audivit*), *discessit.* *Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town* : *Etsi pauci defendebant, oppidum expugnare non potuit.*

i. Where also participles do not exist in Latin, these dependent clauses may replace an English participle ; as, *Being unable to cross the river, they returned* : *Cum flumen transire non possent, revertērunt.*

49. Instead of the participle in the absolute construction, we often find a predicate noun or adjective, without any copula, as the verb *esse* has no present or perfect participle ; as,

They attempt to cross against his will : *Eō invitō transire cōnantur.*

He formed a conspiracy in the consulship of Messala and Piso: **Messalā atque Pisōne cōsulibus conjūratiōnem fēcit.**¹

50. i. The ablative absolute construction is not used with the perfect participle passive of intransitive verbs, that is, of verbs which in the active do not govern an accusative; as,

Having reached the Rhine, they plunged into the river: **Cum ad Rhēnum pervēissent, sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt.** (See sec. 56.)

ii. In the case of the perfect participle of deponent verbs with active force, the ablative absolute is somewhat sparingly used, and chiefly with intransitive verbs; as, *A great storm arose, and almost all the ships were wrecked:* **Māximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflictae sunt.** So also *mortuus, profectus, secūsus.*

iii. It is contrary to Latin usage to have the substantive in the ablative absolute denote the same person or thing as is expressed in the principal clause: as, *When Commius landed they seized him* is not **Commiō ē nāvi ēgressō, eum comprehendērunt**, but **Commiū ē nāvi ēgressum comprehendērunt.**²

iv. *Nisi, ut*, etc. (section 44, iii.), may be used with the ablative absolute.

v. An ablative absolute with the negative is often equivalent to a phrase introduced by *without*: as, *Without losing any time he sets out:* **Nūllō tempore intermissō proficiscitur.**

vi. One ablative absolute may define the circumstances of another; as, *As the ranks were in confusion from hearing the shouting, the rest took to flight:* **Reliqui, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus, terga vertērunt.** An ablative absolute may be connected by a conjunction (e.g., *et, -que*) with another ablative absolute, but not with any other (even an equivalent) construction.

EXERCISE 7.

A.

1. Having settled these matters, he returned. 2. After encouraging the soldiers and giving the signal, he ordered an attack to

¹ Literally *He (being) unwilling; Messala and Piso (being) consuls.*

² Yet Caesar has several instances of the ablative absolute in such cases, often apparently to secure emphasis: e.g., B. G., III. 14, 4; IV. 12, 1; 21, 6; V. 4, 3; 44, 6; VI. 4, 4; 43, 1; VII. 4, 1; 27, 2; 29, 1; 76, 3. This should not be imitated.

be made. 3. He set out against Caesar's will, after promising to return shortly. 4. As no enemy prevented (him), he led the legion back in safety. 5. On this being done, the Roman soldiers, drawing their swords, made an attack upon the enemy. 6. In the consulship of Marius many were put to death without a hearing. 7. After that assembly had been dismissed, the chief men returned to Caesar. 8. After he heard the prisoner he dismissed him (50, iii.). 9. When this battle was fought, the enemy, being impressed by the bravery of our soldiers, sent envoys to Caesar. 10. Having reached their territories, he set fire to all their villages and (then) returned to the camp.

B. (Caesar, B. G. IV., 26, 27.)

1. Making an attack, they surround the enemy. 2. After seizing the envoy and putting him in chains, they send for their chief men. 3. As our men were in distress, he ordered reinforcements to be sent. 4. They attack the enemy fiercely and put them to flight. 5. When the enemy were defeated he demanded hostages. 6. By hurling their weapons they throw the enemy into confusion. 7. Being unable to land (48, i.), they asked to be sent back. 8. We shall send Commius back and sue for peace. 9. As Commius is landing from the ship, they seize him (50, iii.). 10. On their promising to do this they were sent back. 11. After they have sued for peace and given hostages, they yet have begun to make war. 12. The leading men on assembling began to complain. 13. Sending the cavalry in advance, he orders the chief men to be seized. 14. They followed the standards and attacked the enemy.

VERBS COMPLETED BY THE DATIVE, GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE.
THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.

51. Many verbs followed by a direct object in English are represented in Latin by verbs that take, not the accusative, but some other of the oblique cases ; as,

They forget the disagreement : **Dis^sensⁱōnis obliviscuntur.**

He persuades the state : **Civitātⁱ persuādet.**

He used the timber and bronze : **Māteriā atque aere ūtēbātur.**

Thus, while the English verb is transitive, the Latin equivalent is intransitive.

52. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE DATIVE.

Many verbs, chiefly denoting *advantage* or *disadvantage* or *disposition towards*, are followed by the dative. Of these the most important are :

Approach, appropinquō.

Believe, crēdō.

Command,

(= *order*), imperō, mandō.

(= *be in charge of*), praesum.

Injure, damage, noceō.

Meet, occurrō, so obviam eō.

Obey, pāreō, obtemperō.

Oppose, resist, resistō, (repugnō, obsistō, occurrō).

Pardon, ignōscō.

Persuade, persuādeō, suādeō.

Spare, parcō.

Trust, fidō, cōnfidō.

Other verbs of this class are :

Aid, assist, subveniō, succurrō.

Benefit, prōsum.

Displease, displiceō.

Distrust, diffidō.

Envy, invidēō.

Favor, faveō, studeō.

Heal, medeor.

Indulge, indulgeō.

Interrupt, interveniō.

Marry (a man), nūbō.

Please, placeō.

Relieve, succeed, succēdō.

Satisfy, satisfaciō.

Serve, serviō.

Surpass, praestō.

Threaten, minor.

53. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE GENITIVE.

(a) Some verbs meaning *to pity*, *remember* or *forget* are followed by the genitive ; namely :

Pity, misereor, and miseret (for which see section 91, d).

Remember, be mindful of, memini.

Call to mind, recollect, reminiscor.

Forget, obliviscor.

(b) Two impersonal verbs, **interest** and (rarely) **rēfert**, meaning *it concerns, it interests* (it is of importance to), take the genitive of the person interested; *as, It concerns the state: Reī publicae interest.*

i. But instead of the genitive of the personal and reflexive pronouns, the ablative feminine of the possessives is used, namely, **meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā, suā**; *as, This concerns me: Hōc meā interest* (or *rēfert*). In this usage *rēfert* is common.

ii. The thing which is of importance is expressed by a neuter pronoun, an infinitive (with or without a subject accusative) or a clause. The degree of importance is expressed by an adverb or by the genitive of price (see section 88); *as, Your safety is of great importance to me: Māgnī meā interest ut salvus sis.*

54. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE ABLATIVE.

The following verbs (with their compounds) are followed by the ablative:

Use, ūtor.

Enjoy, fruor.

Eat, vescor.

Perform, fungor.

Gain, obtain, potior.

Also verbs of lacking, **egeō, careō.**

55. i. That in the case of such verbs the irregularity is only apparent may be seen by observing the exact meaning of the verb; for instance, **serviō, am a slave (to); persuādeō, make it acceptable (to); satisfaciō, do enough (for); pāreō, am at hand (for); resistō, stand in opposition (to); praesum, am at the head (with reference to); ūtor, benefit myself (by means of); potior, become powerful (by means of); careō, be cut off (from); oblivācor, become dark (as regards) i.e., become forgetful (of).**

ii. Accordingly it is not necessary that all verbs having the same English equivalent should take the same case. Thus **jubeō** (command, order) takes the accusative and infinitive, and **juvō** (aid), **laedō** (injure), **dēlectō** (please), **offendō** (displease), **miseror** (pity), and **recordor** (recollect), regularly take the accusative.

iii. Some of the verbs given in sections 52-54 are sometimes followed by a different case, especially when used in a different sense. Thus **imperō** (command) takes the dative, but **imperō** (demand, require) takes the accusative, both being united in, *He demands hostages of the enemy, Hostibus imperat obsidēs. Meminī, remember (of recalling a person one has known), takes the accusative. Potior, gain sovereignty over, takes the genitive, chiefly in the*

phrase *rerum potiri*, to obtain control of affairs. And the verbs of remembering and forgetting regularly have the accusative in the case of neuter pronouns or neuter adjectives used substantively.

iv. Certain phrases having the value of verbs which take the dative have the same construction, e.g., *fidem habere* = *confidere*.

v. *Utor* may take a second ablative used predicatively; as, *He used these men as guides*: *His ducibus utēbātur*.

vi. *Interdicere*, *debar*, takes a dative (or sometimes an accusative) of the person debarred, the ablative of the thing forbidden.

56. THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.—In English only the active voice of an intransitive verb may be used. But in Latin even with intransitive verbs (*i.e.*, such as do not govern a direct object in the accusative), the passive may be used impersonally, that is, in the third person singular, and (in the compound tenses) in the neuter. The impersonal passive denotes merely the occurrence of an action without reference to the doer; as, *Pugnātur*: *fighting takes place*, or *there is a fight*. *Ventum est*: *coming took place*. The usual English equivalent is the active voice, the subject being obtained from the context; as, *Ventum est*. *He* (or *we* or *they*, etc.) *came*. (See also 203, *d.*)

57. In Latin all intransitive verbs, if used in the passive, must be used impersonally, and this impersonal passive construction is used to render into Latin the passive of the verbs which take the dative¹ (section 52); as,

Caesar is obeyed: *Caesari pareretur* (*i.e.*, *obedience is rendered to Caesar*).

They asked to be spared: *Ōrābant ut sibi parceretur* (*i.e.*, *that mercy might be shown to them*).

¹ The use of the impersonal passive construction with verbs which take the genitive or ablative occurs chiefly in the passive periphrastic conjugation. (See section 120, *ii.*)

I had not been pardoned: Mihi nōn erat ignōtum (i.e., forgiveness had not been granted to me).

Thus where a verb takes the dative in the active voice, that dative must be retained in the passive, and cannot become the subject.

EXERCISE 8.

A.

1. Caesar besought the soldiers of the tenth legion to remember their former valor. 2. He answered that Dumnorix was always opposing Caesar's plans and assisting the enemy. 3. These resources he is using in order to gain the sovereign power. 4. He says that the senate distrusted the Gauls and ordered them to obey Caesar's commands. 5. Exercising his usual (*suis*) clemency, he promised to spare the Nervii. 6. To this embassy the answer was given that the Roman people could forget the old insult, but not the recent wrongs. 7. It is your interest (53, *b*) and the interest of all the citizens to obey the laws. 8. Word was brought that these tribes eat corn and flesh. 9. The soldiers whom Labienus commanded were persuaded not to injure the prisoners. 10. We are accustomed to pity those who obey our rule. 11. The states which oppose the Roman people cannot be pardoned. 12. All whom we met said that they lacked food. 13. He demanded (55, *iii.*) hostages from the other states.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 27-29.*)

1. They were approaching the upper harbor. 2. It happened that he commanded the whole army. 3. The enemy's indiscretion will not be forgiven. 4. Meanwhile he commands part of the cavalry to repair the vessel of which mention has been made. 5. All obey the commander in chief. 6. They are not accustomed to use grain. 7. We persuaded Caesar not to forgive the chief men. 8. He demanded ropes, anchors and other tackling from this state (55, *iii.*). 9. This storm damages the war vessels. 10. So great a storm arose that several vessels were damaged. 11. He commands our men to resist the cavalry. 12. The mainland was reached the same night. 13. They ask to be forgiven.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

58. Conditional sentences consist regularly of two clauses : (a), a subordinate clause containing some assumption and introduced by *si* (or a compound of *si*), and (b) a principal clause containing the conclusion which follows the assumption. The former is called the *Protasis*, the latter the *Apodosis*. The *Protasis* is often called the *conditional clause*.

59. One obvious distinction of conditions is that of (1) *present* or *past*, in which the question of fulfilment has already been decided, and (2) *future*, in which a possibility of fulfilment is always conceivable. In each of these, two forms of statement are in common use, making four main classes of conditional sentences.

60. I. In PRESENT OR PAST conditions, where *no hint* is given of the accordance of the supposed case with fact, but where it is merely stated that, granting the assumption, the conclusion logically follows, the *indicative* is used in both clauses, the tenses being those used for the same words if occurring in simple sentences ; as,

If he thinks this, he is mistaken : Si hōc existimat, errat.

If I did wrong, I did it unwittingly : Si peccāvi, insciēns fēcī.

If they did this, they are not enemies : Si hōc fēcērunt, nōn inimīci sunt.

61. II. In PRESENT OR PAST conditions, where we wish to represent the assumption (and consequently the conclusion also) as *contrary to fact*, the *subjunctive* is used in both clauses, the *imperfect* subjunctive for *present* time, and the *pluperfect* subjunctive for *past* time ; as,

If he thought this (but he does not), he would be mistaken : Si hōc existimāret, errāret.

If he had said this (but he did not), he would have been mistaken: Si hōc dixisset, errāvisset.

Had my advice prevailed, we should to-day be free: Si meum cōsiliū valuisset, hodiē liberī essēmus.

i. The imperfect subjunctive may also refer to continued or repeated action in *past* time.

62. III. In FUTURE conditions, one class corresponds exactly to that given in section 60, where the *logical* result is emphasized. The English has in the protasis generally the *present* indicative, in the apodosis the future indicative (sometimes the imperative); the Latin has in the protasis the *future* or *future perfect* indicative, in the apodosis the future indicative (or imperative).

The difference in tenses is due to the fact that Latin in dependent clauses is more exact than English in indicating both the point of time (present, past or future), and also priority of action in relation to the main verb.

If he thinks that, he will be mistaken: Si hōc exīstimābit, errābit.

If he does that, he will receive a reward: Si hōc fēcerit, prae-mium cōsequētur. (The doing must precede the receiving.)

If they cross the river, hold your ground: Si flūmen trānsierint, sustinēte.

63. IV. In the other class of FUTURE conditions, where a *conceivable* case is put less vividly,¹ the English has in both clauses *should* or *would* (or in the protasis it may have the past subjunctive or *were to*); the Latin has the *present subjunctive* in both clauses; as,

If he were to say this (or If he said this), he would be mistaken: Si hōc dicat, erret.

Time would fail me, if I should resolve to describe everything: Si velim omnia dēscribere, diēs mē dēficiat.

¹ The two classes are often distinguished as the *more vivid* and the *less vivid* form of future conditions.

64. i. Many departures from these four forms are found, especially other combinations of tenses. Of the cases where the mood is varied, the most important is in conditions contrary to fact (section 61), where *possum*, *dēbeō*, *oportet*, and the periphrastic conjugations (sections 120 and 123) are regularly used in the indicative instead of in the subjunctive; as, *If Caesar had set out, he could have crossed the river: Caesar, si profectus esset, flūmen trānsire potuit.*¹

ii. Alternative conditions are introduced by *sive . . . sive* (or *seu . . . seu*) *whether . . . or*, which follow the rules for *si* as regards mood and tense; as, *It will be an easy task, whether they remain or set out: Facilis erit rēs, seu manēbunt seu proficiēcentur.*

Whether . . . or in this sense should be carefully distinguished from *whether . . . or* represented by *utrum . . . an* (section 38). In the former case we can always add *in either case*, or change to *no matter whether . . . or*.

iii. For *if not*, *si nōn*, *si minus* and *nisi* are found. *Nisi* (*unless*) is used to mark an exception, or after negatives. *Si minus* is used where the verb is to be supplied from the context.

iv. Two mutually exclusive conditions are introduced by *si . . . sin*, *if . . . but if*. For *but if not*, where the verb is omitted, *sin minus* or *sin aliter* is used.

v. An important special type of the present or past logical condition (section 60) is the so-called *general condition*, which states what is habitual in any one of a series of recurrent actions. For present time the *perfect*² indicative is usual in the protasis, the present indicative in the apodosis; for past time the *pluperfect*² indicative in the protasis and the imperfect indicative in the apodosis; as, *If any crime is committed, the Druids fix the penalty: Si quod est admissum facinus, Druidēs poenam cōstituunt. If ever they began to despair, they would betake themselves to the nearest towns: Si quandō dēspērāre coeperant, sē in proxima oppida recipiēbant.*

vi. For *si* translated by *in the hope that*, *to see whether*, see section 177.

¹ In poetry and rhetorical prose the indicative of other verbs also is sometimes found in the apodosis of conditions contrary to fact.

² The perfect and pluperfect are used on the same principle as the future perfect in section 62.

vii. Participles and adjectives may be used in place of the regular protasis to express condition; as, *He will come, if asked: Rogātus veniet. If we keep together we shall be a match for them: Ūniversi parēs iis erimus.*

viii. Another favorite classification of the conditional clauses is threefold:

(a) Logical conditions (past, present or future) combining classes I. and III. above. Indicative in both clauses.

(b) Ideal or contingent conditions (future)—the same as class IV. above. Present subjunctive in both clauses.

(c) Unreal conditions (present or past)—the same as class II. above. Imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

EXERCISE 9.

A.

1. If Casticus should seize the supreme power in his state, Caesar would wage war against him. 2. If our troops defeat the enemy, the Belgians will at once send ambassadors to Caesar. 3. If the Gauls had been conquered by Caesar, they would have immediately sent ambassadors to him concerning peace. 4. If a dispute arises among them (64, v.), the chief men decide (it). 5. The Germans would not now be carrying on war with the Gauls if Ariovistus had been defeated by the Roman troops. 6. If this is reported to Ariovistus, he will inflict the severest punishment on the hostages. 7. If the general had not sent forward three cohorts, the enemy would have gained the victory and our soldiers would now be in the greatest peril. 8. The Helvetians would return to their territories if the Roman people were to conclude peace with them. 9. Unless Caesar enrolls two legions in that place, he will not be able to carry on the war successfully with the Gauls. 10. If the enemy had set fire to all their towns and villages and burnt up all their corn, they would not have been able (64, i.) to return. 11. If Caesar meets with favorable weather, he will weigh anchor; but if not (64, iv.), he will return. 12. If the Germans had made an attempt to cross the Rhine, Caesar would have marched against them with two legions.

B. (Caesar, B. G. IV., 28-30.)

1. If the ships have been wrecked, they are useless. 2. If a storm had not arisen, the chiefs would not have renewed the war. 3. If we cast anchor, the ships will be filled with the waves. 4. If a conspiracy were to be formed, the army would cross over to Gaul. 5. If vessels were wanting, the danger would be great. 6. If we conquer these, no one will cross over. 7. Had corn been provided, they would have wintered in Britain. 8. If the campaign should be prolonged, they would leave the camp. 9. If the moon was full, the tides were high. 10. If the legions are brought over without baggage, the camp will be smaller. 11. If this had happened, they would be confident that no one would make war.

CLAUSES OF CONCESSION. CLAUSES OF PROVISIO.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON.

65. CLAUSES OF CONCESSION (or ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES) are subordinate clauses which concede or admit something in spite of which the statement in the principal clause still holds good.

(a) Clauses introduced by *although*, meaning *in spite of the fact that*, or *whereas*, are rendered into Latin by *quamquam*, *etsi* or *tametsi* with the indicative, or by *cum* with the subjunctive; as,

Although the difficulty was very great, he determined to lead his army across: Etsi summa erat difficultas, tamen trāducere exercitum cōstituit.

The Romans, in spite of being weary with fighting, yet advanced: Rōmāni, quamquam proeliō fessī erant, tamen procēdunt.

He kept himself in camp, although the enemy every day gave him an opportunity to fight: Castris sēsē tenēbat, cum hostēs cotidie pugnandi potestātem facerent.

He was poor, whereas (or while) he might have been very rich: Fuit pauper, cum divitissimus esse posset.

(b) Clauses introduced by *even though, even if, even granting*, are rendered into Latin by *etsi* or *etiāmsi* with the *indicative* or *subjunctive*, according to the rules for the protasis of conditional sentences (sections 60-63), or by *ut* or *nē* with the *subjunctive*; as,

Even if he cannot show gratitude, he at least can feel it: Etiāmsi referre gratiam nōn potest (section 60), habere certē potest.

Even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak the truth: Vēra loquī, etsi meum ingenium nōn movēret (section 61), necessitās cōgit.

Even supposing everything should turn out contrary to expectation, we are very powerful in ships: Ut omnia contrā opiniōnem accidant, plurimum nāvibus possumus.

(c) Clauses introduced by *although*, meaning *however much, no matter how*, are rendered into Latin by *quamvis* with the *subjunctive* (usually in the present tense); as, *However great expectation may be (or Although expectation be great), yet you will surpass it: Quamvis sit magna exspectatiō, tamen eam vin-*

66. i. The impersonal verb *licet* and the subjunctive (see section 143, fn.) is often used with the force of *even though*.

ii. *Quamvis* is sometimes joined with a single word, the predicate of the subordinate clause being understood; as, *However few they are, they venture to advance: Quamvis pauci (supply sint) adire audent.*

iii. *Quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent clause, and may then be rendered *and yet*.

iv. Only in class (a) is it always certain that what is conceded is a fact.

v. For the concessive ablative absolute see section 48, and for concessive relative clauses, section 171.

67. CLAUSES OF PROVISIO are subordinate clauses embodying some stipulation. They are introduced in English by *provided, or if only, or so long as*; in Latin commonly by *dum, dummodo* or *modo* with the *subjunctive* (usually in the present tense); as, *Let them hate, provided (or so long as) they fear: Oderint dum metuant.*

i. The negative in clauses of proviso is *nē*.

68. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON are subordinate clauses containing a comparison to some imaginary state of affairs. Such clauses are introduced in English by *as if*; in Latin by *quasi, tamquam si, velut si, ut si, ac si*, or by *tamquam* or *velut* alone. These are followed by the subjunctive, the sequence of tenses being observed (i.e., present or perfect subjunctive after the primary tenses, imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses); as, *We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus just as if he were present: Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si cōram adsit, horrēmus.*¹

i. *Quasi, tamquam, ut* and *velut* are used with a similar force with participles; as, *They halted as if bidden by a voice from heaven: Restitērunt tamquam caelesti vōce jussi.*

EXERCISE 10.

A.

1. Although he saw that the legions were being hard pressed, he was unwilling to order the soldiers to retreat. 2. Even if Caesar were in command of the army, he would not be able to defeat the enemy. 3. Provided that (67) the enemy do not learn our numbers, we shall attack them to-morrow. 4. Many remain in the camp, as if (68) they were unwilling to return to Gaul. 5. If Caesar comes up with the enemy, he will easily defeat them, no matter how (65, c) brave and numerous they may be. 6. In spite of their having taken up their position on the higher ground, the enemy could not withstand the attacks of our men. 7. Although he had now come in sight of the army, he did not cease from his flight. 8. The cavalry quickly crossed the river, just as if (68) they had been instructed (to do so). 9. Though you can persuade these men to send envoys, you cannot make them friends. 10. Even though he should have met with suitable weather, he would not have sailed for Britain. 11. Whereas they might return without danger, they are unwilling to set out. 12. The enemy sent hostages at once, as if (68, i.) afraid of Caesar's vengeance.

¹ In all such clauses, both English and Latin, the verb of the real apodosis has been suppressed; as, *We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus as (we should shudder) if he were present: Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut (horreāmus) si cōram adsit, horrēmus.*

B. (Caesar, B. G. IV., 31, 32.)

1. Although the rest of the ships had been repaired, he had not yet set out. 2. Even if they had given hostages, he would not have set out. 3. Although they were reaping, they had not laid aside their arms. 4. Although he suspects that this has happened, he orders the ships to be repaired. 5. In spite of the fact that all the vessels had been lost, he did not suspect that the enemy would form this plan. 6. Even if we are hard pressed by the enemy, we shall not surrender. 7. Although the ships have been wrecked, we shall not use their timber. 8. The enemy were hurling weapons from every quarter, whereas our men, being crowded together, were with difficulty holding their own. 9. Even if a larger cloud of dust were to be seen, he would not learn our plan.

USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

69. The DIRECT OBJECT of a transitive verb (whether active or deponent) is put in the accusative ; as,

They slay the man : **Hominem interficiunt.**

He saw the forces of the enemy : **Hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est.**

He builds a bridge : **Pontem facit.**

i. The direct object is that which is (a) *affected* or *apprehended*, or (b) *caused* or *produced*, by the action of the verb.

ii. Some verbs (chiefly verbs of emotion) which are intransitive in English are represented by transitive verbs in Latin, such as *horrēre* (*shudder at*), *dolēre* (*grieve over*), *ridēre* (*laugh at*), *spērāre* (*hope for*), *exspectāre* (*wait for*), *tacēre* (*be silent about*) ; as, *They shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus :* **Crūdēlītatem Ariovistī horrent.**

iii. Many intransitive verbs (chiefly verbs of motion) become transitive when compounded with prepositions (especially *circum*, *praeter* and *trāns*) ; as,

They cross the river : **Flūmen trānseunt.**

The Helvetians meet Caesar : **Helvētīi Caesarem conveniunt.**

Compare in English such verbs as *overrun*, *undergo*. (See section 78, v. a.)

iv. A few transitive verbs compounded with *trāns* take two accusatives in the active, one governed by the verb and the other by the preposition; as, *He leads his army across the river*: **Flūmen exercitum trādūcit.** (The preposition may, however, be repeated; as, **Trāns flūmen exercitum trādūcit.**) In the passive the accusative governed by the preposition may be retained.

v. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, electing, considering* and *showing* take two accusatives of the same person or thing, one being the direct object, and the other a predicate noun or adjective; as,

He calls the Aedui brothers: **Aeduōs frātrēs appellat.** *They let him know*: **Eum certiōrem faciunt.** *They choose these as their leaders*: **Hōs ducēs dēligunt sibi.** *They consider this a mark of valor*: **Hōc proprium virtūtis existimant.**

In the passive both direct object and predicate become nominative; as,

Ariovistus was called friend: **Ariovistus amicus appellātus est.**

vi. Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing* may take two accusatives, the one of the person and the other of the thing; as, *Caesar demands corn of the Aedui*: **Caesar Aeduōs frumentum flagitat.** *I concealed my opinion from him*: **Eum sententiam cēlāvi.** In the passive one accusative, usually of the thing, may be retained. All these verbs, however, may take a prepositional phrase in place of one of the accusatives, as *petō, postulō* and *quaerō* regularly do.

vii. In poetry, the passive of verbs of *clothing* is used with a reflexive or 'middle' force, and takes a direct object; as, **Galeam induitur**: *He puts on (himself) the helmet.*

The perfect participle passive of some other verbs also is found with the same accusative of the direct object that the active voice might take; as, **Per pedēs trājectus lōra**: *Having thongs put through his feet.*

70. The accusative is used with the following PREPOSITIONS:

ad, to: **adversus, adversum, against**; **ante, before**; **apud, near, at**; **circā, circum, around**; **circiter, about**; **cis, citrā, on this side**

of; **contrā**, *opposite to, against*; **ergā**, *towards*; **extrā**, *outside*; **infrā**, *below*; **inter**, *between, among*; **intrā**, *within*; **jūxtā**, *near*; **ob**, *on account of*; **penes**, *in the power of*; **per**, *through*; **pōne**, *post, behind, after*; **praeter**, *past, except*; **prope**, *near*; **propter**, *on account of*; **secundum**, *after, following*; **suprā**, *above*; **trāns**, *across*; **ūltrā**, *beyond*; **versus**, *towards*.

The accusative is also used with **in**, *into or in*, and **sub**, *under*, when they express motion towards, and usually with **subter**, *beneath*, and **super**, *above*. These four also take the ablative (section 108).

i. The adverbs *propius* and *proximē*, *prīdiē* and *postrīdiē*, and the adjectives *propior* and *proximus* sometimes take the accusative.

71. THE SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE (except the historical infinitive, section 112) is put in the accusative; as,

He answered that Caesar was doing wrong: **Respondit Caesarem injūriam facere.**

It is dangerous for the Germans to cross the Rhine: **Germānōs Rhēnum trānsire est periculōsum.**

72. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.—Intransitive verbs often take an accusative to define more clearly their meaning. This is either a substantive (generally modified by an adjective) of kindred meaning and often of kindred derivation, or more frequently a neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively; as, *We shall live a safer life*: **Tūtiōrem vitā vivēmus.** *He makes almost the same mistakes*: **Eadein ferē peccat.**

This is the origin of the adverbial use of *multum*, *nihil*, *quid*, *quantum*, etc.; as, *He has very great power*: **Plūrimum potest.**

i. There are also a few isolated phrases (used adverbially) which are closely connected with the cognate accusative, such as *māximum partem*, *for the most part*.

73. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.—In poetry, largely through Greek influence,¹ the accusative is used to denote the part of the body affected; as, **Tremēt artūs**: *He trembles in his limbs.* **Ōs deō similis**: *In face like to a god.*

74. The accusative is used in EXCLAMATIONS, with or without an interjection; as, *Ah, wretched me*: **Mē miserum** or **Ō mē miserum.**

¹ Hence this is often called the Greek accusative.

75. For the use of the accusative to denote DURATION OF TIME, EXTENT OF SPACE, and LIMIT OF MOTION, see sections 125, 128, and 129.

EXERCISE 11.

A.

1. The Gauls had already led three-fourths of their troops across (69, iv.) that river. 2. He learned that they had all encamped within those forests and were there waiting for (69, ii.) the approach of the Romans. 3. It is very easy for our forces to march through these districts. 4. The ships were carried down towards (*ad*) the lower part of the island, which is nearer (70, i.) the west. 5. The tribes which dwell on this side the Rhine have been made tributary. 6. He crossed the river, and having attacked the enemy, he began to storm the city. 7. They are mistaken, if they hope for (69, ii.) aid from us. 8. Before his arrival they had seized the country (*loca*) around the forest which the Greeks call Oreyntia. 9. Because of their fear, they concealed (69, vi.) everything from Caesar. 10. Perceiving how much (72) power he had, we determined to wait for reinforcements. 11. On being asked their opinion (69, vi.) they made no answer. 12. For (*ob*) the same reason, he did not trust the Gauls much (72).

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 32, 33.*)

1. On account of the large number of the enemy they adopt this plan. 2. Up to that time they called this legion the seventh. 3. This will make the camp larger. 4. He observed that part of the legion had marched in that direction. 5. They suddenly attack the outposts. 6. They are leaving the field (*lit.* battle), and are betaking themselves to the camp. 7. He reports that this is the custom among all the barbarians. 8. He suspects that this will make the ranks uncertain. 9. They informed the enemy that the cavalry would surround the legion. 10. It is time for the rest of the cohorts to arm themselves. 11. Before the battle he had ordered a squadron of cavalry to fight among the infantry.

USES OF THE DATIVE.

76. The Dative case is used to express the indirect or remote connection of a person or thing with the action, feeling, or quality expressed by a verb or adjective. There are three main uses :¹ to express (1) the indirect object, (2) the person interested, (3) the purpose served. The dative may generally be rendered by *to* or *for*.

77. THE INDIRECT OBJECT, completing the meaning of a verb by denoting a person or thing indirectly affected, is put in the dative ; as,

They yield to Caesar : Caesari cēdunt.

They granted lands to the Germans : Germānis agrōs dedērunt.

78. i. The dative of the indirect object is found (a) with intransitive verbs, (b) with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object.²

ii. Closely allied to the use with verbs is the use of the DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES, whose meaning it completes by denoting that to which the feeling or quality is directed ; as,

He was friendly to the Helvetians : Helvētiis erat amicus.

Such adjectives are those meaning *near, friendly, like, useful, easy, agreeable, known*, and their opposites. Many of these, however, admit other constructions, especially a preposition (*ad* or *in*) with the accusative. The dative is also found with adverbs of like meaning.

iii. Often in English, especially with verbs of *giving, promising* and *telling*, the preposition *to* is not used, and the indirect object is in form indistinguishable from the direct ; as, *He gave the soldiers the signal : Militibus signum dedit.* *He told Cicero he would return : Cicerōni dixit se reversūrum.*

¹ This division is not fundamental, but is convenient for practical purposes.

² The direct object of course becomes the subject in the passive voice, the indirect object remaining.

iv. Of especial importance are those cases where, because the usual translation is somewhat inexact, a Latin intransitive verb with the indirect object corresponds to an English transitive verb with the direct object. (See section 52.)

v. Another important usage is the DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS. Where an English verb with a preposition and its object is represented in Latin by a verb compounded with the corresponding preposition (e.g., *adeō* = *I go to*), difficulty often arises in determining the case of the Latin noun.

Three different constructions are found, for the use of which no invariable rules can be given; the student must depend upon observation and authority.

(a) The compound is sometimes followed by the same case as the preposition would take. (For the accusative see section 69, iii. and iv.; for the ablative, section 93.)

(b) More often (and especially in the literal local sense) the prefixed preposition is repeated with the noun; as, *They sally out from the camp: Ex castris erumpunt. He came up to the camp: Ad castra accessit. He converses with him: Cum eo colloquitur. They put everything into the fire: Omnia in ignem inferunt.*

(c) But very often also, in place of the preposition and noun, Latin has the dative (to which in the case of transitive compounds may be added an accusative of the direct object). This dative means literally *with reference to*; ¹ as,

He comes beneath the roof: Tectō succēdit (literally, *He comes beneath, with reference to the roof*).

He puts friendship before everything: Amicitiam omnibus rebus antepōnit (literally, *He puts friendship in front, with reference to everything*).

This usage is especially common with compounds of *ad*, *ante*, *con-*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, *super*; generally where the compound is not used in a literal sense; as, *He commanded the cavalry: Equitātui praeerat*² (more literally, *He was at the head of the*

¹ In no case should this dative be regarded as depending on the preposition, but rather on the whole verb.

² Most of the compounds of *sum* are used in a similar way.

cavalry). *He inspired the soldiers with hope* : **Spem intulit militibus** (more literally, *He put hope into the soldiers*). *He put Brutus over the fleet* : **Brūtum classī praeſecit**.

vi. A few verbs, such as *dōnō* and *circumdō*, admit a double construction : (1) dative and accusative, (2) accusative and ablative ; as, *He presented the plunder to the soldiers* : **Praedam militibus dōnavit**. *They presented him with the citizenship* : **Eum civitatē dōnavērunt**.

vii. In the poets the dative of indirect object is extended to include the idea of motion towards¹ (see section 125), and is also used with verbs of *nearness*, *union*, *difference* and *contention*.

79. THE DATIVE OF INTEREST denotes the person or thing concerned (especially that benefited or harmed). It is really identical with the dative of the indirect object, but the connection is looser and the dative complement not so essential to the verb ; as,

He ordered each to take thought for himself : **Sibi quemque cōsulere jussit**.

I do not ask this for myself : **Neque mihi haec quaerō**.²

80. Besides this simple use (often called the *dative of advantage or disadvantage*), the dative of interest includes :

(a) The dative with verbs of *taking away* or *warding off*, with which it is translated by *from* ; as, *They are taking from me my liberty* : **Mihi libertatē eripiunt**.

(b) The DATIVE OF REFERENCE, modifying the sentence as a whole and denoting a person indirectly interested rather than actually affected. This includes :

i. Many cases where English would use a *possessive* : as, *Pulio's shield is pierced* : **Trānsfigitur scūtum Pulionī** (more nearly, *Pulio gets his shield pierced*).

ii. The person *in whose eyes* : as, *She is beautiful to many* : **Fōrmōsa est multis**. *They wished to be blameless in Caesar's eyes* : **Caesari pūrgātī esse volēbant**.

¹ This, some grammarians contend, was the original force of the dative.

² *For*, meaning *in defence of*, is expressed by *prō* with the ablative.

iii. Participles expressing the point of view: as, *The first town as you come from Epirus*: **Oppidum primum venientibus ab Ēpirō.**

iv. The dative with interjections; as, *Woe to the conquered*: **Vae victis.**

(c) The ETHICAL DATIVE, confined to personal pronouns, and indicating a person conceived to be interested in the statement. It is chiefly used in colloquial expressions of emotion, and often answers to the English *pray* or *bless me*. Here belongs the expression *sibi velle*; as, *What does he mean?* **Quid sibi vult?**

(d) THE DATIVE OF THE APPARENT AGENT with the gerundive, to indicate the person interested, and hence presumably the agent; as,

Everything had to be done by Caesar: **Caesarī omnia erant agenda.**

i. This dative is sometimes found (especially in poetry) with other forms of the passive, chiefly the compound ones.

ii. To avoid ambiguity the gerundive may have *ab* and the ablative in place of the dative of agent; as, *I must show him gratitude*: **Eī ā mē referenda est grātia.**

(e) The DATIVE OF POSSESSOR, chiefly with the verbs *sum* and *dēsum*, to denote the person interested as owner; as, *They state that they have nothing*: **Dēmōnstrant sibi nihil esse.**

31. THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE is a predicative dative, denoting the purpose served (that which something tends or is intended to be), and is usually accompanied by another dative of the person interested (the so-called *double dative* construction); as,

They choose a place for the camp: **Locum castris dēligunt.**

It was a great hindrance to the Gauls: **Gallis māgnō erat impedimentō.**

They were coming to the aid of the Nervii: **Auxiliō Nervii veniēbant.**

He leaves five cohorts for the defence of the camp: **Quinque cohortes castris praesidiō relinquit.**

i. This dative is especially common with the verb *sum* (after which it has almost the force of the ordinary predicate noun), and is found also with *fiō, veniō, mittō, relinqūō, dō*. The nouns so used are generally of a semi-abstract nature, and are always in the singular, some of the commonest being *auxiliō, praesidiō, subsidiō, ūsui, impedimentō, cūrae, salutē, odiō*.

EXERCISE 12.

A.

1. He consulted the welfare of the troops whom Labienus commanded. 2. He said all these matters would be an object of concern to him. 3. It is well known to all that the departure of the Belgians was like a rout. 4. The soldiers told Labienus that Caesar had always shown special indulgence to this legion. 5. Word was brought to the lieutenant that the general had left two cohorts as a protection to the ships. 6. They said they preferred death to slavery, and that they would oppose themselves to the enemy. 7. He found that traders have (80, e) no access to these tribes. 8. He asked what Caesar meant (80, c), and why he had demanded hostages of the Gauls. 9. To these envoys Caesar made answer that he could have (80, e) no friendship with the Germans. 10. A centurion, who had participated in many engagements, was in command of the troops. 11. He ordered (*imperō*) the soldiers not to surround the camp with a trench nor (28, ii.) to go to the assistance of Labienus. 12. Perceiving that they had become suspected in our eyes (80, b, ii.), they threw themselves at Caesar's (80, b, i.) feet.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 33, 34.*)

1. They point out to Caesar that an opportunity is given to all. 2. He sent the cavalry to the assistance of the infantry. 3. Messengers are sent out to all the barbarians. 4. The small number of the enemy was unknown to our men. 5. Time had not been left for these things. 6. For several days he had fears (*timeō*) for our soldiers. 7. They were drawing near (*appropinquō*) to the camp; they betake themselves to the camp. 8. He had thought this messenger most faithful to Caesar. 9. The noise of

the chariots inspires (*inferō*) fear in the horses. 10. Help will be brought to the Romans. 11. The chariots were of great service to the enemy. 12. He names (*dicō*) a day for the battle. 13. They are not accustomed to make war on the Romans. 14. The cavalry had to leap to their feet.

USES OF THE GENITIVE.

82. The Genitive case is used for the more exact limiting of nouns, and has thus an adjectival force. It is also used to limit certain adjectives, and (by analogy) to complete certain verbs. The genitive is regularly translated (a) by the English possessive case, (b) by means of the preposition *of*, or (c) by means of the phrase *as regards*, or some equivalent preposition.

83. The POSSESSIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns to denote the owner ; as,

The lands of the Helvetians: Helvētiōrum agri.

i. The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate with *sum*, *fiō*, etc. ; as, *Gaul does not belong to the Roman people: Neque Gallia est populi Rōmāni.*

ii. This predicative use is often found denoting the person whose property, duty, or custom the subject is, especially when the subject is an infinitive or a clause ; as, *It is the part (or duty) of a wise man to obey the laws: Sapientis est lēgibus pārēre.* So *Sapientiae est: It is a mark of wisdom.* But instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns the neuter possessives are used ; as, *It is my duty (or my way): Meum est.*

iii. The word on which the genitive depends is frequently omitted, regularly so if it has been used previously in the sentence ; as, *He had been in the army of Sulla, and afterwards in that of Crassus: In exercitū Sullae et postea in Crassi fuerat.*

iv. This genitive is used with *causā*, *instar*, *prīdiē* and *postridiē*.

84. The SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns expressing action or feeling, to denote the person who acts or feels ; as,

The flight of the Gauls: Fuga Gallōrum.

Caesar's anxiety: Sollici tūdō Caesaris.

i. In all such cases, if the action or feeling were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be its subject ; as, *The Gauls fled* : **Galli fūgērunt.**

85. The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns denoting action or feeling, to denote that to which the action or feeling is directed ; as,

The storming of the camp : **Expūgnātiō castrōrum.**

The fear of death : **Metus mortis.**

i. In such cases, if the action or feeling were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be its object ; as, *They storm the camp* : **Expūgnant castra.**

ii. This construction is often used when there would be no corresponding Latin verb with the accusative, but where we should expect a dative or ablative or prepositional phrase ; and in such cases it will constantly be found that the English equivalent is a phrase containing some other preposition than *of*, but one that, as a rule, is equivalent to *as regards* or *as to* ; as,

Confidence in (as regards) one's self : **Sui fidūcia.** *Exemption from (as regards) military service* : **Militiae vacātiō.** *War with the Veneti* : **Bellum Venetōrum.** *Reputation for valor* : **Opiniō virtūtis.** *Danger to the cavalry* : **Periculum equitum.**¹

iii. Both the objective and the subjective genitive may modify the same noun ; as, *The wrongs done by the Helvetians to the Roman people* : **Helvētiōrum injūriae populi Rōmāni.**

iv. Prepositional phrases² and possessive pronominal adjectives are sometimes used instead of the objective genitive ; as, *Injuries to men* : **In hominēs injūriae.** *Danger to himself* : **Periculum suum** (for **sui**).

¹ Compare *Sibi cōfīdere, militiā vacāre, cum Venetis bellāre, dē virtūte opinārī, periculōsum equitibus.*

² Nouns in Latin are, as a rule, joined to each other by prepositions only when the word on which the prepositional phrase depends is of verbal origin, and even then but very seldom.

86. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

The genitive is used with nouns, pronouns, numerals (especially ordinals and *mīlia*), adjectives (especially comparatives and superlatives), and occasionally with a few adverbs; as,

Part of the soldiers: **Pars militum.**

Which of you? **Quis vestrum?**

Two of the states: **Duae civitātum.**

Three miles (lit. three thousands of paces): **Tria milia passuum.**

The bravest of all these: **Hōrum omnium fortissimī.**

Least of all: **Minimē omnium.**

i. The partitive genitive often depends on neuter pronouns or adjectives used substantively (but only in the nominative or the accusative without a preposition); e.g., *nihil, tantum, quantum, plus, minus, quid, quod, aliquid, id, hoc*, and also the adverbs *satis* and *parum* used substantively. In most of these cases the English equivalent omits *of*; as, *No time*: **Nihil spatii.** *Less hesitation*: **Minus dubitātōnis.** *They carried off what corn they could*: **Frūmenti quod potuerunt avexerunt.** *This measure of consolation*: **Hōc solāciū.** *Sufficient protection*: **Satis praesidiū.**¹

ii. In other cases an adjective used substantively regularly agrees in gender with the partitive genitive depending on it; as, *Many of the ships*: **Multae nāvium.**

iii. With adjectives and pronouns the partitive idea is often expressed by prepositions, chiefly *ex* or *dē*, but also *inter, ante, apud* and *in*. Especially is this the case with *ūnus, pauci* and *quidam*; as, *One of his sons*: **Ūnus ē filiū.** *A few of our men*: **Pauci dē nostris.**

iv. The partitive genitive should not be used in the following cases:

(a) When, though English uses *of*, not a part but the whole is taken; as,

To all of us: **Omnibus nobīs.** *All of whom*: **Quī omnēs.** *Three hundred of us have conspired*: **Trecentī conjurāvimus.**

¹ This genitive may be an adjective of the first and second declensions used substantively, but not of the third; as, *No evil*: **Nihil mali**, but *Nothing greater*: **Nihil mājus.**

(b) To denote the whole, the remainder, or any local part of anything, as the top, middle, bottom, beginning. Here Latin idiom prefers an adjective in agreement, which regularly precedes the substantive ; as,

The whole of Gaul: **Tōta Gallia.** *The rest of the struggle:* **Reliquum certāmen.** *The top of the hill:* **Summus collis.** *The middle of the river:* **Medium flūmen.** *At the beginning of spring:* **Primō vēre.**

87. The GENITIVE OF QUALITY¹ is used to denote some character or quality of the noun modified, including value, measure, time, etc. ; as,

A man of great prudence: **Vir cōsiliū māgnī.**

Stones of great weight: **Māgnī ponderis saxa.**

A few days' march: **Paucōrum diērum iter.**

A six-foot wall: **Mūrus sex pedum.**

i. There must be some adjectival modifier of this genitive ; e.g., *A man of bravery* is not **vir fortitudinis**, but **vir fortis**.

ii. The modifiers most commonly used are numerals and such adjectives as *māgnus*, *māximus*, *parvus*, *tantus*, *summus*, *pauci*. The genitive of quality should not be used with *pār*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *aequus*, or with pronouns except in such phrases as *hujusmodi*, *ejusmodi*.

iii. The genitive of quality may be used as a predicate ; as, *The depth of the river was three feet:* **Flūminis erat altitūdō trium pedum.**

iv. For the relation to the ablative of quality see section 105, iii.

88. The GENITIVE OF PRICE denotes the value, but only in general, not definite, terms ; as, *His influence was valued highly:* **Auctōritās ejus māgnī nabēbātur.**

i. With verbs of estimating are found *tantī*, *quantī*, *māgnī*, *parvī*, *plūris*, *minōris*, *nihilī*, and a few other words.

¹ Also called the *Descriptive Genitive* or *Genitive of Characteristic*.

ii. With verbs of *buying, selling, and costing* are found only *tantū, quantū, pluris, minōris*.

iii. For the ablative of price see section 100.

89. The GENITIVE OF DEFINITION is used occasionally to explain the meaning of a noun, as a word in apposition might do; as, *The virtue of justice*: **Virtūs iustitiae**.

i. With words like *urbs, oppidum, flāmen*, etc., this genitive is not used by the best prose writers: e.g., *The city of Rome* is **Urbs Rōma**, not **Rōmae**.

90. The GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.—Many adjectives require a genitive (usually objective) to complete their meaning; as,

Full of confidence: **Fidūciae plēnus**.

Eager for power: **Cupidus imperii**.

Skilled in war: **Peritus bellī**.

Unaccustomed to toil: **Insuētus labōris**.

i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those of *desire, knowledge and ignorance, participation and fulness*, so also some verbal adjectives in *-āx* and some present participles used as adjectives; as, *Averse to exertion*: **Fugiēns labōris**.

ii. As with the objective genitive after nouns (see section 85, ii.), so after adjectives the preposition used in the English rendering is frequently not *of*, but some equivalent of *as regards*.

iii. Many of these adjectives take other constructions; while in poetry the number of adjectives taking the genitive to define their application is largely extended.

iv. *Similis* commonly takes the genitive of persons, the genitive or dative of things. With personal pronouns the genitive should always be used.

91. The GENITIVE WITH VERBS. Many verbs take a genitive to complete their meaning.

(a) For verbs of *pitying, remembering and forgetting* see section 53, a.

(b) Verbs of *reminding* sometimes take the genitive of the thing called to mind with the accusative of the person reminded.

(c) Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning* and *acquitting* take the genitive of the fault or crime charged; as, *You are accusing him of treason: Eum prōditionis insimulātis. He was found guilty of wrong-doing: Injūriæ condemnātus est.*

(d) The impersonal verbs of emotion, *miseret, pudet, piget, paenitet* and *taedet*, take the accusative of the person who feels, and the genitive of that which causes the feeling;¹ as, *I am ashamed of my folly: Mē stultitiæ pudet.*

(e) For the genitive with *interest* and *rēfert* see section 53, b.

(f) The genitive is sometimes found with verbs of *plenty* and *want*, with *potior* (see section 55, iii.), and in poetry (after the analogy of the Greek) with verbs denoting *separation*.

EXERCISE 13.

A.

1. He said that this circumstance had dispelled all doubt as to the arrival of the legions. 2. He was a man of consummate ability, and had very great experience in the art of war. 3. He believed that the soldiers of Ariovistus were wholly inexperienced in this mode of fighting. 4. In the middle of this course is the island of Mona (89, i.). 5. He reminds his men of their old disaster, and urges them not to forget the valor of the enemy. 6. He distributed three months' provisions among the soldiers. 7. It is a consul's duty (83, ii.) to be of service to the rest of the citizens. 8. The top of the hill was held by a few of our men (86, iii.). 9. Your influence is of great value (88), your friendship is of greater. 10. They acquitted him of treachery (91, c), but he was found guilty of carelessness. 11. They compelled the Ædui to give them part of their land and to undertake to form no project against the Sequani. 12. He says he is ashamed of his treachery (91, d), and sorry for having attempted to revolt.

B (Caesar, B. G. IV., 34-36.)

1. A large part of the country is unable to withstand the enemy's attack. 2. He had collected thirty-two ships of great speed. 3. So great was the barbarians' fear of the Romans that

¹ These verbs (except *miseret*) sometimes have instead of the genitive an infinitive or substantive clause or a neuter pronoun as subject; as, *I am sorry for having done this: Mē haec fecisse paenitet.*

they turned and fled. 4. He orders the enemy's camp to be burned. 5. On account of the swiftness of Caesar's approach they could not escape. 6. Several of the ships (the rest of the ships) had reached the middle of the harbor. 7. It happened that all of us were inexperienced in sailing. 8. These transports were the weakest of all the vessels. 9. He pointed out how great was the peril of the legion. 10. He saw how great had been the peril of the previous day. 11. Mention has previously been made of the small number of harbors. 12. The cavalry were thought to be very eager (*cupidus*) for plunder.

USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

92. The Ablative case is an adverbial case, used to determine the circumstances attending upon some action. It is composite in its origin, representing three main ideas: the *true ablative*, meaning *from*; the *instrumental and comitative*, meaning *with*; and the *locative*, meaning *in* or *at*.

A. THE ABLATIVE PROPER.

93. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION denotes that from which something is removed or excluded; as,

They cut off Caesar from supplies: Commeātū Caesarem interclūdunt.

They are in need of assistance: Auxiliō egent.

i. The idea of separation is commonly expressed by the abl. with *ā* (*ab*), *ex* or *dē*, especially in the literal local sense. The simple ablative is used chiefly with verbs of *relieving*, *depriving* and *lacking*; with adjectives of *freedom* and *want*; and also with certain verbs of *removing* and *excluding* (such as *excēdō*, *expellō*, *ēgredior*, *prohibeō*, *interclūdō*, *dēficiō* and *dēsistō*), with which the preposition may either be used or be omitted.

ii. When the ablative denotes a person, the preposition should always be used.

iii. The fact that the verb expressing separation may be a compound of *ab*, *ex* or *dē* does not prevent the use of a preposition with the ablative. (See section 78, v. b.)

94. For the ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE FROM WHICH, with or without prepositions, see section 126.

95. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE denotes that from which something is derived. It is found chiefly with participles denoting ancestry or rank ; as,

Descended from a very old family : Antiquissimā familiā nātus.

i. A preposition is regularly used (a) in the case of finite verbs, (b) with pronouns, and (c) to denote remote origin.

ii. Here belongs the ablative denoting the material of which something is made ; with this ablative *ex* is commonly used in prose.

96. The ABLATIVE OF CAUSE¹ is used to denote the motive from which some act proceeds, more rarely the cause of something ; as,

In that hope he sought our friendship : Amicitiam eā spē petivit.

i. In place of this ablative we find more frequently prepositional phrases with *ex*, *dē*, *ob*, *per*, *propter*, *prae*, the genitive with *causā* or *gratiā*, or, especially to indicate the moving cause, an ablative of means with a participle such as *adductus*, *permōtus*.

97. The PERSONAL AGENT with passive verbs is denoted by the ablative with *ā* or *ab* ; as,

Their lands are laid waste by the enemy : Agrī eōrum ab hostibus vāstantur.

i. For the dative of apparent agent see section 80, d.

ii. For the so-called secondary agent with *per* see section 99, i.

98. The ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON (translated by means of *than*) is used after comparatives to denote that with which something is compared ; as,

The Ubii are more civilized than the rest : Ubii ceteris hūmāniōrēs sunt.

¹ This use may also be classed under the Instrumental Ablative.

- i. This ablative is most often used in negative sentences or their equivalent, and is rarer after adverbs than after adjectives.
- ii. As a rule the ablative of comparison is used only when the first of the words compared is in the nominative or is a subject accusative. But the ablative of the relative pronoun is often used when the first of the words compared is an object accusative.
- iii. In other cases, as well as often where the ablative might be used, *than* is expressed by *quam*, and a noun or pronoun following takes the case of the word with which it is compared;¹ as, *Ireland is smaller than Britain*: *Hibernia minor est quam Britannia*. After comparative adverbs also, *quam* is commonly found.
- iv. The comparatives *plūs*, *minus*, *longius* and *amplius* are regularly used without *quam*, yet without affecting the case of the following word; as, *More than eight hundred ships had been seen*: *Amplius octingentae nāvēs erant visae*.
- v. The ablative of comparison of some abstract words such as *opiniō* and *spēs* is used in place of a comparative clause; as, *Sooner than anyone expected*: *Celerius omni opiniōne*.
- vi. Latin often omits the standard of comparison (e.g., *than is natural*, *than is usual*, *than is desirable*, *than that just mentioned*) when it is easily gathered from the context. In such cases the comparative may generally be translated by *unusually* or *too* with the positive.
- vii. When two qualities in the same object are compared with each other, Latin has either *magis . . . quam* with the positive in both clauses or *quam* with the comparative in both clauses; as, *He is more brave than wise*; *Magis fortis est quam sapiēns*, or *Fortior est quam sapientior*. So, too, with adverbs.

B. THE INSTRUMENTAL AND COMITATIVE ABLATIVE.

99. The ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT is used to denote that by means of which something is effected; as,

¹ As a general rule, unlike English idiom, the same construction follows *quam* as precedes it; as, *He said they were doing nothing else than making preparations for war*: *Dixit eōs nihil aliud agere quam bellum parāre*. See also section 98, vii.

It cannot be determined by the eyes : **Oculis iudicārī nōn potest.**

They live on flesh and are clad in skins : **Carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti.**

i. A personal instrument is occasionally in the ablative, but is more often expressed by *per* and the accusative (sometimes called the *secondary agent*) ; as, *He learns by means of scouts :* **Cōgnōscit per explorātōrēs.**

ii. The ablative of means is used (a) to denote the route or means of conveyance ; (b) with *utor, fruor*, etc. ; (c) with *opus est* and *usus est* ; (d) with verbs of *filling* and *abounding* and adjectives of *plenty*.

100. The ABLATIVE OF PRICE is used with verbs of *buying, selling, exchanging* and *costing* ; as,

It was purchased for a small price : **Parvō pretiō redēptum est.**

They exchange war for agriculture : **Bellum agricultūrā commutant.**

i. For the genitive of indefinite price see section 88.

101. The ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the amount by which two persons or things differ ; as,

The other road is much easier : **Alterum iter est multō facilius.**

Ireland is considered a half smaller than Britain : **Hibernia dimidiō minor quam Britannia existimātur.**

A few days after : **Paucis post diēbus.**

Three years before : **Tribus ante annis.**

i. This ablative is used also in designations of distance, e.g., with *distō* and *absūm* (where also the accusative may be used), and regularly in the case of the words *spatium* and *intervallum* ; as, *He halts at a great distance :* **Magnō intervallō cōsistit.**

ii. To this usage belong (a) *quō . . . eō* (or *quantō . . . tantō*) with comparatives, as, *The sooner the better :* **Quō citius eō melius ;** (b) *quō* and *quōminus* with the subjunctive (sections 28, iii. and 139) ; and (c) *eō* or *hōc* with a comparative.¹

¹ This last usage is, however, complicated with the ablative of cause, especially before *quod* clauses.

102. The ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION is used to denote in what respect a statement or term is to be taken as true ; as,

They excel the rest of the Gauls in valor : Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt.

103. The ABLATIVE OF MANNER AND ACCOMPANIMENT expresses manner or the attendant circumstances of an action ; as,

The news is carried with incredible speed : Incrēdibili celeritāte fāma perfertur.

They began to mount the rampart with loud shouts : Māximō clāmōre vāllum ascendere coepērunt.

i. As a rule the ablative of manner and accompaniment requires the preposition *cum* when not modified by an adjective or a genitive, and even when so modified it often has *cum* ; as,

He is put to death with torture : Cum cruciātū necātur.

He did this with the greatest care : Summā (cum) diligentīā hōc fēcit.

Some ablatives, however (e.g., *vī, jūre, cāsū*), never take *cum*, being used virtually as adverbs.

ii. Literal accompaniment is always expressed by *cum* and the ablative ; except that in certain military phrases (chiefly of the troops with which a march is made) *cum* may be omitted if the ablative has a modifier ; as, *They hastened with all their forces :* (Cum) omnibus cōpiis contendērunt.

iii. The ablative of manner denotes that *in accordance with which* something is done ; as,

He did this in accordance with Caesar's instructions : Praeceptis Caesaris hōc fēcit.¹

104. For the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE, which is perhaps locative in origin, but which in use resembles the ablative of accompaniment in expressing the attendant circumstances of an action, see sections 46-50.

¹ This usage is also classed by some as *specification*, by others as arising in the idea of *from*.

105. The ABLATIVE OF QUALITY¹ is used to denote some character or quality of the noun modified ; as,

A young man of great valor : **Māgnā virtūte adulēscēns.**

i. As in the case of the genitive of quality (see section 87, i.), there must be some adjectival modifier of this ablative.

ii. This ablative may be used not only attributively but also in the predicate ; as, *They have long hair :* **Capillō sunt prōmissō** (*literally, They are [a people] with long hair*).

iii. When the description refers to *number* the genitive of quality should be used. To denote *physical characteristics* or *external appearance* the ablative is used, while for other descriptions either case may be used, with a preference for the genitive to express *permanent* or *inherent qualities*.

C. THE LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

106. For the ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE, see section 127, and for the ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH, see sections 130 and 131.

107. The ablative is used with many special verbs and adjectives, really belonging to the classes already mentioned but not always easy to classify.

i. For the ablative with *nitor, frnor, fungor, potior, rescor*, and with verbs of *lacking*, see section 54.

ii. The ablative is used with *glorior, laetor, gaudeō ; fīdō, cōnfīdō* ;² *nitor, innitor ; assuēfūciō*.

iii. The ablative is used with *dignus, indignus ; contentus, laetus ; frētus*.

108. The ablative is used with the following PREPOSITIONS :

Ā, ab (abs), from, by ; **absque**, without ; **cōram**, in the presence of ; **cum**, with ; **dē**, from, concerning ; **ē, ex**, out of, from ; **prae**, before, in comparison with, because of ; **prō**, before, for (= in behalf of), in place of, in accordance with ; **sine**, without ; **tenus**, as far as.

The ablative is also used with **in**, in and **sub**, under, expressing the place where, and sometimes with **subter**, beneath, and **super**, above, concerning. These four also take the accusative (section 70).

¹ Also called the *Descriptive Ablative* or *Ablative of Characteristic*.

² **fīdō** and **cōnfīdō** regularly take the dative of persons (52).

EXERCISE 14.

A.

1. They strengthened the place with a wall, and filled the trench with water. 2. He was a man of the highest merit and worthy of all praise. 3. Relying on the friendship of the Romans, he had collected all his retainers, two hundred in number. 4. If they had been able to keep our men from supplies, they would have cut them off from returning. 5. They all stain themselves with blood, and thus are of more frightful appearance in battle. 6. In order that the soldiers, influenced by the hope of plunder, might not wander too widely (98, vi.), he did not suffer them to go farther than usual (98, vi.) from the camp. 7. He was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain two days before. 8. If they are of an unfriendly disposition, they will be incensed at this grievance. 9. With such swiftness and vehemence did our soldiers advance that more than six hundred of the enemy were slain. 10. Advancing with the charioteers, whom they are accustomed to use in all their battles, they prevent our men from landing from the ship. 11. In accordance with their custom, they were boasting insultingly of their victory. 12. Whether (64, ii.) by chance or design, they had been led out of the camp without baggage. 13. The Helvetians were much braver than the rest of the Gauls.

B (Caesar, B. G. IV., 37-38.)

1. The Morini being subdued, Caesar, being influenced by these things, set out with two legions for Britain. 2. All the buildings, about three hundred and twenty in number, were burned by the cavalry. 3. It was announced to the senate that hostages had come from two states. 4. They use the marshes as a place of refuge. 5. Our soldiers fight more bravely than the enemy; our soldiers are braver than the enemy. 6. On receipt of these despatches, more than (98, iv.) three hundred soldiers were landed from the ship. 7. Because of the marshes and forests the legion was led back from the territories of the Menapii. 8. They are unwilling to defend themselves with arms. 9. Aid was sent more

quickly by Caesar than by the lieutenant Cotta. 10. Influenced by this hope, they surround the legion with great shouting. 11. After several had been slain, the rest betook themselves to a marsh of vast extent (*ingēns māgnitūdō*). 12. The soldiers on disembarking (use both *expōnō* and *ēgredior*) hastened to their winter quarters.

VERBAL NOUNS—INFINITIVE, GERUND, SUPINE.

A. THE INFINITIVE.

109. The Infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it is modified by an adverb, not by an adjective; it governs the same case as other parts of the verb; it has the distinction of tense, and it has a subject. As a noun it is used as a subject or object of verbs, or as an appositive, and is always neuter.¹

110. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.—The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the *subject* of a verb; as,

It is better to defend the camp: **Castra dēfendere praestat.**

It is not right for the Germans to cross over: **Germānōs trānsire nōn aequum est.**²

It was reported that the cavalry was approaching: **Nūntiātum est equitēs accēdere.**

He shows that carrying out their plans is an easy matter: **Perfacile esse probat cōnāta perficere.**

i. This usage is found chiefly with (a) certain (so-called) impersonal verbs, e.g., *oportet*, *licet*, *iurat*, *placet*; (b) *est* and neuter adjectives, such as *aequum*, *turpe*, *ūtīle*, *necesse*; (c) passive verbs *sentiendī et dēclārandī* (section 14).

ii. Except with passive verbs *sentiendī et dēclārandī*, the tense of the infinitive used as subject is almost invariably the present, the perfect occurring but seldom, and the future never.

¹ In the case of the historical infinitive, however, the infinitive has the value of a verb only, not of a noun.

² Notice that neither the introductory *for* nor the representative subject *it* is expressed in Latin by any separate word.

111. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.—The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is used as the object of a verb; as,

He says Caesar has come: **Dicit Caesarem vēnisse.**

He wished to depart: **Discēdere volēbat.**

i. For the accusative and infinitive construction see section 14, for the complementary infinitive, sections 19-21. For the infinitive as an appositive see section 195.

112. THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.—In lively description the present infinitive, with its subject (when expressed) in the *nominative case*, is often found instead of the imperfect indicative; generally several such infinitives are found together; as,

Every day Caesar dunned the Aedui; day after day the Aedui kept putting him off: **Cotidiē Caesar Aeduos flāgitāre; diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī.**

B. THE GERUND.

113. The Gerund is a verbal noun found only in the genitive, dative, accusative and ablative singular. Like the infinitive, it is modified by an adverb, and governs the same case as the other parts of the verb.

In use the gerund corresponds pretty closely to the English gerund in *-ing*, but often also, especially with *ad*, it may be translated by the English (gerundial) infinitive with *to*.¹

114. (a) The Genitive of the gerund is used chiefly with *causā* and as an objective genitive with nouns and adjectives; as,

For the purpose of foraging: **Frūmentandī causā.**

Desirous of making war: **Bellandī cupidus.**

(b) The Dative of the gerund is rarely found, and is used chiefly with adjectives denoting *fitness* (for which *ad* and the accusative is more common), and in some official phrases; as *A wall sufficiently high for defence:* **Satis altus tuendō mūrus.**

¹ Unlike the English usage, the gerund in Latin is not found as the subject or the object of a verb, the infinitive being used instead; as, *Doing this is easy:* **Facile est haec facere.** *They began fleeing in all directions:* **Passim fugere coeperunt.**

(c) The Accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions, chiefly *ad* ; as,

Ready to fight (or Ready for fighting): **Parātus ad dīmicandum.**

(d) The Ablative of the gerund is used to denote means and with prepositions, chiefly *in*, *ab*, *dē* and *ex* ; as, *Occupied in reaping:* **In metendō occupātī.**

i. The use of the gerund with an accusative object is, on the whole, rare. See section 119.

ii. *Ob* and *in* are the only prepositions, other than *ad*, found with the accusative gerund in the best Latin.

C. THE SUPINE.

115. The Supine is a verbal noun found only in the accusative and ablative singular, in both cases with adverbial force. It is translated by the English infinitive with *to*.¹

116. The ACCUSATIVE SUPINE or supine in *-um*, is used to denote purpose, especially after verbs of motion, and if transitive may take an accusative object ; as,

They send envoys to Caesar to ask aid: **Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium.**

i. The construction is not common in classical Latin, which prefers to express purpose by the final subjunctive, or by the gerund and gerundive with *ad* or *causā*. It is used most frequently with *ēō* and *veniō*, and also in the phrase *nūptum dare* (or *collocāre*).

ii. The rare future infinitive passive is formed by means of *īrī* (present infinitive passive of *eō* used impersonally) and this supine ; as, *He says the city will be taken:* **Dicit urbem captum īrī** (literally, *there is a going to take the city*). Here *urbem* is really the object of *captum*, not the subject of *captum īrī*.

117. The ABLATIVE SUPINE, or supine in *-ū*, is used to define the application of certain adjectives and of the nouns *fās* and *nefās* ; as,

This is difficult to do: **Hōc est difficile factū.**

Incredible to narrate: **Incrēdibile dictū.**

It is a sin to say so: **Hōc nefas est dictū.**

¹ The supine in *-um* corresponds to the English (gerundial) infinitive with *to* after verbs ; the supine in *-ū* to this infinitive with adjectives and nouns.

i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those meaning *easy, difficult, pleasant, strange, best*. The supines so used are chiefly *audītū, dictū, factū, visū, nūtū*.

ii. The ablative supine does not take an object.¹

EXERCISE 15.

A.

1. The lieutenant brought word to Caesar that he had found the ships ready for sailing. 2. They saw that our men were not advancing for the purpose of fighting. 3. After (114, ii.) making a bridge Caesar attempted to cross the river and pursue the enemy. 4. He proves to them that it is a very easy thing to do, to seize the supreme power. 5. For quickness in loading, the ships were made lower. 6. If messengers had come to Caesar to ask help, he would have sent three legions to their assistance. 7. Answer was made that it was better to be slain in battle than not to recover their freedom. 8. By making enquiry, Caesar found that the rest of the cavalry had been thrown into a panic. 9. They hurl their weapons at the enemy and give them no opportunity of retiring. 10. They thought the best thing to do was to cut off our men from supplies. 11. He learned from the soldiers that the ships were useless for sailing. 12. Although he was ready to set out, he thought it would be extremely dangerous for the soldiers to embark. 13. So fierce an onset did the enemy make that there was no possibility of keeping (one's) position on the wall.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 1.*)

1. He orders (*jubeō*) the old vessel to be repaired. 2. Envoys are sent for the purpose of giving satisfaction to Caesar. 3. It is dangerous (*periculōsus*) for the consuls to leave Italy. 4. They are ready for (*ad*) setting out. 5. They had come thither to announce (*supine*) that raids were being made. 6. He points out the method of repairing. 7. What is it best (*optimus*) to do? 8. It seems (*videor*) to be best to put the lieutenant in charge of this legion.

¹ It may however be found in connection with a noun clause (infinitive or indirect question) which forms the subject of the main verb; as, *It is hard to say how powerful they are: Difficile est dictū quid possint.*

9. All these things were of service for loading. 10. They are accustomed to display (*utor*) quickness in assembling. 11. It has been pointed out that they are accustomed to use lower vessels.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES—GERUNDIVE, PARTICIPLES.

A. THE GERUNDIVE.

118. The Gerundive (sometimes called the future participle passive) is a verbal adjective of the first and second declensions, and agrees with its substantive.

119. THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.—Instead of the *gerund* governing a direct object in the accusative, we often find the substantive put in the case required by the context and the *gerundive* in agreement with it. This is the regular usage after prepositions and in the dative case, and is preferable in the genitive and in the ablative of means; as,

He sets out to harass the enemy: **Ad hostēs vexandōs proficiscitur** (not **ad vexandum hostēs**).

They lose time in seeking their comrades: **In quaerendis suis tempus dimitunt** (not in **quaerendō suōs**).

An opportunity is afforded of marching through the province: **Facultās datur per prōvinciam itineris faciendi** (rather than **iter faciendi**).

He sets out for the purpose of bringing aid: **Auxiliū ferendī causā proficiscitur** (rather than **auxilium ferendī**).

i. The various cases are used in the same way in the gerundive construction as in the gerund. (See section 114.)

ii. The gerundive construction cannot be used with intransitive verbs; as,

For the purpose of resisting the enemy: **Hostibus resistendī causā** (never **Hostium resistendōrum causā**).

But *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor* and *potior*, which governed the accusative in old Latin, regularly take the gerundive construction; as,

The hope of taking the camp: **Spēs potiundōrum castrōrum**.

iii. In the case of neuter pronouns and neuter adjectives used substantively the gerund with an object accusative is regular, even after prepositions; as, *For the purpose of doing something*: **Aliquid agendi causā.**

iv. With *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, the gerundive in *-ndi* is used, without regard to either gender or number; as, *For the purpose of clearing themselves (or himself or herself)*: **Sui pūgandi causā** (not **sui pūgandōrum** or **sui pūgandae**).¹

120. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. — The gerundive is used in the nominative and accusative as a predicate adjective with *sum*, to denote *duty* or *necessity*; as,

Everything had to be done by Caesar: **Caesarī omnia erant agenda.**

He decided that the Rhine must be crossed: **Statuit Rhēnum esse transeundum.**

The leading men should (ought to) have been assembled: **Principēs convocandi erant.**

i. The expression is always passive, the agent being in the dative (see section 80, *d*). The English equivalent is, however, constantly in the active; as,

Caesar had to do everything. He decided that he must cross the Rhine.

ii. In this construction intransitive verbs are used impersonally (see section 56), the gerundive taking the same case as the verb from which it is formed; as, *There must be no delay*: **Nōn est cunctandum.** *They had to fight*: **Erat pūgnandum.** *These things ought to be used*: **His rēbus ūtendum est.**

121. The accusative of the gerundive is used in predicative agreement with the object of certain verbs (chiefly verbs of *giving, assigning, undertaking* and *caring for*) to express *purpose*; as, *He hands them over to the Ædūi to guard*: **Hōs Æduis custōdiendōs trādit.** *He provided for the transportation of the army*: **Exercitum transportandum cūravit.**

¹ The usual explanation given is that *pūgandi* is the gerundive agreeing with *sui*, which, like *mei, nostri*, etc., was in its origin the genitive of the neuter singular possessive, *suum*=*their* (or *his* or *her*) *personality*.

B. THE PARTICIPLES.

122. For the grammatical value of the participle and the use of the *present* and *perfect* participles see sections 40-44.

The *future* participle denotes an action as about to happen at a time *subsequent* to that of its principal verb. Its chief uses are (a) to form (with *esse*) the future infinitive active in the accusative and infinitive construction, and (b) in the active periphrastic conjugation. It is but rarely used as an adjective or substantive (*futūrus* being the chief instance); in poetry and late prose writers it is used appositively to express intention or probability.

123. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. — The future participle is used as a predicate adjective with *sum* to express *intention*, *likelihood*, or *imminence*; as,

You are about to fight: Pūgnātūrī estis.

He said that he had been on the point of setting out: Dixit sē profectūrum fuisse.

They are going to send hostages: Obsidēs missūrī sunt.

124. Various ways of expressing purpose are found in Latin. Thus the sentence *Envoys were sent to seek peace* may be translated:

(a) Lēgātī missī sunt ut pācem peterent (section 24).

(b) Lēgātī missī sunt qui pācem peterent (section 26).

(c) Lēgātī missī sunt ad pācem petendam (section 119).

Ad and the *gerund* of intransitive verbs is also used (section 114, c).

(d) Lēgātī missī sunt pācis petendae causā (section 119).

(e) Lēgātī missī sunt pācem petendī causā (section 114, a).

(f) Lēgātī missī sunt pācem petitum (section 116).

(g) Lēgātī missī sunt pācem petitūrī (section 122).

Of these the *gerund* and *gerundive* constructions are found in short expressions only, while the future participle should be avoided altogether in prose composition.

EXERCISE 16.

A.

1. Caesar is about to lead out his forces with the object of crushing the enemy. 2. He answered that the soldiers must not, in searching for their comrades, waste the time for fighting. 3. He caused two bridges to be built (121) for the purpose of follow-

ing up the enemy. 4. All hope of seizing the town has vanished. 5. The enemy was on the point of making an attack on the cavalry. 6. He perceived that he would have to set out at once. 7. We should not let slip the opportunity of freeing ourselves for ever. 8. He will give this legion to Labienus to lead back (121). 9. They did not think that so large a number of hostages should have been required. 10. They were assembling from all sides to defend the camp.

B. (Caesar, B. G. V., 1, 2.)

1. He points out what has to be done (what he is going to do). 2. The winter is not sufficient for accomplishing these ends (*rēs*). 3. He was on the point of setting out for the purpose of laying waste the adjacent states. 4. Envoys must be sent to stir up the Germans. 5. These things were of great service in equipping the war vessels. 6. He praised (their) quickness in bringing the hostages. 7. Are twenty ships enough to (*ad*) carry over six hundred cavalry? 8. The soldiers had to build thirty ships in eight days. 9. The soldiers' unparalleled zeal is to be praised. 10. We are about to visit the winter quarters of all the legions. 11. Caesar should have left the legions in hither Gaul. 12. On account of their zeal in finishing this task, he was able to launch the vessels in a few days. 13. He ordered (*jubeō* and *imperō*) the army to assemble at this harbor for the purpose of setting out for the mainland. 14. He is said not to have been obedient to Caesar's authority.

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE AND TIME.

125. PLACE TO WHICH (limit of motion) is denoted by the accusative with *ad* or *in*, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with *domum*, *domōs* (*home*), and *rūs* (*to the country*), the preposition is omitted; as,

They hasten to the camp: Ad castra contendunt.

He sets out for Britain: In Britanniam proficiscitur.

He sets out for Rome: **Rōmam proficiscitur.**

They returned home: **Domum rediērunt.**

i. With names of towns *ad* is used (a) to denote *into* (or *in*) the neighborhood of, and (b) sometimes in contrast with *ab* in expressions of direction; as, *He came into the neighborhood of Geneva:* **Ad Genāvam pervēnit.** *He pitched his camp near Alesia:* **Ad Alesiam castra fēcit.**

ii. For the use of the dative in poetry to express the limit of motion see section 78, vii.

126. PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the ablative with **ab**, **ex**, or **dē**, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with **domō** (*from home*) and **rūre** (*from the country*), the preposition is omitted; as,

They withdrew from the shore: **Ā litore discessērunt.**

They crossed over from Belgium: **Ex Belgiō trānsiērunt.**

He fled from Corinth: **Corinthō fūgit.**

They had gone away from home: **Domō discesserant.**

i. With names of towns *ab* is used (a) to denote *from the neighborhood of*, (b) sometimes in contrast with *ad* in expressions of direction, and (c) with *longē* and verbs of distance; as, *It is three hundred miles from Zama:* **Ā Zamā abest milia passuum trecenta.**

127. PLACE WHERE is denoted by the ablative with **in**, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with a few common nouns the preposition is omitted; as,

He stood on the wall: **In mūrō cōstitit.**

They spend the winter in Gaul: **In Galliā hiemant.**

He died at Athens: **Athēnis mortuus est.**

i. In names of towns and islands of the first and second declensions in the singular, the locative (identical in form with the genitive) is used, not the ablative; as,

At Rome: **Rōmae.** *At Corinth:* **Corinthi.**

So occasionally in the third declension singular (as **Carthāginī**), and regularly in the words **domī**, **rūrī**, **humī**, **bellī**, **militiae**.

ii. The words *locus* and *pars*, and other nouns when modified by *tôtus* (and sometimes by *medius*, *omnis* or *cunctus*), may be used in the ablative without a preposition; as, *On suitable ground: Idôneo locō. Throughout the whole camp: Tôtis castris.* In poetry the preposition is freely omitted with any noun.¹

iii. Often where English uses *in*, *motion towards* is implied, and Latin consequently uses the accusative; as, *They concealed themselves in the woods (that is, went into the woods and hid): In silvâ sē abdidērunt.*

Collocō and *pōnō*, however, take the ablative with *in*.

iv. For such expressions as *He came to the senate at Rome* (where *at Rome* is an adjectival phrase modifying *senate*), Latin has *Rōmam ad senātum vēnit* (where both expressions modify the verb). Similarly, *He came from the senate at Rome* is *Rōmā à senātū vēnit.*²

v. With *pars*, *latus*, *agmen*, *cornū*, *tergum*, *frons*, the direction in which or the side on which is expressed by the ablative with *ab* (and in the case of *pars*, also with *ex*); as, *In front: Ā fronte. On one side: Ūnā ex parte.*

vi. The locative *animī* (*in heart*) is used with verbs and adjectives of *feeling* to denote *respect*.

128. EXTENT OF SPACE is expressed by the accusative with verbs and with the adjectives *longus*, *altus* and *lātus*; as,

He advances three miles: Tria mīlia passuum prōcēdit.
A trench five feet deep: Fossa quinque pedēs alta.

i. With *absum* and *distō* either this accusative or the ablative of measure of difference may be used. (Section 101, i.)

129. DURATION OF TIME is expressed by the accusative; as,

¹ In phrases like *castris tenēre*, the ablative is rather instrumental.

² On a somewhat similar principle, where English has a common noun (like *town* or *city*), modified by an adjective or its equivalent, in apposition with the name of a place, with the corresponding noun Latin generally uses a preposition to express *motion towards*, *motion from* or *place where*. Instead of having *urbs* or *oppidum* in apposition with the proper name; as, *They halted at Alba, a convenient city: Albæ cōstitērunt in urbe opportūnâ. I came to Athens, a most famous city: Athēnās in urbem præclārissimam vēni. He set out from Cures, a town of the Sabines: Curibus ex oppidō Sabīnōrum profectus est.*

He waits there a few days: Paucōs diēs ibi morātur.

He was twenty years old: Viginti annōs nātus erat.¹

i. *Per* is sometimes added to the accusative to emphasize the idea of duration.

ii. *How long ago* is expressed by *abhinc* and the accusative; *how long before* and *how long after*, by *ante* and *post* with (a) the accusative, or (b) the ablative of measure of difference; as, *A few days after: Post paucōs diēs* or *Paucis post diēbus.*

130. TIME WHEN is expressed by the ablative; as,

He returns on the fifth day: Quintō diē revertitur.

At sunset he led back his forces: Sōlis occāsū cōpiās redūxit.

In all the Gallic wars: Omnibus Gallicis bellis.

131. TIME WITHIN WHICH is expressed by the ablative; as,

He has been put to death within the last few days: His paucis diēbus interfectus est.

i. Occasionally, by inference, the ablative of the time within which, especially with *tōtus*, may be equivalent to the accusative of the time how long; as, *They marched all that night: Eā tōtā nocte ierunt.*

EXERCISE 17.

A.

1. After waiting in Italy three months he returned from Rome to Athens. 2. The enemy took up their position on wooded ground eight miles from Caesar's camp. 3. Four years ago (129, ii.) a battle was fought in the neighborhood (125, i. a) of Massilia. 4. This river, he replied (18, vi.), was sixty feet wide and about five feet deep. 5. Setting out from the army in Gaul (127, iv.), he came a few days later to the river Thames in the enemy's country (127, iv.). 6. They were ordered to leave home within three days and hide in (127, iii.) the nearest woods. 7. He set out for the country at the beginning of spring and returned home the next year. 8. The battle was begun on the right wing (127, v.). 9. He came from Geneva in the consulship of Crassus and Pompey (49), and lived for several years at Rome and Athens. 10. On the

¹ Literally, *He had been born twenty years.*

same day, he was informed that the enemy's forces were three miles distant from Bibracte. 11. He said that he was nine years old. 12. After completing a march of twenty miles, they remained in camp for several successive days.

B. (Caesar, B. G. 17, 1-3.)

1. The forest of Ardennes used to extend from the borders of this state to the river Rhine. 2. For a large part of the winter they had been under arms in the territories of the Treveri. 3. Britain is about thirty miles distant (*absum*) from the mainland. 4. They point out what is being done in our camp. 5. On Caesar's approach they had hidden themselves in the midst of the forests. 6. Within two days all the leading men had assembled from the whole of Gaul. 7. On coming to Rome he began to be afraid. 8. In the consulship of Caesar I was returning from Rome to Spain. 9. During all these days they were preparing for war in Rome and the adjacent part of Italy. 10. Their territories extend for many miles to the sea. 11. For a few days they are unwilling to come to Caesar in his winter camp. 12. In this war they were unwilling to withdraw from the province. 13. It is easier to collect troops in hither Gaul than in Illyricum. 14. On this day they had set out from the harbor for home.

IMPERATIVE. INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

132. COMMANDS.—The present imperative is regularly used to express commands and entreaties; as,

Consider Gaul: Respicite Galliam.

i. As in English, there are many substitutes for the imperative; e.g., (a) periphrases with *jubeō*, *petō*, *orō*, etc.; (b) *velim* (*I should like*), and *fac* or *cūrā* (*see to it, be sure*) with the present subjunctive (with or without *ut*); (c) in the indefinite second person, the present subjunctive alone.

ii. The future imperative expresses rather a contingent command than one to be immediately obeyed. Hence it is used in laws and precepts, and in distinct reference to the future.

133. PROHIBITIONS are usually expressed by *nōlī, nōlīte* (*be unwilling*) with the present infinitive ; as,

Do not suppose : Nōlīte existimāre.

i. Prohibitions are also expressed (a) by *cavē*, (or, less commonly, *cavē nē, vidē nē, or fac nē*), and the present subjunctive ; (b) by *nē* and the present or perfect subjunctive, but chiefly in familiar discourse ; (c) in poetry by *nē* and the present imperative.

134. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *willed*.¹ The following varieties exist :

(a) HORTATORY.—The first person of the present subjunctive is used to command, or, with *nē*, to forbid ; as, *Let us consider Gaul : Galliam respiciāmus. Let us not despair : Nē dēspērēmus.*

(b) JUSSIVE.—The third person of the present subjunctive is used to command, or, with *nē*, to forbid ; as, *Let the consuls see to it : Videant cōsulēs.*

i. So too the second person of the present or perfect subjunctive is used to express prohibition or command (sections 133, i. b and 132, i. c).

(c) CONCESSIVE.—The present and perfect subjunctive are used to concede for the sake of argument, the negative being *nē* ; as, *Granting that pain is not the greatest evil, still it certainly is an evil : Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est.*

(d) DELIBERATIVE.—The Subjunctive is used to ask for direction (though without expecting an answer), and thus comes to express perplexity (commonly in the first person of the present or imperfect subjunctive) or again surprise and indignation ; as, *What am I to do ? Quid faciam ? Are we to yield to him ? Huic cēdāmus ?*²

135. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *desired*.

This is called the OPTATIVE subjunctive, or the subjunctive of DESIRE. The negative is *nē*. The present tense is used to express wishes viewed as practicable ; the imperfect and pluperfect to express wishes viewed as impossible of fulfilment in present and past time respectively. Such clauses are frequently introduced by

¹ This is sometimes termed the VOLITIVE subjunctive.

² See further section 136, d. These various types of question are known as *Rhetorical Questions* or *Questions of Appeal*.

utinam, regularly so in the case of the imperfect and pluperfect tenses; as, *May they be happy: Sint beātī. Would that he were present: Utinam adesset. Would that I had never been born: Utinam nē nātus essem.*

136. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *conceivable*.

This is the so-called POTENTIAL subjunctive, used of present and past time. It is generally to be translated by *could*, *would* or *should*, and takes the negative *nōn*. The following types exist:

(a) Modest expressions of wish or regret with *velim* or *vellem* and their compounds, followed often by another subjunctive (of desire) as object; as, *I should like to know: Velim scire. I would rather he were present: Mālem adesset.*

(b) With the indefinite second person singular; as, *You (= one) would have thought: Putārēs.*¹

(c) In softened assertions or questions; as, *It would scarcely seem probable: Vix vērissimile videātur.* This usage is found chiefly in the protasis of conditional sentences (see sections 61 and 63).

(d) In questions virtually equivalent to a negative statement; as, *Who could doubt? Quis dubitet? Who would ever have thought? Quis umquam arbitrārētur?*

i. Latin, however, often has the indicative where we might expect the potential subjunctive. So regularly with *possum*, *dēbeō*, etc., with the passive periphrastic conjugation, and with *est* and predicate adjectives such as *aequum*, *melius*, *satis*, *facile*, etc.; as, *I might have said more: Plūra poteram dicere. It would be tedious to tell everything: Longum est omnia nārrāre.* (See section 64, i.)

137. Notice the values of *would* in the following sentences, and the different ways of translating it into Latin:

(a) *I thought he would come: Arbitrābar eum ventūrum esse* (15, c).

(b) *I asked what they would do: Rogāvī quid factūrī essent* (36).

(c) *He would not do this: Nōluit haec facere or Negāvit sē haec factūrum.*

¹ The indefinite second person singular of the present subjunctive is also found in independent sentences to state a general fact; as, *One (often) looks for what is before one's eyes, Quod oculis videās, dēsiderēs.*

- (d) *If he were alive he would be present* : *Sī viveret, adesset* (61).
 (e) *If you should do this, he would come* : *Sī haec faciās, veniat* (63).
 (f) *Would that he would come !* *Utinam veniat !* (135).
 (g) *Would that he had come !* *Utinam vēnisset !* (135).
 (h) *It would be better to do this* : *Melius est haec facere* (136, i).
 (i) *Who would venture to do this ?* *Quis haec facere audeat ?* (136, b).
 (j) *I was afraid he would come* : *Verēbar nē venīret* (138).
 (k) *Whenever they came, he would do this* : *Ubi vēnerant, haec faciēbat* (180, b).

EXERCISE 18.

A.

1. Let the Gauls send envoys to Caesar to seek peace. 2. Would that Caesar were not sending two legions to the assistance of Labienus. 3. Who can endure that his freedom should be taken away ? 4. Remember the former valor of the Helvetians, soldiers. 5. Let us not fear the enemy, however numerous (66, ii.), nor return to the camp unless victorious (44, iii.). 6. Do not let slip this opportunity of waging war. 7. What was I to say ? It would have been (136, a, i.) easy to make many promises ; but who would have believed me ? 8. I should like you to inform me as once of his departure. 9. Would that Caesar had allowed us to march through the province. 10. Advance towards the shore and do not betray the eagle to the enemy. 11. He would (137, c) not announce to the soldiers when he would set out. 12. One would have supposed that the envoys would not return the next day.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 4-5.*)

1. Remain loyal ; do not be deterred from this plan. 2. Come to me with all your sons. 3. Let us return (134, a) to the point from which we set out. 4. Tell us, Caesar, why you are spending the summer there. 5. Caesar was aware that the rest would be annoyed. 6. If Caesar himself had been absent, the leading men would not have remained loyal. 7. Would that (135) Caesar were not absent. 8. Do not be of an unfriendly disposition towards

him. 9. Let us take (134, a) the hostages with us. 10. He had learned from what point they would set out. 11. Who would be willing (136, d) to be left as a hostage? 12. It would be easy (136, i.) to compel them to assemble. 13. Do not fear these uprisings. Let everything be made ready (136, a) for war. 14. When they learned this, they would not (137, c) hold on their course. 15. If he should be driven back by storms, he would be annoyed. 16. Had he summoned the chief men, his influence would be very great.

VERBS OF FEARING. USES OF *Quin* AND *Quōminus*.

138. After verbs of fearing and such phrases as *metus est*, *periculum est*, *that* and *lest* are translated by *nē*,¹ and *that not* by *ut*, with the present subjunctive after the primary tenses, the imperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses ; as,

I fear that he will do this (or I fear lest he do this) : Vereor nē hōc faciat.

I fear that he will not do this : Vereor ut hōc faciat.

There was danger that they would be surrounded : Periculum erat nē circumvenirentur.

i. For *ut*, *nē nōn* is very commonly used, regularly so after *nōn vereor*.

ii. Verbs of fearing may be used as modal verbs, followed by the infinitive to represent a corresponding infinitive in the English ; as *I fear to do this : Vereor haec facere.*

139. Verbs and phrases of *hindering* and *objecting*, and negative verbs and phrases of *doubting*, *failure* or *omission*, are regularly followed by the subjunctive with the introductory particles *quin*,

¹ The apparently redundant negative *nē*, *quōminus*, *quin*=*qui* (an old ablative form=*quō*)+*nē*, in these clauses is due to the fact that the clauses now dependent were once independent clauses expressing a desire; this has been developed through a final clause into a substantive clause ; as, *I fear ; may he not do this. They hinder the Aedui whereby the less they may bring in corn.* English, unlike Latin, tends to look at what is prevented as the result, not the purpose, of the hindering.

quōminus or *nē*, according to the following rules; the present subjunctive being used after the primary tenses, the imperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses.¹

N.B.—*Quin* is used only after negatives or virtual negatives.

(a) Verbs of *hindering*, e.g., *dēterreō*, *impediō*, *retineō*, and also *recūsō*, *object* (if negated), take *quōminus* or *quin*; or (if not negated) *quōminus* or *nē*; as,

They did not object to coming: *Nōn recūsābant quin (or quōminus) venirent.*

They hinder the Aedui from bringing in corn: *Aeduoīs dēterrent quōminus (or nē) frūmentum cōferant.*

i. *Prohibeō* regularly takes the accusative and infinitive (section 22, i.), while *nōn recūsō* also may take the infinitive.

(b) Negative verbs and phrases of *doubting*, e.g., *nōn dubitō*, *nōn est dubium*, take *quin*; as,

There was no doubt that they had (or of their having) very great power: *Nōn erat dubium quin plūrimum possent.*

i. *Dubitō*, *hesitate*, regularly takes the infinitive.

(c) Negative verbs and phrases of *failure or omission*, such as *nihil praetermittō* (*leave nothing undone*), *haud multum abest* (*be within a little*), *facere nōn possum* (*cannot but or cannot help*), take *quin*; as,

And a suspicion is not wanting that he committed suicide: *Neque abest suspiciō quin ipse sibi mortem cōsciverit.*

They let no time go by without stirring up the states: *Nūllum tempus intermisērunt quin civitatēs sollicitārent.*

i. For *quin* after such expressions as *nēmō est*, see section 33, ii.

EXERCISE 19.

A.

1. I fear the soldiers will not be able to take the city by storm.
2. Who could doubt (130, d) that (139, b) the Romans are going to take our freedom away?
3. They promised to raise no objections to being (139, a) under the sway of the enemy.
4. There was great danger of the enemy's crossing the river and making an attack upon the camp.
5. Caesar was afraid that they were about to renew the war.
6. They believed that Caesar by his influence

¹ It should be observed that *quin* and *quōminus* with the subjunctive often answer to the English gerund governed by a preposition.

could hinder (*prohibeō*) the Germans from being brought across the Rhine. 7. He feared that the soldiers would not be able to cross the bridge and attack the enemy in the rear. 8. There was no doubt that (139, *b*) the Aedui were hesitating to declare war. 9. Several vessels were prevented by the storms from (139, *a*) being able to reach the same port. 10. There is no one who (33, *ii.*) does not know that we feared to disembark (138, *ii.*). 11. We fear that the soldiers will be unwilling to defend the camp. 12. Not even at the conference could the Gauls be deterred from (139, *a*) hurling weapons at our men. 13. The soldiers did not object to repairing the old vessels. 14. There was no one but knew that Labienus was in charge of that legion.

B. (Caesar, B. G. V., 6.)

1. They fear that they will be taken across to Britain. 2. They were afraid lest they should not gain their request. 3. I am hindered by religious scruples from (139, *a*) giving (*dō*) the oath that Caesar demands. 4. There is no doubt that (139, *b*) the Aedui are unaccustomed to sailing. 5. Several report to Caesar that the Aedui feel this keenly. 6. They are so (*ita*) unused to the sea that they do not venture to sail. 7. He begged that all hope should not be taken away. 8. The others objected to (139, *a*) the royal power being conferred on Dumnorix. 9. There is added the fact that the Gauls are eager for change. 10. He saw that Gaul was being robbed of her chief men. 11. It happens that Caesar fears to prevent (*prohibeō*, 139, *a*, *i.*) our remaining (113, *fn.*). 12. They were afraid that Caesar would confer the royal power on Dumnorix. 13. In order that they might not be killed, they urged that they be left on the mainland.

DUTY, NECESSITY, POSSIBILITY, PERMISSION.

140. DUTY or OBLIGATION is expressed most frequently by the *gerundive* with *esse*, also by *dēbeō* and *oportet*.

(*a*) For the *gerundive* with *esse* (the passive periphrastic conjugation) see section 120.

(b) *Dēbeō* takes the present infinitive as object, and the impersonal verb *oportet* takes the accusative and the present infinitive as subject¹; as,

Caesar ought to come to me: Caesar ad mē venire dēbet, or Caesarem ad mē venire oportet.

i. The infinitive remains in the *present* tense with all forms of these verbs, while the verbs themselves change according to the time of the action; as *Caesar ought to have come: Caesar venire dēbat, or Caesarem venire oportuit. Caesar ought to come tomorrow: Caesar venire crās dēbēbit, or Caesarem venire crās oportēbit.*

141. NECESSITY is expressed most frequently by the *gerundive* with *esse*, also by *necesse est*.

(a) For the gerundive with *esse* (the passive periphrastic conjugation) see section 120.

(b) *Necesse est* is used with the dative and the present infinitive to express what is *inevitable* rather than what is obligatory or binding;¹ as,

All men must die: Omnibus necesse est mori.

142. POSSIBILITY or ABILITY is expressed by *possum* and the present infinitive; as,

The river can be crossed: Flūmen trānsiri potest.

They were unable to defend themselves: Sē dēfendere nō poterant.

It is impossible for us to cross: Trānsire nō possumus.

We could (or might) have been useful friends: Poterāmus esse utilis amīci. (For the tenses see section 140, b, i.)

143. PERMISSION is expressed by *licet* with the dative and the present infinitive;¹ as,

You may remain: Licet vōbis remanēre.

They were not allowed to depart: Discēdere illis nō licēbat.

i. A predicate noun or adjective referring to the dative agrees with it in case; as, *We may be free: Nōbis licet esse liberis.*

¹ The impersonal verbs *licet*, *necesse est* and *oportet* may also take the subjunctive as subject; as, *You ought to do this: Haec faciās oportet.* With *necesse est* the subjunctive often has *ut*.

144. Notice the values of *should* in the following sentences and the different ways of translating it into Latin :

(a) *I said I should return at once* : **Dixi mē statim reditūrum esse** (15, c).

(b) *He did this so that I should not return* : **Haec fēcit nē redirem** (24).

(c) *If he had done this I should not be returning* : **Sī haec fēcisset nōn redirem** (61).

(d) *If he should do this (or Should he do this), I should return at once* : **Sī haec faciat, statim redeam** (63).

(e) *It is best that he should return at once* : **Optimum est eum statim redire** (110).

(f) *You should return at once* : **Statim vōbīs est redeundum** (120).

(g) *I should like you to return* : **Velim redeās** (136, a).

(h) *I feared that I should not return* : **Veritus sum ut (or nē nōn) redirem** (138).

(i) *He promised great rewards to anyone that should return* : **Sī quis rediisset, mägna praemia pollicitus est** (177).

EXERCISE 20.

A.

1. You should reply that you are unable to leave the city. 2. The soldiers had to advance into the waves. 3. He answered that Gaul ought to be free, and that he could not allow the Germans to cross the Rhine. 4. They asked to be allowed to march through the province. 5. We must not wait longer ; we must set out for home at once. 6. Caesar should have ordered that state to furnish hostages. 7. He was afraid this would inevitably (141, b) happen. 8. The king could not be persuaded (57) to stay longer. 9. The Gauls may be cowards if they wish, but Romans must be brave men. 10. All will have to die some day. 11. You might have left the camp yesterday. 12. Our fields ought not to have been laid waste in sight of your army. 13. These towns will have to be taken by storm.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 7.*)

1. We must discover his plans ; we cannot discover their plans.
2. Part of the cavalry ought to be sent, in order that he may be

recalled. 3. If we should not get suitable weather, we should not embark. 4. He should have been brought back and put to death. 5. You are injuring the state by whatever means you can. 6. He feared (*vereor*) lest the wind should hinder his sailing. 7. Everything had to be disregarded. 8. He took care that this folly should not go farther. 9. I had announced that I should depart for home. 10. The cavalry must defend themselves. 11. May we offer violence? 12. You could have pursued him. 13. They decided that their departure should be postponed. 14. It is impossible to retain Dumnorix in Caesar's absence. 15. The cavalry are not allowed to return. 16. All ought to have returned.

CAUSAL SENTENCES. USES OF *Cum*.

145. Causal sentences are introduced by *quod*, or (less frequently) *quia*, *because*, *for the reason that*; *quoniam*, *seeing that*; *cum*, *ut*, *since*, *as*; and *quī*, *since he*.

- i. For *quī* with the causal subjunctive see section 171.
- ii. For *quod*, meaning *the fact that*, see section 198.
- iii. *Cum* clauses (as giving attendant circumstances) regularly precede the principal clause; *quod* clauses (as emphasizing the reason) generally follow.

146. *Quod*, *quia* and *quoniam* take the *indicative* to express a reason advanced by the writer or speaker himself; *as*,

He set out for Illyricum, because he wished to become acquainted with that district: In Illyricum profectus est, quod eās regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat.

- i. Frequently a sort of antecedent (such as *propterea*, *eō*, *hōc*, *eā dē causā*) is found preparing the way for the *quod* clause.

147. *Quod*, *quia* and *quoniam* take the *subjunctive* to quote some other person's reason;¹ *as*,

They begged him to lend them aid, because (as they said) they were hard pressed by the Suebi: Ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur.

¹ Or even to quote one's own previously expressed reason.

Aristides was banished from his country on the ground that he was unreasonably just : **Aristidēs expulsus est patriā quod praeter modum iustus esset.**

i. It should not be supposed that the subjunctive casts doubt upon the reason given, or refuses to vouch for its accuracy. It simply quotes without expressing any opinion, and is, in fact, identical with the subjunctive of virtual indirect discourse (section 177). *Quod* with the indicative tells *why* something was said or done ; *quod* with the subjunctive tells *on what grounds* something was said or done.

ii. *Quod* is very commonly used after verbs of accusation, praise, complaint, thanks, joy, anger, and the like ; the indicative or subjunctive being used according to the distinction just drawn ; as, *I thank you for setting me free* : **Tibi gratiās agō, quod mē liberāvisti.** *Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth* : **Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem.**

iii. *Nōn quod* or *nōn quō* is used with the subjunctive of a reason mentioned only to be rejected, = *not because* (as one might suppose). So also *quam quod* or *quam quō* after an actual or virtual comparative.

iv. For the illogical *quod diceret* see section 177, ii.

148. *Cum*, with causal force, meaning *since* or *as*, takes the subjunctive ;¹ as,

Since they could not defend themselves, they sent envoys to Caesar : **Cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt.**

149. *Cum*, meaning *whenever* or *when*, in clauses denoting indefinitely recurring action, takes the indicative.

When, as is usually the case, the *cum* clause denotes an action preceding that of the main verb, the perfect and pluperfect tenses are used ; but when it denotes what is simultaneous, the present and imperfect (section 178, ii.). The main verb is regularly present or imperfect indicative.

Whenever our men attacked, the enemy fell back : **Cum nostri impetum fēcerant, hostēs pedem referēbant.**

¹ For *cum*, with concessive or adversative force, meaning *although*, *while*, *whereas*, see section 65, a.

Whenever our men attack, the enemy fall back : Cum nostri impetum fēcērunt, hostēs pedem referunt.

Whenever there is need, the enemy fall back : Cum ūsus est, hostēs pedem referunt.

i. With the same force and with the same construction are used also *quotiēns*, *quotiēns*cumque, *ut*, *ubi*, *sī* *quandō*.

150. *Cum*, meaning *when*, referring to present or future time, takes the *indicative* ; as,

When I find out, I shall inform you : Cum cōgnōverō, faciam tē certiōrem.

i. The futuro and future perfect are used with *cum* as with *si* (section 62).

151. *Cum*, meaning *when* (or *while*), referring to past time, regularly takes the *subjunctive* ; the imperfect of contemporaneous action, the pluperfect of antecedent action (section 178, ii.) ; as,

When they were approaching Britain, a storm arose : Cum Britanniae appropinquārent, tempestās coorta est.

When he perceived this, he sent reinforcements : Quod cum animadvertisset, subsidia submittit.

In most cases *cum* with the subjunctive describes the *circumstances or situation*, very often, as in the last example, combining the causal with the temporal idea.¹

The following exceptions to this use of *cum* with the subjunctive regularly occur :

i. *When*, meaning *whenever*, is regularly expressed by *cum* and the indicative (section 149).

ii. *Cum* expressing *identity of action or coincidence of time* regularly takes the indicative, chiefly when the principal clause contains *tum*, or some equivalent expression ; as, *When they remain quiet* (or *in remaining quiet*), *they approve* : *Cum quiescunt, pro-*

¹ Similarly combining the adversative with the temporal idea, *cum* (meaning *while* or *whereas*) is used with the subjunctive to contrast two situations ; as, *The enemy numbered five thousand, while our men had no more than eight hundred cavalry : Hostium erat quinque milium numerus, cum nostri nōn amplius octingentōs habērent.*

bant. *At the time when he came to Gaul, there were two factions in that state: (Tum) cum in Galliam vēnit, in eā civitatē duae erant factionēs.*

iii. *Cum*, meaning *when* or *when suddenly*, in a clause which is logically the principal one, takes the indicative. The principal clause often has *jam*, *vix* or *nōdum*; as, *They were already preparing to depart, when suddenly it was announced that the city had been captured: Jam discēdere parābant, cum repenti nūtiātum est urbem captam esse.* (This is sometimes called *cum inversum*.)

iv. *Cum primum*, as soon as, takes the indicative.

v. *Cum . . . tum*, meaning both . . . and, has regularly no influence on the mood of the verb.

EXERCISE 21.

A.

1. Caesar complained because the enemy were laying waste the territories of the Aedui. 2. When the ships were drawing near the island, so great a tempest arose that they could with difficulty hold their course. 3. As they thought the enemy were within the gates, they rushed out of the town. 4. Caesar feared an ambush, because he had not yet learned why they were withdrawing. 5. Whenever our men began to return to the place from which they had started, they were surrounded by the enemy. 6. They asked to be allowed to remain in our camp, on the ground that they dreaded the vengeance of the Gauls. 7. Since this is the case, I shall set out at once. 8. The soldiers were proceeding with the greatest caution, when (151, iii.) the Helvetians suddenly attacked them in the rear. 9. When our men saw that the camp was being filled with great numbers of the enemy, they immediately took to flight. 10. When Caesar returns (150, i.) to the camp, he will find the ships repaired. 11. At the time when (151, ii.) the enemy were preparing to storm the camp, Caesar was leading the soldiers across the bridge. 12. When Caesar discovered what had been done, he reproved the rashness of the soldiers in that (=because), on the signal being given, they had not halted.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 6, 7.*)

1. They urged Caesar to leave them, on the ground that they were not used to sailing. 2. Whenever the wind began to blow,

they begged Caesar to return. 3. Caesar will keep the leading men with him because he is afraid to leave them in Gaul. 4. When (*cum*) this was reported, he perceived that all hope had vanished. 5. Since Dumnorix cannot be kept loyal, Caesar has determined to take him over to Britain. 6. Whenever Caesar is absent, they disregard his authority. 7. He keeps calling out that he must not be killed, because he is a free man. 8. When Caesar finds this out, he will be greatly annoyed. 9. He accused (*accūsō*) Dumnorix of being (147, ii.) eager for supreme power. 10. When they were coming in sight of the camp, he began to resist. 11. As orders had been given not to bring him back, they did not venture to pursue him. 12. When they surround him, they will put him to death.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

152. WHEN, AFTER, AS SOON AS,¹ introducing clauses of time, are translated by

(a) *Cum* or *cum primum* (sections 149-151).

(b) *Postquam*, *posteaquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul ac* (or *simul atque*) with the indicative, in narrative chiefly the perfect indicative; as,

After Caesar reached that place, he determined to cross the Rhine :
Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit.

When he heard that, he removed to Corinth : *Id ut audīvīt, Corinthum dēmigrāvit.*

When they were informed of his approach, they sent envoys to him :
Ubi dē ejus adventū certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.

As soon as they perceived this, they began to take up arms : *Quae simul atque cōspexērunt, arma capere coepērunt.*

i. To indicate indefinitely recurring action the perfect and pluperfect tenses would be used as with *cum* (section 149).

¹ Clauses introduced by *when*, *while*, *after*, are also expressed in Latin by participial phrases, especially in the ablative absolute (see sections 43, 47, and 48).

ii. With *postquam* the pluperfect indicative is used when a definite interval is specified; as, *He was killed in the ninth year after he came to Spain*: **Nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam venerat, occisus est.**

iii. *Postquam* and *posteaquam* are often written as two words, in which case *post* is sometimes treated as a preposition; sometimes *quam* is used for *postquam*.

153. WHILE, meaning *within the time that*, is expressed by *dum* with the *present* indicative, even when the reference is to past time; as,

While this was being done, the Treveri had gathered large forces: **Dum haec geruntur, Trēverī magnās cōpiās cōegerant.**

i. This idea may also be expressed by *cum* and the imperfect subjunctive (section 151), especially if there be any idea of contrast (section 151, fn.).

154. WHILE, meaning *as long as*, is expressed by *dum*, *quoad* or *quamdiū*¹ with the indicative.

The tenses are used as in English, except that for future time Latin uses the future where English loosely uses the present; as,

While their strength lasted they held their ground: **Dum vīrēs suppetēbant sustinuērunt.**

He resisted as long as he could: **Quoad potuit, restitit.**

You shall study as long as you wish: **Discēs, quamdiū volēs.**

i. For *dum*, meaning *so long as, provided that*, where the temporal force no longer appears, see section 67.

155. UNTIL, introducing clauses of time, is expressed by *dum* or *quoad*.²

(a) To denote *mere limit of time* the *indicative* is used, chiefly with *quoad*; as,

He was in the senate that day until the senate adjourned: **In senātū fuit eō diē quoad senātus est dimissus.**

¹ *Dōnec* also is used in poetry and late prose, often with the subjunctive.

² *Dōnec* also is used, but not often in the best prose.

Until I learn that the winter camp has been fortified, I shall stay in Gaul: Quoad munita esse hiberna cōgnōverō, in Galliā morābor.

(b) To denote *expectation, purpose or end in view*, the present or imperfect *subjunctive* is used, generally with *dum*; as,

He waited until the other ships should assemble (or, more freely, he waited for the other ships to assemble): Dum reliquae nāvēs convenirent, exspectāvit.

i. For *not until*, meaning *not before*, see section 156, iii.

ii. As a rule, actions referring to the future may be regarded as denoting either mere limit of time (with the indicative) or expectation (with the subjunctive).

156. BEFORE is expressed by *antequam* or *priusquam*.

(a) To denote *mere priority or limit of time* the *indicative* is used; as,

I was born the year before he died: Annō antequam est mortuus, nātus sum.

And they did not cease their flight before they reached the river Rhine: Neque prius fugere dēstiterunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnerunt.

(b) To denote *purpose or anticipation or prevention* the present or imperfect *subjunctive* is used; as,

Before they could recover from their panic, he led his army across: Priusquam sē ex terrōre reciperent, exercitum trānsdūxit.

i. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are often written as two words, especially after a negative.

ii. *Priusquam* is commoner than *antequam*, especially with the subjunctive.

iii. To express *not before*, meaning *not until*, both indicative and subjunctive are found, but after secondary tenses the perfect indicative is preferred.

iv. When the pluperfect subjunctive is found after *priusquam* or *antequam*, it is regularly either in indirect narration (actual or virtual) for the perfect or future perfect indicative of the direct, or it is due to attraction (see section 177, i.).

EXERCISE 22.

A.

1. The Gauls will wait until Caesar reaches their borders. 2. Before he should make an attack on the enemy, he sent forward a scout to find out what their numbers were. 3. While these things were going on, the envoys who were in the camp took their departure. 4. As soon as they recovered from their panic, they sent envoys to Caesar to sue for peace. 5. For that reason I shall keep silent as long as I can. 6. He did not set out for the army until (155, i.) he learned that the enemy were gathering their forces to one place. 7. Before he reached the harbor, the cavalry had set sail. 8. We shall hold our ground until Caesar sends reinforcements. 9. After they had been informed of our advance, they withdrew into their remotest forests. 10. While our men were getting the ships ready, it was reported that the camp had been attacked. 11. Before these could learn of his departure, he crossed the river. 12. The enemy resisted bravely until they saw our cavalry approaching in the rear.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 7, 8.*)

1. After Dumnorix had taken his departure for home, Caesar ordered the cavalry to bring him back. 2. As long as he disregards Caesar's authority, I shall take care that he does no harm to the state. 3. While this was going on in Britain, two thousand cavalry were guarding the harbor. 4. We shall not embark until supplies are provided. 5. Before Caesar reached the shore, he learned that large forces had assembled. 6. They held on their course until the wind fell at sunset. 7. Whenever they caught sight of (*cōspiciō*) our soldiers, the enemy would conceal (180, b) themselves on the higher ground. 8. While the warships were assembling, we withdrew from the island. 9. Before Caesar could get suitable weather, word was brought that the enemy had learned his design. 10. As soon as he began to offer violence, they set sail. 11. Caesar should have put off his departure until he learned in what part of the island was the best landing place.

PERSONAL, DEMONSTRATIVE, REFLEXIVE AND POSSESSIVE
PRONOUNS.¹

157. As the pronominal subject is really contained in the personal ending of the finite verb, the nominative of the personal pronouns is not, as a rule, expressed except for *emphasis* or *contrast*; as,

I drove out kings, you bring in tyrants: **Ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis.**

i. The third personal pronoun is supplied by *is*, *hic* or *quī*, or if emphatic by *ille*.

ii. *Nōs* is often used for *ego* (compare our 'editorial we'), but *vōs* should never be used for *tū*. So, too, *noster* is used for *meus*.

iii. In the partitive sense the genitives *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used; in the objective sense, the genitives *meī*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī* and *vestrī*; in the possessive and subjective senses, the adjectives *meus*, *tuus*, *sus*, *noster* and *vester*.

158. *Hic*, *this* (the demonstrative of the first person), denotes something *near* (in place, time or thought). Hence it is used of something just mentioned or something just about to be mentioned; as,

This present war: **Hōc bellum.**

All these (the tribes just mentioned) *differ from one another in language:* **Hī omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.**

The character of the ground was as follows: **Locī nātūra erat haec.**

159. *Is*, *that*, *this*, *the*, refers without emphasis to something named in the preceding context, and also serves as the antecedent of the relative. It is thus also used as the unemphasized third personal pronoun; as,

¹ N.B.—It will be understood that the words treated of in sections 157 to 174 are pronouns when they are substitutes for nouns, and pronominal adjectives when they modify nouns.

They order Lutetia to be burnt and the bridges of that town to be destroyed : **Lutetiam incendi pontesque ejus oppidi rescindi jubent.**

The legion which he had with him : **Ea legio, quam secum habebat.**

The number of those who returned home : **Eorum, qui domum redierunt, numerus.**

They send envoys to him : **Legatos ad eum mittunt.**

i. *Is* sometimes has the force of *such* (= *talis*).

ii. *Et is* and *neque is* are used to emphasize, with the force of *and that too* ; as, *One cohort, and that too a small one :* **Una cohors et ea parva.**

iii. Where English uses *that of* or *those of* to a word repeating a noun, Latin does not use a pronoun, but the noun is either repeated or understood (see section 83, iii.).

160. *Ille, that* (the demonstrative of the third person), denotes something *remote* in place, time or thought. It is frequently used as the emphatic third personal pronoun, in contrast with *hic*, and also to call special attention to some person or thing ; as,

Trained not in the customs of former days, but after our modern fashion : **Non antiquo illo more, sed hoc nostro eruditus.**

These are under arms ; those remain at home : **Hi in armis sunt, illi domi remanent.**

The famous Alexander the Great : **Magnus ille Alexander.**

Part of the cavalry he assigned to him, part he left for himself : **Equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit.**

i. A very common use of *ille* is to indicate a change of subject, where the new subject has been referred to in the preceding clause. In such cases it may be rendered by an emphatic *he* or *they*, or by *the other, the enemy, the latter*, or some similar phrase.

ii. *Ille*, often, especially in the neuter *illud*, is used to point forward with emphasis to a following clause.

iii. *Ilic* is often opposed as *the latter* to *ille, the former*.

161. *Iste, that* (the demonstrative of the second person), denotes something near or belonging to the person addressed ; as, *Those affairs of yours* (or *Those affairs you mention*) : **Istae res.** It has also at times a contemptuous force.

162. *Idem*, *the same*, expresses identity, and is often to be rendered by *also* or *likewise*; as,

The same day he moved his camp: **Eōdem diē castra mōvit.**

Whatever is honorable is also expedient: **Quicquid est honestum, idem est ūtile.**

i. For *the same* as sec section 174.

ii. As *idem* is a compound of *is*, *that same* is *ille idem*, not *is idem*.

163. *Ipse*, *-self*, is used for emphatic contrast, not as a reflexive pronoun. It may be used with nouns or with any of the personal pronouns, or may be used independently, meaning *he himself*; as,

They slew Dumnorix himself: **Ipsūm Dumnorigem interfēcērunt.**

Leaving Labienus on the mainland, he himself set sail: **Labiēnō in continētī relictō, ipse nāvēs solvit.**

i. The emphatic force of *ipse* is often best rendered by *very* or *mere*; as, *They were fighting on the very banks of the river*: **In ipsis flūminis ripis proeliābantur.**

ii. The genitive of *ipse* with or without the possessive pronominal adjectives may be used as the equivalent of *own*; as, *My own fault*: **Mea ipsius culpa.** *Their own tongue*: **Ipsōrum lingua.**

iii. *Ipse*, when used to emphasize a reflexive pronoun, agrees with the subject, unless very strong emphasis is to lie on the reflexive; as, *They kill themselves*: **Sē ipsi interficiunt.**

iv. Occasionally in indirect narration *ipse* is used as a reflexive for the sake of emphatic contrast, or where *sē* might be ambiguous.

164. *Sē*, *himself*, *him*, the reflexive pronoun of the third person, refers back to the subject of the verb. It should be carefully distinguished from (a) the emphatic pronoun *ipse*, and (b) the third personal pronoun referring to others than the subject; as,

They cannot defend themselves: **Sē dēfendere nōn possunt.**

Commius took the cavalry over with him: **Commius sēcum equitēs trānsportāvit.**

i. When *sē* refers to the subject of the clause to which it belongs, it is called the 'direct reflexive'; but when, as often, *sē* belongs to a subordinate clause and refers to the subject of the principal clause, it is called the 'indirect reflexive.' In subordinate clauses expressing a thought, statement, wish, command or question, the reflexive, as a rule, is indirect, referring to the person who thinks, commands, etc., but frequently, where there is no ambiguity, it is direct, referring to the subject of its own verb. The direct and the indirect use may be found together; as, *They asked the king not to keep Hannibal with him, but to surrender him to them: Ab rēge petēbant nē Hannibalem sēcum habēret sibi que dēderet.*

ii. The reflexive pronouns with *inter* are equivalent to the reciprocal *each other* or *one another* (including often the English preposition governing these words), as, *They love one another: Inter sē amant. They fight with one another: Inter sē pūgnant.*

iii. For the reflexives of the first and second persons, the personal pronouns are used.

iv. The passive voice of some verbs is used with reflexive force; as, *They exercise themselves: Exercentur* or *Sē exercent.*

165. *Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester*, the possessive pronouns, are seldom expressed except for the sake of emphasis or clearness; in other cases the context gives a sufficient indication; as,

For the sake of your well-being, they have neglected their own peril: Vestrae salutis causā suum periculum neglēxerunt.

i. These pronouns often express what is characteristic of a person; as, *By his own peculiar methods: Suis artibus.*

ii. *Suus*, like *sē* (section 164, i.), is used both as a direct and as an indirect reflexive. Very frequently also *suus* refers to some word in its clause which is not a subject of any verb; as, *They send Mago with his fleet to Spain: Magōnem cum classe suā in Hispaniam mittunt.* As a rule, *ejus* and *eōrum* are used for *his* or *their* when not reflexive.

iii. The possessive pronouns are often used substantively, especially *nostrī, sui* and *sua*.

iv. Sometimes we find a genitive in apposition with the genitive idea implied in these words; as *My name in my absence: Nōmen meum absentis.* *By our own help: Nostrā ipsōrum operā.* *Amid the tears of us all: In nostro omnium flētū.* (See section 163, ii.).

EXERCISE 23.

A.

1. After these matters had been settled, a war suddenly broke out in the province itself. The cause of this war was as follows. 2. He himself placed you in charge of us. 3. The enemy had concealed their own forces in the same woods. 4. For the same reason he feared our men would inflict injury upon themselves. 5. I remained with you all that time, he returned to his own home. 6. Caesar had these two legions and those (159, iii.) of Crassus with him. 7. They slew themselves in the very gates of the camp. 8. He also thought this present war itself was dangerous to all of us (86, iv., a). 9. Our cavalry, after encouraging one another (164, ii.), joined battle with the enemy's horsemen. These latter (160, i.) at once betook themselves to their comrades. 10. He made this (160, ii.) promise, that he would give them a safe passage through your province. 11. After their usual (165, i.) custom, they put their wives and all their property in the woods. 12. The Nervii and the Adnatuci were waging war against us; the former (160, iii.) had taken up their position on the other side of the river Sabis; the latter were fortifying their own town.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 9, 10.*)

1. These same men had come from those who were pursuing our cavalry. 2. On the same night they found out that their own vessel had been wrecked. 3. These sailors reported to him that the nature of that place was as follows. 4. He himself forbade my advancing with him. 5. He does not fear for himself. They will prevent Caesar himself from advancing. 6. We repulsed the enemy, you fled. 7. He learned that they had hidden themselves (164, i.) and their possessions (165, iii.) in the woods. 8. I wished you to advance to that river with all your forces. 9. In that place our men caught sight of the enemy's camp. These latter (160, i.) had begun to blockade the very entrances. 10. The soldiers of this legion will encamp in the same place. 11. During all these days they were pursuing those who had been driven out of the fortifications. 12. He has left you (*plur.*) to

guard us. 13. You (*sing.*) have been put in charge of us. 14. While these were fortifying the camp, those were felling trees.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

ANY.

166 (a) *Quis* (*quī*) means *any, anyone*, after *sī, nē, nūnī*, and *some, some one*, after *nisi*; as,

If any one has heard anything he reports it to the magistrate: Sī quis quid accēpit, ad magistrātum dēfert.

He ordered the soldiers not to hurl back any weapon: Militibus imperāv. t nē quod tēlum rejicerent.

i. For the tenses used in general conditions introduced by *sī quis*, see section 64, v.

(b) *Quisquam* (substantival) means *any one*, and *ūllus* (adjectival) means *any*, when all are excluded, that is, when *any* has the force of *any, even one*, suggesting the idea of *no one* or *none*. They are used in negative, or practically negative sentences;¹ as,

Nor was any one found: Neque repertus est quisquam.

The battle was without any danger: Sine ūllō periculiō erat proelium.

i. Instead of *nōn* followed by *quisquam* or *ūllus*, Latin prefers *nēmō, nihil* and *nūllus*; but *neque* followed by *quisquam* or *ūllus* is preferred to *et* followed by *nēmō, nihil* or *nūllus*: as, *They do not expect any disaster: Nūllum cāsum exspectant. And nothing is considered more disgraceful: Neque turpius quicquam habētur.*

(c) *Quivīs, quilibet* mean *any, any one*, when all are included, that is, when *any* has the force of *any you please*, suggesting the idea of *every one, all*: as, *The vessels were built to withstand any violence: Nāvēs factae sunt ad quamvis vim perferendam.*

SOME.

167. (a) *Aliquis* (*aliquī*) means *some, some one (or other)*, wholly indefinite; as,

¹ For instance, rhetorical questions, comparative clauses, clauses with *priusquam* denoting *prevention*, and clauses containing such words as *sine, vix, aegrē*.

He bade them send some one : **Jussit eōs aliquem mittere.**

They are devising some new plan : **Aliquid novī cōsiliī ineunt.**

Even if some portion be surrounded, the rest can be saved : **Si pars aliqua circumventa erit, reliquī servārī possunt.**

i. *Quispiam* has the force of *aliquis*, but is much rarer.

(b) *Nōnnūllī* means *some, some few*, suggesting the idea of *some, but not many*; as,

They lost some (or a few) of their men : **Nōnnūllōs ex suis amiserunt.**

(c) *Nesciō quis* means *some one or other* unknown to the speaker; often, through an affectation of ignorance, it implies contempt; as, *He had raised some rumor or other (or some trifling rumor) :* **Rūmōris nesciō quid afflāverat.**

i. *Nesciō quis* in this sense is treated as a simple word, and as such is not followed by the subjunctive of indirect question. Similarly *nesciō quō modō* or *nesciō quō pactō*, *in some way or other*.

(d) *Sunt quī* with the subjunctive (section 32) means *some (emphatic) or there are some who*; as, *Some said :* **Erant quī dicerent.**

(e) *Quīdam* means *a certain one, a certain*, of what one has in mind, but is not anxious or able to specify further. Hence it is often used in vague descriptions, meaning *a sort of*; as,

One of the soldiers said : **Quīdam ex militibus dixit.**

The Romans have defeated us not by valor but by a sort of trick : **Nōn virtūte vicērunt Rōmānī sed artificiō quōdam.**

(f) For *alius* repeated, meaning *some . . . others*, see section 168, *a.* and for *quis*, meaning *some*, see section 166, *a.*

OTHER.

168. (a) *Alius* means *other, another*. When it is repeated in different clauses, the meaning in the singular is *one . . . another*, in the plural *some . . . others*; as,

They fled in another direction : **Aliam in partem egērunt.**

Some were filling the trenches, others were hurling weapons : **Alii fossās complēbant, alii tēla conjiciēbant.**

When in the same clause it is repeated in a different case, or is accompanied by a derivative adverb, the meaning is, in the singular *one . . . one, another . . . another*, in the plural *some . . . one, others . . . another*; as, *Some were carried in one direction, others in another*: **Alii aliam in partem ferēbantur.** *They believe one thing one moment, another another*: **Aliās aliud sentiunt.**

i. After *alius* or *aliter* (and similarly after *contrā*), *ac* or *atque* is used to introduce a comparison (*other than*); as, *They wage war in a manner very different from (or far other than) the rest of the Gauls*: **Longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Galli bellum gerunt.**

ii. Sometimes *alius* repeated in the same clause is to be rendered by *one another*; as, *They lend aid to one another (or one to another)*: **Alius aliū subsidium ferunt.** (See also 164, ii.).

(b) **Alter** means *the other, the second* (of two). When repeated in different clauses, the meaning in the singular is (*the*) *one . . . the other*, in the plural *the one party . . . the other party*; as,

(*The*) *one part he gave up to the Gauls, the other he allotted to the cohorts*: **Alteram partem Gallis concessit, alteram cohortibus attribuit.**

One division fled to the mountain, the other to the baggage: **Alterī sē in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta.**

(c) **Cēterī** and **reliquī** mean *the others, the rest, the remainder*; ¹ as,

They differ from the others: **Differunt ā cēteris.**

The Veneti and the other states also prepare for war: **Veneti reliquaeque item civitatēs bellum parant.**

EACH.

169. (a) **Quisque** means *each (of more than two), every*, and is especially frequent with the reflexive; ² as,

It is best for each to return to his home: **Optimum est domum suam quemque reverti.**

¹ For the agreement of *cēterī* and *reliquī* see section 86, iv. b.

² With pronouns *quisque* and *uterque* are used substantively, taking the partitive genitive; but with nouns they are used adjectively in agreement.

i. With superlatives and ordinal numerals *quisque* has the force of *every* (or *all the*); as, *Every man of noble birth: Nōbilissimus quisque. Every tenth man: Decimus quisque. Primus quisque* means *the very first, the first possible*.

(b) *Uterque* means *each (of two)*, freely *both*; the plural *utrique* means *both sides* or *both parties*; as,

On each bank (or on both banks) they had villages: Ad utramque ripam vicōs habēbant.

That day both armies keep within their own lines: Eō diē utrique sēsē suō locō continent.

EXERCISE 24.

A.

1. They beheld certain of our men leaping down from the other vessel. 2. They used to inquire what each one had heard concerning each matter. 3. Before he could make any (166, b, fn.) answer, he ordered the others to be summoned to him. 4. Some thought they could gain the victory without a (= any) wound. 5. It would be better to suffer any (166, c) fate at the hands of the Romans. 6. They will not make peace on any other terms. 7. The enemy were advancing, some from one direction, others from another (168, a). 8. When he saw that the enemy were pressing him on each flank, he suspected some new design (86, i.) had been formed. 9. If any of the Gauls are captured, the rest will soon surrender. 10. He trusted both chiefs, the one because of his ancient loyalty, the other because of his recent services. 11. Scarcely any one perceives that another plan must be devised. 12. That the flight of the Gauls should not alarm any, he pointed out that the Germans had won by some trick or other.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 11, 12.*)

1. Labienus was unwilling to build any ships. 2. Some have said that there is timber in each part of the island. 3. If he summons any workmen, they will be ordered to repair the other vessels. 4. He put a certain Labienus in charge of the other legion. 5. Some had been born on the island, others had crossed

over from the mainland. 6. Scarcely any one had learned that Caesar was leaving a garrison for both camps. 7. Some think that the cold is less intense in the interior, others, in the districts on the coast. 8. Others said that some place or other should be chosen. 9. Scarcely any ships have been lost, but some few must be repaired. 10. If any ship was lost (64, v.), he used to order another to be built. 11. He orders the one legion to remain there, the other to make war. 12. The ships should be drawn up, lest we lose any.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

170. *Qui*, *who*, *which*, the relative or conjunctive pronoun, is regularly followed by the *indicative*; ¹ as,

The bridge which was at Geneva he orders to be destroyed: Pontem, qui erat ad Genāvam, jubet rescindi.

i. The indicative is regularly found also after relative adverbs, such as *unde*, *ubi*, *quō*, *ut*, relative adjectives such as *qualis*, *quantus*, and indefinite relatives such as *quisquis* and *quicumque*.

ii. For the agreement of the relative with its antecedent see section 13.

iii. In Latin, unlike the English usage, the relative is always expressed; as, *The liberty we have received from our forefathers: Ea libertās, quam ā mājōribus accēpimus.*

iv. In the case of two relative clauses coordinate with each other, the second relative is generally omitted if the two relatives would have the same case; as, *He prevails upon Dumnorix, who held the chief authority and was very popular with the common people: Dumnorigi, qui principātum obtinēbat ac mājimē plēbi acceptus erat, persuadet.* When the two relatives would be in different cases, as a rule both are expressed; but sometimes the second is replaced by a demonstrative, or (if it would be in the nominative or accusative) is omitted; as, *He has sent a man whom we neither fear nor obey: Hominem, quem neque timēmus neque ei pārēmus, misit.*

¹ This indicative becomes subjunctive in actual or virtual indirect discourse (see sections 175 and 177).

v. Where the same preposition would be used with both antecedent and relative, it is regularly omitted with the relative.

vi. The relative is often found in the ablative absolute construction.

171. The relative is used also with the *subjunctive* to introduce clauses of *purpose* (section 26), clauses of *characteristic* (section 32), and also clauses of *concession* (or *adversative* clauses) and clauses of *cause* or *reason*; ¹ as,

Though Cicero during all the previous days had kept the soldiers in the camp, on the seventh day he sent five cohorts to forage: Cicerō, qui omnēs superiōrēs diēs militēs in castris continuisset, septimō diē quīque cohortēs frūmentātum mittit.

It is not without divine aid that the Romans carry on war, seeing that (or since) they are able to move forward such mighty engines: Nōn Rōmānī sine ope divinā bellum gerunt, qui tantās māchinātiōnēs prōmovēre possint.

They upbraid the Belgians for surrendering: Increpitant Belgās qui sē dēdiderint.

172. THE COORDINATING RELATIVE.—Qui is often used at the beginning of a sentence to introduce, not a subordinate clause, but a *new independent sentence*, which it thus connects more clearly with the preceding words than a personal or demonstrative pronoun such as English uses, would do; as,

For this reason the Helvetians surpass the other Gauls: Quā dē causā Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs praecedunt.

Having completed this business Caesar set out for Gaul: Quibus rēbus cōfectis Caesar in Galliam profectus est.

The relative may even take the place of a personal or demonstrative pronoun in a subordinate adverbial clause at the beginning of a new sentence; as,

When they perceived this, they began to close the gates: Quod cum vidissent, portās claudere coeperunt.

¹ The causal relative sentence is often introduced and emphasized by *quippe*, *ut*, or *utpote*.

173. The following peculiarities in the antecedent are of common occurrence :

(a) The antecedent is frequently omitted ; as, *They do what they are ordered* : *Quod jussi sunt, faciunt.* *He sent men to find out* : *Misit qui cōnōscerent.*

(b) The antecedent is often repeated in the relative clause, especially the words *pars, res, locus, diēs* ; as, *Dust was seen in the direction in which the legion had marched* : *Pulvis in eā parte vidēbātur quam in partem legiō iter fecerat.*

(c) The antecedent is often incorporated into the relative clause :

i. Where the relative clause precedes, an antecedent substantive is often put in the relative clause ; as, *That part which had brought the disaster paid the penalty* : *Quae pars calamitatem intulerat, ea poenās persolvit.*

ii. Where the antecedent is an appositive, it is, as a rule, put in the relative clause ; as, *They inhabit Kent, a country which lies entirely on the coast* : *Cantium incolunt, quae regiō omnis maritima est.*

iii. Somewhat similar is the transference of a superlative or other modifier of the antecedent to the relative clause ; as, *He sent the largest ship he had* : *Nāvem, quam māximam habuit, misit.*

(d) The substance of a sentence may be referred to parenthetically by *quod* or *id quod* ; as, *He told them that after the enemy were put to flight (as he saw would be the case) they were all to attack the king* : *Praecēpit, hostibus in fugam coniectis (quod fore vidēbat), omnēs peterent rēgem.*

174. The relative pronoun *as* in correlative sentences is represented by several words, according to the antecedent. *Idem* is followed by *qui*, or by *ac* (*atque*). (So also *pār* when used with the force of *idem*). *Tālis*, *tantus* and *tot* are followed by *quālis*, *quantus* and *quot* respectively.

Our men resist in the same manner as on the previous day : *Eādem ratiōe, quā pridē, ab nostris resistitur.*

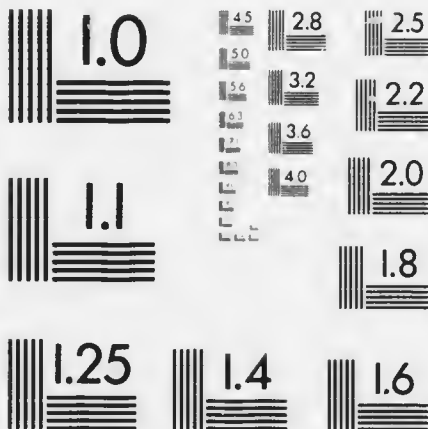
He was the same kind of man as I perceive you to be : *Tālis erat quālem tē esse video.*

i. *As* (*many, large, etc.*) *as possible* is expressed by *quam* and the superlative of adjectives or adverbs, with or without the proper form of *possum* ; as,



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

They gather as many ships as possible: Nāvēs quam plūrimās (possunt)¹ cōgunt. As quickly as possible: Quam celerrimē.

ii. As with *quī* (section 173, a) the antecedent *tālis, tantus*, or *est* is often omitted; as, *They allot them as much land as seems best: Attribuunt quantum visum est agri.*

EXERCISE 25.

[In this exercise the relative should, where possible, be used as in section 172.]

A.

1. The ships which he had built in the previous summer, were ordered to assemble at once. 2. Nor could any vessels be found on which the cavalry could (32) be brought over. 3. Having made these preparations, they fixed a day on which all were to assemble (26) at the banks of the river. 4. When they heard this, they withdrew to the camp whence they had set out. 5. The same thing will happen as happened yesterday. 6. This legion he left to guard the camp, seeing that it (171) was wearied with marching. 7. The number of those who set out from the country of the Helvetians was three hundred and sixty-eight thousand. Of these, those who could bear arms were ninety-two thousand. 8. Dismayed by his advance, the enemy took to flight, although they (171) had gathered large forces. 9. These do not strive with as great eagerness as they are accustomed to exhibit in battles on land. 10. The enemy suddenly came in sight of the cavalry Caesar had sent to the assistance of the Aedui. 11. These are allowed to go in safety in whatever direction they wish. 12. He sent the bravest horsemen he had (173, c. iii.) with him to Vesontio, which (13, i.) is the largest town of the Sequani.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 13, 14.*)

1. This is the length of the side which is opposite Ireland. 2. There are three (*trēs*) sides, all of which (86, iv., a) are equal. 3. The distance is thought to be the shortest possible. 4. Those who inhabit the other district are more civilized. 5. Ireland is not considered to be as large as Britain. 6. This island the

¹ With *possunt* the infinitive (*cōgere*) is understood.

Britons inhabit. These, seeing that (171) they dye themselves with woad, are of a hideous appearance. 7. The region which is on the sea some call Kent. 8. The island is of the same circumference as Mona. 9. By these inquiries we have found that the custom is the same as in Britain. 10. They have (*habēō*) milk and flesh in the island, of which I have written. 11. The woad with which the Britons used to dye themselves is thought to have produced a blue color. 12. When the ship was brought to land at this place, we saw that most of the people were clad in skins.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.¹

175. In many of the preceding sections rules have been given for using, now the indicative, now the subjunctive, in subordinate clauses introduced by a relative or conjunction.

But all such subordinate clauses are put in the *subjunctive* when dependent on a clause in indirect discourse, that is, on a clause which is itself dependent on some verb of *stating, thinking, fearing, perceiving, ordering* or *asking*. The indicative should never be used to express any portion of the quoted words or thoughts of another ; as,

He answers that he has been silent as long as he has been able :
Respondet quamdiū potuerit sē tacuisse.

They thought they would recover the hostages that they had given to Crassus : Sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent reciperatūrōs existimābant.

It was observed that our men were scarcely suited to an enemy of this sort, because they could not follow up a retreating force : Intellectum est nostrōs, quod insequi cēdentēs nōn possent, minus aptōs esse ad hūjus generis hostem.

He ordered them to await his arrival in the place where they then were : Eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre jussit.

¹ These clauses are sometimes called by the conveniently short term *sub-oblique*.

He asked why Caesar demanded this if he did not think it right :
Rogāvit cūr Caesar, si nōn aequum existimāret hōc postulāret.

i. An apparent exeception is found in the use of the indicative in subordinate clauses that really form no part of the quoted words or thoughts, but either are parenthetie or explanatory additions made by the writer himself, or are the writer's substitute for something actually said or thought ; as,

He ordered the cohorts which were on guard to set out with him :
Cohortēs quae in stationibus erant secum proficisci iussit.

Caesar suspected that that would happen which did occur : **Caesar fore id, quod accidit, suspicābatur.**

Here *quae in stationibus erant* formed no part of the order given, while no such clause as *quod accidit* could possibly have been in Caesar's mind.

176. The *sequence of tenses* is observed in these subjunctive clauses, primary tenses following primary and secondary following secondary. In narrative, secondary sequence is the rule, the present and future indicative becoming the imperfect subjunctive, the perfect and future perfect indicative becoming the pluperfect subjunctive (see section 187, b).

But sometimes for the sake of vividness the primary sequence is used in narrative, the present and future indicative becoming the present subjunctive, the perfect and future perfect indicative becoming the perfect subjunctive. (See also section 190, vi.)

177. VIRTUAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE.—The subjunctive is used in any subordinate clause which is conceived as expressing the words or thoughts of another, without any formal or explicit statement to that effect. This is called the subjunctive of *virtual* (*informal* or *implied*) *indirect discourse* ; as,

He offered great rewards if they succeeded in carrying the despatches through : **Magna proposuit praemia si litterās per-tulissent.** (Here *proposuit* is equivalent to *se datūrum esse pollicitus est*.)

They led part of their troops across, in order, if possible, to storm the fortress: Partem suarum copiarum traduxerunt ut, si possent, castellum expugnarent. (This represents the original thought *si poterimus, castellum expugnabimus.*)

The enemy were waiting, in case our men should cross the marsh: Paludem si nostri transirent hostes exspectabant. (This represents some such thought as *si transibunt, acrioremur.*) In such sentences *si* may also be translated by *in the hope that* or *to see whether.*¹

He gave me all the books that (as he said) his father had left: Omnes libros quos pater suus reliquisset mihi donavit.

For other examples compare the subjunctive with *quod, dum* and *priusquam* (sections 147, 155 and 156).

i. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.—A clause dependent on a subjunctive, and forming a close connection with it, is sometimes itself put in the subjunctive by attraction, without in any way being in virtual indirect discourse; as, *So profound an impression was produced by this war among the barbarians, that envoys were sent to Caesar by those tribes which dwelt beyond the Rhine: Tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab iis nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolerent, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem.* *They drove the cavalry before them in such a panic that they did not cease from their flight until they came in sight of our army: Equites ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent.* *When he failed to influence him as he desired, he sent by night to the king the most trusty slave he had: Quem cum minus quam vellet moveret, noctu de servis suis quem habuit fidelissimum ad regem misit.*²

ii. There sometimes occurs an illogical extension (by mistaken analogy) of the subjunctive of virtual indirect discourse, in which the verb of *saying* or *thinking* is expressed, and is itself put in the subjunctive; as, *He begged to be left in Gaul because, as he said, he was prevented by religious scruples: Petebat ut in Gallia relinqueretur, quod religionibus impediri diceret* (for *quod religionibus impediretur*).

¹ Such a clause seems to have the value of an indirect question, but is really a protasis in virtual indirect discourse.

² The subjunctive mood of *incolerent, venissent* and *vellet*, instead of *incolabant, venerunt* (see section 156, a) and *volebat* is due entirely to the subjunctives on which they depend.

EXERCISE 26.

A.

1. He promised to send all the cavalry he had with him. 2. He believes that if the Aedui are crushed, the rest of the Gauls will disperse to their homes. 3. Caesar feared that the same thing would happen as had occurred the previous day. 4. We were waiting in case (177) the Gauls should attempt to break down the bridge. 5. Having offered rewards to those who should (177) first mount the wall, he gave the signal. 6. He ordered Labienus, whom he had put (175, i.) in charge of the camp, to set out as soon as he could. 7. Caesar complains because the Aedui have not lent him aid. 8. The enemy swarmed around in hopes (177) of finding some means of approach. 9. Word was brought that Caesar would send the cavalry by the same road by which the enemy had gone. 10. He inquired how many miles the town in which they dwelt was distant from the camp. 11. Driven by hunger, they secretly went out from the camp to see whether (177) they could find any grain or cattle in the fields. 12. They gave many reasons which (they held) were perfectly valid.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 15, 16.*)

1. He observed that when our men were engaged in battle with the enemy, the cavalry never fought in close order. 2. He feared (*verror*) that if the enemy were driven back our men would pursue them too eagerly. 3. The two cohorts which Caesar had sent to reinforce our men were ordered to drive back the charioteers who were boldly breaking through the cavalry. 4. They were waiting (*expectō*) to see whether (177) our men would follow those who designedly retreated. 5. He thinks (*arbitror*) that our men will not dare to make an attack on the charioteers, because they are not suited for this kind of fighting. 6. They asked (*quaerō*) what brought the same danger to the cavalry and to those who had leaped down from their chariots. 7. He had not posted guards, on the ground that all the soldiers were busy fortifying the camp. 8. He perceived that if our men left the standards, the enemy

rushed out of the woods and slew them. 9. He urged (*hortor*) them to fight vigorously because those who had been placed on guard were in great danger.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.¹

178. In the general use of the tenses Latin differs from English in two respects :

i. There is no distinction in form corresponding to the English Progressive, Indefinite and Emphatic tenses, except that the Latin imperfect and perfect nearly correspond to the English past progressive and past indefinite respectively.

[In the subjunctive the perfect usually is equivalent to the English true perfect, while the English simple past is represented as a rule by the imperfect or (to indicate priority of action) the pluperfect.]

ii. Especially in subordinate clauses Latin is more exact than English in indicating both the point of time (present, past or future)² and also priority of action in relation to the main verb ; as, *When I find out, I shall inform you, if I can : Cum cōgnōverō, faciam tē certiōrem, sī poterō.* (Literally, *When I shall have found out, I shall inform you, if I shall be able.*) [This holds true of the subjunctive also.]

¹ Although sections 179-184 are not printed in large type, they should be carefully studied.

² In letters the writer often transfers himself in thought to the time of the reader, and uses the imperfect and pluperfect instead of the present and perfect ; as, *I have nothing to write : Nihil habēbam quod scriberem.*

179. The PRESENT tense is used :

(a) Of what is going on now at the present moment ; as, *They are preparing for war* : **Bellum parant.**

(b) Of general truths, and of continued, repeated or habitual actions or states ; as, *Fortune favors the brave* : **Fortūna fortēs adjuvat.** *Those in the interior do not sow grain* : **Interiōrēs frūmenta nōn serunt.**

(c) As an historial present, in animated narrative ; as, *When the news was brought, he makes haste to set out* : **Cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat proficisci.**

(d) To express an action attempted or intended in present time (the conative present) ; as, *They are trying to avoid danger* : **Periculum vitant.**

(e) With *jam* and its compounds to express actions continued from the past into the present, where we should expect the perfect ; as, *He has long been collecting troops* : **Jam diū cōpiās comparat.**

(f) With *dum* (*while*), where we should expect the imperfect (see section 153).

180. The IMPERFECT tense is used :

(a) Of what was going on in past time ; as, *He was wintering in Gaul* : **In Galliā hiemābat.**

(b) Of continued, repeated, or habitual actions or states in past time, like the English past indefinite ; as, *He used to lead (or would lead, or kept leading, or led) his troops out daily* : **Cotidiē prōducēbat cōpiās.** *He had the greatest confidence in this legion* : **Huic legiōni cōfidēbat māximē.** *He could not discover anything* : **Nihil reperiēbat** (suggesting repeated failures). *They would not come to the councils* : **Ad concilia nōn veniēbant** (implying repeated refusals).

(c) Hence appropriately where English would use the simple past :

i. To express one's usual way of thinking, or the thoughts or feelings which accompany consideration (while the perfect is used of coming to a decision).

ii. To explain the situation of affairs.

iii. To give the details of movements, or to describe the process as opposed to summing up the result.

iv. To mention the natural features of the scene of past operations.

(d) To express an action attempted or intended (the conative imperfect) or begun in past time (the inceptive imperfect); as, *They tried to prevent our march: Nostrōs itinere prohibēbant. He proceeded to stir up the Gauls: Gallōs sollicitābat.*

(e) With *jam* and its compounds to express action continued from a still earlier time into the past time spoken of, where we should expect the pluperfect; as, *He had long been carrying on war: Jam pridem bellum gerēbat.*

(f) In the case of *possum*, *oportet*, *dēbeō* and such verbs, to express lack of correspondence with fact.

181. The FUTURE tense is used to denote what will take place at some future time; as, *Caesar will take the camp by storm: Caesar castra expugnābit.*

i. Where English has the present in a subordinate clause referring to future time, Latin uses the future when the actions are contemporaneous (section 178, ii.). Compare section 184, i.

182. The PERFECT tense is used:

(a) Like the English present perfect, to denote an action completed by the present time; as, *They have left their lands and have hidden in the forest: Finibus suis excessērunt, sēque in silvās abdidērunt.*

(b) Like the English past indefinite, to state that something took place in past time; as, *He sent forward the cavalry: Equitātum praemisit.*

The perfect narrates; the imperfect describes. The perfect sums up; the imperfect dwells upon the process or the particulars. Compare also section 180, c.

(c) In subordinate clauses to denote an indefinitely repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the present. (Section 149.)

(d) With *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul atque*, where we might expect the pluperfect. (Section 152, b.)

(e) To denote the present state resulting from completed action; as, *He is dead: Mortuus est. They are gone: Discessērunt. We are surrounded: Circumventi sumus.* This is especially the case with *cōsuēri*, *I am accustomed*; *memini*, *I remember*; and *nōvi*, *I know* (literally *I have become accustomed, I have called to mind, I have learned*).

Similarly the pluperfect of these verbs has the value of the imperfect, and the future perfect the value of the future.

i. The perfect tenses of the passive have sometimes *ful*, *fuera*m, *fuero*, instead of *sum*, *eram*, *erō*. The form with *ful* generally implies that the condition spoken of has ceased to exist.

ii. A sort of perfect is formed by *habeō* and the perfect participle passive,¹ emphasizing the continuance of the result of a past action; as, *He has large forces collected*: **Māgnās cōpiās coāctās habet**. Similarly for the pluperfect *habēbam* is used.

183. The PLUPERFECT tense is used :

(a) To mark an act as completed or taking place before some point in past time mentioned or implied: as, *They had by this time reached the territories of the Aedni*: **Jam in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant**.

i. Sometimes Caesar uses the pluperfect instead of the perfect in referring to previous passages in his Commentaries. (Compare section 178, ii. fn.)

ii. For the pluperfect formed by *fuera*m and by *habēbam* see section 182, i. and ii. respectively.

(b) In subordinate clauses to denote an indefinitely repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the imperfect. (Section 149 and 64, r.)

(c) To denote a past state resulting from a previously completed action. (See section 182, e.)

184. The FUTURE PERFECT tense is used to express something completed or attained by some point in the future; as, *Meanwhile he will have gone, or will be gone*: **Interim discesserit**.

i. Where English has the present or present perfect in a subordinate clause referring to future time, Latin uses the future perfect when the action of the subordinate verb is prior to that of the principal verb (section 178, ii.). Sometimes where two future actions are regarded as identical, one involving the other, the future perfect is found in both clauses; as, *He who crushes Antony will (thereby) finish the war*: **Quī Antōnium opprēsserit, is bellum cōfēcerit**.

ii. The future perfect is sometimes used to emphasize the completion of a future act; as, *I at least shall have my duty done (or I at least shall be found to have done my duty)*: **Ēgo certē meum officium praestiterō**. It thus may come to give assurance of rapidity of action; as, *The first attack will carry the camp forthwith*: **Prīmus impetus castra cēperit**.

¹ Compare in English *I have the letter written*, as distinguished from *I have written the letter*.

EXERCISE 27.

A.

1. To this legion he always showed especial indulgence. 2. If you assist the enemy, I shall burn your villages. 3. The Druids are accustomed to hold aloof from war, and do not pay taxes. 4. After he had learned this, he thought he ought not to wait longer. 5. If Caesar is at the head of the army, we shall easily conquer the Gauls. 6. He marched through the forest of Ardennes, which extended from the Rhine to the Nervii. 7. By this means they sought (180, *d*) to terrify the others. 8. While this was going on, the enemy had already reached the territories of the Aedui, and were laying waste their lands. 9. On the following day they move their camp two miles. 10. Whenever he saw his men in distress, he would send reinforcements. 11. For the reasons which I have mentioned, Caesar wished to set out for Britain. 12. Before midnight the enemy will be gone (184).

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 17, 18.*)

1. The enemy are rallying. 2. The enemy are repulsed and a large number slain. 3. When (*cum*) Caesar learns this he will send forward the legions. 4. They were accustomed (*cōsuēvi*) to leap down from their chariots. 5. For a long time (*diū*) they had been contending with their full force. 6. Whenever they began to forage, the enemy would suddenly show themselves. 7. As soon as all the reinforcements had assembled he proceeded (180, *d*) to cross the river. 8. During all these years they were unable to learn his plans. 9. While the cavalry were foraging, the enemy had withdrawn. 10. They trusted (180, *c, i.*) in the speed of the chariots. 11. Whenever our men make an attack, the enemy betake themselves to flight. 12. When (*ubi*) they had crossed (182, *d*) the river, they halted. 13. When (*cum*) he perceived this, he immediately ordered the cavalry to halt. 14. The enemy's forces are drawn up on the other hill.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE—*Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

185. Direct Discourse (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*) gives in their original form the words or thoughts of any person.

Indirect Discourse (*Ōrātiō Obliqua*) gives (in dependence upon some verb of *stating, thinking, perceiving, ordering or asking*) the substance of the words or thoughts of another person, and even of the writer or speaker when quoting himself.

The rules for changing Direct into Indirect Discourse are as follows :

A. CHANGES IN MOOD.¹

186. 1. Principal Clauses.

(a) Clauses containing a *statement* (assertive or declarative sentences) have their verb in the *infinitive* with subject accusative (section 14).

(b) Clauses containing a *question* (interrogative sentences) have their verb in the *subjunctive* (section 35).

i. Indirect deliberative questions (section 134, d) retain the subjunctive.

(c) Clauses containing a *command or request* (imperative sentences) have their verb in the *subjunctive*.

i. This use of the subjunctive is closely related to the substantive final clause (section 27), both being developments of the independent jussive subjunctive (section 134, b). It is thus sometimes difficult, if not impossible, to distinguish the reported command and the substantive final clause, especially after *nē* or when *ut* is omitted (section 28, vi.) ; as for instance in the sentences, *Nūntiī postulābant hōs sibi dēderent* : *The messengers demanded that they should surrender these men to them.* *Militibus imperātum est nē hostēs aggredierentur* : *The soldiers were given orders that they should not attack the enemy.*

2. Subordinate Clauses.

All kinds of subordinate clauses (relative, temporal, conditional, causal, etc.) are put in the *subjunctive* mood (section 175 and fn.).

¹ In no case is the indicative retained.

B. CHANGES IN TENSE.

187. (a) Clauses put in the *infinitive* change as follows :

DIRECT DISCOURSE.		INDIRECT DISCOURSE.	
Present Ind.		becomes Present Infinitive.	
Imperfect, Perfect or Pluperfect Ind.	}	" Perfect	"
Future Ind.		" Future	"
Present or Imperf. Subj. ¹		" Inf. in <i>-ūrum fuisse</i> .	
Future Perf. Ind.	}		
Imperf. or Pluperf. Subj. ¹			

(b) Clauses put in the *subjunctive* as a rule observe the sequence of tenses (section 176) as follows :

DIRECT DISCOURSE.					INDIRECT DISCOURSE.	
					Primary Sequence.	Secondary Sequence.
Present Indic. or Subj.	becomes	Present Subj.			Present Subj.	Imperfect Subj.
Future " " " "		" "			" "	" "
Imperfect " " " "		Imperfect "			" "	" "
Perfect " " " "		Perfect "			Pluperfect "	" "
Fut. Perf. " " " "		" "			" "	" "
Pluperfect " " " "		Pluperfect "			" "	" "

Certain exceptions occur, however, in *indirect questions* :

The future indicative becomes (according to sequence) the present or imperfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (section 36).

The imperfect indicative becomes (according to sequence) the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive (section 36, fn. 1 (a)).

i. Of special importance is the use of the pluperfect subjunctive for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse. The difficulty of this common use is due largely to the fact that the original future perfect is foreign to the English idiom (section 178, ii.). Thus, *If I find out, I shall bring back word*: *Sī cōgnōverō, renūtiābō* would become, *He answered that if he found out, he should bring back word*: *Respondit sī cōgnōvisset, sē renūtiātūrum esse*. The pluperfect subjunctive in such cases means *literally should have, not had already*.

¹ In the apodosis of a conditional sentence.

C. CHANGES IN PRONOUNS.

188. When, as is generally the case,¹ the first and second persons of the original words are changed in indirect discourse to the third person :

ego, nŭs, become *sē* (or if emphatic in the nominative, *ipse, ipsi*).
meus, noster, " *suus*.
tū, vŏs, " *illē, illi* (or sometimes *is, ei*).
tuus, vester, " *illius, illŏrum*.
hic, iste, " *ille* (or *is*.)

D. CHANGES IN ADVERBS.

189. Adverbs which are relative to the time or place of the speaker, are, as a rule, adapted to the time and place of the reporter. Thus *nunc, hodiē, hic, hinc, heri*, would become respectively *tum* or *tunc, illŏ diē, ibi, inde, pridē*.

190. The following real or apparent exceptions also are found :

i. Clauses introduced by the coordinating relative, which are only apparently subordinate, are put in the infinitive.

ii. Because of the tendency in Latin to use the same construction after *quam* (*than*) as before it, the accusative and infinitive sometimes occurs in *quam* clauses instead of the subjunctive.

iii. For the indicative in parenthetical clauses in indirect discourse see section 175, i.

iv. The hortatory subjunctive (section 134, *u*) is usually changed into the infinitive of the passive periphrastic conjugation.

v. Rhetorical questions which are virtual denials are often put in the accusative and infinitive.

vi. Instead of the regular secondary sequence the more vivid² primary is often found after historical tenses ; and sometimes also a passage may begin with secondary sequence and suddenly change to primary sequence. On the other hand, after the historical present (section 179, *c*) secondary sequence may be used.

vii. The pronoun *hic* and the adverbs mentioned in section 189 are often retained unchanged in indirect discourse.

¹ Of course where the matter quoted refers to the person reporting or the person to whom it is reported. Latin, like English, will use the first or second persons in indirect discourse.

² More vivid because presenting more exactly the original tenses.

viii. The regular rules for the use of *sē*, *ille* and *is* in indirect discourse are not always rigidly followed, especially where no ambiguity arises. See particularly on the use of *sē* and *sumus* sections 164, i. and 165, ii.

191. The verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., on which the indirect discourse depends, is not always expressed, being often sufficiently suggested by the context.

Further, where the indirect discourse includes more than one variety of reported utterance (statements, commands, questions, requests) it is not Latin usage to change the verb introducing the various indirect clauses, as English often does.

Ariovistus sends envoys to Caesar saying that he wished to treat with him about these matters and asking him to appoint a day for an interview: Ariovistus ad Caesarem legātōs mittit: velle sē dē his rēbus agere cum eō: colloquiō diem cōstitueret.

192. In indirect discourse conditional sentences assume the following forms:

<i>Sī quid habeo</i>	<i>dō,</i>	<i>becomes</i>	<i>{</i>	<i>dicit sē, sī quid habeat, dare.</i>
<i>Sī quid habebam</i>	<i>dabam,</i>	<i>becomes</i>	<i>{</i>	<i>dixit sē, sī quid habēret, dedisse.</i>
<i>Sī quid habui</i>	<i>dedi,</i>	<i>becomes</i>	<i>{</i>	<i>dixit sē, sī quid habuerit, dedisse.</i>
<i>Sī quid habebō</i>	<i>dabō,</i>	<i>becomes</i>	<i>{</i>	<i>dixit sē, sī quid habeat, datūrum esse.</i>
<i>Sī quid habuerō</i>	<i>dabō,</i>	<i>becomes</i>	<i>{</i>	<i>dixit sē, sī quid habuerit, datūrum esse.</i>
<i>Sī quid habeam</i>	<i>dem,</i>	<i>becomes</i>	<i>{</i>	<i>dixit sē, sī quid habeat, datūrum esse.</i>
<i>Sī quid habērem</i>	<i>darem,</i>	<i>becomes</i>	<i>{</i>	<i>dixit sē, sī quid habēret, datūrum fuisse</i>
<i>Sī quid habuissem</i>	<i>dedissem,</i>	<i>becomes</i>	<i>{</i>	<i>dixit sē, sī quid habuisset, datūrum fuisse.</i>

193. The following examples illustrate the rules for changing from direct to indirect discourse :

1. *Direct.* — We shall give hostages, and shall do whatever you command. **Obsidēs dabimus, quaeque imperāveris faciēmus.**
Indirect. — (They promised) that they would give hostages, and would do whatever he commanded. (Polliciti sunt) obsidēs **sē datūrōs, quaeque imperāvisset factūrōs.**
2. *Direct.* — A larger eloud of dust than is eustomary is visible in the direction in which the legion has marched. **Pulvis māior quam cōsuētūdō fert in eā parte vidētur, quam in partem legiō iter fecit.**
Indirect. — (They reported) that a larger cloud of dust was visible in the direction in which the legion had marched. (Renūtiāverunt) **pulverem māiōrem, quam cōsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidēri, quam in partem legiō iter fecisset.**
3. *Direct.* — Visit as many states as you can, and urge them to embrace the alliance of the Roman people, and announce that I shall quickly come thither. After examining everything, return to me as quickly as possible. **Quās poteris adi civitatēs, hortāreque ut populi Rōmāni fidem sequantur, mēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiā. Explōrātis omnibus rēbus, ad mē quam primum revertere.**
Indirect. — (He gives him orders) that he is to visit as many states as he can, and urge them to embrace the alliance of the Roman people, and announce that he will quickly come thither. After examining everything, he is to return to him as quickly as possible. (Huic imperat) **quās possit adeat civitatēs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmāni fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Explōrātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur.**

4. *Direct.*—It is not without reason that Gaul is being robbed of all her nobility; this is Caesar's plan, to carry over to Britain and kill all those he fears to slay in sight of Gaul.

Indirect.—(He said) that it was not without reason that Gaul was being robbed of all her nobility; that this was Caesar's plan, to carry over to Britain and kill all those whom he feared to slay in sight of Gaul.

Nōn sine causā fit, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliētur; hōc est cōsiliū Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necet.

(Dixit) *nōn sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliārētur; id esse cōsiliū Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret.*

5. *Direct.*—I was unwilling to leave my people and come to you, for this reason that I might the more easily keep the state in its allegiance; accordingly the state is in my power, and if you permit it I shall come to you in your camp and entrust the fortunes of myself and the state to your protection.

Indirect.—(He answered) that he had been unwilling to leave his people and come to him, for this reason that he might the more easily keep the state in its allegiance; accordingly the state was in his power, and if Caesar permitted it, he should come to him in his camp, and entrust the fortunes of himself and the state to his protection.

Ideircō ā meis discēdere atque ad tē venire nōlēbam, quō facilius civitātem in officio continērem; itaque est civitās in meā potestate, atque si permittēs, ad tē in castra veniam, meas civitātisque fortunās tuae fidei permittam.

(Respondit) *ideircō ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quō facilius civitātem in officio contineret; itaque esse civitātem in suā potestate, sēsēque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās civitātisque fortunās ejus fidei permittam.*

6. *Direct.*—Even if time fails, yet it will be of great service to me, if I merely visit the island.

Indirect.—(He thought) that, even if time failed, yet it would be of great service to him, if he merely visited the island.

Sī tempus dēficiet, tamen māgnō mihi ūsui erit, sī modo insulam adierō.

(*Arbitrābātur*) *sī tempus dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsui fore, sī modo insulam adiisset.*

7. *Direct.*—If you think it wrong for the Germans to cross into Gaul against your wish, why do you claim that anything beyond the Rhine is under your sway or power?

Indirect.—If he thought it wrong for the Germans to cross into Gaul against his wish, why did he claim that anything beyond the Rhine was under his sway or power?

Sī tē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimās, eūr tuī quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulās?

Sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, eūr suī quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

8. *Direct.*—Leap down, soldiers, unless you wish to betray the eagle to the enemy. I at least shall have done my duty.

Indirect.—Let the soldiers leap down, unless they wished to betray the eagle to the enemy. He at least should have done his duty.

Dēsilitē, militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere. Ego certē meum officium praestiterō.

Dēsilirent militēs, nisi vellent aquilam hostibus prōdere. Sē certē suum officium praestitūrum fuisse.

9. *Direct.*—Do no harm to the Trinobantes, Cassivellaunus.

Indirect.—He ordered Cassivellaunus to do no harm to the Trinobantes.

Nōlī, Cassivellaune, Trinobantibus nocēre.

(*Imperat Cassivellaunō*) *nē Trinobantibus noceat.*

(Observe how the vocative may be represented in indirect discourse.)

EXERCISE 28.

[The passages quoted in direct form should be turned into indirect for translation.]

A.

1. To these ambassadors he replied: "I will go with you, if you are ready to set out." 2. They sent ambassadors to Caesar saying that they were ready to open the gates they had closed the day before. 3. He told them not to forget the former valor of the Helvetians, nor the wrongs done by them to the Roman people. 4. "I," answered he, "have spared the citizens, you the Gauls." 5. He began to urge them not to set out; Caesar did not dare to leave them in Gaul; but if they crossed over to Britain, he would kill them all. 6. "Let them not," he wrote, "provoke the enemy to battle, but if they are being harassed themselves, let them hold out until (155, b) I come up." 7. They replied that if these proceedings were reported to Ariovistus, they did not doubt that he would inflict the severest punishment on all the hostages who were in his power. 8. What were they to do? he asked; it was impossible to defend the camp any longer, and Caesar would have been annoyed if they had set out without his orders. 9. In his consulship (he said) the Germans had most eagerly sought the friendship of Rome. Why should anyone imagine that they would forsake their allegiance? 10. Would they have sent Commius back, he asked (35, i.), if he had not led his army across?

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 19-21.*)

1. He points out that if the cavalry rush out, the legionary soldiers will not endure the onset. 2. He pointed out that if the cavalry wandered too widely, the Britons would rush out from the woods and seize them. 3. "We shall send you all the corn we have (*habēō*)," they answered Caesar. "Why (*cūr*) are you setting out with the legions? Do not attack our town." 4. He said that this young man would have held supreme power if he had not been slain by Cassivellaunus. 5. "Let us cross (190, iv.) the river," they answered. "Who can harm us if we are able to conceal ourselves in the marshes?" 6. The Trinobantes sent an

embassy to Caesar (saying) that they had given up all hope and (promising) that they would surrender to him all the hostages he demanded and (begging him) not to suffer the soldiers to lay waste their lands. 7. They feared (*vereor*) that if Caesar allowed the legions to leave the line of march, the enemy would seize many of the soldiers. 8. They said they were accustomed to assemble in these towns, whenever the enemy made a raid. 9. They promised (him) the kingship, if he did not attach (177) himself to Caesar.

DIFFERENT FORMS OF THE NOUN CLAUSE.

194. A noun (or substantive) clause is one that takes the place and discharges the functions of a substantive, whether as *subject* or *object* of a verb or equivalent phrase, or as an *appositive*¹ to some other word in the sentence.

N. B.—The accusative and infinitive construction is here treated as a noun clause because it represents the English noun sentence introduced by the conjunction *that*. Similarly in substantive clauses of result, and in clauses with *quā* and *quōminus*, the adverbial notion of result or purpose has become so weakened that they may properly be treated as noun clauses like their English equivalents.

i. Clauses, like infinitive phrases, are always regarded as neuter.

195. After verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, many so-called impersonal verbs, and many expressions composed of a neuter adjective and *est*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by the accusative and infinitive.

(a) Subject.—*It is not right that the Germans should cross the Rhine: Nōn aequum est Germānōs Rhēnum trānsire.*

(b) Object.—*They thought they possessed limited territories: Angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur.*

(c) Appositive.—*This report was brought to Caesar, that they were attempting to march through our province: Caesarī id nūntiātum est, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī.*

¹ A noun clause is occasionally used as a restrictive appositive to an accusative of anticipation; as, *You know Marcellus how slow he is: Nōstī Marcellum quam tardus sit. They feared that supplies could not be brought in: Rem frūmentāriam ut supportārī posset timent.*

196. After words of *ordering, asking, determining*, and verbs of *fearing*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by clauses with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive. This subjunctive is akin to the subjunctive of purpose, and like it is in its origin the subjunctive expressing will (see section 186, 1, c, i.).

(a) Subject.—*The soldiers have been given orders that they are to attack the enemy*: **Militibus imperātum est ut hostēs aggredi-
antur.**

(b) Object.—*I fear that I may be deserted by all*: **Vereor nē ab omnibus dēserar.**

(c) Appositive.—*Their aim is that they may recover their liberty*: **Id agunt ut libertātem recipiant.**

197. After verbs of *happening* and *causing*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by clauses with *ut* and the subjunctive, which is a weakened subjunctive of result.¹

(a) Subject.—*It happened that there was a full moon*: **Accidit ut esset plēna iūna.**

(b) Object.—*He brought it about that supplies could be conveyed to him without danger*: **Commeātūs ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat.**

(c) Appositive.—*The day had this result, that a very great number of the enemy were wounded*: **Diēs hunc habuit ēventum, ut māximus hostium numerus vulnerārētur.**

198. English noun clauses with *that* after verbs expressing *emotion*, and clauses with *that = the fact that*, are expressed by clauses with *quod* and either the indicative, or the subjunctive of virtual indirect discourse.

(a) Subject.—*There was also the fact that he had stated this in the assembly of the Aedui*: **Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Aedu-
ōrum haec dixerat.**

(b) Object.—*He complains that he has been abandoned*: **Quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.**²

(c) Appositive.—*A most fortunate thing happened, that the next day the Germans came into the camp*: **Opportūnissima rēs acci-
dit, quod postridiē Germāni in castra vēnerunt.**

¹ The substantival notion became so much more prominent than the notion of result that this construction came to be used in cases where not even the faintest trace of result can be discerned.

² Here, as often, the substantival and causal notions are combined.

(d) Adverbial Accusative.—*As to the fact that you threaten me you will not disregard the wrongs of the Aedui, no one has contended with me, except to his own destruction : Quod mihi dēnūtiās tē Aeduōrum injūriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit.*

199. After verbs of *asking, learning, knowing, telling, etc.*, English noun clauses introduced by an interrogative are expressed by an interrogative clause with the subjunctive of indirect question.

(a) Subject.—*It cannot be determined with the eyes in which direction it flows : Oculis in utram partem fluat jūdicārī nōn potest.*

(b) Object.—*He found out what was being done : Cōgnōvit quid gererētur.*

(c) Appositive.—*This is the real question, whether he has returned : Illud quaeritur num redierit.*

200. The same verb may have more than one construction, the difference of construction in most cases representing a difference of meaning.¹

(a) *They determine that these should leave the town : Cōstituunt ut hī oppidō excēdant.*

They determine that it is best to return : Cōstituunt optimum esse reverti.

He determined what tribute Britain should pay : Quid vectigālis Britannia penderet, cōstituit.

(b) *Word was brought that they were not to attack the enemy : Nūntiātum est nē hostēs lacesserentur.* (Compare section 195, c.)

(c) *There was also the fact that they fought in small groups : Accēdebat hūc ut rārī proeliārentur.* (Compare section 198, a.)

N.B.—It is important to distinguish carefully (a) between substantive clauses with *that* and the purely adverbial clauses of purpose and result also introduced by *that*, and (b) between substantive interrogative clauses and relative clauses with omitted antecedent (section 39, v.).

¹ Observe that the clause which follows verbs of *determining, announcing, telling, etc.*, will be in the infinitive or subjunctive, according to the rules of indirect discourse (section 186, 1).

EXERCISE 29.

A.

1. It is best that we should announce to the soldiers that they are not to provoke the enemy to battle. 2. They made the complaint that the enemy were laying waste their lands. 3. The result was that it was quickly ascertained what tribes inhabited the island. 4. There was danger that it would be difficult to determine what should be done. 5. There was added the fact that (198, a) he had stated that Caesar had conferred the chief power upon him. 6. It happened that some of the soldiers were intercepted by the sudden approach of the cavalry. 7. It was reported that Caesar had given orders to the soldiers to storm the enemy's camp. 8. By means of messengers he informs Caesar what he thinks should be done. 9. He answered that he did not know why the soldiers had received orders that they were to attack the town. 10. There is no doubt that the Helvetians are the most powerful. 11. He was of the opinion that it would be dangerous to the province that the enemy should become accustomed to cross the Rhine. 12. This report had been brought, that the Germans had betaken themselves to the woods. 13. He sent messengers to announce that Caesar had determined that (200, a) Labienus should not return.

B. (Caesar, B. G. V., 22-23.)

1. There was added the fact that (198, a) some ships had been driven back. 2. This report had been brought (*nūntiū*) to Cassivellaunus that Caesar had determined to lead his forces back to the mainland. 3. When he had determined what should be done, he urged (*hortor*) that they should wait for the vessels. 4. There is danger (*periculum*) that Caesar will determine that all the legions shall winter in Gaul. 5. It happened that the ships in which he had ordered that the army should be sent back had been lost in the storm. 6. Caesar complained (*queror*) that they had not paid the tribute. 7. He announced that the best (*optimus*) thing was for the envoys to fritter away the rest of the summer. 8. The result of this was (*quō factum est*) that Caesar was not aware how many

(*quot*) losses had been sustained. 9. It was announced that because it happened that the equinox was at hand, the army must be taken back at one trip. 10. He gave orders that they were not to harm the king. 11. They send messengers (stating) that their lands are being laid waste. 12. It was said (*dicō*) that (18, vii.) four kings governed these states.

CONTINUOUS PROSE AND IDIOMATIC TRANSLATION.

201. Passages of continuous narrative set for translation into Latin prose may conveniently be arranged in three divisions of increasing complexity: *first*, those passages in which little more is required than in the detached sentences heretofore given for translation, namely proper choice of words, correct inflection and observance of the rules of Latin syntax; *second*, those passages where, in addition, the phraseology requires alteration, either to adapt the passage to Latin idiom or to avoid difficulties arising from a limited vocabulary; and *third*, those passages in which some alteration is necessary or desirable not merely in phraseology but also in the structure or relation of sentences.

N.B.—The same division holds of passages to be translated from Latin into English, and much of what follows may, with the necessary changes, be applied to the idiomatic translation of Latin into English.

The three following sections discuss the chief points to be observed in each of these divisions.

CONNECTION OF THOUGHT.

202. Even in the simplest kind of narrative passage it will not do to treat the component sentences as so many independent units. Latin differs very markedly from English in regard to the connection of sentences. If a modern book or newspaper be compared with such an author as Caesar, it will be found that in narrative English it is the exception rather than the rule to give formal expression to the connection of thought, while in narrative Latin the reverse holds true.

Hence the general rule that at the beginning of each new sentence in Latin care should be taken to make plain the connection in thought with the preceding words.

(a) The usual means of expressing the connection between sentences are as follows:

i. Particles such as *atque*, and *moreover*; *neque*, and *not*; *at*, but; *autem*, however; *verò*, but indeed; *itaque*, therefore; *nam* or *enim*, for.

ii. Pronouns, especially the coordinating relative *qui* (section 172) and the demonstratives *hic*, *is*, *ille*, *ipse* and *idem* (sections 158-162).

iii. Words or phrases whose meaning suggests a reference to the preceding context, such as *interim*, meanwhile; *ita*, in this way; *tum*, thereupon; *eò*, to that place; *posterò diē*, the next day; *eādem de causā*, for the same reason; *accēdit quod* or *ut*, besides this.

(b) Where the scene shifts and a new actor comes upon the stage, Latin is generally careful to mark the change of subject *early* in the sentence.

If the new subject has been mentioned in the preceding sentence, *qui*, *hic*, *is* and (for emphatic contrast) *ille* are generally used; if it has not been mentioned, a substantive is used, as, for instance, *Caesar*, *hostēs* or *nostrī*. In the latter case very often none of the connecting links mentioned above is used; apparently the contrast afforded by the change of subject is in such cases felt to be a sufficient mark of connection.

On the other hand, where the subject is not changed, it is seldom repeated, but is indicated in Latin merely by the personal ending of the main verb of the new sentence.

(c) It may be noticed here that Latin prefers as a connective *neque* (or *nec*) to *et* followed by *nōn*; and similarly *nec quisquam*, *nec ullus*, *nec unquam* are preferred to *et nēmō*, *et nullus*, *et nunquam*.

PHRASEOLOGY.

203. Before an English sentence can be turned into idiomatic Latin, it often requires remodelling and adaptation (in whole or part) because of differences in the form

of expression preferred by each language. In our own language, as we know, the same thought may be expressed in many different ways, and of these some are sure to be more, some less, like the form of expression a Roman would choose. So it often happens that when at first it would seem impossible to turn an English sentence into Latin because it contains some words for which the student knows no Latin equivalent, the whole difficulty is easily solved by expressing the thought of the sentence in some other way. But again, even when the student does know a Latin equivalent for *each individual* word in an English sentence, he may yet fail to get a tolerable rendering, for the reason that Latin may put the *whole thought* into a form quite unlike the English.

To a certain extent differences of phraseology between Latin and English are matters of detail that the most complete vocabulary could not fully treat, but certain general rules may be given which have a very wide application. These rules are really illustrations of one great principle: that the genius of the Latin language is above all things *direct, definite and concrete*, like the Roman character itself, straightforward, business-like, practical and unimaginative.

Hence the general rule for narrative prose, first to see clearly what is the exact meaning of the English phrase, and then to express that meaning in the simplest and most direct manner. Some important special applications of this rule are as follows:—

(a) AVOID METAPHORICAL OR PICTURESQUE EXPRESSIONS.

Very little modern English prose is as simple and direct as Caesar's style; much even of our everyday language is in fact

highly metaphorical. In narrative prose, the best plan is to avoid figurative language altogether; translate the thoughts and not the words. So for example:

He took the field: **Ad bellum profectus est.**

He left no stone unturned: **Nihil praetermisit.**

He turned a deaf ear to this advice: **Quod cōsiliū nōn probāvit.**

He sacrificed friendship on the altar of patriotism: **Amicitiam rei publicae perhabuit.**

Where figurative language is used in Latin (as in Cicero's oratory and Livy's semi-poetical prose) we constantly find either that a simile is preferred to a metaphor or that the metaphor is quite different from the English one, and even then is apt to be toned down by *tamquam*, *quasi*, *quidam*, etc.

(b) AVOID ABSTRACT FORMS OF EXPRESSION.

Latin has fewer abstract words than English, and those it does possess it uses much more sparingly than we do, many of them being found only in philosophical writings. The number of abstract words which can safely be ventured upon in narrative prose is very limited, such as *amicitia*, *auctoritas*, *celeritas*, *magnitudo*, *studium*. Almost invariably the English abstract expression should be turned by a concrete Latin phrase; as,

On the conclusion of this war: **Hōc bellō cōfectō.**

On the receipt of this information: **Quod cum nūtiātum esset.**

They promised submission to his authority: **Ea quae imperāset sē factūrōs polliciti sunt.**

In Caesar's consulship: **Caesare cōsule.**

His measures: **Ea quae faciēbat.**

In pursuance of his annual custom: **Ut quotannis cōsuēverat.**

So the indirect question furnishes an equivalent for many abstract words (see section 37), and the vague word *rēs* often affords a convenient translation for various kinds of *circumstances*, *situations*, *measures*, etc.

Similarly Latin is very deficient in class names which express the doer of an action, such as *fugitive*, *defender*, *combatant*, *discoverer*, *believer*. These can generally be expressed by the verb: e.g., *fugientēs* or *quī fugiēbant*.

(c) AVOID THE PERSONIFICATION OF INANIMATE THINGS OR OF QUALITIES.

Latin seldom represents anything but a living thing as the doer of an action, while English so constantly makes inanimate objects or abstract nouns the subject of a verb of action that we scarcely notice the personification.

Caesar's sudden approach frightened them into submission : **Caesaris repentinō adventū commōti, lēgātōs dē dēditionē mittunt.**

The darkness of the night hid us from the enemy : **Propter tenebrās, hostēs nostrōs nōn cōspicātī sunt.**

Speed alone will save us : **Ūna est in celeritatē posita salūs.**

His dying words : **Ējus morientis verba.**

(d) THE CHIEF WEIGHT OF THE SENTENCE FALLS IN LATIN UPON THE VERB.

In English there is a tendency to make the noun the significant word. So for English phrases consisting of some unemphatic verb, such as *make, have, take, do*, etc., followed by a verbal noun which is the really significant word, Latin often has a verb which contains the meaning of the English noun within itself ; as,

He made reply to me : **Mihi respondit.**

He has no hesitation : **Nōn dubitat.**

He took his departure : **Discessit.**

We have both the power and the daring to cross : **Et possumus et audēmus trānsire.**

This verb is often accompanied by a cognate accusative (see section 72) in the form of a neuter pronoun or adjective ; as,

They can do no harm to us : **Nihil nōbīs nocēre possunt.**

He made many promises : **Multa pollicitus est.**

They make the same attempt : **Idem cōnantur.**

This idiom is especially noticeable in the impersonal use of the passive voice of intransitive verbs (section 56) ; as,

Mention has been made of him : **Dē illō dictum est.**

There must be no delay : **Nōn cunctandum est.** (Compare also section 37.)

(e) THE ACTIVE VOICE IS PREFERRED TO THE PASSIVE IN THE
LEADING VERBS.

This is because of the desire to state exactly and naturally what takes place. But as Latin prefers to keep the same subject throughout a period, the verbs in the subordinate clauses and in participial phrases will often be passive while the main verb is, according to rule, in the active voice. Two important and frequent examples of the use of the passive are the ablative absolute construction, and the impersonal passive construction.

(f) THE PRECISE MEANING OF BOTH ENGLISH AND LATIN
WORDS MUST BE CLOSELY WATCHED.

It will seldom happen that a word in one language corresponds exactly in all its uses to any one word in the other.

i. For instance, in English very many transitive verbs may be used intransitively also, whereas in Latin this very seldom occurs. In such cases the intransitive use is expressed sometimes by the passive voice, sometimes by the active with the reflexive pronoun, and sometimes by a quite different verb; as,

<i>more</i>	(transitive), <i>movēre</i> ;	(intransitive), <i>movērī</i> .
<i>surrender</i>	(transitive), <i>dēdere</i> ;	(intransitive), <i>sē dēdere</i> .
<i>increase</i>	(transitive), <i>augēre</i> ;	(intransitive), <i>crēscere</i> or <i>augērī</i> .

ii. Again, many English words have widely different meanings, according to the context; as,

weight (burden), *onus* ; (influence), *auctōritās*.

Rome (the city), *Rōma* ; (the nation), *populus Rōmānus*.

field (piece of land), *ager* ; (battle), *aciēs* or *proelium*.

ask (make a request), *petō* ; (put a question), *quaerō*.

command (give an order), *imperō* ; (have authority over), *praesum*.

iii. An entirely different source of mistakes is the fact that many English words derived from Latin originals have in the course of time taken on a very different meaning. For instance:

obtinēō = *hold, possess* ; *obtain* = *cōsequor, adipīscor*.

occupō = *seize* ; *occupy* = *obtinēō*.

officiū = *duty* ; *office* = *magistrātus*.

recipiō = *recover, regain* ; *receive* = *accipiō*.

sēcūrus = *free from anxiety* ; *secure* = *tūtus*.

(g) OMIT UNNECESSARY AND MERELY ORNAMENTAL EPITHETS.

Some English writers are fond of heightening the effect by adding words or phrases that may adorn the style but add nothing to the meaning. These may safely be omitted; as, *The enemy was awaiting the approach of our (gallant) leader. They aimed their weapons particularly at the horses (of the enemy's cavalry).*

(h) BE PRECISE IN THE USE OF THE TENSES.

Attention has already been called to the precision shown in the Latin use of the tenses, especially i. in subordinate clauses referring to an action prior to that of the main verb (sections 178, ii. and 187, b, i.); ii. in the tenses of the participle (section 41); iii. after verbs of *promising* and *hoping*, etc. (section 17). In one important respect only is Latin less exact than English, namely, in the frequent use of primary sequence after secondary tenses (section 190, vi.).

STRUCTURE.

204. It may happen, however, that all the preceding rules about syntax, connection and phraseology have been carefully observed, and yet that the result is far from being good Latin prose. For it may be that the English passage is constructed in a way that is very unlike Latin usage.

Modern English narrative is apt to consist of a series of detached sentences, each comparatively simple in its structure, generally short, and containing very few verbs. Classical Latin narrative is more apt to group several of these crisp sentences into a longer and more complex sentence, making the verb which expresses the main idea the principal verb, and putting the others in various subordinate relations.

Again, even when English does have a long complex sentence, it is more loosely constructed than the Latin period (section 9). In the Latin period (as in the Latin

short sentence) the main thought is, as a rule, not complete until the final words are given; the period is intended to be grasped as a whole; grammatically it may appear very involved, but the thoughts are marshalled in a perfectly logical order. But in the English long sentence (as often in the short sentence also) we seldom find the main thought left in suspense until the very end of the sentence; the final words are not the emphatic ones; the thought is intended to be grasped in detail.

Contrast the following passages:

Our men then marched back to camp. Not a man had been killed, and very few wounded. Yet they had expected a formidable campaign, for the enemy numbered four hundred and thirty thousand men. **Nostri ad unum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis vulnerātis ex tanti bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum trigintā milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.**

In the elementary stages of the writing of continuous Latin prose, it is not necessary to study very closely the formation of the Latin period, which, after all, is by no means invariably employed by even the most careful Latin prose authors; the following suggestions, however, will be found of importance for even the beginner.¹

(a) Arrange the various clauses of a sentence in the logical order of thought, which in narrative commonly means the order of time. Put all clauses or phrases expressing attendant circumstances before the main verb, and put last the clause on which the emphasis falls. This will generally be the principal clause, but see section 6, ii.

(b) Reduce the number of principal verbs by grouping short independent sentences that relate to a common topic into a complex sentence.

¹ On the other hand, it is of the utmost importance that the pupil in turning Latin into English should become accustomed to translating Latin periods and complex sentences into the simpler and looser structure characteristic of English, and especially should he familiarize himself, by practice, with the various ways suggested in sections 43 and 47 of translating participial clauses. Good examples for such practice may be found in Caesar, B. G., IV. 23, 6; 24, 1; 30, 1 and 2; 32, 4 and 5; V. 7, 6; 8, 1 and 2; 9, 1; and 15, 3 and 4.

(c) Within this complex sentence or period, avoid as far as possible changes of subject. The subject of the main verb should, if expressed at all (section 202, *b*), appear early in the sentence and be made, where possible, the subject of the dependent clauses also.

(*d*) Latin is very fond of inserting a subordinate clause in the middle of a clause on which it depends, but the loosely joined parenthesis should be carefully avoided.

(*e*) Even where there is no need for grouping short sentences into a period, it may often be convenient to readjust some of the clauses or phrases in the passage for translation, shifting them from one part of the sentence to another or even transferring them to the preceding or the following sentence. For instance, in the passage: *On receiving this news he led his forces against the enemy. His march, though rapid, was so conducted as to save the troops from all fatigue*, the translation is simplified by transferring the idea of *marching rapidly* to the preceding clause: **Quae cum audiret, cōpiās adversus hostēs quam celerrimē dūxit; ita tamen ut nō labore et itinere nōn dēfatigātī sint.** Similarly, instead of representing one action as the *result* of some preceding action it may be more convenient to represent the latter as the *cause* of the former.

205. Some miscellaneous differences of idiom also deserve notice.

(*a*) English often expresses emphasis by means of the verb *to be*, generally followed by the relative pronoun or adverb; as, *It was I who did it. Piso was the first to reach the camp.* Latin has nothing corresponding to this, but expresses emphasis by other means; as, **Ego feci. Primus ad castra pervēnit Pīsō.**

(*b*) Latin constantly tends to look upon an action as proceeding from a certain source or quarter, where in English it is considered as happening in that quarter; as, *He fought on horseback: They attack our troops on both flanks.* **Ex equō pūgnābat. Nostrōs ab utrōque latere aggređiuntur.** (See also section 127, *v*.)

(*c*) In Latin demonstrative and relative pronouns (especially *hic*) referring to some previous noun or the substance of a previous clause are put in agreement with a noun, instead of in the objective genitive depending on it. English has frequently this same condensed form of expression; as, *Through fear of this circumstance (or through this fear):* **Hōc metū (= Hūjus rei metū).**

(*d*) In such expressions as *The shrewd Fabius, Your excellent father, So brave a man as you*, Latin uses an appositive with the superlative in agreement; as, **Fabius callidissimus imperātor,**

Pater tuus vir optimus, Tū vir fortissimus. When, however, such epithets have no bearing on the context, they should be omitted altogether (see section 203, g).

(e) *This great* is regularly in Latin **hic tantus** not **hic māgnus**.

(f) Latin frequently uses **et** or **-que** to join adjectives, where English omits the connective; so especially with **multī**; as, *Many great contests*: **Multae et māgnae contentiōnēs**.

(g) The Latin adjective or participle is frequently found where English would use a noun; as, *Our men*: **Nostri**. *All their property*: **Omnia sua**. *Wise men, philosophers*: **Sapientēs**. *The retreating force*: **Fugientēs**.

(h) In many phrases the adjective is used in Latin where an adverb or adverbial clause would be found in English. Such cases are *primus, prior, medius, ultimus, invitus, imprūdēs, rārus, tōtus*. In all these cases the condition of what is expressed by the noun, not the manner of action expressed by the verb, is looked to; as, *They came unwillingly (or against their will)*: **Invitī vēnērunt**.

(i) Where in English a verbal or abstract noun is connected with another noun by the preposition *of*, in Latin this abstract noun is often represented by a perfect participle passive put in agreement with the Latin noun corresponding to the object of the preposition; as, *Before the founding of Rome*: **Ante Rōmam conditam**. *The news of the disaster*: **Nūntiāta clādēs**. (See also section 203, b and d.)

(j) Latin often uses the name of a tribe or people instead of the name of the country or city; as, *He marched through the territory of the Ligurians*: **Per Ligurēs iter fecit**. *He came to Gortyna*: **Ad Gortyniōs vēnit**.

(k) In English a coordinating relative clause is often appended to the main clause of a sentence, containing an additional statement which might equally well have been expressed by an independent principal clause introduced by a conjunction (*who* = *and he*); in Latin the coordinating relative should be placed only at the beginning of a new independent sentence; as, *Influenced by these events the Helvetians at once sent envoys, who threw themselves at Caesar's feet and in tears begged for peace*: **His rēbus adducti, Helvētī statim lēgātōs mittunt. Qui sē ad pedēs Caesarī prō-jēcērunt flentēsq̄e pācem petivērunt**.

Other ways of translating such appended clauses into Latin are (a) by using coordinate principal clauses connected by a conjunction, or (b) by enlarging the main clause of the English sentence into a participial or subordinate clause, as; *He sends*

messengers to these kings, whom he orders to attack the naval camp:
**Ad hōs rēgēs nūntiōs mittit, atque his imperat uti castra nāvālia
oppūgnent.** *This fact was reported by scouts to Caesar, who sent in
his legions and seized the town:* **Quā rē per explorātōrēs nūntiātā,
Caesar legiōnēs intrōmittit atque oppidō potitur.**



Ancient City Wall and Gate.
(The Porta Appia in the Aurelian Wall, Rome.)

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

[For the principal parts of the verbs reference may be made to the
Vocabulary to Caesar, page 101.]

A

- abandon**, *prôdô*, ere.
ability, *ingenium*, I, N.
able, *be*, *possum*, *posse*, *potui*.
about (= *concerning*), *dô*, *with abl.*;
(with numerals), *eireiter*.
access, *aditus*, *ûs*, M.
accordance, *in* — *with*, *prô*, *with*
abl., or *abl. alone*.
account, *on* — *of*, *propter*, *with*
acc.
accustomed, *be*, *eôn-uêvî*, *isse*
(perf. tense of eôn-suêscô).
accustomed, *become*, *consuêscô*,
ere.
acquit, *absolvô*, ere.
across, *trâns*, *with acc.*
added, *be*, *aceêdô*, ere.
Aduatuel, *Aduatucl*, *ôrum*, M.
advance, *verb.*, *prôcêdô*, ere ; *prô-*
gredior, I.
advance, *noun*, *adventus*, *ûs*, M. ;
send in advance, *praemittô*,
ere.
advise, *admoneô*, êre.
Aedui, *Aeduî*, *ôrum*, M.
after, *prep.*, *post*, *with acc.* ; *conj.*,
postquam, *cum* ; or *use perfect*
participle.
afraid, *be*, *vereor*, *êri* ; (*of*, *express*
by acc.).
against, *in*, *contrâ*, *with acc.* ; (*with*
bellum gerô), *cum*, *with abl.*
ago, *abhînc*, *with acc.*
aid, *auxilium*, I, N. ; *subsidium*, I,
 N. ; *bring aid to*, *auxilium ferô*,
ferre, *with dat.*
alarm, *permoveô*, êre ; *commoveô*,
êre.
all, *omnis*, e.
allegiance, *officium*, I, N.
allow, *patior*, I, *passus sum*.
allowed, *be*, *licet*, *licêre*, *lieuit*,
impersonal with dat.
ally, *socius*, I, M.
aloof, *hold*, *absuin*, *esse*, *âfui*.
already, *jam*.
also, *he*, *use Idem*.
although, *etsi* ; *quamquam* ; *quani-*
vis ; or *by concessive relative*.
always, *semper*.
ambassador, *lêgâtus*, I, M.
ambush, *insidiae*, *ârum*, F. *plur.*
among, *inter*, *with acc.*
ancestors, *mâjôrês*, *um*, M.
anchor, *welgh*, = *set sail*.
ancient, *vetus*, -eris.
and, *et*, -que, atque, ae.
announee, *nûntiô*, âre.
annoyed, *be*, *graviter ferô*, *ferre*.
another, *alius*, a, ud.
answer, *give (or make) answer*,
respondeô, êre.
any, *ûllus*, a, um : *after sî*, or *nê*,
quî (quis), *qua*, *quod*.
appearance, *aspectus*, *ûs*, M.
approach, *verb.*, *accêdô*, ere ; *ap-*
propinquô, âre, *with dat.*
approach, *noun*, *adventus*, *ûs*, M.
Ardennes, *Arduenna*, ae, F.
Arlovistus, *Ariovistus*, I, M.
arise, *coorior*, *Irî*.
arms, *arma*, *ôrum*, N. *plur.*
army, *exercitus*, *ûs*, M.
around, *eireum*, *with acc.*
arrival, *adventus*, *ûs*, M.

art of war, *rēs militāris*, F.
as (=since), *eum*, or *use participle*.
as—as possible, *quam, with superl.*
as soon as, *simul atque*.
ascertain, *cōgnōscō*, ere.
ashamed, be, *pudet, impersonal*.
ask* (of making a request), *petō*, ere; *rogō*, āre.
ask* (of asking a question), *quaerō*, ere; *rogō*, āre.
ask for, *petō*, ere, *with acc.*
assemble (*intransitive*), *conveniō*, ire.
assembly, *concilium*, I, N.
assist, *subveniō*, ire, *with dat.*; *juvō*, āre, *with acc.*
assistance, *auxilium*, I, N.
assistance, go to—of, *auxiliō eō*, *with dat.*
at, of time when, use abl.; *of place where, use locative, or in and abl.*; *after conjiciō*, *in, with acc.*; *in phrase throw one's self at feet*, *ad, with acc.*
at once, *statim*, *adv.*
Athens, *Athēnae*, ārum, F. *plur.*
attack, verb. (*of places*), *oppugnō*, āre; (*of men*), *aggredior*, i; *adorior*, iri; *impetum facere in, with acc.*
attack, noun, *impetus*, ūs, M.
attempt, make an, *cōnor*, āri.
away, take, *tollō*, ere, *sustulī*, *sublātum*.

B

baggage, *impedimenta*, ōrum, N. *plur.*
bank, *ripa*, ae, F.
battle, *proelium*, I, N.; *pūna*, ae, F.
be, *sum*, *esse*, *fui*; *to express distance, use absum, abesse*.
bear, *ferō*, *ferre*.
because, *quod*.
because of, *propter*, *with acc.*

before, prep. (*of time and place*), *ante, with acc.*
before, adv., *anteā*.
before, conj., *antequam*, *priusquam*.
beg, *orō*, āre.
begin, *incipiō*, ere; *for the perfect tenses, use coepī, isse, coeptus sum*.
begin battle, *proelium committō*, ere.
beginning, use *primus*.
behold, *videō*, ēre; *cōspicior*, āri.
Belgians, *Belgae*, ārum, M. *plur.*
believe, *credō*, ere, *with dat.*
beseech, *orō*, āre; *obsecrō*, āre.
best, *optimus*, a, um.
betake, *recipiō*, ere.
betake one's self to flight, *sē fugae mandāre*.
better, *melior*, ius.
better, it is, *praestat*, āre, *impersonal*.
betray, *prōdō*, ere.
beyond, *trans*, *with acc.*
Bibracte, *Bibracte*, is, N.
boast of, *glōrior*, āri, *with abl.*
boat, *nāvis*, is, F.
body (of cavalry), *multitūdō*, -dinis, F.
border (=beginning, edge), *initium*, I, N.; **borders** (=territories), *finēs*, ium, M.
both . . . and, *et . . . et*.
both, use *uterque*, *utroque*, *utrumque*, =each.
brave, *fortis*, e.
bravely, *fortiter*.
bravery, *virtūs*, tūtis, F.; *fortitūdō*, -dinis, F.
break down, *reseindō*, ere.
break out, *ecorior*, iri.
bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, M.
bring, *ferō*, *ferre*.

* The person who is asked is with *rogō* in the acc., with *petō* in the abl. with *ab*, with *quaerō* in the abl. with *ex* or *ab*.

bring (*followed by across*), trā-
ducō, ere; trāsportō, āre.
bring over, trādūcō, ere.
bring word, nūntiō, āre.
Britain, Britannia, ae, f.
Briton, Britannus, i, m.
build, aedificō, āre; faciō, ere.
burn, incendō, ere.
burn up, combūrō, ere.
but, conj., sed.
but (= *who—not*), quin.
by, ā, ab, *with abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, m.
call, appellō, āre.
camp, castra, ōrum, n. plur.
can, possum, posse, potui.
capture, capiō, ere.
carelessness, indiligentia, ae, f.
carry down, dēficiō, ere.
carry on, gerō, ere.
case, be the, ita esse (= *be so*).
Castleus, Casticus, i, m.
cattle, pecus, -oris, n.
cause, eūrō, āre, *with gerundive*.
canton, with, cautē; **with the
greatest canton**, cautissimē.
cavalry, equitātus, ūs, m. (*in sing.*);
equitēs, uni, m. (*in plur.*).
cavalry-man, eques, -itis, m.
cease, desistō, ere, *with abl.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, m.
certain, quidam, quaedam, quid-
dam or quoddam.
chain, catēna, ae, f.
chance, cāsus, ūs, m.
charge, be in—of, praesumi, esse,
with dat.
charge, place (put) in—of, prae-
ficiō, ere, *with acc. and dat.*
charloteer, essedārius, i, m.
chief, chief man, princeps, -eipis,
m.
chief power, régnū, i, n.; im-
perium, i, n.

circumstance, rēs, rei, f.
citizen, civis, is, m.
city, urbs, urbis, f.
clemency, elēmentia, ae, f.
close, claudō, ere.
cohort, cohors, -hortis, f.
collect, cōgō, ere.
come, veniō, ire.
come up, accēdō, ere.
come up with, cōsequor, i, *with
acc.*
come upon, occurrō, ere, *with
dat.*
command, verb. (= *order*), imperō,
āre, *with dat.*; (= *be in command*),
praesumi, esse, *with dat.*
command, noun. (= *military
power*), imperium, i, n.; (= *order
given*), imperātum, i, n.
command, be in, have—of, prae-
sumi, esse, *with dat.*
communication, hold, collo-
quor, i.
compel, cōgō, ere.
complain, queror, i.
complaint, make, queror, i.
complete, cōficiō, ere.
comrades, their, sui, ōrum, m.
plur.
conceal, occultō, āre; cēlō, āre.
concern, object of, cūra, ae.
concerning, dē, *with abl.*
conclude (= *make*), faciō, ere.
confer, dēferō, -ferre; (*upon, ex-
press by dat.*).
conference, colloquium, i, n.
confusion, throw into, per-
turbō, āre; **throw into great
confusion**, māgnopere perturbō.
conquer, vincō, ere; superō, āre.
consul, cōsul, cōsulis, m.
**consulship, in the—of, use consul
in the abl. absolute** (49).
consult welfare of, cōsulō, ere,
with dat.
consummate, summus, a, um.
continent, continēs, -entis, f.
corn, frumentum, i, n.

country (=district), loca, ōrum, N.
plur.; regiō, ōnis, F.; (=land),
 ager, agri, M.; finēs, ium, M.
plur.; (=state), res pūblica, rei
 pūblicae, F.; (=native country),
 patria, ae, F.; (=rural districts),
 rūs, rūris, N.

course, cursus, ūs, M.

coward, ignāvus, I, M.

Crassus, Crassus, I, M.

cross, cross over, trāseō, ire.

crush, opprimō, ere.

custom, cōnsuetūdō, -dinis, F.;
 mōs, mōris, M.

cut off, intercludō, ere.

D

danger, periculum, I, N.

dangerous, periculōsus, a, um.

dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

date, the—of, use clause with
 quandō (=when).

day, diēs, ēi, M.

day before, the, pridie, adv.

death, mors, mortis, F.

death, put to, interficō, ere.

decide (=form a resolve), cōsti-
 tuō, ere; (=form an opinion), iū-
 dicō, āre; (=adjudicate), dēcernō,
 ere.

declare (with bellum), indicō, ere.

deep, altus, a, um.

defeat, repellō, ere; superō, āre.

defend, dēfendō, ere.

demand, imperō, āre; poseō, ere.

depart, discēdō, ere.

departure, discessus, ūs, M.; pro-
 fectiō, ōnis, F.; take one's depar-
 ture, discēdō, ere; proficiscor, ī.

design, cōsiliū, ī, N.

despair, be in despair, dēspērō,
 āre; (of, dē, with abl.).

destination, reach, locum capiō.

destroy, rescindō, ere.

deter, dēterreō, ēre; impediō, ire.

determine, cōstituō, ere.

devise, capiō, ere; incō, ire.

die, morior, mori.

difficult, difficilis, e.

difficulty, with, vix, aegrē, adv.

direction, pars, partis, F.

directions, from all, undique,
 adv.; or use pars.

disaster, calamitās, -tātis, F.

discover, cōgnōscō, ere; reperīō,
 ire.

disembark, ē nāvibus ēgredior, ī.

dismay, permovēō, ēre.

dismiss, dimittō, ere.

dispel, expellō, ere.

disperse, discēdō, ere.

disposition, animus, I, M.

dispute, contrōversia, ae, F.

distant, be, absum, abesse.

distress, be in, labōrō, āre.

distribute, distribuō, ere;
 (among, express by dat.).

district, regiō, -ōnis, F.

distrust, diffidō, ere, -fusus sum,
 with dat.

do, faciō, ere.

double, duplex, duplicis.

doubt, verb, dubitō, āre.

doubt, noun, dubitātiō, -ōnis, F.;
 there is no doubt, nōn est du-
 bium.

draw (with gladius), dēstringō, ere.

draw near, =approach.

dread, vereor, ēri.

drive (=urge on), impellō, ere.

Druids, Druidēs, um, M. *plur.*

Dumnox, Dumnox, -igis, M.

dwelt, incolō, ere.

E

eagerly, cupidē.

eagerness, alacritās, -tātis, F.

eagle, aquila, ae, F.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis; **very easy**, perfa-
 cilis, e.

eat, vescor, ī (with abl.).

eight, octō.

embark, *nāvēs cōnseendō*, ere.
embassy, *lĕgātĭō*, -ōnis, F.
encamp, *cōnsidō*, ere.
encourage, *cohortor*, āri.
endure (= *tolerate*), *patior*, I; (= *withstand*), *perferō*, -ferre.
enemy, *hostis*, is, M. (*usually in the plur.*).
engage in battle, *proellum committō*, ere.
engaged, *occupātus*, a, um.
engagement, *proellum*, I, N.
enquiry, *make*, *quaerō*, ere.
enrol, *cōnseribō*, ere.
envoy, *lĕgātus*, I, M.
especial, *use* *praeceptuē* = *especially*.
even, *etiam*; **not even**, *nē . . . quidem*; **even if**, **even though**, *etiam si*.
every, *omnis*, e; *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque* or *quodque* = *each*.
every one, *omnēs*, *plur.*; or *quisque*, *sing.*, = *each*.
everything, *omnia*; *omnēs rēs*.
exhibit (= *show*), *ūtor*, I, *with abl.*
exhort, *hortor*, āri.
experience, *ūsus*, ūs, M.
extend, *pertineō*, ěre.
extremely, *māximē* (or *use the superl. degree*).
eyes, **in the—of**, *use the dat.*

F

farther, *adv.*, *longius*.
fate, *fortūna*, ae, F.
favorable, *idōneus*, a, um.
fear, *verb.*, *timeō*, ěre; *vereor*, ěri.
fear, *noun*, *timor*, -ōris, M.; *metus*, ūs, M.
few, **but few**, *pauci*, ae, a; **a few**, *nōnnulli*, ae, a; **very few**, *pauci*, ae, a.
field, *ager*, *agrī*, M.
fierce, *use* *acriter*, = *fiercely*.
fight, *pugnō*, āre.

fight a battle, *proellum facĭō*, ere.
fighting, *pūgna*, ae, F.; or *use gerund of pugnō*.
fill, **fill up**, *compleō*, ěre.
find, *reperĭō*, ěre; *inveniō*, ěre.
find out, *cōgnōscō*, ere; *comperĭō*, ěre.
fire, *ignis*, is, M.
fire, **set—to**, *incendō*, ere, *with acc.*
first, *primus*, a, um; **at first**, *primō*; (= *be the first to*) *use primus*.
five, *quinque*.
fix (*with diēs*), *dicō*, ere.
flank, *latus*, -eris, N.
flee, *cōnfugiō*, ere; *fugiō*, ere.
flesh, *carō*, *carnis*, F.
flight, *fuga*, ae, F.
flight, **take to**, *sē fugae mandāre*.
follow, *sequor*, I.
follow up, *persequor*, I.
following, *posterus*, a, um; *insequēns*, -entis.
follows, *as*, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*.
food, *elĭbus*, I, M.
foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, M.; **on foot**, *pedibus*; (**at the foot of**), *sub*, *with abl.*
for (*of motion towards*), *in*, *ad*, *with acc.*; (= *with a view to*) *ad*.
forces, *cōplae*, *ārum*, F. *plur.*
forest, *silva*, ae, F.
for ever, *in perpetuum*.
forget, *obliviscor*, I, *with gen.*
form (*with cōnsilium*), *capĭō*, ere.
former, *prīstinus*, a, um.
forsake, *discēdō*, ere, *with ab and abl.*
fortify, *mūniō*, ěre.
forward, **send**, *praemittō*, ere.
four, *quattuor*.
fourth, *quārtus*, a, um; **three-fourths**, = *three parts*.
free (*verb.*), *liberō*, āre.
free (*adj.*), *liber*, era, erum.
freedom, *libertās*, -tātis, F.
friend, *amīcus*, I, M.

friendship, amicitia, ae, f.
frightful, horridus, a, um.
from, ā, ab (=away from), ex (=out of), with abl.
fugitives, fugientēs, = those fleeing.
furnish, order to, imperō, āre (with dat. of persons ordered, acc. of that to be furnished).

G

gain, potior, iri, with abl.; adipiscor, i, with acc.
gate, porta, ae, f.
gather, cōgō, ere.
Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, f.
Gaul (a native of Gaul), Gallus, i, m.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.
Geneva, Genāva, ae, f.
German, noun, Germānus, i, m.; adj., Germānus, a, um.
give, dō, dare, dedi, datum.
go, eō, ire, ii (iv), itum.
go forth, go out, exēō, ire.
going, be—on, fiō, fieri; geror, i.
gone, be, discessi, isse.
grain, frūmentum, i, n.
great, magnus, a, um; **how great**, quantus, a, um; **so great, as great**, tantus, a, um.
Greek, Graecus, i, m.
grievance, dolor, -ōris, m.
ground (=place), locus, i, m.; loca, ōrum, n.
ground, stand (hold) one's, cōsistō, ere; sustineō, ēre.
ground, on the—that, quod. conj.
guard, praesidium, i, n.
guilty, find, condemnō, āre.

H

halt, cōsistō, ere.
hand, be at, adsum, -esse.
hands, at the—of, ā, ab, with abl.
happen, accidō, ere; fiō, fieri.
harass, laecessō, ere.

harbor, portus, ūs, m.
hard pressed, be, premor, i.
have, habeo, ēre; (=cause), eūrō, āre.

he, is; sē.

head, bent the—of, praesum, esse, with dat.

hear, hear of, audiō, ire, with acc.
hearing, without a, indictā causā (lit. the case being unpleaded).

help, auxilium, i, n.

Helvetian, noun, Helvētius, i, m.; adj., Helvētius, a, um.

hesitate, dubitō, āre.

hide, sē abdere; (in, in with acc.).

high, altus, a, um; (=great), magnus, a, um.

higher (of position), superior, ius.

hill, collis, is, m.

himself, ipse, a, um; sē.

hinder, impediō, ire; prohibeo, ēre.

his, suus, a, um; ejus.

hold, teneō, ēre; (=regard), habeo, ēre.

hold out, sustineō, ēre.

home, domus, ūs, f.; **at home**, domi; **for motion towards use** domum or ad mō.

hope, verb, spērō, are; (**for, express by acc.**).

hope, noun, spēs, spēi, f.

horseman, eques, -itis, m.

hostage, obses, -sidis, m.

how much, quantum.

however, quavis.

hunger, famēs, is, f.

hurl, conjiciō, ere; (at, in with acc.).

I

if (=in case that), si; (=whether), num; **as if**, quasi, velut.

imagine, putō, āre.

immediately, statim.

impossible, be, nō possum.

impress, commoveō, ēre.

in, in, *with abl.*; (=into), in, *with acc.*

incensed, be-at, exardescō, ere, *with abl.*

indulge, indulgeō, ēre, *with dat.*

indulgence, show, indulgeō, ēre.

inevitably, use *necesse est*.

inexperienced, imperitus, a, um.

inflict (*of punishment*), sūmō, ere; (*upon, de, with abl.*); (*of injury*), inferō, ferre; (*upon, express by dat.*).

influence, verb, adducō, ere; permoveō, ēre; impellō, ere.

influence, noun, auctoritās, -tātis, f.

inform, certiōrem (certiōrēs) faciō, ere; (*of, de, with abl.*).

inhabit, incolō, ere.

injure, noceō, ēre, *with dat.*

injury, injūria, ae, f.

inquire, quaerō, ere; rogō, āre.

instruct, praeceptō, ere, *with dat.*; jubeō, ere, *with acc.*

insult, contumēlia, ae, f.

insultingly, insolenter.

intend, use *future partic. in -ūrus* *with sum.*

intercept, interceptiō, ere.

interest, be of, interest; refert.

into, in, *with acc.*

island, insula, ae, f.

Italy, Italia, ae, f.

it, its, use *is*.

J

Javelin, pilum, i, n.; telum, i, n.

Join battle, proelium committō.

Judge, iudicō, āre; arbitror, āri.

K

keep from, prohibeō, ēre, *with infin.*, or *with ab and abl.*

kill, interficiō, ere; occidō, ere.

know, sciō, ire.

L

Labienus, Labienus, i, m.

lack, careō, ēre, *with abl.*

land (=country), ager, agri, m.; finēs, imm, m.; (*opposed to water*), terra, ae, f.

land, on, pedester, tris, tre, *adj.*

land, verb, (nāv!) egredior, i.

large, magnus, a, um; **how large**, quantus, a, um; **so large, such a large**, tantus, a, um.

later (=after), post, *adv.*

law, lēx, lēgis, f.

lay waste, vastō, āre.

lead, ducō, ere; (=influence), adducō, ere.

lead across, transducō, ere, *often with two accusatives.*

lead back, reducō, ere.

lead out, educō, ere.

leader, dux, ducis, m.

leap down, desiliō, ire.

learn, cognoscō, ere.

leave (=leave behind), relinquo, ere; (=go away from), discedō, ere, *with ab and abl.*; (=go out of), egredior, i, *with ex and abl.*

legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.

lend (*with auxilium*), ferō, ferre (=bring).

less, minus, *adv.*

lest, nē.

let slip, dimittō, ere.

Lieutenant, legātus, i, m.

like, similis, e, *with dat.*

like, I should, velim.

likely, be-to, use *future participle in -ūrus* *with sum.*

live, vivō, ere; (*on, express by abl.*).

load, onerō, āre.

long, as-as, dum, *conj.*

longer, any longer, diūtius.

low, humilis, e.

lower (*of situation*), inferior, ius.

loyalty, fidēs, ei, f.

M

- make**, faciō, ere.
make war, bellum inferō, inferre; (on, express by dat.).
man, vir, viri, M.; homō, hominis, M.; (=soldier), miles, -itis, M., or use the possessive pronoun.
many, multī, ae, a.
march, verb, iter faciō, ere.
march, noun, iter, itineris, N.
marching, iter, itineris, N.
Marius, Marius, I, M.
Massilia, Massilia, ae, F.
matter, rēs, rei, F.
matter, no—how, quamvis.
mean, volō, velle, with dat. of reflexive pronoun.
means (=measures), rēs.
means of approach, aditus, ūs, M.
means, by—of, per, with acc.
meet, occurrō, ere, with dat.
meet with, nanciscor, ī, with acc.
mention, commemorō, āre.
merchant, mercātor, -ōris, M.
merit, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
messenger, nūntius, ī, M.
middle, use medius, a, um, adj.
midnight, media nox (noctis, F.).
mile, = a thousand paces.
mistaken, be, errō, āre.
mode, genus, -eris, N.
Mona, Mona, ae, F.
month, mēnsis, is, M.
more, plūs, amplius.
mount, ascendō, ere.
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
move, moveō, ēre.
much, adv., multum; multō.
my, meus, a, um.

N

- nearer**, propius, adv.
nearest, proximus, a, um.
neighborhood, in the—of, ad, prep. with acc.

Nervii, Nervii, ōrum, M. plur.

new, novus, a, um.

next, posterus, a, um; proximus, a, um.

night, nox, noctis, F.

nine, novem.

ninety, nōnāgintā.

no, nullus, a, um, or use nōn or nihil.

no one, nēmō; gen., nullius; acc., nēminem; abl., nullō; that no one, nē quis.

not, nōn (in final and imperative clauses, nē); and not, neque (or in final clauses, nēve, neu).

now (=by this time), jam; (=at this present time), nunc.

number, numerus, ī, M., or use clause with quot=how many.

number, great or large, multitūdō, -dinis, F.; magnus numerus, ī, M. (use only in sing.).

numerous, erēber, bra, brum; multi, ae, a.

O

obey, pāreō, ēre, with dat.; obtemperō, āre, with dat.

object, with the—of, causā, with gen.

object, raise objections, recūsō, āre, with quōminims and subjunctive.

observe, videō, ēre.

occur, fiō, fieri.

of (=about), dē, with abl.; with verbs of asking see fn. page 310.

offer, prōpōnō, ere.

officer, lēgātus, ī, M.

old, vetus, -eris; (so many years) old, nātus, a, um.

on (of place where), in with abl.; (of time when), use abl. only; (of making attack on), in with acc.; (of direction), ab or ex with abl.; (=concerning), dē, with abl.

once, at, statim, adv.

one another, inter sē.

onset, impetus, ūs, M.

open, patefaciō, ere; *passive*, patefiō, -fieri.
opinion, sententia, ae, f.
opinion, be of the, existimō, are.
opportunity, occasiō, -ōnis, f.; facultās, -tātis, f.; potestās, -tātis, f.
opportunity, give, facultātem dare, or potestātem facere.
oppose (=resist), repugnō, are; resistō, ere, *with dat.*
oppose (=set in opposition), opponō, ere.
or, aut; (*in questions*), an; **or not** (*in questions*), annōn (*direct*), neene (*indirect*).
Oreynia, Oreynia, ae, f.
order, jubeō, ēre, *with ace.*; imperō, are, *with dat.*
orders, receive, jubeor, ēri.
order, in—that, ut; (*with negative*), nē.
order, in—to, ut, causā, ad.
orders, give, imperō, are.
orders, without his, injussū suō.
other, another, alius, a, ud.
other, the (of two), alter, era, erum; (=the remaining), reliquus, a, um.
others, the, reliquī, ae, a; cēteri, ae, a.
ought, use *gerundive passive* with sum; or dēbeō, ēre; oportet, ēre.
our, noster, tra, trum.
over (of bridges over rivers), in, *with abl.*
overwhelm, opprimō, ere.

P

pace, passus, ūs, m.
panic, timor, -ōris, m.
panic, throw into a, perterreō, ēre.
pardon, igrōscō, ere, *with dat.*
part, pars, partis, f.
participate in, intersum, -esse, *with dat.*

pass the winter, hiemō, are.
passage, iter, itineris, n.
pay, pendō, ere.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
people (=community), populus, i, m.; (=persons), hominēs, um, m.
perceive, cōspiciō, ere; intellegō, ere.
peril, periculum, i, n.
permit, patior, i.
person (=a man), often *untranslated*.
persuade, persuādeō, ēre, *with dat.*
plity, misereor, ēri, *with gen.*
place, noun, locus, i, m. sing.; loca, ōrum, n. plur.
place, in that, ibi, ad.
plan, cōsiliū, i, n.
plunder, praeda, ae, f.
point out, doceō, ēre; ostendō, ere.
point, be on the—of, use *fut. part.* in -ūrus *with sum*.
Pompey, Pompēius, i, m.
port, portus, ūs, m.
portion, pars, partis, f.
position, locus, i, m.; or use *clause* with ubi or quō *in locō*.
position, keep one's, cōsistō, ere.
position, take up a, cōsistō, ere.
possession, gain—of, potior, iri, *with abl.*
possession, take—of, occupō, are, *with ace.*
possibility, potestās, -tātis, f.
power, potestās, -tātis, f.
power, sovereign, supreme, rēgnū, i, n.; imperium, i, n.
power, have, possum, posse.
powerful be, possum, posse.
praise, verb, laudō, are.
praise, noun, laus, laudis, f.
prefer (*with nouns*), antepōnō, ere; (*with the infinitive*), malō, māllo.
prepare, parō, are.

preparations, make, comparō, āre.

present, this, hic, haec, hōc.

press, press hard, urgeō, ēre; premō, ere.

press forward, instō, āre.

prevent, prohibeō, ēre.

previous, superior, ius.

prisoner, captivus, i, m.

proceed, prōgredior, ī; prōcēdō, ere.

proceedings, = *things*.

procure, parō, āre; comparō, āre.

project, form a, cōsiliū capio or ineō.

promise, make a promise, polliceor, ēri.

property, their, sua, ōrum, n.

protection, praesidium, i, n.

prove, probō, āre.

provided that, dum.

provluce, prōvincia, ae, f.

provisions, commeātus, ūs, m. (*use the singular*).

provoke to battle, proeliō (*abl.*) laceō, ere.

punishment, supplicium, i, n.

purpose, for the—of, causā, *with gen. preceding*.

pursue, prōsequor, ī; cōsequor, ī; sequor, ī.

put, colloco, āre; pōnō, ere.

put to death, interficiō, ere.

Q

quickly, celeriter.

quickness, celeritās, -tātis, f.

R

rampart, vallum, i, n.

rashness, temeritās, -tātis, f.

rate, at any, certē.

rather, potius, magis.

reach, perveniō, ire, *with ad or in and acc.*

ready, parātus, a, um; (*for or to, ad, with acc.*).

ready, make, comparō, āre.

ready, get, parō, āre.

rear, novissimū agmen (*agminis, n.*); *in the rear,* a tergō.

reason, causa, ae, f.; *or use clause with eū or quāobrem.*

receive, accipio, ere.

receive orders = *be ordered*.

recent, recēns, -entis.

recover (= *via back*), reciperō, āre; (= *regain courage*), sē recipere.

reinforcements, subsidium, i, n.

relying on, frētus, a, um, *with abl.*

remain, remaneō, ēre; maneo, ere.

remember, meminī, isse (*imperative, mementō, -tōte*); reminiscor, ī.

remind, commonefaciō, ere.

remotest, ultimus, a, um.

renew, renovō, āre.

repair, reficiō, ere.

reply, respondeō, ēre.

report, bring report, nūntiō, āre; renūntiō, āre.

reprove, reprehendō, ere.

require, imperō, āre, *with acc. and dat.*

resist, resistō, ere, *with dat.*

resources, opēs, opum, f. plur.

rest, *use* reliquus, a, um, *adj.*

result, be the result, fiō, fieri.

retainer, eliens, -entis, m.

retire, sē recipere; sē cōferre.

retreat, pedem referō (-ferre); sē recipere.

return, verb, revertor, ī, -verti; redeō, -ire.

return, returning, noun, reditus, ūs, m.; *or use clause with verb.*

revolt, dēfeciō, ere.

reward, praemium, i, n.

Rhine, Rhēnus, i, m.

Rhone, Rhodanus, i, m.

right, dexter, tra, trum.

river, flūmen, -minis, n.

road, via, ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.

roam about, vagor, āri.

Roman, *noun*, Rōmānus, ī, m.;
adj., Rōmānus, a, um.

Rome, Rōma, ae, f.; **at Rome**,
Rōmae.

route, fuga, ae, f.

rule, imperium, ī, n.

rush out, sē ējicere; (**of**, ex with
abl.).

S

Sabis, Sabis, is, m.

safe, tūtus, a, um.

safety, salūs, -ūtis, f.; **in safety**,
use incolumis, e, *adj.*, =safe.

sail, nāvīgō, āre; (**for**, in with acc.).

same, idem, eadem, idem.

say, dicō, ere; *if followed by nega-*
tive, use negō, āre, =deny.

scarcely, vix.

scatter, dispergō, ere.

scarcity, inopia, ae, f.

scout, explorātor, -ōris, m.

search for, quaerō, ere, with acc.

secretly, elam.

see, videō, ēre.

seek, petō, ere.

seize (=take possession of), occupō,
āre; (=take prisoner), compre-
hendō, ere.

senate, senātus, ūs, m.

send, mittō, ere.

send back, remittō, ere.

send forward, send in advance,
praemittō, ere.

Sequani, Sēquani, ōrum, m. plur.

seriously, graviter.

service, officium, ī, n.; **be of**
service, ūsuī esse.

set fire to, incendō, ere, with acc.

set out, proficiscor, ī.

set sail, nāvēs solvō, ere, =loose
the ships.

settle (=decide), constituō, ere.

several, complūrēs, a.

severe, gravis, e.

ship, nāvis, is, f.

shore, litus, -oris, n.

short, brevis, e; **in a short time**,
brevis.

shortly, brevi.

should (=ought), use gerundive
with sum; *for other values see*
section 144.

side, latus, -eris, n.; pars, partis,
f.; **from all sides**, undique, *adv.*

side, on this—**of**, eis or citrā, *prep.*
with acc.

side, on the other—**of**, trāns, *prep.*
with acc.

sight, cōspectus, ūs, m.; **come in**
sight, in cōspectum veniō.

signal, signum, ī, n.

silent, be or keep, taceō, ēre.

since, eum.

six hundred, sescenti, ae, a.

sixty, sexagintā.

size, magnitūdō, -dinis, f.; *or use*
clause with quantus, a, um.

slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, f.

slay, interficiō, ere; occidō, ere.

slinger, funditor, -ōris, m.

slip, let, dimitto, ere.

so (=to such an extent), tam, ita,
adeō.

soldier, miles, -itis, m.

some (=some or other), aliquis
(aliqui), -qua, -quid or -quod;
(=a few), nonnūlli, ae, a.

some . . . others, alii . . . alii.

some one, aliquis.

some day, aliquandō.

soon, mox, brevi; **as soon as**,
simul atque.

sorry, be, paenitet, *impersonal*.

sovereign power, imperium, ī, n.;
rēgnum, ī, n.

spare, pareō, ere, with dat.

speak, dicō, ere.

special, show—indulgence, =in-
dulge *specialty*.

specially, praecipuē.

split, in—of, use quamquam (=al-
though).

spring, vēr, vēris, n.

spy, speculātor, -ōris, m.

stain, inficiō, ere.
start, ēgredior, I; proficiscor, I.
state, verb, dicō, ere.
state, noun, civitās, -tātis, F.; rēs publica, rei publicae, F.
stay, moror, āri.
still, tamen.
stone, lapis, -idis, M.
storm, verb, expūgnō, āre.
storm, noun, tempestās, -tātis, F.
storm, take by, expūgnō, āre.
strength, use clause with quot.
strengthen, firmō, āre; mūniō, Ire.
strive, contendō, ere; nitor, I.
successfully, bene; feliciter.
successive, continuus, a, um.
such (=so great), **such a large**, tantus, a, um.
sudden, repentinus, a, um.
suddenly, subitō.
sue for, petō, ere, with acc.
suffer (=receive), accipiō, ere; (=allow, endure), patior, I.
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
summer, aestās, -tātis, F.
summon (of several persons), convocō, āre; (of one person), vocō, āre.
supplies, commeātus, ūs, M. (use the singular).
suppose, arbitror, āri; putō, āre.
supreme power, rēgnum, I, N.; imperium, I, N.
surrender, transitive, dēdō, ere; intransitive, sē dēdere.
surround (=get round), circumveniō, Ire; (=put round), circumdō, -dare.
suspect, suspicor, āri.
suspected, become, in suspiciōnem veniō.
swarm around, circumfundor, I.
sway, diciō, ōnis, F.
swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, F.
sword, gladius, I, M.

T

take, caplō, ere.
take away, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublatum.
take up a position, cōnsidō, ere.
taught, be, discō, ere = learn.
tax, tribūtum, I, N.
teach, see be taught.
tell, dicō, ere, with dat. of person.
tempest, tempestās, -tātis, F.
tenth, decimus, a, um.
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, F. (use the singular).
terrify, terreō, ēre.
territory, ager, agri, M.; finēs, -ium, M. plur.
Thames, Tamesis, is, M.; (acc. Tamesim).
than, quam, or use abl.
that, pronoun, is, ea, id; emphatic, ille, a, ud.
that, conj., with noun clauses untranslated; with clauses of purpose, ut, nē; with clauses of result, ut; (=because), quod.
their, suus, a, um; or eōrum.
there (=in that place), ibi; (=to that place), eō; (as introductory adverb), untranslated.
they, eī, eae, ea; sē.
think, existimō, āre; arbitror, āri.
this, hīc, haec, hōc; or often the relative pronoun, section 172.
though, =although.
thousand, mille; plur., milia, ium, N.
three, trēs, tria.
three hundred, trecentī, ae, a.
through, per, with acc.
throw, conjiciō, ere.
throw one's self, sē prōjicere.
thus, itaque; in Exercise 14, 4 use hōc.
time, tempus, -oris, N.
to, ad, with acc.; in, with acc.
to-morrow, crās, adv.
top, use summus, a, um, adj.

towards, ad, *with acc.*
town, oppidum, I, N.
trader, mercator, -ōris, M.
treachery, perfidia, ac, F.
trench, fossa, ae, F.
tribe, natiō, -ōnis, F.
tribune, tribunus, I, M.
tributary, vectigālis, e.
trick, artificium, I, N.
troops, militēs, um, M.; cōpiac, ārudī, F.
trust, cōfidō, ere, -fissus sum, *with dat.*
twenty, viginti.
two, duo, duae, duo.
two hundred, ducenti, ae, a.

U

unable, be, *use possum.*
under, sub, *with abl.*
undertake, suscipiō, ere.
unfriendly, inimicus, a, um.
unless, nisi.
until, conj., dum, quoad.
unwilling, be, nōlō, nolle.
urge, hortor, āri.
use, ūtor, I, *with abl.*
useless, inūtilis, e; (*for*, ad *with acc.*)
usual, hīs, *use suus*, a, um.
utmost, summus, a, um.

V

valiantly, fortiter.
valid, perfectly, iūstissimus, a, um.
valor, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
value, of great, magni.
vanish, discēdō, ere.
vanquish, vineō, ere; superō, āre.
vehemence, vis, F.
vengeance, supplieum, I, N.
very (*as adjective*), ipse.
Vesontio, Vesontio, ōnis, F.
vessel, nāvis, is, F.

victorious, victor, -ōris, M.
victory, victōria, ae, F.
village, vicius, I, M.

W

wage, gerō, ere.
walt, moror, āri; (*with si*), expectō, āre.
wait for, expectō, āre, *with acc.*
wall (*of town*), mūrus, I, M.; (*of camp*), vāllum, i, N.
wander, vagor, āri.
war, bellum, I, N.
warn, moncō, ēre.
waste (=lose), dimittō, ere.
waste, lay, vāstō, āre; populor, āri.
water, aqua, ae, F.
wave, fluctus, ūs, M.
weapon, tēlum, I, N.
weary, dēfatigō, āre.
weather, tempestās, -tātis, F.
weigh anchor, nāvēs solvō, ere, = *loose the ships.*
welfare, consult—of, cōnsulō, ere, *with dat.*
well known, nōtus, a, um.
west, sōlis oecāsus, ūs, M.
what, quis, quae, quid.
whatever, pron., quī, quae, quod.
whatever, adv. (=at all), omninō.
when (*relative*), ubi, cum; (*interrogative*), quāndō.
whence, unde.
whenever, cum.
whereas, cum.
whether, num; **whether** ... or, utrum ... an; sive ... sive.
which (*relative*), quī, quae, quod.
which (*of two*), uter, tra, trum.
while, dum; or *use pres. part.*
who (*relative*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrogative*), quis, quae, quid.
wholly, omninō.
why, eūr; quārē.
wide, lātus, a, um.

widely, *lātē*.

wife, *conjūnx*, -jugis, f.

will, against the, *use invitus*, a, um, *adj.* (= *unwilling*).

willing, be, *volō*, *velle*.

win, *vincō*, *ere*.

wing, *cornū*, ūs, n.

winter, pass (spend) the winter, *hiemō*, āre.

winter quarters, *hiberna*, ōrum, n. plur.

wish, *volō*, *velie*.

with, *cum*, *with abl.*; or *use obl.* alone; (= *among*), *apud*, *with acc.*

withdraw, withdraw one's self, *sē recipere*; *discēdō*, *ere*; (*if from a rampart*), *decēdō*, *ere*.

within (of place), *intrā*, *prep. with acc.*

within (of time), *use abl.*

without, *sine*, *with abl.*

withstand, *sustineō*, *ēre*.

wood, *vitrum*, ī, n.

wood, *silva*, ac, f.

wooded, *silvestris*, e.

word, bring, *nūntiō*, āre.

work, *opus*, -eris, n.

worthy, *dignus*, a, um, *with abl.*

would, *for the different values see section 137.*

wound, *vulnus*, -eris, n.

wrong, *injūria*, ac, f.; **wrong done to . . . by . . .**, *use objective and subjective genitives.*

Y

year, *annus*, ī, m.

yesterday, *heri*.

your, *tuus*, a, um; *vester*, *tra-*
trum.



War-ship.



Virgil.

INTRODUCTION TO VIRGIL'S AENEID.

I. THE STORY OF TROY.

IN those olden days of Greece, when history had not yet begun and when as yet the gods mingled freely with mankind, appearing often upon earth and sometimes even marrying some favored mortal, there was a great city called Troy in the extreme north-western corner of Asia Minor, at the foot of Mount Ida. This was inhabited by a people akin to the Phrygians of Asia Minor, under the rule of a family of kings descended from Teneer. It was in the reign of the seventh king, Priam, that ruin fell upon the kingdom of Troy. He lived with Heeuba, his wife, in great splendor, and his many sons and daughters were growing up around him, until at the time of the birth of one of them, afterwards known as Paris, his mother dreamed that it was a firebrand that was born, which should destroy the city. So the child was cast forth on the slopes of Mount Ida and was there found and

reared by a shepherd. When he grew up he was very beautiful, though rather effeminate, and was at last recognized and reinstated in his rights as the king's son.

But before this last event, a very notable thing had happened. At a certain wedding feast, at which most of the gods and goddesses were present, one who had not been invited, the goddess of Discord, avenged the slight by sending a golden apple inscribed "To the Fairest." Three goddesses claimed it, Juno, Minerva and Venus. The decision was referred to Paris, then a shepherd on Mount Ida. To win his verdict, Juno promised him power, Minerva wisdom, and Venus the fairest woman in Greece as his wife. Paris awarded the apple to Venus and not long after went to Greece. There he fell in love with the most beautiful woman of those days, Helen, the wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta. Her beauty had caused many princes to sue for her hand in marriage, and before a choice was made they had all sworn to avenge any wrong that might ever be done to her. So now when Paris induced her to flee with him to Troy, Menelaus had no difficulty in getting a large number of kings with their warriors to assist him in recovering Helen and punishing Paris.

Under the leadership of Agamemnon, brother of Menelaus and king of Mycenae, a fleet of nearly twelve hundred ships gathered at Aulis to set sail against Troy. Here they were long detained by calms or contrary winds sent by the goddess Artemis, whom king Agamemnon had once displeased. The oracles declared that only by sacrificing Iphigenia, the maiden daughter of the king, to Artemis, could the Greeks obtain favoring winds, and reluctantly at length Agamemnon sent for his daughter. Now at last the great host could set sail from Greece. The most famous among the Greeks, besides Agamemnon and Menelaus, were Achilles, the grandest warrior of the age, Ulysses who, while a great warrior, was specially noted for his shrewdness, and Diomedes and Ajax.

For nine long years the siege went on. Many cities in Asia sent forces to Troy to aid Priam, whose best warriors were his son Hector and Aeneas, the latter being the son of Venus and a Trojan prince, Aeneas. The Greeks did not surround the city, but encamped on the shore near their ships, and many battles took place on the plain before Troy. In these nine years the Greeks succeeded in driving the Trojans within the walls and in gaining the surrounding towns.

In the tenth year a notable quarrel arose between Agamemnon and Achilles, and for a time, while Achilles held aloof from fighting, the Trojans had the better of it. Emboldened by success they fought their way to the Grecian fleet drawn up on the shore, and had well-nigh set the ships on fire when Patroclus, the bosom friend of Achilles, begged him, if he would not fight himself, at least to lend his armor and his warriors to repel the enemy. Achilles consented, and Patroclus, driving back the Trojans, saved the ships but was himself slain by Hector and stripped of Achilles' armor. Impelled by rage and grief, Achilles now returned to the battle to avenge the death of his friend. At his approach the Trojans, with the one exception of Hector, fled back to their walls; and him Achilles soon slew. Then tying Hector's body by the feet to his chariot he dragged him to the Grecian camp. It was not long, however, before Achilles himself was slain by Paris, and then, in obedience to the oracles, his son Pyrrhus (or Neoptolemus) was brought to the scene of war.

But when nothing seemed to bring them success, the Greeks tried stratagem, and pretended to sail away homewards, leaving a huge wooden horse as an offering to Minerva. This the Trojans drew, rejoicing, within their walls, but within it were concealed many of the bravest Greeks, who issued from the horse by night, seized the gates and, aided by the other Greeks, who had returned in the fleet, took the city and destroyed it.

In this war the gods took part, some, like Juno, Neptune, Pallas and Apollo, favoring the Greeks, others, like Venus and Mars, aiding Troy, though the latter were unable to prevail over the destiny decreed by fate for Priam and his city.

Aeneas escaped from the burning town and with some followers sailed away under the special protection of his mother, Venus, to found a new city. After many disappointments and wonderful adventures he landed in Italy, and from the settlement he planted there grew the great city of Rome, that in Virgil's day had become the mistress of the whole civilized world. The adventures and experiences of Aeneas form the subject of the poem called the *Aeneid*.

II.—LIFE OF VIRGIL.

Publius Vergilius* Maro was born B.C. 70 at the little village of Andes near Mantua, in the great northern plain of Italy, watered by the river Padus, the modern Po. The people of this country were of Gallic descent and not close kinsmen of the Romans or southern Italians, and it was not till Virgil was twenty-one years of age that they were made full Roman citizens. Virgil's father lived on a small farm, but was able to give his son all the advantages of education to be obtained in those days, perhaps seeing early in his boy some signs of future greatness. Except that Virgil studied in Cremona and Milan and at sixteen was sent to Rome to the best teachers there, we know practically nothing of his youth. This period fell between the two great civil wars of Rome, and from what we know of Virgil's nature, the comparative peace of his boyhood and youth was more congenial to him than the civil wars that raged from his twenty-second to his fortieth year.

* There seems to be no doubt that the correct spelling is Vergilius, and scarcely less doubt that to the English reader the poet will always be Virgil.

When in B.C. 41 peace for a time did come, the victorious Octavian confiscated large tracts of land in Italy and distributed them among his soldiers. Virgil's farm (his father being now dead) was thus seized on, but Virgil had become favorably known to Asinius Pollio, the governor of the district, and at his suggestion Virgil went to Rome and appealed to Augustus. Restitution was made by order of Augustus, though Virgil did not regain his farm, and soon we find Virgil living at Rome under the patronage of the court, and on terms of intimacy with the leading writers of the day. His first volume of poetry, the *Eclogues*, a collection of ten pastoral poems, commenced before he came to Rome, was completed in B.C. 37, and soon after he left Rome and for most of his remaining years lived in Campania near Naples. From B.C. 37 to 30 he worked at his second great poem, the *Georgics*, a series of four poems on husbandry as one of the glories of Italian life. The remaining eleven years of his life were devoted to his great epic poem, the *Aeneid*. We are told that in B.C. 23 he read Books II., IV. and VI. to Augustus at the latter's request. In B.C. 19 the poet had completed his epic, but intended to devote three years more to polishing and revising it. However, while on a voyage to Greece and Asia that year, he fell sick at Athens and returned, dying just as he reached Italy.

In his last illness, dissatisfied with the condition of the *Aeneid*, he asked his executors to burn it, but fortunately Augustus forbade their carrying out Virgil's last wish.

In person Virgil is said to have been tall and dark, of rustic even awkward appearance. He was gentle, shy and reserved in manner, and the purity of his life gained him the name of *Parthenias*, 'the maiden.' No authentic picture exists.

The tomb in which Virgil was buried near Naples long remained an object of veneration, and Virgil himself in the middle ages came to be looked upon as a sage, magician and prophet.

IV.—THE AENEID OF VIRGIL.

The Aeneid belongs to the class of poetry called Epic, that is, it is a narrative poem, of an elevated character, describing the exploits of heroes.

The following, condensed from Sellar, gives a general account of Virgil's position and excellence as a poet.

There was before Virgil's time but one Roman Epic, the Annals of Ennius, written two hundred years before, stirring but rugged; about the time when Virgil first came to Rome the poems of Lucretius and Catullus appeared, which were the most artistic in form yet written in Rome. A Roman epic was wanted which would satisfy the national imagination as Ennius did, and also the new sense of art, and the great expansion of national life since Ennius' day. The emperor Augustus was anxious that his exploits should be commemorated by some great poet, and Virgil had long been ambitious to treat the traditions of Alba Longa in heroic verse.

These objects then had to be kept in view—a work of art that could rival the great epics of Homer; a revival of interest in the heroic legends concerning the founding of Rome; the expression of the national feeling of an imperial city; the expression of the deeper feelings and thoughts of his age about the ideals and the problems of life; and the celebration of Augustus. All these Virgil combined by selecting the story of Aeneas, which enabled him to treat of the origin of Rome, to parallel Homer's tales of war and sea-wanderings, and to glorify the family of the Cæsars, the Julii, who boasted of their descent from Iulus the son of Aeneas.

As regards Rome itself, Virgil develops the conception entertained by the Romans themselves, that their city was ordained by Heaven to achieve world-wide dominion. Thus Virgil represents Aeneas as guided continually by the gods until he founds the city, destined by the fates to be the greatest

in the world. Aeneas in ancient times and Augustus in his own day are regarded as instruments in the hands of fate, which is a great inscrutable power working out its purposes in the world through the agency of Rome.

With this idea of universal empire is combined a reverence for antiquity, for old customs, for the religious faith of early Italy, and an attachment to all places connected with the history of the nation.

The Aeneid then, as an epic describing the great part Rome played in the history of the world, as determined by the divine decrees, is partly a national and partly a religious epic. It has only a secondary interest as an epic of human action, as a portrayal of manners and character, and it has always been objected to the Aeneid that its central character is a failure—that while Aeneas is blameless, pious, and patient, he is uninteresting, weak, lacking in energy, that he is a passive tool in the hands of fate, not a great hero relying upon his own resources and stirred by ordinary human passions. It may be that Virgil was determined in this largely by his weariness of the civil wars that had been raging so long, and by the desire felt everywhere in his days for the restoration of peace, law, order and piety. This desire was met by Augustus' policy, and in this lay the security of Augustus' position.

Dido stands out as the most life-like and interesting character Virgil has drawn, and even if she does represent to the Roman the hated race of Carthaginians, and even if her desertion by Aeneas calls forth no hint of condemnation from the poet, we cannot but feel that Virgil sympathetically entered into the tragic nature of Dido's story.

Apart from character the main sources of human interest developed in the Aeneid are: the nobility and dignity of the story itself, apart from its connection with the national sentiment; the interest of two romantic legends, the destruction of Troy, and the foundation of Carthage; the scenes familiar, yet full of great memories and associations; the characters

prominent in legend, or else representative of some nation; the interweaving of the old and ever new themes of war and sea-adventures, with the passion of love.

Virgil's restoration of the legendary past is not exact in all its details, or sometimes even in its spirit. There is a mixture of primitive simplicity and luxurious pomp, of the fierceness and roughness of an uncultured age and the courtesy, dignity and kindness of more polished times. The most unreal of all his portrayals are the battle scenes of the later books, where the real interest lies generally, not in the stirring events of the combat, but in the pathetic death of some interesting character.

But if objection is taken to Virgil's character-drawing, the highest praise has always been given to the artistic excellence of his work, both in its arrangement and in the working out of details. Virgil (as Tennyson has it) 'could write ten lines, they say, at dawn, and lavish all the golden day to make them wealthier in his reader's eyes.' No poet surpasses him in finished execution, in stateliness and majesty of movement. His poetry shows a varied and continuous harmony, a rich, chastened and noble style nowhere else to be found in Latin.

X Sellar regards Virgil as supreme among his countrymen in 'that subtle fusion of the music and the meaning of language which touches the deepest and most secret springs of emotion.' He touches especially the emotions of reverence and of a yearning for a higher spiritual life, and the sense of nobleness in human affairs, in great institutions and great natures; the sense of the sanctity of human affections, of the imaginative spell exercised by the past, of the mystery of the unseen world.'

MacKail speaks of 'the majestic sadness, the serene and harmonious cadences, of poetry enriched with all the associations of art and learning, and wrought by patient labor into the most exquisite finish. But what Virgil has in a degree that no other poet has ever equalled is pity; the sense of "tears in things" to which in the most famous of his single verses

(Aen. I. 462) he has given imperishable expression, and which fills with strange insight and profound emotion those lonely words and pathetic half lines where he has sounded the depths of beauty and sorrow, of patience and magnanimity, of honor in life and hope beyond death.'

Perhaps nothing so completely expresses the modern view of Virgil as the lines of Tennyson (himself the most Virgilian of all our modern poets), written at the request of the people of Mantua for the nineteenth centenary of Virgil's death, 1881.

Roman Virgil, thou that singest 'Ilion's lofty temples robed in fire,
Ilion falling, Rome arising, wars, and filial faith, and Dido's pyre;
Landscape-lover, lord of language more than he that sang the Works
and Days,

All the chosen coin of fancy flashing out from many a golden phrase;
Thou that singest wheat and woodland, tilth and vineyard, hive and
horse and herd;

All the charm of all the Muses often flowering in a lonely word;
Poet of the happy Tityrus piping underneath his beechen bowers;
Poet of the poet-satyr whom the laughing shepherd bound with flowers;
Chanter of the Poillo, glorying in the blissful years again to be,
Summers of the snakeless meadow, unlaborious earth and oarless sea;
Thou that seest Universal Nature moved by Universal Mind;
Thou majestic in thy sadness at the doubtful doom of human kind;
Light among the vanished ages; star that gildest yet this phantom
shore;

Golden branch amid the shadows, kings and realms that pass to rise no
more;

Now thy Forum roars no longer; fallen every purple Cæsar's dome—
Thou' thine ocean-roll of rhythm sound for ever of Imperial Rome—
Now the Rome of slaves hath perished, and the Rome of freemen holds
her place;

I, from out the Northern Island, sunder'd once from all the human race,
I salute thee, Mantovano, I that loved thee since my day began,
Wielder of the stateliest measure ever moulded by the lips of man.

V.—THE METRE OF THE AENEID.

The principle upon which rhythm is based in English poetry is a regular succession of accented and unaccented syllables. In Latin, accent has nothing to do with scansion, which depends rather on the regular succession of long and short syllables.

LONG AND SHORT SYLLABLES.

A long syllable is one containing a long vowel, or a diphthong,* or even a short vowel before two consonants, or *j*, *x*, or *z*; e.g. the first syllable in each of the following words is long: *primus*, *aedes*, *mentis*, *major*, *texo*, *gaza*. Even if one of the two consonants be at the beginning of another word this rule holds, e.g. the syllable *sub* is short in *sub ipsa*, but long in *sub montem*. But the rule does not always hold when the two consonants are *l* or *r* preceded by some other letter; e.g. the first syllable of *patris* may be short or long.

A short syllable is one containing a short vowel (except in the cases mentioned in the preceding paragraph), including regularly all cases where a vowel is followed by another vowel or diphthong, e.g. the first syllable in *tenet*, *deus*, *deae*, is short. But genitives in *ius* have *i* sometimes short sometimes long, and many proper names, borrowed from the Greek (in which this rule does not hold) have a long vowel before another vowel or diphthong, e.g. the second syllable of *Aeneas*, *Orion*.

In scansion *h* is not considered, so that the first syllable of *adhuc* is not long, while in *mihi* the first syllable is short as certainly as if it were spelled *mii*.

Syllables then may be short or long either by nature or by position.

* The only diphthongs in Latin are *ae*, *au*, *eu*, *ei*, *oe* and *ui*, the two first being far the commonest.

RHYTHM.

Virgil uses in the Aeneid the metre known as Dactylic Hexameter, that is a line containing six dactyls, each dactyl consisting of one long syllable followed by two short syllables. Two irregularities however are to be noticed; first, the last foot has but two syllables (a long and a short, or two long); secondly, in any one, two, three or even four of the first four syllables a dactyl may be replaced by a spondee, that is a foot consisting of two long syllables.

This metre is generally represented thus



Thus sixteen different arrangements of the line are possible (apart from the variation in the last foot), viz. one with the first four feet dactyls, four with one spondee in the line, six with two spondees in the line, four with three spondees in the line, and one with four spondees in the first four feet. For examples see the lines indicated on page 336.

ELISION.

But in a majority of the lines a further difficulty arises. Where the last syllable of a word ends in a vowel, or in *m*, and the first syllable of the next word begins with a vowel or *h*, these two syllables are elided or taken together and counted as one. Such a case is called elision.* For example *vera inquit*, counts as three syllables in scansion, so also *tegerem ut, divum humo, curru haeret*.

SCANSION.

Probably the best way for beginners to get the scansion of Virgil is as follows: Mark first all cases of elision; then the two last feet, which uniformly consist of the last five syllables,

* Elision is usually marked thus: *ver(a) inquit* or *vera inquit*.

may be marked off; then the quantity of syllables long or short by position, as determined by the preceding rules, can be marked; after which the first four feet can, in a large majority of cases, be easily settled. Finally (and this is all-important, if the student is ever to get beyond this rule of thumb and catch the rhythm of Virgil), the line when scanned should be read over according to the division made.

CAESURA.

When a word ends within a foot, a *caesura* is said to occur, and in the dactylic hexameter, the *caesura* or *caesural pause*, when it coincides with a pause in the sense, constitutes much of the charm of the rhythm, the line thus falling into two unequal parts.

The favorite caesural pause occurs in the third foot, but sometimes it comes in the fourth foot, in which case there is often another pause in the second foot, the line thus being divided into three parts.

The pause is far more often after the long syllable of a dactylic foot than after the first short syllable.*

SPECIAL FEATURES AND IRREGULARITIES.

Because of the variety of rhythm possible, this metre affords great possibilities of imitative harmony; excited, or rapid action being often expressed in a line where dactyls abound, and solemn or gloomy ideas, stately or majestic movements, and slow or difficult actions brought out by a line abounding in spondees. It should be noticed, however, that the Latin language is naturally more spondaic than dactylic in its ordinary movement (stately and sonorous rather than lively), and a succession of spondees does not seem to be always

* The caesura is usually marked thus ||, and the following will show the completed scansion of a line, with the length of syllables, elisions, feet and caesura indicated:

— — — — —
vest(rum) hoc | auguri | um || ves | troqu(e) in | numine | Troj(a) est

expressive of something solemn or stately. Alliteration is also a very frequent device of Virgil's.

The following irregularities occur :

1. Many of Virgil's lines are unfinished, though conforming so far as they go to the regular metre. While in some cases these half lines may be intentional or very expressive of certain pathetic emotions, it is possible that Virgil in his final revision would have altered them. As it is, his finer taste preferred an incomplete line to one padded out with weak additions.

2. Occasionally, *i* before a vowel is given the sound of the semi-vowel *y* ; e.g., *abiete* is pronounced *abyete*, three syllables instead of four. In such cases the *y* sound counts as a consonant in making position. This shortening is called *Synæresis*.

3. Syllables regularly long are sometimes shortened, chiefly in the ending *-erunt* of the perfect indie. active, and in the ending *-ius* of the gen. sing. This is called *Systole*.

4. A final syllable regularly short is sometimes lengthened. This lengthening (which is called *Diastole*) occurs only in the first syllable of a foot and generally at the caesural pause. In almost every case the syllable was originally long.

5. It is the exception for a line to end in a monosyllable. This occurs generally where some earlier Latin poet is imitated, or where the sense corresponds to the abrupt ending.

6. Sometimes the fifth foot is a spondee, chiefly to express a slow measured movement, or impressive act, or in Greek proper names. A line of this sort is called *Spondaic*.

7. In a few cases a superfluous syllable (generally *-que*) is found at the end of a line, regularly where there could be an elision with the first word of the next line. Such a case is called *Hypermeter* or *Synapheia*.

8. Sometimes where there is a decided pause in the sense, or with Greek proper names, elision does not occur. This non-elision is called *Hiatus*.

SCANSION OF BOOK I., 1-510.

Representative lines : 501 ; 10, 127, 82, 228 ; 133, 56, 115, 50, 4, 20 ; 15, 34, 29, 24 ; 53.

Imitative Harmony and Alliteration : 46, 53, 55, 59, 81-82, 86, 87, 105, 117, 118, 124, 147, 245, 249, 269, 272, 364, 399, 462, 481.

Hypermeter : 332, 448.

Hiatus : 16, 105.

Synaeresis : 41, 120, 131, 195, 256.

Shortened syllables : 16, 41, 114, 258, 270.

Lengthened syllables : 308, 343.

Monosyllabic endings : 65, 77, 105, 151, 181 ; (with elision) 64, 148, 386.

N.B.—In l. 73 *u* of *conubio* may be taken as short (though it is generally long), or the word may be made a trisyllable by *synizesis*.



JUNO.

Elision

Caesura

P. VERGILI MARONIS
AENEIDOS

LIBER PRIMUS.

ARMA virumque cano, Trojae qui primus ab oris
Italiam, fato profugus, Lavinaque venit
Litora, multum ille et terris jactatus et alto
Vi superum, saevae memorem Junonis ob iram;
Multa quoque et bello passus, dum conderet urbem, *cul 5*
Inferretque deos Latio, genus unde Latinum,
Albanique patres, atque altae moenia Romae.

Musa, mihi causas memora, quo numine laeso,
Quidve dolens, regina deum tot volvere casus
Insignem pietate virum, tot adire labores, 10
Impulerit. Tantaene animis caelestibus irae?

Urbs antiqua fuit—Tyrii tenuere coloni—
Karthago, Italiam contra Tiberinaque longe
Ostia, dives opum studiisque asperrima belli;
Quam Juno fertur terris magis omnibus unam 15
Posthabita coluisse Samo; hic illius arma,
Hic currus fuit; hoc regnum dea gentibus esse,
Si qua fata sinant, jam tum tenditque fovetque.

ad

Progeniem sed enim Trojano ^{no chaeon} a sanguine duci
 Audierat, Tyrias olim quae verteret arces;
 Hinc populum late regem belloque superbum
 Venturum excidio Libyae: sic volvere Parcas.
 Id metuens, veterisque memor Saturnia belli,
 Prima quod ad Trojam pro caris gesserat Argis—
 Necdum etiam causae irarum saevique dolores
 Exciderant animo: manet alta mente repostum
 Judicium Paridis spretaeque injuria formae,
 Et genus invisum, et rapti Ganymedis honores—
 His accensa super, jactatos aequore toto
 Troas, reliquias Danaum atque immitis Achilli,
 Arcebat longe Latio, multosque per annos
 Errabant, acti fati, maria omnia circum.
Tantae molis erat Romanam condere gentem.

Vix e conspectu Siculae telluris in altum
 Vela dabant laeti, et spumas salis aere ruebant,
 Cum Juno, aeternum servans sub pectore vulnus,
 Haec secum: 'Mene incepto desistere victam,
 Nec posse Italia Teucrorum avertere regem?
 Quippe vetor fati. Pallasne exurere classem
 Argivum, atque ipsos potuit submergere ponto,
 Unius ob noxam et furias Ajacis Oilei?
 Ipsa, Jovis rapidum jaculata e nubibus ignem,
 Disjecitque rates evertitque aequora ventis,
 Illum expirantem transfixo pectore flammis
 Turbine corripuit scopuloque infixit acuto.
 Ast ego, quae divom incedo regina, Jovisque
 Et soror et conjunx, una cum gente tot annos
 Bella gero. Et quisquam nūmen Junonis adorat
 Praeterea, aut supplex aris imponet honorem?'
 Talia flammato secum dea corde volutans

20

25

30

40

45

50

of blood domain
 martial
 emine

advert

subj gen.

Nimborum in patriam, loca feta furentibus austris,
 Aeoliam venit. Hic vasto rex Aeolus antro
 Luctantes ventos tempestatesque sonoras
 Imperio premit ac vinclis et carcere frenat.
 Illi indignantes magno cum murmure montis 55
 Circum claustra fremunt; celsa sedet Aeolus arce
 Sceptra tenens, mollitque animos et temperat iras.
 Ni faciat, maria ac terras caelumque profundum
 Quippe ferant rapidi secum verrantque per auras.
 Sed pater omnipotens speluncis abdidit atris, 60
 Hoc metuens, molemque et montes insuper altos
 Imposuit, regemque dedit, qui foedere certo
 Et premere et laxas sciret dare jussus habenas.
 Ad quem tum Juno supplex his vocibus usa est:
 'Aeole—namque tibi divom pater atque hominum rex 65
 Et mulcere dedit fluctus et tollere vento,—
 Gens inimica mihi Tyrrhenum navigat aequor,
 Ilium in Italiam portans victosque Penates:
 Incute vim ventis submersasque obrue puppes,
 Aut age diversos et disjice corpora ponto. 70
 Sunt mihi bis septem praestanti corpore nymphae,
 Quarum quae forma pulcherrima Deiopea,
 Conubio jungam stabili propriamque dicabo,
 Omnes ut tecum meritis pro talibus annos
 Exigat, et pulchra faciat te prole parentem.' 75
 Aeolus haec contra: 'Tuus, O regina, quid optes
 Explorare labor; mihi jussa capessere fas est.
 Tu mihi quodcumque hoc regni, tu sceptrum Jovemque
 Concilias, tu das epulis accumbere divom,
 Nimborumque facis tempestatumque potentem. 80
 Haec ubi dicta, cavum conversa cuspide montem
 Impulit in latus; ac venti, velut agmine facto,

Qua data porta, ruunt et terras turbine perflant.
 Incubuere mari, totumque a sedibus inis
 Una Eurysque Notusque ruunt creberque procellis 85
 Africus, et vastos volvunt ad litora fluctus.

ononate, ede

Insequitur clamorque virum stridorque rudentum.
 Eripiunt subito nubes caelumque diemque
 Teucrorum ex oculis; ponto nox incubat atra.
 Intonuere poli, et crebris micat ignibus aether, 90
 Praesentemque viris intentant omnia mortem.

antea quatuor

ie. bene

ie. acridis

Extemplo Aeneae solvuntur frigore membra;
 Ingemit, et duplices tendens ad sidera palmas
 Talia voce refert: 'O terque quaterque beati,
 Quis ante ora patrum Trojae sub moenibus altis, 95
 Contigit oppetere! O Danaum fortissimae gentis
 Tydide! Mene Iliacis occumbere campis
 Non potuisse, tuaque animam hanc effundere dextra,
 Saevus ubi Aeacidæ telo jacet Hector, ubi ingens
 Sarpedon, ubi tot Simois correpta sub undis 100
 Scuta virum galeasque et fortia corpora volvit?'

Talia jactanti stridens Aquilone procella
 Velum adversa ferit, fluctusque ad sidera tollit.
 Franguntur remi; tum prora avertit, et undis
 Dat latus; insequitur cumulo praeruptus aquae mons. 105
 Hi summo in fluctu pendent, his unda dehiscens
 Terram inter fluctus aperit; furit aestus harenis.
 Tres Notus abreptas in saxa latentia torquet—
 Saxa vocant Itali mediis quae in fluctibus Aras—
 Dorsum immane mari summo; tres Eurys ab alto 110
 In brevia et syrtes urguet, miserabile visu,
 Illiditque vadis, atque aggere cingit harenae.
 Unam, quae Lycios fidumque vehebat Oronten,
 Ipsius ante oculos ingens a vertice pontus

In puppim ferit: excutitur pronusque magister 115
 Volvitur in caput; ast illam ter fluctus ibidem
 Torquet agens circum, et rapidus vorat aequore vertex.

Apparent rari nantes in gurgite vasto,
 Arma virum, tabulaeque, et Troia gaza per undas.
 Jam validam Ilionei navem, jam fortis Achatī, 120
 Et qua vectus Abas, et qua grandaevus Aletes,
 Vicit hiems; laxis laterum compagibus omnes
 Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt.

Interea magno misceri murmure pontum,
 Emissamque hiemem sensit Neptunus, et imis 125
 Stagna refusa vadis, graviter commotus; et alto
 Prospiciens, summa placidum caput extulit unda.

D'sjectam Aeneae toto videt aequore classem,
 Fluctibus oppressos Troas caelique ruina,
 Nec latuere doli fratrem Junoris et irae. 130

Eurū ad se Zephyrumque vocat, dehinc talia fatur: *disson*

'Tantane vos generis tenuit fiducia vestri?

Jam caelum terramque meo sine numine, Venti,

Miscere, et tantas audetis tollere moles?

Quos ego—Sed motos praestat componere fluctus. 135

Post mihi non simili poena commissa luetis.

Maturatē fugam, rēque haec dicite vestro:

Non illi imperium pelagi saevumque tridentem,

Sed mihi sorte datum. Tenet ille immania saxa,

Vestras, Eure, domos; illa se jactet in aula 140

Aeolus, et clauso ventorum carcere regnet.'

Sic ait, et dicto citius tumida aequora placat,

Collectasque fugat nubes, solemque reducit.

Cymothoe simul et Triton adnexus acuto

Detrudunt naves scopulo; levat ipse tridenti, 145

Et vastas aperit syrtes, et temperat aequor,

quiescent

*non
simile*

onomalopo

Atque rotis summas levibus perlabitur undas.
 Ac veluti magno in populo cum saepe coorta est
 Seditio, saevitque animis ignobile vulgus,
 Jamque faces et saxa volant, furor arma ministrat, 150
 Tum, pietate gravem ac meritis si forte virum quem
 Conspectere, silent, arrectisque auribus astant;
 Ille regit dictis animos, et pectora mulcet:
 Sic cunctus pelagi cecidit fragor, aequora postquam
 Prospiciens genitor caeloque invectus aperto 155
 Flectit equos, curruque volans dat lora secundo. L
 Defessi Aeneadae, quae proxima litora, cursu
 Contendunt petere, et Libyae vertuntur ad oras.
 Est in secessu longo locus: insula portum ^{whereon}
 Efficit objectu laterum, quibus omnis ab alto 160
 Frangitur inque sinus scindit sese unda reductos. ^{part}
 Hinc atque hinc vastae rupes geminique minantur
 In caelum scopuli, quorum sub vertice late ^{spread a}
 Aequora tuta silent; tum silvis scaena coruscis ^{safe appearance}
 Desuper horrentique atrum nemus imminet umbra. 165
 Fronte sub adversa scopulis pendentibus antrum,
 Intus aquae dulces vivoque sedilia saxo,
 Nympharum domus: hic fessas non vincula naves
 Ulla tenent, unco non alligat ancora morsu. L
 Huc septem Aeneas collectis navibus omni 170
 Ex numero subit; ac magno telluris amore
 Egressi optata potiuntur Troes harena,
 Et sale tabentes artus in litore ponunt.
 Ac primum silici scintillam excudit Achates,
 Succipitque ignem foliis, atque arida circum 175
 Nutrimenta dedit, rapuitque in fomite flammam.
 Tum Cererem corruptam undis Cerealiaque arma
 Expediunt fessi rerum, frugesque receptas

Aeneas

Et torrere parant flammis et frangere saxo.

Aeneas scopulum interea conscendit et omnem 180
Prospectum late pelago petit. Anthea si quem

Jactatum vento videat Phrygiasque biremes,

Aut Capyn, aut celsis in puppibus arna Caici.

Navein in conspectu nullam, tres litore cervos

Prospicit errantes; hos tota armenta sequuntur 185

A tergo, et longum per valles pascitur agmen.

Constitit hic, arcumque manu celeresque sagittas

Corripuit, fidus quae tela gerebat Achates;

Ductoresque ipsos primum, capita alta ferentes

Cornibus arboreis, sternit, tum vulgus, et omnem 190

Miscet agens telis nemora inter frondea turbam;

Nec prius absistit, quam septem ingentia victor

Corpora fundat humi et numerum cum navibus aequet.

Hinc portum petit, et socios partitur in omnes.

Vina, bonus quae deinde cadis onerarat Acestes 195

Litore Trinacrio dederatque abeuntibus heros,

Dividit, et dictis maerentia pectora mulcet:

‘O socii—neque enim ignari sumus ante malorum—

O passi graviora, dabit deus his quoque finem.

Vos et Scyllaeam rabiem penitusque sonantes 200

Accestis scopulos, vos et Cyclopia saxa

Experti: revocate animos, maestumque timorem

Mittite; forsan et haec olim meminisse juvabit.

Per varios casus, per tot discrimina rerum

Tendimus in Latium, sedes ubi fata quietas 205

Ostendunt; illic fas regna resurgere Trojae.

Durate, et vosmet rebus servate secundis.’

Talia voce refert, curisque ingentibus aeger

Spem vultu simulat, premit altum corde dolorem.

Ulli se praedae accingunt dapibusque futuris: 210

Tergora deripiunt costis et viscera nudant ;
Pars in frusta secant veribusque trementia figunt ;
Litore aena locant alii, flammisque ministrant.
Tum victu revocant vires, fusique per herbam
Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinae. 215
Postquam exempta fames epulis mensaeque remotae,
Amissos longo socios sermone requirunt,
Spemque metumque inter dubii, seu vivere credant,
Sive extrema pati nec jam exaudire vocatos.
Praecipue pius Aeneas nunc acris Oronti, 220
Nunc Amyci casum gemit et crudelia secum
Fata Lyci, fortemque Gyan, fortemque Cloanthum.
Et jam finis erat, cum Juppiter aethere summo
Despiciens mare velivolum terrasque jacentes
Litoraue et latos populos, sic vertice caeli 225
Constitit, et Libyae defixit lumina regnis.
Atque illum tales jactantem pectore curas
Tristior et lacrimis oculos suffusa nitentes
Alloquitur Venus : ' O qui res hominumque deumque
Aeternis regis imperiis, et fulmine terres, 230
Quid meus Aeneas in te committere tantum,
Quid Troes potuere, quibus, tot funera passis,
Cunctus ob Italiam terrarum clauditur orbis ?
Certe hinc Romanos olim, volventibus annis,
Hinc fore ductores, revocato a sanguine Teuceri, 235
Qui mare, qui terras omni ditione tenerent,
Pollicitus : quae te, genitor, sententia vertit ?
Hoc equidem occasum Trojae tristesque ruinas
Solabar, fatis contraria fata rependens ;
Nunc eadem fortuna viros tot casibus actos 240
Insequitur. Quem das finem, rex magne, laborum ?
Antenor potuit, mediis elapsus Achivis,

Illyricos penetrare sinus, atque intima tutus
 Regna Liburnorum et fontem superare Timavi,
 Unde per ora novem vasto cum murmure montis 245
 It mare proruptum et pelago premit arva sonanti.
 Hic tamen ille urbem Patavi sedesque locavit
 Teucrorum, et genti nomen dedit, armaque fixit
 Troia, nunc placida compostus pace quiescit :
 Nos, tua progenies, caeli quibus adnuis arcem, 250
 Navibus—infandum !—amissis, unius ob iram
 Prodimur, atque Italís longe disjungimur oris.
 Hic pietatis honos ? Sic nos in sceptrá reponis ?
 Olli subridens hominum sator atque deorum,
 Vultu, quo caelum tempestatesque serenat, 255
 Oscula libavit natae, dehinc talia fatur :
 ' Parce metu, Cytherea ; manent imitata tuorum
 Fata tibi ; cernes urbem et promissa Lavini
 Moenia, sublimemque feres ad sidera caeli
 Magnanimum Aenean ; neque me sententia vertit. 260
 Hic tibi—fabor enim, quando haec te cura remordet,
 Longius et volvens fatorum arcana movebo—
 Bellum ingens geret Italia, populosque feroces
 Contundet, moresque viris et moenia ponet,
 Tertia dum Latio regnantem viderit aestas, 265
 Ternaue transierint Rutulis hiberna subactis.
 At puer Ascanius, cui nunc cognomen Iulo
 Additur,—Ilus erat, dum res stetit Ilia regno—
 Triginta magnos volvendis mensibus orbes
 Imperio explebit, regnumque ab sede Lavini 270
 Transferet, et longam multa vi muní Albam.
 Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos
 Gente sub Hectorea, donec regina sacerdos,
 Marte gravis, geminam partu dabit Ilia prolem.

Inde lupae fulvo nutricis tegmine laetus 275

Romulus excipiet gentem, et Mavortia condet
Moenia, Romanosque suo de nomine dicet.

His ego nec metas rerum nec tempora pono ;

Imperium sine fine dedi. Quin aspera Juno,

Quae mare nunc terrasque metu caelumque fatigat, 280

Consilia in melius referet, mecumque fovebit

Romanos rerum dominos gentemque togatam.

Sic placitum. Veniet lustris labentibus aetas,

Cum domus Assaraci Phthiam clarasque Mycenae

Servitio premet, ac victis dominabitur Argis.

Nascetur pulchra Trojanus origine Caesar,

Imperium Oceano, famam qui terminent astra,

Julius, a magno demissum nomen Iulo.

Hunc tu olim caelo, spoliis Orientis onustum,

Accipies securus ; vocabitur hic quoque votis.

Aspera tum positis mitescent saecula bellis ;

Cana Fides, et Vesta, Remo cum fratre Quirinus,

Jura dabunt ; dirae ferro et compagibus artis

Claudentur Belli portae ; Furor impius intus

Saeva sedens super arma, et centum vinctus aenis

Post tergum nodis, fremet horridus ore cruento.

Haec ait, et Maia genitum demittit ab alto,

Ut terrae, utque novae pateant Karthaginis arces

Hospitio Teucris, ne fati nescia Dido

Finibus arceret. Volat ille per aera magnum

Remigio alarum, ac Libyae citus astitit oris.

Et jam jussa facit, ponuntque ferocia Poeni

Corda volente deo ; in primis regina quietum

Accipit in Teucros animum mentemque benignam.

At pius Aeneas, per noctem plurima volvens,

Ut primum lux alma data est, exire locosque

Explorare novos, quas vento accesserit oras,
 Qui teneant, nam inculta videt, hominesne feraene,
 Quaerere constituit, sociisque exacta referre.
 Classem in convexo nemorum sub rupe cavata, 310
 Arboribus clausam circum atque horrentibus umbris
 Occulit; ipse uno graditur comitatus Achate,
 Bina manu lato crispans hastilia ferro.
 Cui mater media sese tulit obvia silva,
 Virginis os habitumque gerens et virginis arma 315
 Spartanae, vel qualis equos Threissa fatigat
 Harpalyce, volucrumque fuga praevertitur Hebrum.
 Namque umeris de moreabilem suspenderat arcum
 Venatrix, dederatque comam diffundere ventis,
 Nuda genu, nodoque sinus collecta fluentes. 320
 Ac prior, 'Heus,' inquit, 'juvenes, monstrate, mearum
 Vidistis si quam hic errantem forte sororum,
 Succinctam pharetra et maculosae tegmine lyncis,
 Aut spumantis apri cursum clamore prementem.'
 Sic Venus; et Veneris contra sic filius orsus: 325
 'Nulla tuarum aud.ta mihi neque visa sororum,
 O—quam te memorem virgo? namque haud tibi vultus
 Mortalis, nec vox hominem sonat: O dea certe;
 An Phoebi soror? an Nympharum sanguinis una?
 Sis felix, nostrumque leves, quaecumque, laborem, 330
 Et quo sub caelo tandem, quibus orbis in oris
 Jactemur, doceas; ignari hominumque locorumque
 Erramus, vento huc vastis et fluctibus acti:
 Multa tibi ante aras nostra cadet hostia dextra.' 334
 Tum Venus: 'Haud equidem tali me dignor honore;
 Virginibus Tyriis mos est gestare pharetram,
 Purpureoque alte suras vincere cothurno.
 Punica regna vides, Tyrios et Agenoris urbem;

Sed fines Libyci, genus intractabile bello.
Imperium Dido Tyria regit urbe profecta, 340
Germanum fugiens. Longa est injuria, longae
Ambages; sed summa sequar fastigia rerum.
Huic conjunx Sychaeus erat, ditissimus agri
Phoenicum, et magno miserae dilectus amore,
Cui pater intactam dederat, primisque jugarat 345
Ominibus. Sed regna Tyri germanus habebat
Pygmalion, scelere ante alios immanior omnes.
Quos inter medius venit furor. Ille Sychaeum
Impius ante aras, atque auri caecus amore,
Clam ferro incautum superat, securus amorum 350
Germanae; factumque diu celavit, et aegram,
Multa malus simulans, vana spe lusit amantem.
Ipsa sed in somnis inhumati venit imago
Conjugis, ora modis attollens pallida miris;
Crudeles aras trajectaque pectora ferro 355
Nudavit, caecumque domus scelus omne rexit.
Tum celerare fugam patriaue excedere suadet,
Auxiliumque viae veteres tellure recludit
Thesaurus, ignotum argenti pondus et auri.
His commota fugam Dido sociosque parabat. 360
Conveniunt, quibus aut odium crudele tyranni
Aut metus acer erat; naves, quae forte paratae,
Corripiunt, onerantque auro; portantur avari
Pygmalionis opes pelago: Quis femina facti.
Devenere locos, ubi nunc ingentia cernis 365
Moenia surgentemque novae Karthaginis arcem,
Mercatique solum, facti de nomine Byrsam,
Taurino quantum possent circumdare tergo.
Sed vos qui tandem, quibus aut venistis ab oris,
Quove tenetis iter? Quaerenti talibus ille 370

Suspirans, imoque trahens a pectore vocem :
 'O dea, si prima repetens ab origine pergam,
 Et vacet annales nostrorum audire laborum,
 Ante diem clauso componat Vesper Olympo.
 Nos Troja antiqua, si vestras forte per aures 375
 Trojae nomen iit, diversa per aequora vectos
 Forte sua Libycis tempestas appulit oris.
 Sum pius Aeneas, raptos qui ex hoste Penates
 Classe veho mecum, fama super aethera notus.
 Italiam quaero patriam et genus ab Jove summo. 380
 Bis denis Phrygium conscendi navibus aequor,
 Matre dea monstrante viam, data fata secutus ;
 Vix septem convulsae undis Euroque supersunt.
 Ipse ignotus, egeus, Libyae deserta peragro,
 Europa atque Asia pulsus.' Nec plura querentem 385
 Passa Venus medio sic interfata dolore est :
 'Quisquis es, haud, credo, invisus caelestibus auras
 Vitales carpis, Tyriam qui adveneris urbem.
 Perge modo, atque hinc te reginae ad limina perfer.
 Namque tibi reduces socios classemque relatam 390
 Nuntio, et in tutum versis aquilonibus actam,
 Ni frustra augurium vani docuere parentes.
 Aspice bis senos laetantes agmine cyenos,
 Aetheria quos lapsa plaga Jovis ales aperto 395
 Turbatat caelo ; nunc terras ordine longo
 Aut capere, aut capias jam despectare videntur :
 Ut reduces illi ludunt stridentibus alis,
 Et coetu cinxere polum, cantusque dedere,
 Haud aliter puppesque tuae pubesque tuorum
 Aut portum tenet, aut pleno subit ostia velo. 400
 Perge modo, et, qua te ducit via, dirige gressum.'
 Dixit, et avertens rosea cervice refulsit.

Swan
simile

Ambrosiaeque comae divinum vertice odorem
 Spiravere, pedes vestis defluxit ad inos,
 Et vera incessu patuit dea. Ille ubi matrem 405
 Agnovit, tali fugientem est voce secutus:

'Quid natum totiens, crudelis tu quoque, falsis
 Ludis imaginibus? cur dextrae jungere dextram
 Non datur, ac veras audire et reddere voces?' 410
 Talibus incusat, gressumque ad moenia tendit.

At Venus obscuro gradientes aere sacpsit,
 Et multo nebulae circum dea fudit amictu,
 Cernere ne quis eos, neu quis contingere posset,
 Molirive moram, aut veniendi poscere causas.
 Ipsa Paphum sublimis abit, sedesque revisit 415
 Laeta suas, ubi templum illi, centumque Sabaeo
 Ture calent arae, sertisque recentibus halant.

Corripuerat viam interea, qua semita monstrat.
 Jamque ascendebant collem, qui plurimus urbi
 Imminet, adversasque aspectat desuper arces. 420
 Miratur molem Aeneas, magalia quondam,

Miratur portas strepitumque et strata viarum.
 Instant ardentes Tyrii, pars ducere muros, *et deservant*
 Molirique arcem et manibus subvolvere saxa,
 Pars optare locum tecto et concludere sulco; *truncat* 425

Jura magistratusque legunt, sanctumque senatum;
 Hic portus alii effodiunt; hic alta theatri
 Fundamenta locant alii, immanesque columnas
 Rupibus excidunt, scaenis decora alta futuris.

Qualis apes aestate nova per florea rura 430
 Exercet sub sole labor, cum gentis adultos
 Educunt fetus, aut cum liquentia mella
 Stipant et dulci distendunt nectare cellas,
 Aut onera accipiunt venientum, aut agmine facto

Bee
simile

Conington - Mc Kail
pure translation

AENEIDOS LIB. I.

351

Ignavum fucos pecus a praesaepibus arcent: 435

Fervet opus, redolentque thyino fragrantia mella.

'O fortunati, quorum jam moenia surgunt!'

Aeneas ait, et fastigia suspicit urbis.

Infert se saeptus nebula, mirabile dictu,

Per medios, miscetque viris, neque cernitur ulli. 440

Lucus in urbe fuit media, laetissimus umbrae,

Quo primum jactati undis et turbine Poeni

Effodere loco signum, quod regia Juno

Monstrarat, caput acris equi; sic nam fore bello

Egregiam et facilem victu per saecula gentem. 445

Hic templum Junoni ingens Sidonia Dido

Condebat, donis opulentum et numine divae,

Aerea cui gradibus surgebant limina, nexaeque

Aere trabes, foribus cardo stridebat aenis.

Hoc primum in luo nova res oplata timorem 450

Leniit, hic primum Aeneas sperare salutem

Ausus, et afflictis melius confidere rebus.

Namque sub ingenti lustrat dum singula templo,

Reginam opperiens, dum, quae fortuna sit urbi,

Artificumque manus inter se operumque laborem 455

Miratur, videt Iliacas ex ordine pugnās.

Bellaque jam fama totum vulgata per orbem,

Atridas, Priamumque, et saevum ambobus Achillem.

Constitit, et lacrimans: 'Quis jam locus,' inquit,

'Achate,

Quae regio in terris nostri non plena laboris? 460

En Priamus! sunt hic etiam sua praemia laudi;

Sunt lacrimae rerum, et mentem mortalia tangunt.

Solve metus; feret haec aliquam tibi fama salutem.'

Sic ait, atque animum pictura pascit inani,

Multa gemens, largoque umectat flumine vultum. 465

Namque videbat, uti bellantes Pergama circum
Hac fugerent Grai, premeret Trojana juvenus,
Hac Phryges, instaret curru cristatus Achilles.
Nec procul hinc Rhesi niveis tentoria velis
Agnoscit lacrimans, primo quae prodita somno 470
Tydides multa vastabat caede cruentus,
Ardentesque avertit equos in castra, priusquam
Pabula gustassent Trojae Xanthumque bibissent.
Parte alia fugiens amissis Troilus armis,
Infelix puer atque impar congressus Achilli, 475
Fertur equis, curruque haeret resupinus inani,
Lora tenens tamen; huic cervixque comaeque trahuntur
Per terram, et versa pulvis inscribitur hasta.
Interea ad templum non aequae Palladis ibant
Crinibus Iliades passis, peplumque ferebant, 480
Suppliciter tristes et tunsae pectora palmis;
Diva solo fixos oculos avera tenebat.
Ter circum Iliacos raptaverat Hectora muros,
Exanimumque auro corpus vendebat Achilles.
Tum vero ingentem gemitum dat pectore ab imo, 485
Ut spolia, ut currus, utque ipsum corpus amici,
Tendentemque manus Priamum conspexit inermes.
Se quoque principibus permixtum agnovit Achivis,
Eoasque acies, et nigri Memnonis arma.
Ducit Amazonidum lunatis agmina peltis 490
Penthesilea furens, mediisque in millibus ardet,
Aurea subnectens exsertae cingula mammae,
Bellatrix, audetque viris concurrere virgo.
Haec dum Dardanio Aeneae miranda videntur,
Dum stupet, obtutuque haeret defixus in uno, 495
Regina ad templum, forma pulcherrima Dido,
Incessit, magna juvenum stipante caterva.

Qualis in Eurotae ripis aut per juga Cynthi
 Exerces Diana choros, quam mille secutae
 Hinc atque hinc glomerantur Oreades ; illa pharetram
 Fert unero, gradiensque deas supereminet omnes :
 Latonae tacitum pertemptant gaudia pectus :
 Talis erat Dido, talem se laeta ferebat
 Per medios, instans operi regnisque futuris. *L*
 Tum foribus divae, media testudine templi,
 Saepta armis, solioque alte subnixa resedit.
 Jura dabat legesque viris, operumque laborem
 Partibus aequabat justis, aut sorte trahebat :
 Cum subito Aeneas concursu accedere magno
Anthea Sergestumque videt fortemque Cloanthum,
 Teucrorumque alios, ater quos aequore turbo
 Dispulerat penitusque alias avexerat oras.

499

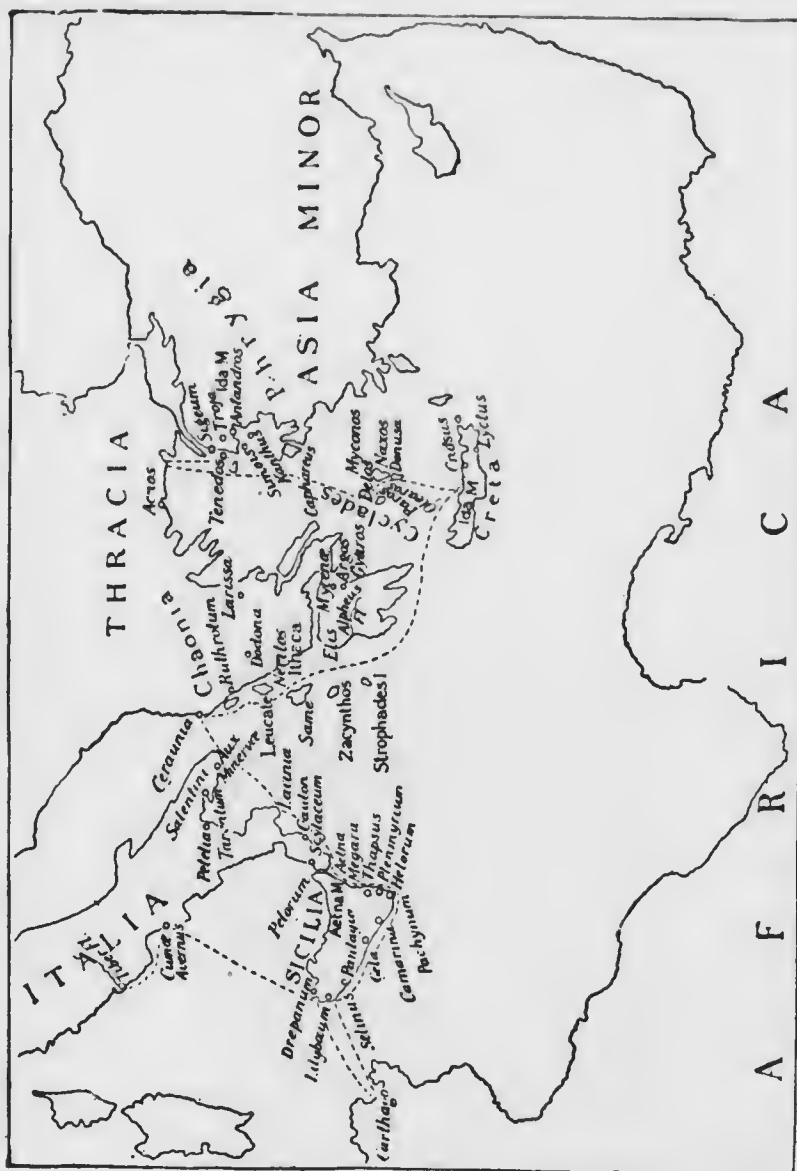
thyng

505

*goddes
simile*

510

DIANA (*Phoebe's* soror).



MAP SHOWING THE WANDERINGS OF AENEAS.

NOTES ON VIRGIL, AENEID I. 1-510.

N.B.—The references are to the sections of the Syntax and Composition, beginning at page 160.

The following abbreviations are used: cf.=compare; fn.=footnote; l.=line; lit.=literally; sc.=supply or understand; trans.=translate or translation.

For the story of the siege of Troy see page 323. Book I. opens in the seventh year of Aeneas' wanderings, the story of the earlier part of his adventures being told in Books II. and III.

1-7. *The subject of the poem.*

1. **virum**: Aeneas. The accus. with *cano* is that of which one sings. **primus**: 'first' (205, h); he was the earliest Trojan settler in Italy proper (cf. on l. 242). Many prefer to take it 'of old.'

2. **Italiam**: the accusative of the limit of motion (without *ad*) is more freely used in poetry than in prose, for which see 125. **fato**: 'by fate,' instrumental abl. with *profugus*. **Laviniaque**: *que* is here explanatory, *Lavina litora* defining *Italiam* more exactly. The city Lavinium (see Vocabulary) was not yet built, but the epithet suggests Aeneas' mission in Italy.

3. **ille**: resuming the subject *qui*, thus serving to call our attention more forcibly to the hero and his troubles; omit in English. **et terris et alto**: 'both by land and sea'; in phrases telling the place where the preposition is more often omitted in poetry than in prose (127, ii.). **jactatus**: the participle; so *passus*, l. 5.

4. **superum**: for *superorum*. In Virgil many nouns of the first or second declension have *-um* in the gen. plur. **memorem**: the epithet poetically transferred from *Junonia* to *iram*.

5. **quoque et**: each means 'too' or 'also'; the former introduces the new clause *multa . . . passus*; the latter contrasts the adventures in the wars after he reached Italy (*bello*) with those

experienced in his wanderings by sea and land before he reached it (*terris et ulto*). **dum conderet**: not 'till he founded' but 'till he should found,' or 'in the effort to found'; for the subj. see 155, b.

6. **deos**: the 'household gods' of the city which Aeneas was bidden in a vision to bring from Troy to his new home; this would strengthen the claim that Rome was the direct descendant of Troy, and that it was founded under divine guidance. **Latio**: 'into Latium.' For the dative used in poetry of the *place to which*, see 78, vii. **unde**: 'from whom,' referring to Aeneas (*qui, ille*). For the verb of the clause supply *sunt* ('are,' freely 'come'), of which *genus, patres* and *moenia* are subjects.

7. **Albanique patres**: 'the lords of Alba'; *patres* not because they were ancestors of the later Romans but referring to the patrician families. The three subjects give the three stages of growth in the legendary order, Lavinium, Alba, Rome; cf. ll. 265-277. **Romae**: note the emphatic position.

This introduction has told us that we are to have an epic of adventure both in war (like the Iliad) and in wanderings by sea and land (like the Odyssey); further, it is to be a national epic, telling the early history of Rome, and a religious epic, in that Rome's founding, it is intimated, is a matter of divine concern. See further on this point pages 328, 329.

8-33. *The cause of Juno's wrath against Aeneas.*

8. **Musa**: the goddess who inspired poets. It is idle to ask here which Muse is meant, for Virgil, like Horace, recognizes no 'division of labor' among the Muses.

quo numine laeso: an abl. absol. clause, *quo* being the interrog. adj. The phrase may be taken in two ways: (1) the simpler, 'what divine purpose having been thwarted,' the answer to which is contained in ll. 12-22, while the answer to *quid dolens* is given in ll. 23-28; (2) 'what divinity of hers having been insulted,' i.e., 'her divinity having been insulted in what respect,' in which case *quid dolens* is simply another form of the same question. For a freer rendering see on l. 9.

9. **quidve dolens**: the acc. with *doleo* states that *at which* one feels distress (69, ii.). For the enclitic *ve* see 4, a, iii.

Trans. the whole freely, either (1) 'for what unwerting of her divine will or from what resentment,' or (2) 'for what insult to her godhead or from what resentment.'

deum: cf. on *superum*, l. 4. **regina deum**: Juno, the wife of Jupiter. **volvere**: 'to undergo,' suggesting the notion either of rolling a burden along or of passing through a round of mishaps. Like *adire*, it depends on *impulerit*; the infin. is used more freely in poetry than in prose, in which we should here have had *ut* and subj. (22, viii.).

10. **pietate**: neither piety nor pity quite, but faithful observance of duty whether to gods, parents, fellow-men, or country. Trans. 'goodness.' Aeneas is constantly called *pius* by Virgil, partly from his filial devotion to his father, partly from his dutiful obedience to the voice of the gods and to the leading of fate. That so 'good' a man should be visited by the displeasure of the queen of heaven needs explanation. For the case see 96.

11. **impulerit**: subj. in an interrog. clause dependent on *causas memora* (35).

tantacne: for *ne* see 34, i. **animis**: the dative, depending on *sunt* which is to be understood. In prose *esse* is frequently omitted, especially in compound tenses; in poetry *est* and *sunt* also (4, g, i.). For the dat. with *esse* = 'belong,' see 80, e.

irae: trans. by the singular; the plur. of abstract nouns often, as here, indicates either the intensity or various manifestations of a feeling. For the thought cf. Milton, 'In heavenly hearts could such perverseness dwell?'

12. **antiqua**: from the poet's point of view, as at the time of Aeneas' visit it was just building, l. 423. **Tyrii . . . coloni**: parenthetic; trans. by relative clause. Carthage was founded by settlers from Tyre in Phoenicia. **tenuere**: the ending *ere* for *erunt* is very common in poetry, being convenient for metrical purposes.

13. **contra**: placed after one of its two objects. **que**: explanatory, as in l. 2. **longe**: may modify the whole phrase *Italiam*

contra, etc., correcting or rather explaining it, 'opposite . . . but afar'; or it may (as its position would suggest) be used with adjectival force, after the Greek fashion, 'the distant Tiber mouths.'

14. *opum*: trans. by 'in'; for the gen. with *dives*, see 90, i. and iii. *studiis asperrima*: 'fierce in the pursuits (or arts).' For the abl. see 102.

15. *fertur*: 'is said,' a frequent meaning of *fero* in Virgil. *terris*: see 98. *magis*: freely, 'above.' *unam*: emphasizing the comparison and not to be translated; it is a regular prose usage with the superlative, to which *magis omnibus* is equivalent.

16. *posthabita Samo*: abl. absol.; 'holding [even] Samos less dear.' Samos was one of the chief seats of Juno's worship. *hic*: the adverb. For the irregular scansion see page 335, 3 and 8.

17. *hoc*: according to rule, agreeing in gender with *regnum* the predicate of *esse* instead of with its antecedent *Samo* (13, i.). *esse*: completing the meaning of *tendit* and *fovet*, a poetical extension of the accus. and inf. with verbs of wishing. Cf. on l. 9.

18. *qua*: indefinite adverb. *sinant*: the subj. because in a subordinate clause forming part of Juno's virtually quoted thoughts (177). *jam tum*: i.e., even in those first days of Carthage's existence. *tenditque foveatque*: lit. 'she both strives and fosters'; that is 'it is her aim and fond desire.' Trans. 'this the goddess fondly desires to be a seat of empire for the nations.'

19. We have here the first reason for Juno's persecution of Aeneas,—her fear for the supremacy of Carthage. *sed enim*: trans. simply, 'but.' There is really an ellipsis, 'but (she had her fears) for,' etc. *duci*: present inf. because fate was even then being fulfilled, in the person of Aeneas and his followers; in l. 22 the future inf. is used of the subsequent rise of a great nation from these wanderers.

20. *olim*: 'some day.' *verteret*: for the mood see 26.

21. *hinc*: i.e., *Trojano a sanguine*. *late regem*: the adverb modifies the participial idea implied in *regem*; 'widely ruling,' 'of extensive sway.'

22. **excidio Libyae**: dat. of purpose and dat. of interest (81). Libya is a poetical exaggeration for the Carthaginian dominions of later days.

sic volvere Parcas: the acc. and inf. construction continued; 'that such was the Fates' decree.' The metaphor in *volvere* is uncertain; it may be from the turning of a wheel, spinning, the unrolling of a book, or the shaking of an urn containing lots.

23. Here follow various personal affronts to Juno, all connected with the Trojan race. **metuens, memor**: the principal verb follows in l. 31, but the long parenthesis of ll. 25-28 has disturbed the natural run of the sentence. **veteris**: probably as contrasted with her present hostility to Aeneas. But it is possible that, by a sort of anachronism, Virgil is mentally contrasting the Trojan war with the later Punic wars, to which he has just been referring, ll. 20-22.

24. **prima**: 'at the first,' 'long ago,' thus reinforcing the idea implied in *veteris*, l. 23. Others make it mean 'foremost of all,' as the leader of the hosts attacking Troy. **ad**: 'at,' 'before,' (125, i.). **Argis**: Argos, the city of Menelaus, is here put for the whole of Greece, as often in Homer. It is called *caris*, because it was one of the chief seats of Juno's worship.

25. **causae irarum**: these are specified in ll. 27 and 28. For the plurals *irarum* and *dolores*, cf. on *irae*, l. 11.

26. **animo**: abl. (93). **manet**: note the emphatic position; the sing. agrees with the nearest of the four subjects, as *repositum* agrees with it in gender also. **alta mente**: lit. 'in her deep mind'; we should say 'deep in her heart.'

27. **judicium Paridis**: see page 324. **spretae injuria formae**: explaining *judicium Paridis*. The gen. may be either objective, 'the wrong done to her slighted beauty' (85), or the gen. of definition, 'the insult of her slighted beauty,' i.e., 'consisting in the scorning of her beauty' (89). In the latter case notice the use of the participle instead of an abstract noun (205, i.).

28. **genus**: the whole Trojan race, whose founder Dardanus was a son of Jupiter by Electra, of whom Juno was jealous.

Ganymedis : a beautiful youth of the Trojan royal house, carried off to Olympus, by order of Jupiter, to be the eupbearer of the gods, in place of Hebe, Juno's daughter.

29. **his** : neuter, for the prose *his rebus*. **super** : adverb ; 'still further,' 'also,' i.e., as well as anxious for Carthage. **jactatos** : with *Troas*, the object of *arcebat* ; best translated by a principal verb in the active voice coordinate with *arcebat*. **aequore toto** : trans. by 'over.' For the abl. see 127, ii.

30. **Troas** : words of the third declension borrowed from the Greek have often the acc. sing. in *ā*, the nom. plur. in *ēs* and the accus. plur. in *ēs*. **reliquias Danaum** : , the remnant left by the Greeks' ; lit. 'the Greeks' leavings.' For the subjective gen. see 84. **Danaum** : for the form cf. on l. 4. Virgil, like Homer, constantly uses the names of prominent Greek tribes for the Greeks in general. **Achilli** : Greek proper names in *-es* of the third declension have the genitive in both *-is* and *-i*.

31. **Latio** : abl. (93).

32. **circum** : following its case ; cf. l. 13.

33. **tantae molis erat** : 'so great a work (task) was it' ; lit. 'it was of such difficulty' (87, iii.).

The last words of the introduction thus emphasize the national aspect of the poem, which is about to describe this founding of the nation.

34-49. *As the Trojan fleet is leaving Sicily, Juno dwells indignantly on her failure to keep Aeneas from Italy.*

35. **vela dabant** : the full phrase would be *vela dabant ventis*. **aere** : 'with the prow of bronze' ; the prows of ancient vessels were often covered with bronze.

36. **sub pectore** : 'deep in her heart.'

37. **haec secum** : understand *dixit* or some such word, often omitted in poetry when the exact words are quoted ; for mood see 151, iii. **me . . . desistere** : the acc. and infin. (here with the interrogative particle *-ne*) may be used in an indignant exclamation ; so *posse*. Trans. 'Am I to,' etc. **incepto** : see 93. **victam** : 'baffled'

39. *quippe* : ironical ; 'forsooth or doubtless.' *Pallas* : in the emphatic position for contrast.

40. *Argivum* : cf. on *Danaum*, l. 30. *ipsos* : contrasted with *classem*, the vessels. *ponto* : 'in the sea' ; local abl. : cf. on l. 3.

41. *unius* : the 'one man' was Ajax (the lesser), who, because of the insult offered Cassandra, a Trojan princess, in the very sanctuary of Pallas, on the night of the capture of Troy, was visited with the vengeance of the goddess when returning to Greece. *et furias* : the latter half of the line is explanatory of the first half ; for the plural cf. on *irae*, l. 11. *Oilei* : possessive gen. dependent on, not in agreement with, *Ajaxis*, by a Greek construction ; 'Ajax (son) of Oileus.' In scansion *ei* is to be taken as one syllable, a diphthong.

42. *ipsa* : to emphasize the difference between Pallas and herself. Pallas had actually been allowed with her own hands to wield Jove's thunderbolt.

43. *que . . que* : as in l. 18.

44. *illum* : in emphatic contrast with *rates*. *transfixo* : i.e., by the thunderbolt.

45. *scopulo* : local abl. ; cf. on l. 3 ; or dat. (78, v.c).

46. *divom* : archaic for *divum* ; cf. on *superum*, l. 4. *incedo* : 'move' ; suggesting the majestic stately tread of a queen. So in ll. 405 and 497. Cf. Shakespeare : 'High'st queen of state great Juno comes ; I know her by her gait.'

47. *una cum gente* : balancing *unius*, l. 41, and contrasted both with *divom regina* and *tot annos*. *tot* : 'all these,' or 'these many.'

48. *quisquam* : with its usual suggestion of 'no one' (166, b).

49. *praeterea* : 'henceforth,' 'any further' ; the use of this word softens the rather peculiar change from the present *adorat* to the future *imponet*, for which some editors read *imponit*. *supplex* : see on l. 64. *aris* : for the dat. (here to be translated 'on') see 78, v.c.

50-75. She goes to Aeolus, god of the winds, and asks him to destroy the fleet for her.

50. **flammato corde**: local abl. **volutans**: see fn. p. 76, and cf. *jactatos*, l. 29.

51. **austis**: put here for any violent wind. **furentibus**: see 44, i. b.

52. **hic**: adverb, explained by *vasto antro*.

54. **vinclis et carcere**: freely 'with dungeon fetters.'

55. **montis**: with *murmure*, not with *claustra*, as l. 245 shows (84).

56. **arce**: the relative position of the citadel and the dungeon-cave is not told us, but Aeolus occupies the citadel as a Greek despot would the 'acropolis' of his city.

57. **sceptra**: the plural giving the effect of dignity and majesty; trans. by the sing.

58. **ni faciat . . . ferant**: 'were he not to do this . . . they would' is more impressive and graphic than *ni faceret . . . ferrent*, 'were he not doing this . . . they would.' The latter tells us that he is in fact restraining them, and that thus there is no danger; the former suggests the consequences of a conceivable omission (61; 63).

59. **quippe**: 'assuredly'; its position would in prose naturally be before *ni faciat*. **rapidi**: 'in their swift course.' For the imitative harmony in this line, with which contrast ll. 53 and 55, see p. 334.

60. **speluncis**: again the poetical local abl. without the prep.

61. **molem et montes**: 'the mass (or massive weight) of mountains.' Virgil often (by the figure called *hendiadys*) uses two nouns connected by *and* (*et*, *-que*) instead of a modified noun, to express one complex idea.

62. **foedere**: the 'law' imposed on him by Jupiter.

63. **sciret**: with the complementary inf. means 'should know how to,' etc. For the subj. expressing Jove's purpose, see 26. **premere**: the object is probably *habenae*, not *ventos*; trans. 'tighten,' lit. 'bear down.' **laxas dare**: 'to let loose.' **jussus**: 'when bidden' i.e., by Jupiter, or 'at his bidding.'

64. **ad quem**: 'addressing him' (172). **supplex**: 'in supplication' (10; 205, h).

65. **namque . . . vento** : these words explain why she appeals to Aeolus.

66. **mulcere dedit** : 'has granted [power] to lull'; equivalent to the ordinary complementary infin. with verbs of permitting. **vento** : belongs to *mulcere* as well as to *tollere*; the ancient view was that the winds calmed, as well as raised the sea.

67. **Tyrrhenum aequor** : between Sicily and western Italy; a sort of cognate acc., denoting the space traversed.

68. **Ilium . . . portans** : that is, transferring the traditions and people of Troy to a new home.

69. **incute vim ventis** : 'rouse the winds to fury'; lit. 'strike fury into the winds' (78, v. c.). **submersas obrue** : 'overwhelm and sink'; a proleptic use, like 'strike him dead'; cf. *laxas dare*, l. 63, and *age diversos*, l. 70.

70. **diversos** : masc. agreeing with *nautas* or *Troas*, to be understood from the context; a sense construction.

71. **sunt mihi** : 'I have' (80, e). **corpore** : 'figure,' or more freely, 'beauty, loveliness' (105).

72. **quae . . . pulcherrima** : 'the one who is the fairest.' Supply *est*, cf. on l. 11. The antecedent should have been *Deiopenm.* object of *jungam*, but this has been made part of the relative clause (173, c. i.). **forma** : abl. (102).

73. **propriam dicabo** : 'assign to be thine own forever.' Juno was the goddess of marriage, besides being the mistress of the nymph. For the scansion see page 336.

75. **pulchra prole parentem** : 'father of a goodly race.' The abl. is probably instrumental, but may possibly be abl. of quality.

76-101. *Aeolus, consenting, raises so mighty a storm that Aeneas is filled with dismay.*

76. **haec** : supply *dixit*; cf. on l. 37. **tuus labor** : supply *est*. **optes** : see 35.

77. **mihi fas est** : 'it is my duty.' Notice the emphatic position of the contrasted words *tuus* and *mihi*. By these words he really throws all the responsibility upon Juno.

78. **tu** : the repetition of this word lays stress upon the thought that Juno is the source of all his blessings. **quodcumque hoc regni** : 'this poor kingdom,' 'this kingdom, such as it is'; lit. 'this (extent) of kingdom, whatsoever it is,' *est* being understood. For the gen. see 86, i. He is depreciating his power in comparison with Juno's, in harmony with his idea that it is for her to command, for him to obey. **Jovem concilias** : 'win Jove's favor.'

79. **das accumbere** : see on l. 66. **epulis** : local abl.

80. **nimborum** : for the case see 90. **potentem** : sc. *me*.

81. **dicta** : supply *sunt* ; cf. on l. 11. **cavum montem** : i.e., the cavern where the winds were confined.

82. **in latus** : acc. because 'motion towards' is involved. **velut agmine facto** : abl. absol. ; 'like an armed host,' or more freely, 'as with one accord.'

83. **qua** : adverb. **data** : supply *est*. **turbine** : see 103.

84. **incubere** : from *incumbo* ; the perfect tense (which without any preliminaries expresses the completion of the act) is used to suggest the suddenness of the action. **mari** : dative (78, v. c). **totum** : understand *mare*, the object of *ruunt*. **a sedibus imis** : freely 'from its lowest depths.'

85. **una** : adverb. **creber procellis** : freely 'gusty.'

87. **virum** : cf. on l. 4.

90. **intonuere poli** : 'the whole heavens thunder' or 'it thunders from pole to pole.' For the tense cf. on l. 84.

91. **intentant** : the English idiom is 'threaten men with death.'

92. **solvuntur frigore** : 'are relaxed (paralysed) with chilling fear.' Fear and cold have somewhat similar effects.

93. **duplices** : 'his two' or 'both his,' not 'clasped,' as the usual attitude in prayer in ancient times was to stand with the arms outstretched and the two palms upturned.

94. **voce** : freely 'aloud.' **terque quaterque** : 'thrice, yea, four times.'

95. **quis** : an old form for *quibus*, here dat. with *contigit* : 'they whose lot it was.' **ora** : here trans. by 'the eyes.'

97. **Tydide**: descent and relationship may be indicated by *patronymics*, having the suffixes *-ades* or *-idea*. These are Greek masculine nouns of the first declension, with the gen. sing. and nom. plur. ending in *-ae*. Diomedes and Aeneas had once met in single combat, and Aeneas had been carried off by his goddess mother, to prevent his being slain. **mene potuisse**: 'to think that I could not have,' etc. Cf. on l. 37.

98. **hanc**: i.e., *meam*. **dextra**: trans. 'beneath,' etc.; for the case see 99.

99. **ubi**: 'where.' **Aeacidae**: i.e., Achilles, the grandson of Aeacus. See p. 325. **jacet**: 'lies slain' or 'fell,' not 'lies buried.' The historical present is due to the vividness with which he recalls the scene of their death.

100. **tot**: with *scuta*, etc. **correpta volvit**: 'bore away and rolled' (43, c; 50, iii.).

101. **virum**: as in l. 87.

102-123. *The storm waxes fiercer, and seven of Aeneas' ships are lost.*

102. **talìa jactanti**: 'while he was uttering these wild complaints'; for the dat., lit. 'to him uttering,' see 80, b. **Aquilone**: with *stridens*; instrumental abl.

103. **adversa**: 'full in front,' agreeing with *procella*.

104. **avertit**: 'swings round.' This intransitive use, instead of *avertitur*, is somewhat unusual (203, f, i., p. 303).

105. **insequitur**: 'there follows.' **cumulo**: 'in a heap' (103). **mons**: for the rhythm see p. 335, 5.

106. **hi . . . his**: 'some . . . to others.' The next lines show that he does not mean different men from a single ship, but the crews of different vessels.

107. **furit aestus harenis**: 'the surging waters boil with sand'; i.e., the sand at the bottom of the sea is churned up with the surf.

108. **tres**: the feminine *abreptas* shows that *naves* is to be supplied. **abreptas**: cf. on l. 100.

109. *quae* : would in prose come at the beginning of its clause.

Aras : see 69, v.

110. *dorsum* : in apposition with *saxa*, l. 108. *mari summo* : not inconsistent with *latentia*, l. 108. The rocks may either have just come near the surface, or have been hidden by the waves in stormy weather only.

111. *syrtes* : as it is not certain that Virgil meant the shallow bays east of Carthage (which were far from the scene of the storm) the word has been printed without capitals, in the sense of 'quick-sands.' If printed *Syrtes*, it is a case of hendiadys (see on l. 61), = 'the shoals of the Syrtes.' *visu* : 'to see' (117).

112. *vadis* : cf. on *aris*, l. 49.

113. *Lycios* : the Lycians were neighbors of the Trojans, and had been their allies in the late war. *Oronten* : (= *Orontem*), the Greek form of the accusative.

114. *ipsius* : i.e., of Aeneas. *a vertice* : 'from above,' or more freely, 'down-rushing.'

115. *in puppim* : cf. on *in late*, l. 82. *Puppim* is the regular accus. form. *excutitur* : 'is dashed overboard.' *pronus in caput* : 'forward headlong.'

116. *illam* : 'the ship.' *ibidem* : 'where she lies.'

117. *ter torquet agens circum* : 'sends spinning thrice around.'

118. *rari* : contrasted with *vasto*. The gender shows that he is thinking of the men, although l. 119 substitutes other subjects; it will be less awkward in English if *nantes* be rendered 'swimmers.' Notice the spondaic movement, and cf. p. 334.

119. *arma* : shields and helmets, for example, might float for a few moments, and 'the picture here is momentary, and flashes before the eyes of Aeneas.'

120. *Ilionei* : for the scansion cf. on *Oilei*, l. 41.

121. *qua* : 'that on which,' sc. *navem* (99, ii.). *vectus* : cf. on l. 11.

122. *compagibus* : abl. of means or abl. absol. *omnes* : i.e., *naves*.

123. *imbrem*: here peculiarly used for the sea-water. *rimis*: see 103.

124-156. *Neptune, the god of the sea, aroused by the turmoil, rebukes the winds and calms the storm.*

124. *misceri*: 'was in turmoil.' Notice the difference in tense between *misceri* and *emissum*. Trans. freely 'perceived the turmoil and loud roaring of the sea.' For the case of *murmure* see 103.

126. *stagna*: the still water from the depths of the sea, thrown up by the tempest to the surface. Trans. 'the still deeps upheaved.' *vadis*: see 93. *alto*: 'over the deep' seems better than 'from the deep' (127, ii.).

127. *placidum*: as befitted the majesty and dignity of a god, in spite of *graviter commotus*. *unda*: cf. on *vadis*, l. 126.

128. *toto aequore*: cf. on l. 29.

129. *Troas*: cf. on l. 30. *caeli ruina*: 'the down-pour (or wreck) of the sky.'

130. *fratrem*: 'her brother,' i.e., Neptune. *Junonis*: with *doli et irae*.

131. *dehinc*: to be scanned as one syllable; cf. on l. 41. *fatur*: from *for*.

132. *generis fiducia*: 'pride of birth,' more lit. 'confidence in your origin.' The winds were children of Aurora (the goddess of dawn) and one of the Titans. For the gen. see 85, ii. *tenuit*: 'has possessed.'

133. *jam*: 'at length,' implying that they have presumed further than ever before; freely 'has it come to this, that,' etc. *numine*: here 'assent.' *venti*: vocative.

134. *moles*: 'mighty seas,' 'mountains of water.'

135. *quos ego*: the sentence may be completed by some verb meaning, 'I shall chastise,' but with dramatic effect the sentence is interrupted (*aposiopesis*); the threat will be more forcible if left to the imagination than if put in words.

136. *post*: adverb. *non simili*: 'far different.'

138. **imperium . . . datum**: understand *esse*, in apposition with *haec*, dependent on *dicite*. **saevum**: 'stern.'

139. **sorte**: according to the legend Jupiter, Neptune and Pluto had decided by lot which was to rule the heavens, the sea and the lower world.

140. **vestras**: though only Eurus is mentioned his brother winds are included, *ros* and *vester* never being used in Latin of a single person. Trans. 'the home of thee and thy brethren' or 'where thou and thine dwell.' **jactet**: trans. subj. by 'let'; so *regnet*, l. 141 (134, b).

141. **clauso**: this is the emphatic word of the clause, marking the condition of his rule 'but over the closed' or 'provided . . . be closed,' etc. The abl. may be either local or absolute.

142. **dicto citius**: 'ere his words are ended'; lit. 'more quickly than his utterance' (98, v.).

144. **adnixus**: 'pushing or leaning against them'; though agreeing with *Triton*, to be taken with *Cymothoe* also.

145. **scopulo**: see 93. **ipse**: 'the god himself.' **tridenti**: abl.

147. Notice the smooth movement of the verse, due to the predominance of *l* and *r* and the labial sounds *m*, *v*, *b*, *p*.

148. The simile that follows is noteworthy for two things; first, it is one of the rare cases in Virgil where nature is illustrated by man, not man by nature; second, Virgil was evidently drawing on his recollection of the seditious disturbances all too common in the last years of the republic. **magno in populo**: 'in a great concourse of people' has more point than 'in a mighty nation.' **cum saepe**: more strictly 'often when' or 'when, as often happens.' *Cum* is answered by *tum*, l. 151. For the indic. with *cum* see 149.

151. **pietate**: cf. on l. 10. *Pietate* and *meritis* represent respectively character and conduct. For the abl. see 96. **quem**: indefinite adj. with *virum*.

152. **conspexere**: plur. according to the sense, although *vulgus* is used before; for the tense see 178, ii.

153. **ille**: the subject changes, and our attention is more fixed upon the great man.

154. **cecidit**: 'has fallen,' not 'fell'; cf. on l. 84, and notice that (in l. 156) the present tense follows *postquam*. **aequora prospiciens**: 'looking upon the sea'; the accus. here because the sea is itself the object of his gaze, while in *alto prospiciens*, l. 126, it was the cause of the turmoil which he tried to see, not the waves themselves.

155. **genitor**: 'the sire,' i.e., Neptune; a term of respect. **caelo aperto**: abl. absol.; trans. freely 'beneath a cloudless sky.'

156. **curru**: with *dat*; an old form of the dative. **secundo**: here retaining much of its primitive meaning of 'following,' from *sequor*. It is intended to suggest ease of movement; trans. 'gliding' or 'obedient.'

157-179. *With seven of his ships, Aeneas reaches a quiet harbor on the coast of Africa, where the Trojans gladly land.*

157. **Aeneadae**: cf. on l. 97. **quae . . litora**: sc. *sunt*; cf. l. 72. Trans. freely without the relative. **cursu petere**: 'to run for'; *cursu* is abl. of manner, 'in haste, quickly.'

158. **vertuntur**: for this intransitive use of the passive, see 203, f, i. (p. 303). Sometimes too the active voice with the reflexive pronoun has the value of an intransitive verb; cf. l. 161.

159. **longo**: here trans. 'deep.' **locus**: the spot cannot be identified, the description being imaginary.

160. **objectu laterum**: 'by its jutting sides,' lit. 'by the interposition of its sides.' **quibus**: 'whereon'; but instrumental not local abl. **ab alto**: with *omnis unda*.

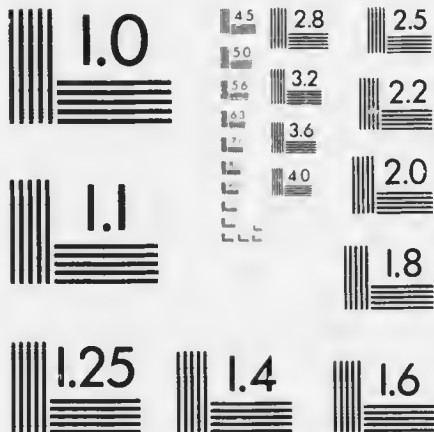
161. **frangitur**: cf. on *vertuntur*, l. 158. **inque**: *que* is seldom attached to a prep. **scindit sese**: 'parts'; cf. on *vertuntur*, l. 158. **sinus reductos**: the meaning is that after breaking on the island barrier, the spent waves run past either side of the island until they lose themselves in the deep inlets of the harbor.

162. **rupes**: subject either of *minantur* or of *sunt* understood; *rupes*, the line of cliffs along the shore, *scopuli*, the peaks or headlands at either entrance. **gemini**: because alike or corresponding.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482-0300 - Phone
(716) 288-5989 - Fax

163. **late . . . silent** : 'the sheltered waters lie wide and still.'

164. **scaena** : the wall in the rear of the stage of a theatre, hence 'the background,' closing in the view of those entering the harbor ; it may be subject of *est* understood or of *imminet*. **silvis** : see 105.

165. **horrenti umbra** : abl. of manner, with *imminet*; were it not for the lack of variety, it might be taken as *silvis*, l. 164. *Horrenti* may be either 'gloomy,' or 'bristling, shaggy' with reference to the appearance of fir trees.

166. **fronte adversa** : 'the front of the cliffs facing the entrance'; freely 'the seaward brow.' **scopulis** : cf. on *silvis*, l. 164; it is these that make the cave.

167. **vivo saxo** : that is, not formed artificially, but the result of the natural formation of the rock ; for the case see 95, ii.

168. **fessas** : the epithet transferred from the sailors to the ship. **non ulla** : for *nulla*. Cables and anchors are not needed in so calm a retreat.

169. **unco morsu** : with *alligat* rather than with *ancora*. It may be noticed that Homer knows nothing of anchors ; in his day large stones were used instead.

170. **septem** : Aeneas' own ship, with the six mentioned in ll. 108, 110, and 144-6. **omni ex numero** : what this was is told in l. 381.

171. **amore** : 'yearning, longing' (103). **telluris** : see 85.

172. **Troes** : for the Greek ending (*ēs*) see on l. 30. **harena** : see 54.

173. **sale** : 'with brine.'

174. **silici** : for the dat. meaning 'from,' see 80, a. This construction is used more freely in poetry than in prose.

175. **succipit** : an old form for *suscepit*. **foliis** : instrumental abl. **foliis, nutrimenta, fomite** : various names for the same thing, viz., dry leaves and twigs. **circum** : adverb.

176. **dedit** : 'put, heaped.' **rapuit** : 'quickly kindled,' lit. 'hurried.'

177. **Cererem** : so in l. 215 *Bacchus* is used for 'wine,' by the figure called *metonymy*.

178. **fessi rerum**: 'weary of fortune or trouble.' For the extended use in poetry of the genitive signifying 'as regards' or 'with reference to,' see 90, iii. This is sometimes called the gen. of reference. **receptas**: i.e., from the sea.

179. **torrere**: to make the grain (especially if it was wet) easier to grind.

180-194. *From the top of a cliff Aeneas scans the sea in vain for traces of the other ships, then returning to his men he falls in with a herd of deer, of whom he slays one for each ship.*

181. **pelago**: cf. on *alto*, l. 126. **si**: 'if perchance,' 'to see if,' 'in the hope that.' For this use of *si* and subj. see 177. **Anthea quem**: lit. 'any Antheus'; freely, 'A. anywhere,' or 'anything of A.' For the Greek form of the accus. see on l. 30.

183. **Capyn**: the Greek form of the acc. **in puppibus**: where the shields of the leaders were hung.

186. **pascitur**: cf. on *vertuntur*, l. 158.

187. **hic**: adverb; 'hereupon.'

188. **quae tela**: see 173, c. ii.

189. **capita alta**, etc.: 'bearing their heads high with . . . antlers,' *cornibus* being abl. of means w. *alta*. [It may also be taken, 'bearing stately heads with . . . antlers,' *cornibus* being abl. of quality w. *capita*.]

191. **miscet agens**: 'drives in confusion' or more fully, 'driving them with his darts, sends . . . in confusion.'

193. **fundat, aequet**: the subj. with *priusquam* because it was his intention to kill this number (156, *b*). **humi**: a locative (127, *i*).

195-222. *After Aeneas has consoled and encouraged his comrades, they prepare a meal on the shore, and afterwards mourn their missing friends.*

195. **vina**: Latin poetry often uses the plural where English would have the singular. **deinde**: belongs with *dividit*, and is out of place in the relative clause. **cadis onerarat**: 'had stowed in

jars'; for the dat. see 78, vi.; the more usual construction would be *quibus* (abl.) *cados onerarat*, as the verb regularly = 'load.' **onerarat**: for *oneraverat* (p. 67, fn.). **Acestes**: a distant kinsman of Aeneas, now ruling in Sicily, from whose kingdom they had just come (cf. l. 34).

196. **abeuntibus**: freely 'on their departure.' **heros**: in apposition w. *Acestes*, the compliment acknowledging his generosity.

198. **neque enim**: the reason for addressing them put parenthetically as in l. 65. **ante**: adv. with *ignari sumus*. Trans. 'we have not been,' etc.; for the tense see 179, e. [Some editors take *ante* as attributive to *malorum*, after a common Greek idiom, meaning 'our former ills.']

199. **passi**: 'ye that have suffered.'

200. **rabiem**: referring to the wolves or hounds which girt the sea-monster Seylla around the waist. **penitus**: 'to their depths,' with *sonantes*.

201. **accessis**: syncopated for *accessistis* (p. 67, fn.). **scopulos**: referring to the cavern of the whirlpool Charybdis, which the Trojans had been near, but had not actually sailed past.

Cyclopia saxa: 'the cave of the Cyclops.' The Trojans had not been in this cave, but they had rescued a Greek comrade of Ulysses who told them of its horrors, and they had narrowly escaped with him from Polyphemus and his brethren. (Book III. ll. 588-683.)

202. **expertis**: supply *estis*. The ellipsis of the first or second person is very rare.

203. **et haec**: 'this too.' **olim**: cf. on l. 20.

204. **varios casus**: 'chequered fortunes.' **discrimina rerum**: 'perilous adventures'; lit. 'crises of events.'

206. **ostendunt**: 'promise (us).' **fas**: supply *est*. **regna**: 'dominion'; cf. on *rina*, l. 195.

207. **vosmet**: emphatic equivalent of *vos* (164, iii.). **rebus secundis**: dat.; trans. 'for prosperous days.'

208. **voce**: cf. l. 94; here omit in trans. **curis**: trans. 'with,' etc. (96).

209. **vultu**: instrumental abl. **premit altum**: 'hides deep' (69, v.).

210. **se accingunt**: as the ancients had to gird up their long robes when preparing for active work, 'to gird one's self' = 'to make ready.' **praedae dapibusque futuris**: freely 'for the game they are to feast upon.'

211. **tergora**: 'the skins or hides.' **costis**: see 93. **viscera**: all beneath the skin; 'the flesh.'

212. **pars secant**: for the sense construction see 13, N.B. **veribus**: instrumental abl. **tremantia**: 'still quivering'; a mark of their eagerness.

213. **aena**: trisyllabic; if this was to boil some of the flesh, Virgil is imputing to Homeric times a custom of his own day, for Homer never speaks of boiling meat. Some suppose that water was to be heated for the bath.

215. **implentur**: 'fill themselves'; for the reflexive use of the passive cf. 203, f, i. **Bacchi**: for the naming cf. on l. 177; for the case (influenced by Greek usage) see 91, f; for the usual construction see 99, ii. d.

216. **exempta**: supply *est*; so with *remotae, sunt*. **mensae**: as under the circumstances they would scarcely have had tables, Virgil probably uses a formula common in his own day for the conclusion of a meal.

217. **longo sermone requirunt**: freely 'they talk with lingering regret.'

218. **inter**: for the position cf. *contra*, l. 13. **seu . . sive**, used where we should have expected *utrum . . an* (64, ii.). **vivere**: supply *eos*. **credant**: the subj. is not due to the dependence of the clause, for the original form would be *credimus*, deliberative subj. (134, d; 186, b, i.). Trans., therefore, not 'they believe,' but 'they are to believe.'

219. **extrema pati**: equivalent not to *mori* (they are dying), but to *mortuos esse* (they are dead); trans. 'they bear the final doom.' **nec jam**: 'and no longer.' **vocatos**: 'when called' (42); it may be that there is an allusion to the *conclamatio* of the dead,

the calling upon the deceased by name, a preliminary of all funeral rites among the Romans.

220. **Oronti**: cf. *Achilli*, l. 30.

221. **secum**: that his comrades might not be affected by his sorrow; cf. l. 209; freely 'to himself.'

223-253. *Venus complains to Jupiter that instead of their gaining the promised kingdom, misfortune still pursues the Trojans.*

223. **finis**: i.e., of the mourning.

225. **sic**: 'in such wise,' resuming or recalling the words *despiciens . . . populos*; more freely 'as he looked.'

226. **constitit**: for the ind. with *cum* see 151, iii. **regnis**: dat. (78, v. c). [It is also explained by some as local abl.]

227. **tales**: 'all these,' to be explained by the lines preceding.

228. **tristior**: 'sadder than her wont.' Venus was often called 'the laughter-loving.' **oculos suffusa**: '(with) her eyes filled.' For the acc. after the pass. partic. (lit. *having the eyes filled*); see 69, vii.; it may also be explained as accus. of specification (or of the part affected) (73).

229. **O qui**, etc.: 'O thou who,' etc. **deum**: cf. on l. 9.

231. **Aeneas**: subj. of *potuit*, to be understood from *potuere*. **quid tantum**: 'what grievous offence or wrong.' **committere potuere**: trans. by 'can have.'

232. **quibus . . . clauditur**: 'against whom . . . is barred.' For the dat. see 79.

233. **ob Italiam**: i.e., to keep them from it.

234. **volventibus**: intrans., cf. on l. 104; trans. by 'as' clause.

235. **fore**: dependent on *pollicitus*, l. 237. **revocato**: 'restored or revived,' implying that a new lease of life was to be given to this stock. **Teucri**: genitive.

236. **qui tenerent**: for the subj. (to be translated 'were to') see 26. **omni**: 'full or universal.'

237. **pollicitus**: supply *es*; cf. on l. 202. **sententia**: 'purpose.' A poetical variation for 'what has changed thy purpose?'

238. **hec** : abl. **occasum solabar** : the accus. with *solor* (in prose *consolor*) is often that of the thing mitigated ; here trans. 'I used to console myself for,' etc.

239. **fatis**, etc. : *contraria* is best taken as 'adverse' ; 'balancing (or compensating) adverse fortune with (a different) fortune.'

240. **actos** : 'tried or harassed.'

241. **das** : 'dost thou set or appoint.'

242. **Antenor** : he is said to have led a colony of Trojans to the head of the Adriatic. **elapsus** : trans. by infin., as if co-ordinate with *penetrare*.

243. **penetrare** : 'to make his way past.' In reaching his future home he would have to pass Illyria (lying along the east coast of the Adriatic and including the country of the Liburni) and the mouth of the Timavus. **intima** : not of the interior of the country, but as lying far up the Adriatic ; 'remote.' **tutus** : in emphatic contrast with Aeneas (205, *h*).

245. **unde**, etc. : the river flowed by several underground passages through the rock into the sea ; at certain times the sea forced its way up these and overflowed the land. **murmure montis** : the roaring sound of the sea making its way up through the outlets in the rock.

246. **it** : from *eo* ; trans. 'the sea comes bursting forth.'

247. **hic** : adverb. **tamen** : although he has sought to found a city in so remote (ll. 243, 244) and strange (ll. 245, 246) a country, yet he has met entire success. **urbem Patavi** : for the gen. (in place of the more regular appositive) see 89, i. The gen. of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* ends usually in *-i* for *-ii*.

248. **armaque fixit** : after escaping some danger, or retiring from some employment, the arms or implements now disused were often hung up in a temple as a votive offering. In this case, therefore, all warfare has ceased.

249. **compostus** : cf. *repostum*, l. 26. 'Now settled in peace and calm, he rests undisturbed.'

250. **nos** : identifying herself with Aeneas' cause. **tua progenies** : in contrast with Antenor, who had no such claim ; trans.

tua, 'thine own.' *caeli*, etc. : alluding to the worship of Aeneas as a god in after times. *adnuis* : present tense, implying that what Jupiter has once promised is irrevocable.

251. *infandum* : a parenthetical exclamation : 'O woe unutterable !' *unius* : Juno.

253. *hic* : the regular agreement with the predicate (13, i.). *reponis* : *re* often signifies not *back*, but *what is due*, and Venus may be thinking, not of her protégé being restored in Italy to power such as he had once had in Troy, but of his being placed on his rightful throne, rightful because promised by Jupiter.

254-296. *Jupiter reassures Venus, and discloses to her the glorious empire that is to spring from the settlement in Latium, culminating in the reign of Caesar Augustus.*

254. *olli* : archaic for *illi*, 'upon her.'

256. *natae* : dat., lit. 'for his daughter' ; trans. however as if gen. This word, unnecessary for the sense after *olli*, suggests the tenderness of a father to his child. *dehinc* : cf. on l. 131.

257. *metu* : dat. ; cf. on *curru*, l. 156 ; 'spare thy fears' (52). *tuorum* : 'thy people's.'

258. *tibi* : indicating that Venus is interested in his statement ; freely 'be assured' (80, *b*). *Lavini* : for the quantity of *a*, as compared w. l. 2, see on *Sychaeum*, l. 348.

259. *feres ad sidera* : alluding to the deification of Aeneas after death. Cf. l. 250.

260. *neque . . vertit* : cf. on l. 237 ; freely 'nor is my purpose changed.'

261. *hic* : i.e., Aeneas. *tibi* : as in l. 258 ; here we may trans. 'as thou shalt see,' or with Mackail 'he thou lovest.' *remordet* : the force of *re* may be brought out by 'continually' or 'keeps.'

262. *longius et volvens* : 'and unrolling (or opening) the volume further' ; a metaphor from the unrolling of a scroll (the ancient form of books).

263. *Italia* : local abl. With the mission of Aeneas announced in these two lines cf. that afterwards (Book VI. ll. 851-3) assigned

to the Roman nation, of which both Aeneas and Augustus are (according to Virgil) the impersonation :

"Thine, O Roman, remember, to reign over every race!
These be thine arts, thy glories,—the ways of peace to proclaim,
Mercy to show to the fallen, the proud with battle to tame!"

—*Bowen.*

264. **ponet** : 'shall appoint or establish.'

265. **viderit** : fut. perf. indic. (178, ii. ; 155, a).

266. **terna** : with nouns found in the plural only, distributives are used in place of cardinals. **hiberna** : this is not merely a poetical way of saying 'winters,' but suggests also that Aeneas would be still in camp. **Rutulis** : not abl. absol. but dat. like *jactanti*, l. 102 ; trans. 'had passed over the Rutulians.'

267. **Iulo** : as usual in such phrases, the name is attracted into the case of the possessor (80, e). It was not the old legends that gave Ascanius this name of Iulus ; the idea seems to have originated with Julius Caesar, and was taken up by the poets of this age, who sought thereby to compliment the *Julian* family.

268. **Ilus erat**, etc. : this seems entirely out of place as addressed by Jupiter to Venus, and is really for the reader's information. **res** : 'power or state' ; cf. *res publica*. **stetit regno** : 'stood firm in royal sway.'

269. **volvendis** : occasionally the Roman poets use this participle with the force of the present part. pass. (which does not exist in Latin) ; here abl. absol. rather than abl. of quality ; 'as the months roll on.' **orbes** : 'cycles' ; the meaning is to be gathered from the context.

270. **imperio** : abl. of manner ; 'in government.' **Lavini** : cf. on *Patari*, l. 247 ; for the gen. (here to be translated by 'in') see 89.

272. **regnabitur** : impersonal pass. (56) ; 'the kingdom shall endure.' **totos** : 'full.'

273. **Hectorea** : there seems little point in the reference to Hector, except that he was the most famous of all that race. **regina** : 'royal.'

274. **Marte**, etc. : 'shall bear to Mars twin offspring.' Romulus and Remus are meant. **Ilia** : this name for Rhea Silvia keeps alive the connection with Aeneas.

275. **laetus** : 'exulting in' or 'decked with'; heroes of ancient times often thus adorned themselves with the skins of wild beasts; here it is peculiarly appropriate to the she-wolf's foster-child.

276. **excipiet** : 'shall take up,' in the sense of 'shall succeed to.' **Mavortia** : with a double reference to the descent of Romulus from Mars and to the warlike character of the nation.

278. **rerum** : 'for their empire.'

280. **metu** : abl. of means, 'with alarms' (i.e., with the fear she causes), or abl. of cause, 'in her fear'; cf. l. 23.

281. **in melius referet** : 'will change for the better,' 'will amend.'

282. **rerum** : 'of the world.' For various forces of *res*, see ll. 178, 204, 229, 268, 278, 342, 450, 452, 462. **togatam** : as the distinctive mark of the Roman citizen, and possibly with a reference to the victories of peace no less great than those of war.

283. **sic placitum** : supply *est*; 'such is my will or pleasure.' **lustris** : abl. absol.; here vaguely used of 'years' or 'ages.'

284. **Phthiam, Mycenae, Argis** : the homes of three of the greatest of the Greeks against Troy, Achilles, Agamemnon and Diomedes.

285. **-servitio premet** : Virgil has in mind the conquest of Greece, completed in 146 B.C. **Argis** : local abl.; trans. freely by 'over.'

286. **origine** : abl. of quality. **Caesar** : referring to Augustus, not to Julius Caesar, as ll. 289 and 294 show.

287. **terminet** : expressing Jove's purpose (26); trans. by 'is to' or 'shall.' For the idea cf. Milton, *Paradise Lost*, Book xii., 'He shall . . . bound his reign with earth's wide bounds, his glory with the heavens.'

289. **spoliis Orientis** : alluding to Augustus' campaigns in the East, B.C. 31 and 30, after Actium. On returning to Rome in B.C. 29 he celebrated a triple triumph for his victories, and closed the temple of Janus (cf. on l. 294).

290. **secura**: 'no longer filled with care,' as Venus now was; more freely 'thy cares at an end.' **hic quoque**: i.e., as well as Aeneas (l. 259). Even before his death Augustus was often addressed as a god.

291. **positis bellis**: trans. by coordinate principal clause. The advent of peace after several generations of civil war led many to speak of the return of the golden age to earth.

292. **cana**: as belonging to the good old days. The line celebrates the return of honor, domestic virtue, and civic harmony under Augustus' rule. **Remo**: according to the legend Remus had been killed in a quarrel with his brother. All such fratricidal strife is now to end.

293. **ferro et compagibus artis**: 'with close fastenings of iron.' For the *hendiadys* cf. on l. 61.

294. **Belli portae**: the reference is to the gates of the temple of Janus, which were closed in time of peace, but stood open in time of war. So continuously had the Romans been engaged in war that when the temple was closed by Augustus in B.C. 29 it was for the first time since 235 B.C., just after the first Punic war, and for the second time since the reign of Numa. **Furor impius**: referring to the 'unnatural' civil wars. **intus**: i.e., imprisoned within the closed temple.

297-304. *Mercury is sent to Carthage by Jupiter to ensure a welcome to the Trojans.*

297. **Maia**: for the abl. see 95. Mercury was the messenger of the gods.

298. **novae**: with *Karthaginis*, meaning 'newly built'; cf. l. 366. **pateant**: depending on the idea of ordering implied in *demittit* (27). Trans. freely, 'to have . . . opened.'

299. **hospitio**: dat. of purpose; lit. 'for a shelter'; freely 'in welcome' (81). **fati nescia**: as if it were in the power even of mortals to interfere with the working of fate. For the gen. see 90.

300. **arceret**: expressing the purpose of Jupiter, as distinct from his command (*pateant*). The difference in tense (though more

probably due to metrical convenience) may serve to distinguish them. For the sequence after the hist. pres. *demittit* see 190, vi. **magnum**: 'vast or deep.' **aera**: for the Greek accus. ending see on l. 30.

301. **remigio alarum**: Mercury's winged cap and winged sandals are compared to a ship's oars. **citus**: trans. freely by adverb (205, h).

303. **volente deo**: freely, 'at the divine command.' Our abbreviation D.V. is for *deo volente*, but in the sense of 'if (not since) God wills' (46). **quietum**: negative, 'free from alarm,' while *benignam*, l. 304, is positive, 'well-disposed or friendly.'

304. **accipit**: 'adopts'; lit. 'receives' as if from Mercury. **animum mentemque**: no distinction can be drawn here.

305-334. *Aeneas, setting out to explore the country, is met by Venus in the disguise of a huntress, of whom he asks on what coast they have been cast.*

305. **volvens**: 'who had been pondering.'

306. **ut primum**: 'as soon as'; *ut* = when (152, b). **exire**: with *constituit*, l. 309.

307. **novos**: 'strange.' **accesserit**: for mood see 35; so *teneant*. For the accus. *oras* see 69, iii.

308. **nam . . . videt** parenthetical; 'for he sees but a wilderness.' For the scansion see page 335, 4. **ne . . . ne**: rare for 'whether . . . or' (38).

309. **quaerere**: really unnecessary, as the clauses *quas . . . feraene* might have gone with *explorare*, but added for clearness' sake. **exacta**: 'his discoveries,' lit. 'the things ascertained.'

310. **in convexo nemorum**: "Here the picture is that of trees upon converging cliffs, overhanging a cove formed under them by the action of the waves." Freely, 'in a cove overarched with woods.'

311. **circum**: adverb. **horrentibus**: for the meaning cf. on l. 165.

312. **comitatus** : in some deponent verbs the perf. partic. has passive force. **Achate** : the simple abl. (of accompaniment) instead of *a^h* and abl. of personal agent.

313. **bina** : the distributive may be used of what is regarded as a pair. **lato ferro** : referring to the spear-head (105).

314. **cui** : with *obvia* ; 'to meet him came,' etc. **obvia** : in agreement with the subject in preference to the natural agreement with *se*.

315. **gerens** : 'wearing,' freely 'with.' **virginis** : repeated because only in the second case (*i.e.*, with *arma*) is it limited by *Spartanae vel qualis*.

316. **vel qualis**, etc. : 'or of such a one as H. . . when she,' etc., or more freely 'or like H. when she,' etc.; *qualis*, implying an antecedent *talis* agreeing with *virginis*. **fatigat** : 'out-tires.' The present tense is used probably because in works of art she could still be seen so employed.

317. **Hebrum** : some editors read, without MS. authority, *Eurum*.

318. **de more** : made more definite by *renatrix*, l. 319; lit. 'according to custom . . . as a huntress'; freely 'in huntress' fashion.' Venus' costume is such as is common in representations of Diana, the goddess of hunting.

319. **diffundere** : explanatory of *dederat comam ventis* ; an infin. of purpose largely due to imitation of Greek idiom; 'had loosed her tresses for the winds to toss' (22, viii.).

320. **nuda genu** : 'with knee bared'; more lit. 'bare at the knee.' For the accus. see 73. **sinus** : *i.e.*, of her garments; lit. 'having the folds gathered in a knot'; for the construction see 69, vii. and cf. l. 228. **fluentes** : 'fluttering.' The floating ends of her tunic were gathered in a knot at the breast.

321. **prior** : 'first'; the comparative, because only Venus and Aeneas are in the poet's mind. **monstrate si vidistis** : this is not an indirect question, 'tell me if (= whether) you have seen,' but a true conditional clause, 'show me, if (=in case) you have seen.'

322. **quam**: see 166, *a*. **errantem**: 'straying,' i.e., in search of game, contrasted with *cursum prementem*, l. 324, 'pressing on the track.'

325. **sic Venus**: sc. *dicit*; cf. on l. 37. **orsus**: sc. *est*; from *ordior*.

326. **audita**: sc. *est*. **mihi**: 'by me' (80, *d*, *i*.).

327. **O -quam**, etc.: instead of giving some name, he expresses his doubt of her identity. **memorem**: 'shall I call' (134, *d*). **tibi**: sc. *est*. (80, *c*).

328. **hominem sonat**: 'sounds human'; a cognate accus. like 'to look daggers' (72).

329. **an . . . an**: trans. 'art thou . . . or,' etc.; not for *utrum* . . . *an*, but two distinct questions. **sanguinis**: partitive.

330. **sis, leves**: for the mood see 135; hero trans. 'imperative, as the wish is virtually a request. So *doccas*, l. 332. **quaecumque**: sc. *est*.

332. **jactemur**: see 35. **locorumque**: for the scansion see p. 335, 7.

334. **multa**: 'many a.' **tibi ante aras**: 'before thine altars' (80, *b*). Or *tibi* may be rendered separately by 'in thy honor.'

335-385. *Venus relates to him the story of Dido and the founding of Carthage, and in answer to her questions Aeneas tells her who he is and in what misfortunes he is involved.*

335. **tum Venus**: cf. on l. 325. **me**: for the reflexive use see 164, *iii*. **honore**: trans. by 'of'; cf. the abl. with *dignus* (107, *iii*.).

336. **virginibus . . . est**: 'the Tyrian maidens are wont.' For the dat. cf. *tibi*, l. 327. **gestare**: see p. 76, *fn*.

337. **alte**: the buskin came halfway up to the knee to protect the hunter from brambles.

338. **Agenoris urbem**: more applicable to the parent city Tyre, than to the colony.

339. **genus**: in apposition with the proper name implied in *Libyci*. The same looseness is possible in English.

340. **imperium regit**: 'holds sway' or 'exercises sovereignty.'

341. *injuria*: 'the tale of wrong.'

342. *rerum*: 'of the story.'

343. *agri*: 'in land'; for the gen. cf. on *opum*, l. 14.

344. *Phoenicum*: partitive. *miseræ*: dat. like *mihi*, l. 326, rather than gen. with *amore*; 'by the hapless queen.' The epithet anticipates the story.

345. *primisque . . . ominibus*: repeats the idea of *intactam dederat*. As marriage was attended with the taking of auspices in the old days of Rome, this phrase is equivalent to 'with the first marriage rites.' *jugarat*: cf. on *onerarat*, l. 195.

347. *scelere*: see 102. *ante*: 'than,' more lit. 'beyond,' with which the positive *immanis* would be more regular.

348. *quos inter*: for the order cf. on l. 13. *medius*: 'in the midst' (205, *h*); here 'anger arose between these.' *Sychaeum*: here we have the regular quantity (*ŷ*); in l. 343 it is lengthened. The poets often take such liberties with foreign proper names; cf. on l. 258.

350. *superat*: 'strikes down.' *securus amorum*: 'regardless of his sister's love,' i.e., for her husband. For the gen. see 90, iii.

352. *multa malus simulans*: *malus* is virtually adverbial, 'wickedly'; freely 'with many a crafty pretence' (205, *h*; 203, *d*). *aegram amantem*: 'the love-sick wife.'

353. *ipsa*: 'the very.' *inhumati*: this accounts for the restlessness of the shade (according to ancient ideas) and at the same time aggravates Pygmalion's guilt.

354. *modis miris*: with *pallida*; 'in wondrous wise,' a somewhat antique phrase.

355. *crudeles*: transferred from the deed to the altars which witnessed it.

356. *nudavit*: with a different meaning as applied to the two objects, the figure known as *zeugma*; so in English, 'laid bare.'

357. *celerare*, *excedere*: for the infin. with *suadet*, cf. on *volvere*, l. 9.

358. *auxilium*: predicative with *thesauros recludit*; 'as aid' or

freely 'to aid.' **viae**: objective gen. (85). **veteres**: 'long-hidden.' **tellure**: 'from' rather than 'in.'

360. **his**: neuter; in prose *his rebus*. **parabat**: cf. on *nudavit*, l. 356.

361. **conveniunt**: the subject is suggested by the relative clause; 'those gather who had or felt.' **quibus**: cf. on *tibi*, l. 327. **tyranni**: cf. on *viae*, l. 358.

362. **paratae**: sc. *sunt*, seldom omitted in dependent clauses.

363. **avari**: recalling the original motive for the crime, and thus giving more point to the loss of these treasures.

364. **pelago**: see 99, ii., a.

365. **locos**: cf. on *Italiam*, l. 2.

367. **mercati**: sc. *sunt*. **Byrsam**: put in apposition with *solum*. The resemblance of the Phoenician *Bosra* = citadel to the Greek *byrea* = a hide, led to the invention of the story that having made the bargain spoken of in l. 368, the new-comers cut the hide into strips and thus surrounded a large tract.

368. **possent**: subj. because virtually quoting the agreement implied in *mercati* (177). Note the spondaic rhythm.

369. **vos**: emphatic; sc. *estis*.

370. **quaerenti talibus ille**: sc. *respondet*, cf. on l. 37; 'to her questions he answers in these words or thus.'

371. **imo**: see 86, iv., b.

372. **dea**: in spite of her disavowal. **si pergam**: 'were I to tell the whole story'; lit. 'if (retracing from, etc.) I were to go on' (i.e., until the end).

374. **ante**: 'sooner,' i.e., before I could end. **diem**, etc.: the evening star is pictured as laying the day to rest and closing the gates of heaven through which the sun has just departed. **componat**: the natural apodosis to *si pergam et vacet* (63).

375. **nos**: object of *appulit*. **vestras**: referring to all her people; cf. on l. 140.

376. **Trojae**: see 89.

377. **forte sua**: adds to the idea of chance the thought that caprice is natural to the winds; trans. 'in its caprice' or 'of its

own wild will.' The Trojans have no idea that Juno has caused the storm. **Libycis**: as he has just learned, l. 339. **oris**: cf. on *Latio*, l. 6.

379. **aethera**: cf. on *aera*, l. 300.

380. **patriam et genus**: 'my country and my ancestry (or my race),' by this meaning the home of his ancestors; for he had learned in a vision (Bk. III., ll. 163-168) that Dardanus, the son of Jupiter, and founder of the royal house of Troy, had originally come from Italy.

381. **denis**: distributives are regularly used in multiplication. **conscendi**: Virgil seems to have had in mind both the going on board ship (*conscendere navem*) and the apparent rising of the sea towards the horizon (for the opposite cf. *devenere*, l. 365); trans. 'I climbed the sea.'

382. **secutus**: see 44, ii.

384. **ignotus**: 'unrecognized'; thus not inconsistent with l. 379.

385. **Europa, Asia**: exiled from Troy and driven back from Italy.

385-417. *Venus announces the safety of the fleet, her words being confirmed by the omen of twelve swans settling after escaping an eagle. As she departs her godhead is recognized by Aeneas, about whom she casts a cloud that makes him invisible to all.*

385. **nec plura**, etc.: 'But Venus not enduring further complaint'; lit. 'not suffering him attempting to complain,' etc. For the conative pres. cf. 179, *d*.

387. **caelestibus**: see 78, ii. **auras . . . carpis**: 'draw the breath of life.'

388. **qui adveneris**: 'seeing (or in that) you have reached.' For the subj. see 171.

390. **reduces**: from *redux*; sc. *esse*.

391. **versis**: freely 'by the shifting of,' etc.

392. **vani**: explaining *frustra*; 'false, deceiving, or pretenders' or perhaps merely 'mistaken.' It will be best to make two clauses in translation: 'unless my parents were . . . and taught . . .'

393. **senos**: cf. on *denis*, l. 381. The number corresponds to that of the missing ships afterwards recovered. **laetantes agmine**: freely 'in joyous line.' **cynos**: these birds were sacred to Venus.

394. **Jovis ales**: the eagle. **aperto caelo**: cf. on *alto*, l. 126.

396. **aut capere**, etc.: i.e., some are settling, others are preparing to do so; it is awkward, but apparently necessary, to make *captas* mean 'chosen by the others.' This line furnishes the real parallel between the swans and the ships (cf. l. 400), and the next two lines are largely for ornament and picturesqueness.

397. **ut**: 'as.' **illi**: expressed because of the emphasis due to contrast. The movements in ll. 397-8 really occur between the time of *turbabat* and that of *capere videntur*.

398. **coetu**: to signify their reassembling after being scattered; abl. of manner.

399. **pubesque tuorum**: a poetical variant for *pubes tua*; *tuorum* is not partitive but = 'consisting of your men' (89).

400. **tenet**: in number agreeing with the nearer subject. **ostia**: 'the harbor-mouth.' **pleno velo**: trans. by 'under.'

401. **qua via**: as the scansion shows, not in agreement.

402. **avertens**: see on l. 104; 'as she turned away.' **refulsit**: expressive of the sudden burst of splendor.

404. **pedes ad imos**: except in the case of Diana, the long flowing robe was the characteristic costume of a goddess. Ignore *imos* in translation.

405. **incessu**: cf. on *incedo*, l. 46. **patuit**: 'stood revealed.' **dea**: predicate nom. For the scansion see page 335, 8.

407. **natum**: in an emphatic position. **totiens**: Virgil tells of but one former appearance since Troy fell (Bk. II., l. 589), and in that case there was no disguise. **quoque**: 'also,' 'like the rest.'

409. **non datur**: 'is it forbidden.' **veras**: i.e., without concealment or mistake.

411. **obscuro aere**: 'with dim mist.'

412. **circum . . . fudit**: a poetical separation (*tnesis*) of the word *circumfudit*. **dea**: suggesting the divine power exercised. Trans. 'by art divine.' Cf. the effect of *heros*, l. 196.

413. **ne quis . . . posset**: see 28, i. and ii. **eos**: very rare in poetry as a personal pronoun.

415. **sublimis**: 'through the air.'

416. **laeta**: contrast with *tristior*, l. 228. **templum illi**: see *est*.

418-440. *Drawing near Carthage, Aeneas finds the new colonists busy building their city, and enters invisible.*

419. **plurimus . . . imminet**: 'hangs huge (or a mighty mass) over,' etc. For the dat. see 78, v. c.

421. **molem**: 'the mass of buildings.' The general aspect comes first, then the details as he observed them.

422. **strata viarum**: a poetical variation of *stratas vias*, 'paved streets.' *Viarum* is a partitive gen. [though by some taken as verging on the gen. of quality].

423. **pars**: in partial apposition with *Tyrîi*. **ducere**: dependent on *instant* (22, viii.).

424. **subvolvere**: i.e., up to the height where the citadel was building.

425. **tecto**: dat. (81). **concludere sulco**: in order to mark its boundaries (or possibly to make the trench for the foundations).

426. **legunt**: a case of *zeugma*, 'establish or choose'; cf. on l. 356. [On the ground that this line does not harmonize with the context, and is inconsistent with l. 507, it has been suspected by many editors. Still the institution of civil government is just what a Roman would be likely to think of in this connection.]

427. **theatris**: Not implying more than one building, but the plural of majesty (see on l. 57), used to dignify an idea. For the case cf. on *tecto*, l. 425. [There is good authority also for the reading *theatri*, gen. sing.]

We have here another anachronism, for such things as dramas and theatres did not exist till about 500 B.C., and we may well doubt whether this Greek institution ever found its way to Carthage, even in later days.

430. **qualis apes exercet labor**: 'even as bees busily ply their labor'; lit. 'what manner of toil keeps busy the bees (such toil

kept them busy'). The antecedent clause is, as often, unexpressed. **nova** : 'early.'

431. **sub sole** : 'in the sunlight.'

432. **liquentia** : the scansion shows that it is from *liquor*, not *liqueo*. For the indicatives with *cum* see 149.

434. **venientum** : for the regular *venientium*, 'of the newly-arrived.' **agmine facto** : cf. on l. 82; here trans. 'in a band.'

435. **fucos pecus** : in apposition; freely, 'the lazy swarm of drones.'

436. **fervet** : 'goes on apace or goes briskly on'; the metaphor is from the boiling of water.

437. **jam** : 'already.' The struggle to found a city has been called 'the keynote of the Aeneid.'

438. **suspicit** : from this we gather that he has descended the hill.

439. **infert se** : 'he passes.' **dictu** : cf. on *risu*, l. 111.

440. **miscet viris** : as *misceo* cannot be intransitive, *se* must be supplied from l. 439; cf. on *vertuntur*, l. 158. **viris** : for the dat., meaning 'with,' see 78, vii. **ulli** : for the dat., meaning 'by' or 'of,' cf. on *mihi*, l. 326.

441-493. *Coming to a temple which Dido was building to Juno, Aeneas is touched and encouraged to find represented on its walls many scenes from the story of the siege of Troy.*

441. **umbrae** : cf. on *dives opum*, l. 14. [Another well-supported reading is *umbra*, abl. as in l. 275.]

442. **quo loco** : 'where.' **primum** : 'on their arrival' or 'at their landing'; lit. 'at the first.'

444. **sic nam fore** : depending on the idea of statement implied in *signum*.

445. **facilem victu** : 'rich in store or substance'; *victu* from noun *victus* (102). [It may be taken also as abl. supine of *vivo*, lit. 'easy at living,' i.e., 'easily subsisting' (117).] The horse presages success in war and prosperity in peace. The rearing of horses, especially of spirited war-horses, indicated a rich country.

447. **opulentum** : a case of *zeugma* (cf. on l. 356).

448. **aerea** : notice the emphatic repetition of this idea in *aere* and *aenis*; 'bronze was the threshold that rose on (or crowned) its steps, and clamped with bronze the posts.' **cui** : lit. 'with reference to which'; freely, 'its' (80, *b*); cf. *tibi*, l. 334. **limina** : the plur. probably as in l. 427. **nexaeque** : for the scansion cf. on l. 332.

449. **trabes** : subject of *surgebant* or *erant* understood. **foribus**, etc. : 'of bronze were the doors with their grating hinges'; lit. 'the hinge grated on doors of bronze.' **foribus** : local abl. or possibly dat. (lit. 'for').

450. **timorem** : as to his reception by Dido. Venus had foretold merely the recovery of his vessels.

451. **salutem** : see 69, ii.

452. **afflictis** : *i.e.*, hitherto. **rebus** : may be either dat. or abl. (52; 107, ii.).

454. **quae . . . urbi, miratur** : 'marvels at the city's prosperity.' As Sidgwick puts it, it is 'rather indirect exclamation than indirect question.'

455. **inter se** : a vague phrase, seemingly expressive of the emulation of the artists; freely, 'the handiwork of rival craftsmen.' [Others trans. 'as he compares them.' Some editions read *intra se*, 'within himself,' to be taken with *miratur*.] **operum laborem** : lit. 'the toil of their efforts'; freely, 'their toilsome labor.'

458. **saevum ambobus** : *i.e.*, to the Atridae on the one hand, to Priam on the other, *ambobus* thus being not incorrectly used of three persons. In the former case the reference is to the quarrel that arose from Agamemnon's seizure of Achilles' captive Briseis (a quarrel which, with its consequences, is the theme of Homer's *Iliad*). If there is any occasion specially referred to in the case of Priam, it is doubtless the incidents of ll. 483, 484.

461. **sunt hic**, etc. : 'here too has worth (or merit) its due reward.' Notice *sua* referring to the dat. (the logical subject). **laudi** : for dat. see 80, *e*.

462. *rerum* : objective genitive ; 'for trouble,' 85, ii. 'There are tears for trouble, and mortal sorrows touch the heart.' Bowen's rendering is, 'Tears are to human sorrows given, hearts feel for mankind.' Cf. Wordsworth, *Laodamia* :

" Yet tears to human suffering are due ;
And mortal hopes defeated and o'erthrown
Are mourned by man, and not by man alone."

463. *aliquam* : 'some measure of' ; complete salvation was to be had only in Italy. *tibi* : not, of course, separating him from the other Trojans.

464. *inani* : with peculiar pathos, suggesting that the men and scenes represented, once all his world, are now no more.

465. *multa* : 'deeply' (72). *flumine* : 'flood of tears.'

466. *uti* : 'how,' followed by subjunctives of indirect question.

469. *niveis tentoria velis* : an anachronism, for Homer's heroes had wooden huts, not tents. For the abl. see 105.

470. *primo somno* : trans. by 'in' or possibly 'by' ; the first sleep is the deepest.

473. *gustassent* : for the form see p. 67, fn. ; for the mood (virtual indirect discourse, indicating the thought of Diomedes) see 156, iv., and 177. According to the legend there was an oracle that Troy could not be taken if Rhesus' horses should once drink of the Xanthus and feed upon the grass of the Trojan plain. As soon therefore as Rhesus came to Troy to aid Priam, Diomedes and Ulysses made a night attack upon his camp and carried off the horses.

475. *impar congressus* : 'an unequal match' ; more lit., 'engaging unequally.' *Achilli* : dat. (78, v. c and vii.).

476. *curru* : dat. as in l. 156.

477. *huic* : freely, 'his' ; cf. on *cui*, l. 448.

478. *per* : 'over or along.' *versa* : 'trailing' ; lit. 'reversed.'

479. *non aequae* : 'unfriendly.'

480. *peplum* : a costly robe borne as an offering to the goddess, to win her favor.

481. **tunsae**: freely 'beating.' For the tense cf. on l. 382.
pectora: cf. on l. 228.

482. **solo**: local abl. **aversa**: 'turning away,' 'averting her face.'

483. **raptaverat, vendebat**: the difference in tense implies that only the latter was actually represented. Virgil departs somewhat from Homer's account of this incident. In the Iliad Hector is thrice chased round the walls of Troy, then overtaken and slain, after which his body is dragged at the tail of Achilles' chariot to the Grecian camp. **Hectora**: cf. on *aera*, l. 300.

484. **exanimus**: 'now lifeless,' as Virgil's idea seems to have been that Hector was dragged while yet alive behind the chariot.
auro: see 100.

485. **vero**: emphasizes *tum*; best translated by emphasis on 'then.'

486. **ut**: 'when'; the repetition expressive of emotion. **currus**: probably that of Achilles, as l. 483 would suggest.

487. **inermes**: i.e., as a suppliant. Homer tells how Priam went secretly to Achilles' tent to ransom his son's body for burial.

488. **permixtum**: i.e., 'joining in battle with.' **Achivis**: cf. on *viris*, l. 440.

489. **Eoas acies**: the Aethiopians whom Homer places, some at the extreme east, others at the extreme west of the world, and not towards the south.

490. **peltis**: abl. of quality.

492. **cingula**: for the plur. cf. on l. 57. **mammae**: dat. (78, v. c). The belt would pass over one shoulder.

493. **bellatrix** . . . **virgo**: brought into effective contrast by their position. Trans. *virgo*, 'maiden though she be.' **viris**: cf. on *Achilli*, l. 475.

494-510. *Dido now appears in the temple to dispense justice, when suddenly Aeneas sees approaching certain Trojans from the lost vessels.*

494. **Dardanio**: it has been suggested that the epithet is significant, inasmuch as Aeneas' attention is engrossed with the fortunes of the royal house of Troy of which Dardanus was the founder. **Aeneae**: with *videntur*; cf. on *mihi*, l. 326.

495. **obtutu defixus in uno**: 'rapt in one long gaze.'

496. **forma**: as in l. 72.

498. **qualis**: 'as'; the adjective shows that the comparison is between the *persons*, not their *actions*. **Eurotae, Cynthi**: two favorite haunts of Diana.

499. **exercet choros**: 'leads her bands in the dance,' or more simply, 'leads the dance.' **Diana**: elsewhere in Virgil, as regularly in Latin, with *i* short; cf. on *Sychaeum*, l. 348. **quam**: obj. of *secutae*; 'and behind her,' or 'while in her train.'

502. **tacitum**: in translation transfer the epithet to 'joy.'

503. **laeta**: trans. by adv. (205, *h*).

504. **futuris**: freely 'rising'; for the dat. see 78, v. c.

505. **foribus divae**, etc.: most ancient temples contained a building within a building, the inner shrine being the proper abode of the deity worshipped there. Thus one seated at the entrance to this inner shrine might be both *foribus divae* and *mediu testudine templi*. **testudine**: local abl.; trans. by 'beneath.'

506. **solio alte subnixa**: 'raised high upon a throne, or 'high resting on a throne.'

507. **jura legesque**: 'judgment and law'; here not to be distinguished.

508. **partibus**, etc.: 'parcelled by equal portion or gave by drawing of lot' (Bowen). More lit. 'equalized by just division or chose by lot.' **sorte trahebat**: a variation, in Virgil's fashion, of the common phrase *sortem trahere*.

509. **concurso**: of Carthaginians.

510. **videt**: for the mood after *cum* see 151, iii.

511. **aequore**: cf. on *alto*, l. 126.

512. **oras**: cf. on *Italiam*, l. 2.

VOCABULARY TO VIRGIL, AENEID I.

1-510.

A

- ā, ab,** prep. w. abl., *from; by.*
Abās, autis, m., a Trojan.
ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *hide.*
ab-eō, -ire, -ī (-ivī), -itum, *go away, depart.*
ab-ripō, ere, -ripui, -reptum, *carry off, seize.*
ab-sistō, ere, -stīti, cease, desist.
ac, conj., *and, and further.*
ac-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, *draw near, approach.*
ac-cendō, ere, -cendi, -censum, *kindle; inflame, enrage.*
ac-cingō, ere, -cīxi, -cinctum, *gird; make ready.*
ac-cipō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *receive, let in; welcome.*
ac-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *lie, recline.*
ācer, āeris, āere, *spirited, brave; keen, lively.*
Acestēs, ae, m., a Sicilian king.
Achātēs, ae or i, m., a Trojan.
Achillēs, is or i, m., the bravest of the Greeks against Troy.
Achivus, a, um, *Achaean, Grecian; as subst. in plur., the Greeks.*
aelēs, ēi, f., *line, rank; plur., forces.*
ae-us, from agō.
aeūtus, a, um, *sharp, jagged.*
ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards; at.*
ad-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *add, give.*
ad-eō, -ire, -ī (-ivī), -itum, *approach; face, meet with.*
ad-ulter, i, -ultrū or -ultrū sumi, *lean against.*
ad-nūd, ere, -nuī, -nūtum, *nod, give assent; promise.*
adōrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *adore, worship, honor.*
adulter, a, um, *full grown, mature.*
ad-venō, ire, -vēui, -ventum, *come to, reach.*
adversus, a, um, *part. of advertō, turned toward, facing, opposite, in front.*
Aeacidēs, ae, m., a son or descendant of Aeacus.
aeger, gra, grum, *sick; sad, sick at heart.*
Aeneadae, ārum, m. plur., the comrades of Aeneas; the Trojans.
Aenēās, ae, m., Aeneas, the hero of the Aeneid.
aēuus, a, um, *of bronze, copper; neut. as a subst., copper vessel, cauldron.*
Aeolia, ae, f., an island near Sicily.
Aeolus, i, m., the god of the winds.
aequō, āre, āvi, ātum, *make equal, match.*
aequor, oris, n., *sea.*
aequus, a, um, *even; favorable, friendly.*
āēr, āeris, m., *air, cloud, mist.*
aereus, a, um, *of bronze; bronze.*
aes, aeris, n., *bronze; something made of bronze.*

- aes-tās, -tātis, f., summer.**
aestus, ōs, m., surge, surf.
ae-tās, -tātis, f., age, time.
aeternus, a, um, eternal, undying.
aether, eris, m., the upper air; the heavens, sky; heaven.
aetherius, a, um, of the sky or heaven.
afflictus, a, um, shattered, ruined.
Āfricus, i, m., the south-west wind.
Agēnor, oris, a king of Phoenicia, ancestor of Dido.
ager, agri, m., land.
agger, eris, m., mound, heap, bank.
agmen, minis, n., train, band.
a-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvi, -gnitum, recognize.
agō, ere, ēgi, actum, drive, impel.
Alō, defective vb., say, speak.
Ālāx, ātis, m., a Greek warrior.
Ala, ae, f., wing.
Alba, ae, f., Alba Longa, an ancient city in Latium.
Albānus, a, um, of Alba, Alban.
Alis, Alitis, m. or f., bird.
Alētēs, is, m., a Trojan.
aliqui, qua, quod, indef. adj., some.
aliter, adv., otherwise; hand aliter, even so.
alius, a, ud, other; in plur., others; repeated in plur., some—others.
alligō, āre, āvi, ātum, fasten.
al-loquor, i, -locutus sum, speak to, address.
alvus, a, um, kindly, gracious.
altē, adv., on high, high.
altus, a, uni, high, lofty, stately; deep, profound; neut. as subst., altum, i, n., heaven, the sky; the deep, the sea.
amāns,antis, pres. part. of amō, as subst., m. or f., a lover.
Amāzonis, idis, f., an Amazon.
ambāgēs, is, f., circuit; in plur., details.
ambō, ae, ō, in plur. only, both (dat. and abl., ambōbus, ambābus).
ambrosius, a, um, immortal, ambrosial.
amictus, ōs, m., veil, cloak, covering.
amicus, i, m., friend.
ā-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, lose.
amor, ōris, m., love, longing.
Amycus, i, m., a Trojan.
an, conj., or.
ancora, ae, f., anchor.
anima, ae, f., breath, spirit, life.
animus, i, m., soul, mind, heart, spirit; feeling, disposition; courage; rage, passion.
annālēs, īum, m. plur., history, account, story.
ante, prep. w. acc., before; adv., before, formerly, sooner.
Antēnor, oris, m., a Trojan.
Antheus, i, m., a Trojan.
antiquus, a, um, old, ancient.
antrum, i, n., cave, cavern.
aper, apri, m., wild boar.
aper-iō, ire, -ui, -tum, lay open, disclose, open up.
apertus, a, um, open; clear, cloudless.
apis, is, f., bee.
appāreō, ēre, ui, itum, appear.
ap-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive to, bring to.
aqua, ae, f., water.
Aquilō, ōnis, m., the north wind.
āra, ae, f., altar; Ārae, ārum, the Altars.
arbor, -oris, f., tree.
arboreus, a, um, of a tree; tree-like, branching.
arcānum, i, n., a secret, mystery.
arceō, ēre, ui, keep away, keep afar.

arcus, *as*, *m.*, bow.
 Ardēns, *entis*, fiery, eager.
 Ardeō, *ēre*, *arsī*, *Arsum*, burn; rage.
 arēna, see *harēna*.
 argentum, *i*, *n.*, silver.
 Argī, *ōrum*, *m.* plur., Argos, a city in the Peloponnesus.
 Argivī, *ōrum*, *m.* plur., the Argives, the Greeks.
 Aridus, *a*, *um*, dry.
 arma, *ōrum*, *n.*, plur., arms, weapons; instruments, utensils.
 armentum, *i*, *n.*, herd.
 arrectus, *a*, *um*, part. of *arrigō*, pricked up, attentive.
 arti-fex, -fex, *m.*, craftsman, artist.
 artus, *us*, *m.*, limb.
 artus, *a*, *um*, part. of *arceō*, close.
 arvum, *i*, *n.*, field.
 arx, arcia, *f.*, citadel, stronghold; tower, height.
 Ascanius, *i*, *m.*, the son of Aeneas.
 ascendō, *ere*, -scendī, -scensum, climb, mount, ascend.
 Asia, *ae*, *f.*, Asia.
 aspectō, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*, look upon, gaze at.
 asper, *era*, *erum*, harsh, fierce.
 aspiciō, *ere*, -spexī, -spectum, behold, see.
 Assaracus, *i*, *m.*, a king of Troy, grandfather of Anchises.
 at, conj., another form of *at*.
 a-stō, or *ad-stō*, -stāre, -stetī, stand, alight.
 astrum, *i*, *n.*, star.
 at or *at*, conj., but.
 ater, tra, trum, black, dark, gloomy.
 atque, conj., and, and also.
 Atreus, *ae*, *m.*, son of Atreus.
 attollō, *ere*, lift up, raise.
 audeō, *ēre*, ausus sum, dare, venture.
 audīō, *ire*, *ivi*, *itum*, hear.

augurium, *i*, *n.*, art of divination, augury.
 aula, *ae*, *f.*, hall, court, palace.
 aura, *ae*, *f.*, air; breath.
 aureus, *a*, *um*, of gold, golden.
 auris, *is*, *f.*, ear.
 aurum, *i*, *n.*, gold.
 auster, *tri*, *m.*, the south wind; in general, a gale.
 ausus, from *audeō*.
 aut, or; aut-aut, either-or.
 auxilium, *i*, *n.*, aid, assistance.
 avārus, *a*, *um*, covetous, greedy.
 ā-vehō, *ere*, -vexī, -vectum, carry away, bear away.
 āver-tō, *ere*, -tī, -sum, turn away, keep from, drive off.

B

Bacchus, *i*, *m.*, the god of wine; hence, wine.
 beātus, *a*, *um*, happy, blessed.
 bellatrix, *icis*, *f.*, warrior maiden, warrior.
 bellō, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*, war, wage war.
 bellum, *i*, *n.*, war, warfare.
 benignus, *a*, *um*, kindly, friendly.
 bibō, *ere*, *bibi*, drink.
 binī, *ae*, *a*, a pair, two.
 birēmis, *is*, *f.*, a vessel with two banks of oars; galley, ship.
 bis, adv., twice.
 bonus, *a*, *um*, good, kindly, generous.
 brevis, *e*, short; neut. plur. as subst., brevia, *ium*, shoals.
 Byrsa, *ae*, *f.*, the citadel of Carthage.

C

cadō, *ere*, cecidi, cāsum, fall.
 cadus, *i*, *m.*, jar.
 caecus, *a*, *um*, blind, blinded; hidden, secret.
 caedēs, *is*, *f.*, slaughter, carnage.

caelestis, *c*, heavenly, celestial;
m. plur. as subst., **caelestes**,
Ium, the gods.

caelum, *I*, n., sky, heaven.

Caesar, aris, m., Caesar Augus-
tus, the first emperor of Rome.

Calens, *I*, m., a Trojan.

calēō, ēre, nī, glow.

campus, *I*, m., plain.

canō, ere, ceculī, sing; tell of.

cantus, ūs, m., song, singing.

cānus, a, um, hoary; venerable.

capess-ō, ere, -ivī, -itum, do, exe-
cute, carry out.

caplō, ere, cēplī, captum, take;
occupy; choose.

cap-ut, -itis, n., head.

Capys, yos, m., a Trojan.

carcer, eris, m., prison, dungeon.

card-ō, -inis, m., hinge.

carpō, ere, -si, -tum, pluck, enjoy.

cārus, a, um, dear, beloved.

castra, ōrum, n. plur., camp.

cāsus, ūs, m., fall; chance; mis-
fortune, mishap, disaster; loss,
doom.

caterva, ae, f., train, throng.

causa, ae, f., cause, reason.

cavō, āre, āvī, ātum, hollow.

cavus, a, um, hollow.

cecidī, from cadō.

cel-er, -eris, -ere, swift.

celerō, āre, āvī, ātum, hasten.

cella, ae, f., cell.

cēlō, āre, āvī, ātum, conceal, hide.

celsus, a, um, lofty, high.

centum, indecl. num. adj., hun-
dred.

Cereālis, e, of Ceres; w. arma,
for grinding corn or making
bread.

Cer-ēs, -eris, f., the goddess of
agriculture; hence, corn, grain.

cernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, see,
perceive.

certē, adv., surely, assuredly.

certus, a, um, fixed, sure, inevit-
able.

cervix, icis, f., neck.

cervus, *I*, m., stag, deer.

chors, *I*, m., lance, band.

clugō, ere, cluxī, cluctum, sur-
round, gird, encircle.

cingulum, *I*, n., girdle, belt.

circum, adv. and prep. w. acc.,
around, about.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum,
surround, encircle.

circum-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fū-
sum, pour around; envelop,
wrap, encompass.

cltō, (cltins, cltissimē), adv.,
quickly.

cltus, a, um, quick, swift.

clam, adv., secretly.

clāmor, ōris, m., shout, shouting.

clārus, a, um, famed, renowned.

classis, is, f., fleet.

clau-dō, ere, -si, -sum, close, shut;
shut in, enclose.

claustra, ōrum, n. plur., barriers.

Cloanthus, *I*, m., a Trojan.

coetus, ūs, m., company, throng,
flock.

cōgnōmen, minis, n., surname;
name.

col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,
gather, collect.

collis, is, m., hill.

colō, ere, coluī, cultum, till;
cherish.

colōnus, *I*, m., settler.

columna, ae, f., column, pillar.

coma, ae, f., hair, locks, tresses.

comitor, āri, ātus sum, accom-
pany, attend.

commisum, *I*, n., offence.

com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -misum,
commit, transgress.

com-movēō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,
move; disturb, alarm.

compāgēs, is, f., joint, seam, fas-
tening.

con-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum,
settle, still, quiet, calm; lay to
rest.

compositus, for compositus.

concillō, āre, āvi, ātum, win
over, obtain.

conclūdō, ere, -si, -sum, enclose.

con-currō, ere, -curri (-cucurri),
-cursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

concursum, engage, fight.

co-orior, Iri, -ortus sum, arise.

cor, cordis, n., heart; in plur.,
feelings, temper.

cornū, ūs, n., horn; antler.

corp-us, -oris, n., body; figure,
form.

cor-ripiō, ere, -ripiui, -reptum,
seize, snatch up, catch up; w.
viam, hasten over, speed on.

cor-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum,
spoil.

coruscus, a, um, waving, flicker-
ing, tremulous.

costa, ae, f., rib; side.

cothurnus, I, m., hunting-boot,
buskin.

crēber, bra, brum, frequent, in-
cessant; full (of), abounding
(in).

crē-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, believe;
think.

crīnis, is, m., the hair, locks.

crispō, āre, ātum, brandish.

crīstātus, a, um, crested, plumed.

crūdēlis, e, cruel, bitter, relent-
less.

cruentus, a, um, blood-stained.

cum, prep. w. abl., with.

cum, conj., when.

cumulus, I, m., heap, mass.

cunctus, a, um, all, the whole.

cūr, adv., why?

cūra, ae, f., care; grief, sorrow,
anxiety.

currus, ūs, m., chariot, car.

cursus, ūs, m., running; track.

cusp-is, -idis, f., spear-point,
spear.

Cyclōplus, a, um, of the Cyclops.

cycnus, I, m., swan.

Cymothoē, ēs, f., a sea-nymph.

Cynthus, I, m., a mountain in
Delos, the birth-place of Apollo
and Diana.

Cytherēa, ae, f., the Cytherean,
that is, Venus, who rose from
the sea near Cythera, an island
in the Aegean.

D

DanaI, ōrum, m. plur., the Greeks.
(daps), daps, f., (regularly plur.),
feast, banquet.

Dardanius, a, ōi, Dardanian;
Trojan.

dē, prep. w. abl., from; according
to.

dea, ae, f., goddess.

decus, oris, n., ornament.

dēfessus, a, um, part. of dēfētis-
cor, worn out, weary.

dē-flgō, ere, -fixi, -fixum, fix.

dē-fluō, ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, flow
down, glide, fall.

dehinc, adv., then, thereupon.

de-hiscē, ere, -hivi, yawn.

deinde, adv., thereupon, then.

Dēlepā, ae, f., a nymph.

dē-mittō, ere, -misi, -misum,
send down, transmit; in part.,
derived, drawn, inherited.

dēni, ae, a, ten each, ten.

dē-ripiō, ere, -ripi, -reptum,
tear off, tear away.

dēsertus, a, um, deserted; neut.
plur. as subst., dēserta, ōrum,
solitudes, desert, wilderness.

dē-sistō, ere, -steti, -stitum, aban-
don, give up.

dēspectō, āre, look down upon.

dē-spicō, ere, -spexi, spectrum,
look down upon.

dēsuper, adv., from above; above.

dē-trādō, ere, -trāsi, -trāsūm,
push off.

dens, i, m., god.

dē-veniō, ire, -vēni, -ventum,
come down; reach, come to.

dextra, ae, f., the right hand.

Diāna, ae, f., goddess of hunting.

diciō, ōnis, f., sway, dominion.

dico, āre, āvi, ātum, assign.

dico, ere, dixi, dictum, say,
speak, tell; call, name.

dictum, i, n., word.

Didō, -ās, or -ōnis (acc. Didō), f.,
founder and queen of Carthage.

diēs, ēi, m., day, daylight.

dis-fundō, ere, -fudi, -fūsum,
scatter, blow or toss about.

dignor, āri, ātus sum, deem
worthy.

dilectus, a, um, part. of diligō,
loved, beloved.

di-rigō, ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, direct,
turn.

dirus, a, um, dread, grim.

discrimen, inis, n., crisis,
peril.

dis-jiciō, ere, -jeci, -jectum, scat-
ter, disperse.

dis-jungō, ere, -jūxi, -jūctum,
separate, sever.

dis-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsus,
scatter.

distendō, ere, -di, -tum, distend,
swell, fill.

ditissimus, from dives.

dū, adv., for a long time, long.

diversus, a, um, part. of divertō,
in different directions, apart,
asunder; remote, distant, vari-
ous.

div-es, -itis (ditior, ditissimus),
rich, wealthy.

di-vidō, ere, -vixi, -visum, divide,
share.

divinus, a, um, godlike, of deity.

divus, i, m., god.

dō, dare, dedi, datum, give, grant,
afford; put, set; give forth,
utter; w. vēla, spread or set
sail.

doc-eō, ēre, -ni, -tum, teach, show,
tell.

doleō, ēre, ui, itum, grieve, resent,
be vexed.

dolor, oris, m., sorrow, grief, dis-
tress; resentment.

dolus, i, m., trick, wile.

dominor, āri, ātus sum, rule,
reign over.

dominus, i, m., master, lord,
ruler.

domus, *ūs* and *I*, *f.*, house, home, abode; race.

dōnee, conj., until.

dōnum, *I*, *n.*, gift; offering.

dorsum, *I*, *n.*, back; reef.

dubius, *a, um*, in doubt, doubtful.

dūcō, *ere, dūxi, ductum*, lead; draw; trace; derive; in pass., spring.

ductor, *ōris, m.*, leader.

dulcis, *e*, sweet, fresh; pleasant.

dum, conj., while, as long as; until.

dupl-ex, -leis, twofold, two.

dūrō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, be patient, endure.

dux, *ducis, m.* and *f.*, leader.

E

ē, prep., see **ex**.

ē-dūcō, *ere, -dūxi, -ductum*, lead out, lead forth.

ēfferō, *efferre, extuli, ēlātum*, raise, lift up.

ē-ficiō, *ere, -fēci, -fectum*, form, make.

ē-fodiō, *ere, -fodi, -fossam*, dig out, dig up.

ē-fundō, *ere, -fudi, -fūsum*, pour forth; breathe out.

ēgēs, *entis*, part. of **egēō**, destitute, in want.

ego, *mei*, pron., *I*.

ē-gredior, *I, -gressus sum*, go out, disembark.

ēgregius, *a, um*, illustrious, distinguished.

ē-lābor, *I, -lāpsus sum*, slip away; elude.

ē-mittō, *ere, -misi, -missum*, send forth, let loose.

ēn, interj., lo! behold!

enim, conj., for.

ēō, *Ire, Ivi (II), Itum*, go, come, pass; pour forth.

ēōus, *a, um*, eastern.

epulae, *āram, f. plur.*, feast, banquet.

equidem, adv., truly, indeed.

equus, *I, m.*, horse, steed.

ē-ripiō, *ere, -ripi, -reptum*, snatch away, take (from).

errō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, wander, stray.

et, conj., and; also, too; even; et . . . et, both . . . and.

etiam, conj., even; too.

Eurōpa, *ae, f.*, Europe.

Eurōtās, *ae, m.*, the river on which Sparta stood.

Eurus, *I, m.*, the southeast or east wind; wind in general.

ē-vertō, *ere, -verti, -versum*, upturn.

ex (or **ē** sometimes before a cons.), prep. w. *abl.*, out of, from; of; in accordance with.

exāctus, *a, um*, part. of **exigō**, ascertained, discovered.

exanimus, *a, um*, lifeless.

exaudiō, *Ire, Ivi, Itum*, hear.

ex-ēdō, *ere, -cessi, -cessum*, go forth, depart, withdraw.

exēdium, *I, n.*, downfall, destruction.

ex-ēdō, *ere, -ēdi, -ēsum*, fall out; pass away, fade.

ex-ēdō, *ere, -ēdi, -ēsum*, hew out.

ex-ēpiō, *ere, -ēpi, -ēptum*, take from, take up.

ex-ēdō, *ere, -ēdi, -ēsum*, strike out.

ex-ēutō, *ere, -ēussi, -ēussum*, shake off, throw out.

exēptus, from **eximō**.

ex-ēō, *Ire, -II (-Ivi), -Itum*, go forth.

exercēō, *ēre, uī, Itum*, keep busy, keep in motion; exercise.

ex-igō, *ere, -ēgi, -āctum*, pass, spend.

ex-imō, *ere, -ēmi, -ēptum*, take away, remove; satisfy.

expediō, ire, ivi (ii), itum, bring out, make ready.

experior, iri, -pertus sum, make trial of, have experience of.

explēō, ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, fill out, complete.

explōrō, āre, āvi, ātum, find out, discover.

exsertus, a, um, part. of exserō, thrust out, uncovered.

explrō, āre, āvi, ātum, breathe out, breathe forth.

extemplō, adv., at once, straight-way, forthwith.

extrēmus, a, um, extreme; last; neut. plur. as subst., extrēma, ōrum, final doom.

extuli, from efferō.

ex-ūrō, ere, -ūsi, -ūstum, burn up, consume.

F

facilis, e, easy; prosperous.

faciō, ere, feci, factum, do, make.

factum, i, n., deed, exploit, enterprise.

falsus, a, um, part. of fallō, false, feigned.

fama, ae, f., report; repute, glory, renown, fame.

famēs, is, f., hunger.

fās, indecl. n., divine law; fās est, it is right, one's duty, ordained.

fastigium, i, n., pinnacle, roof, gable; point (of a story).

fatigō, āre, āvi, ātum, tire, weary; vex, harass.

fatiscō, ere, yawn, gape.

fātum, i, n., oracle; destiny, fate, fortune; doom.

fax, facis, f., torch, firebrand.

fēlix, icis, happy; gracious.

fēmina, ae, f., woman.

fera, ae, f., wild beast.

ferina, ae, f., venison.

feriō, ire, strike, smite.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, carry, bring; with sē, move, advance; raise, exalt; say.

ferōx, ōcis, bold, fierce, haughty.

ferrum, i, n., iron; something made of iron, spear-head, sword.

fer-veō, ēre, -bui, boil, be hot.

fessus, a, um, weary.

fētus, a, um, teeming, laden.

fētus, ūs, m., offspring, brood.

Fidēs, ei, f., personified, Faith, Honor.

fiducia, ae, f., confidence.

fidus, a, um, trusty, faithful.

figō, ere, fixi, fixum, fix, fasten up; pierce, transfix.

filius, i, m., son.

finis, is, m., end; in plur., borders, land.

fixus, from fici.

flamma, ae, f., fire.

flammō, āre, āvi, ātum, inflame, kindle.

flectō, ere, flexi, flexum, turn; guide.

flōrens, a, um, flowery.

fluctus, ūs, m., wave, billow.

flūmen, minis, n., stream, flood.

fluō, ere, fluxi, fluxum, flow.

foedus, eris, n., treaty; law.

folium, i, n., leaf.

fōmes, itis, m., dry fuel, tinder.

fōns, fontis, m., spring, source.

for, fāri, fātus sum, speak, say.

fore, fut. infin. of sum.

foris, is, f., door.

fōrma, ae, f., form; beauty.

fors, fortis, f., chance; forte, as adv., by chance, haply.

forsan, adv., perhaps, perchance.

fortis, e, brave, valiant.

fortūna, ae, f., fortune (good or bad), fate, lot.

fortūnātus, a, um, happy, fortunate.

foveō, ere, fōvi, fōtum, cherish, foster.

frāgor, ōris, m., din, uproar.

frāgrāus, autis, part. of frāgrō, sweet-scented, fragrant.

frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctum, break, snap; crush, grind.

frāter, tris, m., brother.

frēmō, ere, -ni, -itum, rage, rave.

frēnō, āre, āvi, ātum, curb, restrain.

frigus, oris, n., cold, chill.

frondens, a, um, leafy.

frōns, frontis, f., brow; front.

frustrā, adv., in vain.

frustum, i, n., piece, bit.

frūx, frūgis, f., (generally plur.), fruit, grain.

fūcus, i, m., drone.

fuga, ae, f., flight; speed.

fuglō, ere, fūgi, fugitum, flee, flee or fly from.

fugō, āre, āvi, ātum, put to flight, chase away, scutter, dispel.

fulmen, minis, n., lightning, thunder-bolt.

fulvus, a, um, tawny.

fundamentum, i, n., foundation.

fundō, ere, fūdi, fūsum, pour; stretch, lay low.

fūnus, eris, n., funeral rites; death.

furia, ae, f., madness, frenzy.

furō, ere, -ni, rage, be furious.

furor, ōris, m., fury, madness, rage, frenzy; personified, Fury.

fūsus, a, um, part. of fundō, stretched.

futūrus, a, um, part. of sum, future, coming, which is to be.

G

galea, ae, f., helmet.

Ganymēdēs, is, m., Ganymede, cup-bearer of the gods.

gaudium, i, n., joy.

gāza, ae, f., treasure.

geminus, a, um, twin.

gemitas, ūs, m., groan, sigh.

gemō, ere, -ni, -itum, groan, sigh; bewail, mourn, lament.

genitor, ōris, m., father, sire.

gentilis, a, um, part. of gigno, sprung, descended; child or son.

gēns, gentis, f., race, people, nation; swarm.

genū, ūs, n., knee.

genus, eris, n., birth, descent; kin, race, people.

germānus, i, m., brother; germana, ae, f., sister.

gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, bear, carry, wear; carry on, wage.

gestō, āre, āvi, ātum, bear, carry.

gignō, ere, genui, gentum, bear, beget.

glomerō, āre, āvi, ātum, gather; in pass., throng.

gradior, i, gressus sum, advance, go.

gradus, ūs, m., step.

Grāi. (or Grāii), ōrum, m. plur., the Greeks.

grandaevus, a, um, aged.

gravis, e, heavy; pregnant; grievous; of weight, influential, revered.

graviter, adv., heavily; deeply.

gressus, ūs, m., step, course.

gurg-es, -ilis, m., whirlpool, swirling waters, flood.

gustō, āre, āvi, ātum, taste.

Gyās, ae, m., a Trojan.

H

habēna, ae, f., rein.

habēō, ēre, -ni, -itum, have, hold, possess.

habilis, e, handy, ready, light.

habitus, ūs, m., appearance, bearing; dress, raiment, garb.

hæc, adv., *on this side*; **hæc-hæc**, *here-there*.

haerēō, ēre, haesi, haesum, *cling, be caught*; **stand fast, remain fixed**.

hālō, āre, āvi, ātum, *be fragrant*.

hārēna, æ, f., *sand*; *beach*.

Harpalycē, es, f., a princess and huntress of Thrace.

hasta, æ, f., *spear*.

hastile, is, n., *spear-shaft, spear*.

haud, adv., *not, by no means*.

Hebrus, l, m., a river of Thrace.

Hector, oris, m., the eldest son of Priam and bravest of the Trojans.

Hectoreus, a, um, of Hector; hence, generally, *Trojan*.

herba, æ, f., *grass, sword*.

hēr-ōs, -ōis, m., *hero*.

heus, interj., *ho!*

hiberna, ōrum, n. plur., *winter-camp*; *winter*.

hic, hæc, hōc, *this*.

hic, adv., *here, hereupon*.

hiems, hieims, f., *storm, tempest*.

hic, adv., *hence, from this, thence*; *then, thereupon*; **hinc atque hinc**, *on this side and on that, on each side, around*.

hom-ō, -ōis, m. and f., a mortal man; in plur., *people*.

honor, ōris, m., *honor*; *offering, sacrifice*; *reward, recompense*.

horrēns, entis, part. of horredō, *bristling, shaggy*; *gloomy*.

horridus, a, um, terrible, dreadful.

hospitium, l, n., *shelter, welcome*.

hostia, æ, f., *victim, sacrifice*.

hostis, is, m., (usually plur.), *enemy*.

hūc, adv., *to this place, hither*.

humerus, see *numerus*.

humus, l, f., *ground*; **humī**, locative, *on the ground*.

ibidem, adv., *in the same place*.

idem, eadem, idem, *the same*.

ignārus, a, um, ignorant (of), unacquainted (with).

ignāvus, a, um, idle, lazy.

ignis, is, m., *fire, flame*; *thunderbolt, lightning, flash*.

ignōbilis, e, base, low-born.

ignōtus, a, um, unknown, secret, hidden.

Ilia, æ, f., a poetical name of Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.

Ilacus, a, um, of Ilium, Trojan.

Ilas, adis, f., *Trojan woman*.

Ilioneus, ei, m., a comrade of Aeneas.

Ilum, l, n., a name of Troy.

Ilus, a, um, Ilian, Trojan.

ille, a, ud, that; as subst., *he, she, it*.

illuc, adv., *there*.

il-lidō, ere, -lidi, -lissum, *dash upon*.

Illyrieus, a, um, of Illyria.

Ilus, l, m., an earlier name of Iulus or Ascanius, the son of Aeneas.

imāgō, -ōis, f., *likeness, form*; *ghost, phantom*.

im-ber, -bris, m., *rain, water*.

immāns, e, huge, vast, enormous; monstrous, atrocious.

imminēō, ēre, overhang.

immitis, e, merciless, ruthless.

immōtus, a, um, unmoved, secure, fixed.

im-par, -paris, unequal.

im-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, *strike, smite*; *force, drive*.

imperium, l, n., *command*; *authority, power*; *sovereignty, sway, lordship*; *dominion, empire*.

impius, a, um, sacrilegious, unholy, unnatural.

- im-pleō, ēre, -plēvi, -plētum, fill;**
in pass., *take one's fill.*
- im-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, place upon, set on.**
- Imus, a, um, lowest, deepest; the bottom of, the depths of, inmost.**
- In, prep. (1) w. abl., in, on; (2) w. acc., into, to, upon, against, on, among.**
- inānis, e, empty, unreal, unsubstantial.**
- incautus, a, um unsuspecting, off one's guard.**
- in-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, go, move, advance.**
- inceptum, I, n., purpose.**
- incessus, ōs, m., gait, carriage.**
- incub-ō, āre, -ui, -itum, lie upon, brood over.**
- incultus, a, um, uncultivated, wild.**
- in-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum, rest upon, fall upon.**
- incūsō, āre, -ui, -itum, reproach, upbraid.**
- in-cutiō, ere, -cussi, -cussum, strike into.**
- inde, adv., thence; then.**
- indignor, āri, -ātus sum, be indignant, chafe.**
- inermis, e, unarmed.**
- infandus, a, um, unutterable.**
- infelix, icis, luckless, unfortunate.**
- Inferō, inferre, intuli, illātum, bring to; w. se, advance; w. bellum, make, wage.**
- in-fligō, ere, -fixi, -fixum, fix upon, impale.**
- in-gemō, ere, -gemi, groan, sigh.**
- ingens, entis, huge, vast, massive, enormous; great, mighty, heavy.**
- inhumātus, a, um, unburied.**
- inimicus, a, um, hostile, unfriendly; deadly.**
- injūria, ae, f., wrong; insult, affront.**
- inquam, inquit, defective verb, say (said) I.**
- In-scribō, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, write on, mark, score.**
- In-sequor, I, -secutus sum, follow, pursue; follow up, dog.**
- insignis, e, distinguished, conspicuous.**
- In-stō, -stāre, -steti, -stātum, press on, pursue; be eager, intent.**
- Insula, ae, f., island.**
- Insuper, adv., above, over.**
- intāctus, a, um, maiden, virgin.**
- Intentō, āre, -ui, -itum, threaten.**
- Inter, prep. w. acc., between, among, amid, through; Inter se, with one another.**
- interē, adv., meanwhile, meantime.**
- Interfor, āri, -ātus sum, interrupt.**
- Intimus, a, um, superlative of interior, inmost.**
- inton-ō, āre, -ui, -itum, thunder.**
- Intractābilis, e, untamable.**
- Intus, adv., within.**
- in-vehō, ere, -vexi, -vectum, bear along; in pass., be borne, ride.**
- invisus, a, um, hated, hateful, detested.**
- ipse, a, um, self (emphatic), himself; very.**
- Ira, ae, f., anger, wrath.**
- is, ea, id, he, she, it; that, this.**
- Italia, ae, f., Italy.**
- Italus, a, um, Italian, as subst., Itali, ōrum m., the Italians.**
- Iter, itineris, way, course.**
- Iūlus, I, m., a name of Ascanius, Aeneas' son.**

J

- Jaceō, ēre, -ui, -itum, lie; be outspread or outstretched; lie slain.**
- Jactō, āre, -ui, -itum, toss; pour forth, utter; revolve; w. se, boast, vaunt.**
- Jaculor, āri, -ātus sum, hurl, dart.**

jama, adv., now, already, at length; thereafter; **jami tum**, even then, already.

Jovis, see **Juppiter**.

jubeō, ēre, **jūssī**, **jūssum**, order, bid, command.

judicium, i, n., judgment, decision.

jugō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, join, marry.

jugum, i, n., yoke; height, ridge.

Jullus, i, m., the name of a Roman family, to which Julius Caesar and Augustus belonged.

jungō, ere, **jūnxī**, **jūnctum**, join, unite.

Jūnō, ōnis, f., queen of the gods, sister and wife of Jove.

Juppiter, Jovis, m., the supreme deity of the Romans.

jūs, **jūris**, n., justice, law.

jūssum, i, n., bidding, command.

jūstus, a, um, just; fair.

juvenis, is, m., youth, lad.

juventus, tātis, f., the youth (collectively).

juvō, āre, **jūvī**, **jūtum**, aūt; be pleasant, give pleasure.

K

Karthagō, inis, f., Carthage, a city in Northern Africa.

L

lābor, i, **lāpsus sum**, slip; glide away, pass away; swoop.

labor, ōris, m., labor, toil, work, task; hardship, sorrow, trouble.

lacrima, ae, f., tear.

lacrīmō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, weep.

laedō, ere, **laesī**, **laesum**, injure; offend, thwart.

laetor, āri, **ātus sum**, rejoice.

laetas, a, um, glad, joyous, gay; luxuriant, rich.

lapsus, from **lābor**.

largus, a, um, copious.

lātē, adv., widely, far and wide.

latēns, entis, part. of **lateō**, hidden.

lateō, ēre, uī, lie hid; be unknown to, escape the knowledge of.

Latīnus, a, um, of Latium, Latin.

Latium, i, n., a district of Italy, south of the Tiber.

Lātōna, ae, f., the mother of Apollo and Diana.

lātus, a, um, broad, widespread, farspread.

latus, eris, n., side.

laus, laudis, f., praise; worth, merit.

Lāvīntum, i, n., a city of Latium, built by Aeneas, and named in honor of his second wife Lavinia.

Lāvīnus, a, um, of Lavinium, Lavinian.

laxus, a, um, loose, loosened.

legō, ere, **lēgī**, **lēctum**, choose.

lēnīō, īre, **lēvī** (II), **lētum**, allay, calm.

levis, e, light, rapid.

teyō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, ruiſe; ease, lighten.

lēx, **lēgis**, f., law.

lībō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, touch lightly, kiss.

Liburnī, ōrum, m. plur., a tribe in Illyria, on the Adriatic.

Libya, ae, f., Libya, North Africa.

Libyeus, a, um, Libyan, of Libya.

līmen, mīnis, n., threshold; courts, palace.

līquēns, entis, part. of **līquor**, flowing, liquid.

litus, oris, n., shore, beach, coast.

locō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, place, set; establish, build, fix.

locus, i, m., (plur., **loca**, n., or **locī**, m.), place, spot, region, land, country.

longē, adv., far, afar; comparative, longius, further.

longus, a, um, long, lingering.

lōrum, i, n., thong; rein.

luctor, ārl, ātus sum, struggle.
lūcus, l, m., grove.
lūdō, ere, lūsi, lūsum, sport;
mock, delude, cheat.
lūmen, mīnls, n., light; eye.
lūnātus, a, um, moon-shaped,
creescent.
lūd, ere, lūi, lūtum (lūtum),
wash away, atone for, expiate.
lupa, ae, f., she-wolf.
lūstrō, āre, āvi, ātum, survey,
scan.
lūstrum, l, n., period of five years.
lūx, lūcis, f., light; daylight,
dawn.
Lycii, orum, m. plur., the Lycians,
from Lycia, a district of Asia
Minor.
Lycus, l, m., a Trojan.
lynx, lynceis, m. and f., lynx.

M

maculōsus, a, um, spotted, dap-
pled.
maerō, āre, grieve, sorrow.
maestus, a, um, sad, gloomy,
anxious.
māgālla, lum, n. plur., huls.
magis, adv., more.
magister, trl, m., master; helms-
man.
magistrātus, ūs, m., magistratē.
māgnānīmus, a, um, great-
souled, noble.
māgnus, a, um (māior, māxi-
mus), great, large; mighty, loud,
strong.
Māia, ae, f., the mother of Mer-
cury.
malum, l, n., evil, misfortune.
malus, a, um, evil, wicked; rafty.
mamma, ae, f., breast.
manēō, ēre, mānsi, mānsūm,
remain, abide.
manus, ūs, f., hand; handiwork.
mare, is, n., sea.
Mārs, Mārtis, m., the god of war.

māter, mātris, f., mother.
mātūro, āre, āvi, ātum, hasten,
speed.
Māvortius, a, um, of Mavors, i.e.,
Mars.
medius, a, um, in the middle, the
midst, mid.
mel, mellis, u., honey.
metior, ius, comparative of
bonus, better.
metius, adv., better.
membrum, l, n., limb.
memini, isse, (perf. stem with
force of pres.), remember, recall.
Memnōn, onis, m., king of the
Ethiopians, and ally of the Tro-
jans.
memor, oris, mindful, remember-
ing; relentless, unforgetful.
memorō, āre, āvi, ātum, tell, re-
count; call, name.
mēns, mentis, f., mind; heart,
soul.
mēnsa, ae, f., table.
mēnsis, is, m., month.
mereor, ārl, ātus sum, buy, par-
chase.
meritum, l, n., service, merit.
mēta, ae, f., limit, bound.
met-ō, ere, -ul, -ātum, fear, be
afraid of, dread.
metus, ūs, m., fear.
meus, a, um, my.
mīc-ō, āre, -ul, dart; gleam, flash.
mille (plur., mīlla or mīlle),
thousand.
ministrō, āre, āvi, ātum, serve,
tend; supply, provide, furnish,
lend.
minor, ārl, ātus sum, threaten;
tower threateningly.
mirābilis, e, wonderful.
mirandus, a, um, wonderful; n.
as subst., wonder, marvel.
miror, ārl, ātus sum, wonder at,
marvel at, admire.
mirus, a, um, wonderful, marvel-
lous.

miscēō, ēre, miscul, mixtum,
mingle, mix; confound, disturb,
throw into confusion.

miser, era, erum, hapless, ill-
fated.

miserābilis, e, pitious, lament-
able.

mitēō, ere, soften, grow mild, or
gentle.

mittō, ere, misl, missum, send;
dismiss, lay aside, put away.

modō, adv., only.

modus, I, m., way, fashion.

moenia, lum, n. plur., walls.

mōlēs, is, f., mass; task, work.

mōlitor, Irl, Itus sum, labor at,
build; cause.

mollis, Ire, Ivl (II) Itum, soothe,
calm.

mōns, montis, m., mountain.

mōnstrō, āre, āvl, ātum, show,
point out, point.

mora, ae, f., delay.

mors, mortis, f., death.

morsus, ūs, m., bite; of an anchor,
fluke.

mortalis, e, mortal.

mōs, mōris, m., custom; law.

mōvō, ēre, mōvl, mōtum, move,
arouse, disturb; disclose.

mutēō, ēre, -al, -sum, calm,
soothe, lull.

multum, adv., much, greatly.

multus, a, um, much, many;
abundant, great, thick, heavy.

mūnīs, Ire, Ivl (II) Itum, fortify,
defend.

mur-mur, -moris, n., roaring.

mūrus, I, wall.

Mūsa, ae, f., Muse, goddess of
poetry.

Mycēnae, ārnm, f., the city of
Agamemnon in Greece.

N

nam, conj., for.

namque, conj., for.

nāus, from nō.

nāscor, I, nātus sum, be born.

nāta, ae, f., daughter.

nātus, I, m., son.

nāvigō, āre, āvl, ātum, sail.

nāvis, is, f., ship, vessel.

nē, conj., that not, lest.

-ne, interrog. enclitic; in direct
questions, untranslated; in in-
direct questions, whether.

nebula, ae, f., cloud, mist.

nee, conj., see neque.

needum, adv., not yet.

nect-ar, -aris, n., nectar.

nectō, ere, nexul (nexl), nexum,
bind, fasten, clasp.

nemus, oris, n., grove, wood.

Neptūnus, I, m., Neptune, the god
of the sea.

neque or nec, conj., and not, but
not, nor; **neque-neque, neither**
—nor.

nescius, a, um, ignorant, un-
aware.

neu, conj., and not, nor.

nexus, from nectō.

nl, conj. (=nisi), if not, unless.

niger, gra, grum, black, dusky,
swarthy.

nimbus, I, m., storm-cloud, cloud.

nitēns, entis, part. of nitēo,
bright.

niveus, a, um, snowy.

nō, nāre, nāvl, swim.

nōdus, I, m., knot.

nōmen, minis, n., name.

nōn, adv., not.

noster, tra, trum, our.

nōtus, a, um, part. of nōscō,
known, well-known.

Notus, I, m., south wind.

novem, nine.

novus, a, um, new; early; strange.

nox, noctis, f., night.

noxa, ae, f., offence, fault, guilt.

nūbēs, is, f., cloud.

nūdō, āre, āvi, ātum, lay bare.
nūdus, a, um, bare, uncovered.
uāllus, a, um, no, none.
nōmen, minis, n., divinity, sanctity; divine purpose, presence, assent or approval.
numerus, i, m., number.
nunc, adv., now.
nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum, announce, declare.
nūtrimentum, i, n., food; fuel.
nūtrix, icis, f., nurse.
nympha, ae, f., nymph.

O

Ō, interj., O!
ob, prep. w. acc., on account of, for, for the sake of.
objectus, ōs, m., jutting out, opposition, interposition.
oblātus, from **offerō**.
ob-rūd, ere, -rui, -runtum, sink, overwhelm.
obscurus, a, um, dark, dim.
obtūtus, ōs, m., look, gaze.
obvius, a, um, in one's way, to meet.
occlusus, ōs, m., fall, destruction.
oc-culō, ere, -cului, -cultum, hide, conceal.
oc-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum, fall, die.
Oceanus, i, m., ocean.
oculus, i, m., eye.
odium, i, n., hatred, hate.
odor, ōris, m., odor, fragrance.
offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum, put in the way, present; pass., appear, present itself.
Ōlleus, ei, king of the Locri, father of the lesser Ajax.
Ōlim, adv., at some time, hereafter, some day.
olle = ille (archaic).
Olympus, i, m., a mountain in Thessaly, regarded as the abode of the gods; hence, heaven.

ōmen, minis, n., omen; rite.
omnipotēs, entis, almighty, omnipotent.
omnis, e, all, every, the whole.
onerō, āre, āvi, ātum, load; stow, store.
onus, eris, n., burden, load.
onustus, a, um, loaded, laden.
op-perior, iri, -peritus and -pertus sum, await, wait for.
oppet-ō, ere, -ivi (ii), -itum, meet; (sc. mortem), die, perish.
op-primō, ere, -pressi, -pressum, overwhelm.
(ops), opis, f., power; in plur., riches, wealth, resources.
optātus, a, um, part. of **optō**, desired, longed for, welcome.
optō, āre, āvi, ātum, wish, desire; choose.
opulentus, a, um, rich, enriched.
opus, eris, n., labor, work, effort.
ōra, ae, f., coast, shore.
ōra, from **ōs**.
orbis, is, m., circle; cycle; orbis terrarum, world.
ordior, iri, ōrsus sum, begin.
ōrdō, inis, m., row, train, array; ex ordine, in order, in succession.
Ōrēas, adis, f., mountain-nymph.
Ōriēns, entis, m., the East.
origō, inis, f., origin, birth, descent; beginning.
Ōrontēs, is or i, m., a Trojan.
ōs, ōris, n., mouth; face.
ōsculum, i, n., mouth, lip.
os-tendō, ere, -tendi, -tensum and -tentum, show, point out.
ōstium, i, n., mouth, entrance.

P

pābulum, i, n., pasture, grass.
Pallas, adis, f., the Greek goddess of wisdom and war, corresponding to the Roman Minerva.

- pallidus**, a, um, *pale*.
palma, ae, f., *palm, hand*.
pandō, ere, pandi, pāsum or passum, *spread out; dishevel*.
Paphos, I, f., a city of Cyprus, sacred to Venus.
Parcae, ārum, f. plur., *the Fates*.
parcō, ere, peperci (parci), parciū (parsum), *spare*.
parcūs, entis, m. and f., *parent, father*.
Paris, idis, m., a son of Priam.
parō, āre, āvi, ātum, *prepare, make ready*.
pars, partis, f., *part, portion; repeated, some—others*.
partior, tri, itus sum, *share; divide*.
partus, ūs, m., *birth*.
pascō, ere, pāvi, pāstum, *feed, feast; in pass., graze*.
passus, from pandō, or from patior.
Patavium, I, n., a city near the head of the Adriatic, now Padua.
pateō, ēre, ui, *be open, lie open; be manifest, be revealed*.
pater, tris, m., *father; sire, lord*.
patior, pati, passus sum, *suffer, endure, bear; allow, permit*.
patria, ae, f., *native country, home*.
pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.
pectus, oris, n., *breast; heart*.
pecus, oris, n., *herd; swarm*.
pelagus, I, n., *sea, main*.
pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsum, *drive*.
pelta, ae, f., *shield*.
Penātes, tum, m. plur., *the Penates, the household gods*.
pendeō, ēre, pependi, *hang, be suspended, overhang*.
penetrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *penetrate*.
penitus, adv., *far within; far away*.
Penthesillēa, ae, f., *queen of the Amazons, ally of the Trojans*.
peplus, I, m., or **peplum**, I, n., *robe*.
per, prep. w. acc., *through, throughout, during; over, along*.
peragrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *wander over, traverse*.
per-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *bear; w. reflexive, betake one's self, go*.
perhō, āre, āvi, ātum, *blow over*.
Pergama, ōrum, n. plur., *the citadel of Troy; Troy*.
pergō, ere, perrēxi, perrētum, *go on, proceed*.
per-lābor, I, -lāpsus sum, *glide over*.
permisceō, ēre, -miscui, -mixtum, *mix, mingle*.
peremptō, āre, āvi, ātum, *per-vade, fill*.
pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.
petō, ere, -ivi (-it), -itum, *seek, make for*.
pharetra, ae, f., *quiver*.
Phoebus, I, m., a name of Apollo the Sun-god, brother of Diana.
Phoenices, um, m. plur., *the Phoenicians*.
Phryges, um, m. plur., *the Phrygians; generally, the Trojans*.
Phrygiās, a, um, *Phrygian; Trojan*.
Phthia, ae, f., *the home of Achilles, in Thessaly*.
pletūra, ae, f., *painting, picture*.
pletās, tātis, f., *dutiful conduct; filial love, reverence, loyalty*.
pluguīs, e, *fat; rich*.
plus, a, um, *dutiful, good, pious*.
placeō, ēre, ui, itum, *be pleasing; impersonal, placet, placitum est, it seems best, it is willed*.
placidus, a, um, *calm, quiet*.
plācō, āre, āvi, ātum, *calm, soothe*.
plaga, ae, f., *region, quarter, tract*.
plēnus, a, um, *full*.
plūrimus, a, um, *superlative of multus*.

plūs, plū- (comparative of **multus**), *more*.

poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty*.

Poeni, ōrum, m. plur., *the Carthaginians (strictly, the Phoenicians)*.

polliceor, ōri, itus sum, *promise*.

polus, i, m., *the pole; the heavens*.

pondus, eris, n., *weight, mass*.

pōnō, ere, posui, positum, *put, place, set, lay; establish, appoint; lay aside*.

pontus, i, m., *sea*.

populus, i, m., *people, nation; throng*.

porta, ae, f., *gate, passage*.

portō, āre, āvi, ātum, *carry, bear, bring*.

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, haven*.

poscō, ere, poposci, *ask, demand*.

possum, posse, potui, *be able, can*.

post, adv., *afterwards*; **prep. w. acc.**, *behind*.

posthabeō, ēre, ui, itum, *esteem less, hold less dear*.

postquam, conj., *after, when, as soon as*.

potēns, entis, part. of possum, *powerful; ruler (over), master (of)*.

potter, iri, itus sum, *gain, reach*.

praecipuē, adv., *especially*.

praeda, ae, f., *booty, spoil*.

praemium, i, n., *reward*.

praeruptus, a, um, part. of praerumpō, *broken, steep, sheer*.

praesaepe, is, n., *hive*.

praesēns, entis, part. of praesum, *present; instant, immediate*.

prae-stō, āre, -stiti, -stātum or -stitum, *surpass, excel; impersonal, praestat, it is better*.

practereā, adv., *besides; hereafter*.

prae-vertor, i, outstrip.

premo, ere, pressi, pressum, *press, keep down; check, restrain; control; overwhelm, cover; press after, pursue*.

Priamus, i, m., *Priam, king of Troy*.

primum, adv., *first, at first*.

primus, a, um, first, foremost, earliest; in primis, especially.

prin-ceps, -cipis, adj., *foremost; subst., chief, leader*.

prior, ōris, *comparative adj., former, first*.

prius, before, sooner.

priusquam or prius . . . quam, conj., *before*.

pro, prep. w. abl., *for, in behalf of; in return for*.

procella, ae, f., *blast, gust, squall*.

procul, adv., *far off, far*.

prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *betray, abandon*.

profectuscor, i, profectus sum, *set forth, come*.

profugus, a, um, exiled.

profundus, a, um, deep, profound.

prōgeniēs, ēi, f., *offspring, race*.

prōiēs, is, f., *offspring, race*.

prō-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *promise*.

prōnus, a, um, bending forward, headlong.

proprius, a, um, one's own.

prōra, ae, f., *proic*.

prō-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *hurl forth*.

prōraptus, a, um, part. of prō-rumpō, *rusting or bursting forth*.

prospectus, ūs, m., *view, outlook*.

prō-spicō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, *see, perceive, spy*.

proximus, a, um, nearest.

pūbēs, is, f., *youth, young men*.

puer, eri, m., *child, boy, lad*.

pūgna, ae, f., *battle, combat*.

pulcher, ehra, ehrum, *fair, beautiful; goodly, noble*.

pulsus, from pellō.

pulvis, -eris, m., *dust*.

Pūnicus, a, um, *Punic, Phoenician.*

puppis, is, f., *stern; generally, ship, vessel.*

purpureus, a, um, *purple, red.*

Pygmalion, ōnis, m., *the brother of Dido.*

Q

quā, adv. rel., *where; indef., in any way.*

quaerō, ere, **quaesivi** (**quaesivi**), **quaesitum**, *seek, search out; ask, inquire.*

quālis, e, rel., *of such sort, such as, as, like.*

quam, conj., *than.*

quandō, conj., *since.*

quantus, a, um, rel., *as great as, as much as.*

quater, adv., *four times.*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and; -que . . . -que, both . . . and.*

queror, I, **questus sum**, *complain.*

qui, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that; interrog. adj., what? indef. adj., any.*

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *whoever, whatever.*

qui-escō, ere, **ēvi**, **ētum**, *rest, repose.*

quiescens, a, um, *tranquil, peaceful.*

quā, adv., *nay even, nay more.*

quippe, adv., *surely; ironically, forsooth.*

Quirinus, I, m., *a name of Romulus.*

quis, **quae**, **quid**, interrog. pron. and adj., *who? what? n. as adv., quid, why? indef. pron., any one.*

quisquam, **quaequam**, **quidquam** or **quicquam**, *anyone.*

quisquis, **quidquid** or **quicquid**, *whoever.*

quō, inter. adv., *whither, where.*

quondam, adv., *once, formerly.*

quoque, conj. or adv., *also, too.*

R

rabies, em, ē, f., *rage, fury.*

rapidus, a, um, *hurrying, swift.*

rapiō, ere, **rapui**, **raptum**, *seize, carry off; hurry; rescue.*

rapiō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, *drag.*

rārus, a, um, *scattered, here and there.*

ratis, is, f., *ship.*

recens, entis, *fresh.*

re-cipiō, ere, **-cēpi**, **-ceptum**, *recover, rescue.*

re-clūdō, ere, **-clūsi**, **-clūsum**, *disclose.*

red-dō, ere, **-didī**, **-ditum**, *give back, return; utter.*

redolēō, ēre, **ui**, *smell of, be fragrant.*

re-dūcō, ere, **-dūxi**, **-ductum**, *bring back.*

reductus, a, um, part. of **redūcō**, *deep, retired.*

re-dux, **-ductus**, *restored, returned, returning.*

referō, **referre**, **rettuli**, **relātum**, *bring back, restore; report; speak, utter.*

re-fulgēō, ēre, **-fulsi**, *shine.*

re-fundō, ere, **-fūdī**, **-fūsum**, *pour back.*

refusus, a, um, part. of **refundō**, *pouring forth, boiling up.*

rēgina, ae, f., *queen; in appos. as adj., royal.*

regiō, ōnis, f., *tract, region.*

rēgius, a, um, *royal, queenly.*

rēgnō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, *reign, rule.*

rēgnum, I, n., *kingdom, realm, dominion; seat of empire, queen city.*

regō, ere, **rēxi**, **rēctum**, *rule, sway, control.*

rēliquae, ārum, f. plur., *remnant.*

rēmigium, I, n., *oarage, rowing, oars.*

re-mordeō, ēre, **-morsum**, *gnaw, vex, torture.*

re-movēō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,
remove, clear away.

rēmūs, I, m., oar.

Rēmūs, I, m., the brother of Romulus.

re-pendō, ere, -pendī, -pēsum,
balance.

repet-ō, ere, -īvī (-II), -itum,
search back, retrace.

re-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum,
put back, restore; put in rightful place.

repositus, a, um, contracted for **repositus**, part. of **reponō**, laid up, stored, buried.

re-quirō, ere, -quisivī (-II), -quistum, seek; miss, regret.

rēs, rei, f., thing, affair, event, state of things, fortune, power.

re-sidō, ere, -sēdī, -sēditum, take one's seat.

resupinus, a, um, fallen backwards.

re-surgō, ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, rise again.

re-tegō, ere, -texī, -tectum, uncover, disclose, reveal.

revisō, ere, revisit.

revocō, ēre, -vōcī, -vōctum, recall; restore, renew, revive.

rēx, rēgis, m., king, ruler.

Rhēsus, I, m., a Thracian king, ally of Troy.

rima, ae, f., crack, chink, scum.

rīpa, ae, f., bank.

Rōma, ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, a, um, of Rome, Roman; as subst., *u* Roman.

Rōmulus, I, m., the founder of Rome.

roseus, a, um, rosy, roseale.

rota, ae, f., wheel.

rudēs, eutis, m., rope; in plur., rigging, cordage.

ruina, ae, f., fall, downfall, ruin.

ruō, ere, ruī, rutum, trans., upturn, stir up, throw up; intrans., rush forth, pour forth.

rūpēs, is, f., rock, cliff.

rūs, rūris, n., country, field.

Rutuli, ōrum, m. plur., the Rutulians, an ancient people of Latium, who opposed the settlement of Aeneas.

S

Sabaens, a, um, Sabaeen, of Saba, a town in Arabia famous for its frankincense.

sacerdōs, ōtis, m. and f., priest, priestless.

saeculum, I, n., generation; age.

saepe, adv., often.

saepiō, īre, saepī, saeptum, enclose, surround; girl.

saeviō, īre, ī (-īvī), ītum, rage.

saevus, a, um, fierce, cruel, pitiless, relentless, stern.

sagitta, ae, f., arrow.

sāl, salis, m. and n., salt; brine; the sea, the deep.

salūs, ūtis, f., safety; relief.

Samos, I, f., an island near Asia Minor, sacred to Juno.

sāctus, a, um, part. of **sancio**, sacred; august.

sanguis, iulis, m., blood; race, line.

Sarpēdōn, ōtis, m., king of Lycia, ally of the Trojans.

sator, ōris, m., father.

Sāturna, ae, f., the daughter of Saturn, i.e., Juno.

saxum, I, n., rock, stone.

scena, ae, f., background; scene; loosely, stage (i.e., stage-buildings).

scelus, eris, n., crime, guilt, villainy.

scēptrum, I, n., sceptre; power.

scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, split, divide.

scintilla, ae, f., spark.

scdō, īre, īvī, ītum, know.

scopulus, I, m., crag, rock.

scūtum, I, n., shield.

- Scyllaeus, a, um, of Scylla, a sea-monster dwelling on a dangerous rock in the strait between Italy and Sicily.**
sēcessus, ūs, m., recess, inlet.
secō, āre, secuī, sectum, cut.
secundus, a, um, following; favoring, prosperous.
sēcūrus, a, um, free from care; heedless, regardless.
sed, conj., but.
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit, be seated.
sēdēs, is, f., seat, abode, home, dwelling.
sedile, is, n., seat.
sēditio, ōis, f., strife, riot.
sēmīta, ae, f., pathway, path.
senātus, ūs, m., senate.
sēxi, ae, a, six each; six.
sententia, ae, f., opinion; purpose.
seutiō, ire, sēusi, sēusum, perceive.
septem, seven.
sequor, I, secutus sum, follow, pursue; attend; trace, recount.
serēnō, āre, āvi, ātum, calm, clear.
Sergestus, I, m., a Trojan.
sermō, ōis, m., talk, conversation, discourse.
serta, ōrum, n. plur., part. of serō, wreaths, garlands.
servitium, I, n., slavery, bondage.
servō, āre, āvi, ātum, keep, preserve; maintain, cherish.
sēsē=sē, from sui.
seu, conj., see sive.
si, conj., if, in case.
sic, adv., thus, so.
Siculus, a, um, Sicilian, of Sicily.
Sidonius, a, um, of Sidon, Sidonian; loosely, Tyrian.
sidus, eris, n., star.
signum, I, n., sign, token.
sileō, ēre, ui, be silent, calm, still.
sillex, telis, m. and f., flint.
silva, ae, f., wood, forest.
similis, e, like, similar.
Simois, -entis, m., a river near Troy.
simul, adv., at the same time, together.
simulō, āre, āvi, ātum, pretend, feign.
sine, prep. w. abl., without.
singuli, ae, a, one each; v. plur., singula, as subst., each detail.
sino, ere, sivi, situm, permit, allow.
sinus, ūs, m., fold; curre; bay, inlet.
sive or seu, conj., or if; repeated, whether—or.
socius, I, m., companion, comrade.
sōl, sōlis, sun; sunlight.
sollum, I, n., throne.
sōlor, āri, ātus sum, console; mitigate.
solum, I, n., ground, land.
solvō, ere, solvi, solutum, loosen, relax; dismiss, banish.
somnus, I, m., sleep, slumber.
son-ō, āre, -ui, -itum, sound, resound; sound like.
sonōrus, a, um, sounding, roaring.
soror, ōris, f., sister.
sors, sortis, f., lot.
Spartānus, a, um, Spartan.
spelunca, ae, f., cave, cavern.
spernō, ere, sprēvi, sprētum, despise, scorn, slight.
spērō, āre, āvi, ātum, hope for.
spēs, ei, f., hope.
splrō, āre, āvi, ātum, breathe.
spolium, I, n., plunder, spoil.
sprētus, from spernō.
spūma, ae, f., foam.
spūmō, āre, āvi, ātum, foam.
stabilis, e, enduring, lasting.
stāgnum, I, n., still water.
sternō, ere, strāvi, strātum, stretch out; lay low, bring down.

stipō, āre, āvi, ātum, press, pack;
crowd around, attend.

stō, stāre, steti, statum, stand,
stand firm.

strātum, I, n. (part. of **sternō**),
pavement.

strepitus, ōs, m., noise, din.

stridē, ēre, and **stridō, ere**,
stridi, make a shrill or harsh
sound; whistle, howl, flap, whirr,
grate.

stridor, ōris, m., a shrill or harsh
sound; rattling, whistling, creak-
ing.

studium, I, n., zeal; pursuit.

stupē, ēre, **ui**, be astonished, be
amazed.

suā-deō, ēre, -si, -sum, urge,
counsel.

sub, prep. w. abl., beneath.

subāctus, from **subigō**.

sub-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go under;
come up, enter, approach.

sub-igō, ere, -egi, -ectum, con-
quer, subdue.

subitō, adv., suddenly.

sublimis, e, aloft, on high.

sub-mergō, ere, -mersi, -mersum,
sink, drown, overwhelm.

sub-nectō, ere, -nexi, -nexum,
bind beneath, clasp under.

subnixus, a, um, supported (by),
resting (on).

sub-rideō, ēre, -risi, smile.

sub-volvō, ere, roll up.

sue-clugō, ere, -cluxi, cluctum,
gird.

suecīplō=suscīplō.

suf-fundō, ere, -fudi, -fūsum,
overspread, fill.

suī, reflexive pron., 3rd pers., him-
self, herself, itself, themselves;
him, her, them.

sulcus, I, m., furrow.

sum, esse, fui, be, exist, belong.

summus, a, um (superlative of
superns), highest; top of, sum-
mit of, height of; chief, main,
supreme.

super, adv., above; further, be-
sides; prep. w. acc., above, upon,
beyond.

superbus, a, um, haughty, arro-
gant; exultant, flushed; fierce.

super-ēmineō, ēre, tower above.

superō, āre, āvi, ātum, surmount;
pass beyond, pass; overcome;
overpower.

super-sum, -esse, -fui, be left, re-
main, survive.

superus, a, um, upper; m. plur.
as subst., **superi, ōrum**, the gods
above.

supplex, icis, suppliant.

suppliciter, adv., as suppliants,
in suppliant guise.

sūra, ae, f., calf; leg, ankle.

surgō, ere, surrexi, surrectum,
rise.

sus-cīplō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, lake
up, catch.

sus-pendō, ere, -pendi, -pēsum,
hang, suspend.

su-spicō, ere, -spexi, -spectum,
look up at, regard.

suspirō, āre, āvi, ātum, sigh.

suus, a, um, one's own.

Sychaeus, I, m., the husband of
Dido.

syrtilis, is, f., shoal, quicksand.

T

tābeō, ēre, drip.

tabula, ae, f., plank.

tacitus, a, um, silent.

tālis, e, such, of such a kind, such
as this, like this.

tamen, conj., yet, still.

tandem, adv., pray, I pray, pri-
thee.

tangō, ere, tetigi, tactum, touch.

tantus, a, um so great, so much,
such.

taurinus, a, um, of a bull, a bull's.

tectum, I, n., roof; dwelling, home.

tegmen, minis, n., covering; skin.

- tellūs, ōrls, f., *land*.
 telum, I, n., *weapon; spear*.
 temperō, āre, āvi, ātum, *calm; soothe, appease*.
 tempestās, tātlis, f., *storm, tempest*.
 templum, I, n., *temple, shrine*.
 tempus, orls, n., *time, period*.
 tendō, ere, tetendi, tentum and tēnsūm, *stretch, extend; w. gressum, or intrans., bend one's steps, take one's way, press on; strive, aim*.
 teneō, ēre, tenui, tentum, *hold; possess, occupy, inhabit; keep, hold fast, cling to*.
 tentorium, ī, n., *tent*.
 ter, adv., *thrice, three times*.
 tergum, I, n., *back; hide, skin; ā tergō, behind*.
 tergus, orls, n., *back; skin, hide*.
 terminō, āre, āvi, ātum, *bound, limit*.
 terni, ae, a, *three each; three*.
 terra, ae, f., *earth, land, ground*.
 terreō, ēre, ui, itum, *terrify*.
 tertius, a, um, *third*.
 testūdō, iulsi, f., *a tortoise-shell; vault, vaulted roof*.
 Tencer, eri, m., *the first king of Troy*.
 Teueri, ōra, m. plur., *the descendants of Teucer, the Trojans*.
 theatrum, I, n., *theatre*.
 thesaurus, I, m., *treasure, hoard*.
 Thrēssa, ae, f., adj., *Thracian*.
 thymum, I, n., *thyme*.
 Tiberinus, a, um, *of the Tiber*.
 Timāvus, I, m., *a river of Italy, flowing into the upper Adriatic*.
 timor, ōrls, m., *fear*.
 togātus, a, um, *wearing the toga*.
 tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātum, *raise*.
 torquēō, ēre, torsi, tortum, *whirl; hurl, fling*.
 torreo, ēre, ui, tostum, *parch, roast*.
 tot, indecl., *so many*.
 totiens, adv., *so often*.
 totus, a, um, *all, the whole*.
 trabs (trabēs), trabis, f., *beam*.
 trahō, ere, trāxi, trāctum, *draw; drag*.
 trā-jielō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, *pierce*.
 trāns-eō, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, *pass*.
 trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *transfer, remove*.
 trāns-figō, ere, -fixi, -fixum, *pierce*.
 tremō, ere, -ui, *tremble, quiver*.
 trēs, tria, *three*.
 tridēns, entls, m., *trident*.
 trigintā, indecl., *thirty*.
 Trinacrius, a, um, *Sicilian*.
 tristis, e, *sad, sorrowful*.
 Tritōn, ōrls, m., *a sea-god*.
 Trōilus, I, m., *a son of Priam*.
 Trōja, ae, f., *Troy*.
 Trōjānus, a, um, *Trojan, of Troy*.
 Trōlus, a, um, *Trojan*.
 Trōs, ōrls, m., *a Trojan*.
 tu, pron., *thou, you*.
 tum, adv., *then, at that time; now; thereupon; next*.
 tumidus, a, um, *swollen*.
 tundō, ere, tulidi, tūsum or tūsum, *beat*.
 turba, ae, f., *throng, confused crowd*.
 turbō, āre, āvi, ātum, *drive in confusion*.
 turbō, iulsi, m., *whirlwind, hurricane*.
 tūs, tārls, n., *incense*.
 tūtus, a, um, part. of tūcor, *safe, sheltered; u. as subst., safety, a place of safety*.
 tūus, a, um, *thy, thine*.
 Tydīdēs, ae, m., *son of Tydeus, Diomedes*.
 tyrannus, I, m., *tyrant*.

Tyrtus, a, um, *Tyrian, of Tyre; Carthaginian*, m., as subst., **Tyrī**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tyrians*.

Tyrrhēnus, a, um, *Tyrrhenian, Etruscan*.

Tyrs, I, f., *Tyre, a city of Phoenicia*.

U

ubi, rel. adv., *where, when, as soon as*.

ullus, a, um, *any; anyone*.

umbra, ae, f., *shade, shadow*.

umectō, āre, āvi, ātum, *wet, bedew*.

umerus, I, m., *shoulder*.

unā, adv., *together*.

uncus, a, um, *hooked, crooked*.

unda, ae, f., *wave, billow, sea*.

unde, adv., *whence, from whom*.

unus, a, um, *one; a single; alone*.

urbs, is, f., *city*.

urgueō or **urgeō**, ēre, ursi, *drive, force*.

ut or **utī**, adv., *how, as; just as; when; conj., w. subj., that, in order that*.

utor, I, ūsus sum, *use, make use of*.

V

vacō, āre, āvi, ātum, *be free; impers., there is time or leisure*.

vadum, I, n., *shoal; bottom of the sea, the depths*.

validus, a, um, *stout, strong*.

vallis (**vallis**), is, f., *valley, vale*.

vānus, a, um, *empty; idle, vain; false*.

varius, a, um, *various, changing*.

vāstō, āre, āvi, ātum, *lay waste, devastate, make desolate, ravage*.

vāstus, a, um, *vast, huge, enormous; mighty*.

-ve, enclitic conj., *or*.

vehō, ere, vexi, vectum, *bear, carry*.

vel, conj., *or*.

vellvolus, a, um, *sail-winged, studded with sails*.

vellum, I, n., *sail; canvas*.

velut, **velutī**, adv., *just as, as, as if*.

vēnatrīx, is, f., *huntress*.

ven-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *sell*.

veniō, ire, vēni, ventum, *come*.

ventus, I, m., *wind*.

Venus, eris, f., *the goddess of love and beauty, mother of Aeneas*.

vērō, adv., *in truth, truly*.

verrō, ere, verri, versum, *sweep*.

vertex, is, m., *whirlpool, eddy; crown, head; crest, top, height*.

ver-tō, ere, -tī, sum, *turn; reverse, change, shift; overturn, overthrow; in pass., turn*.

verū, ūs, n., *spit*.

vērū, a, um, *true, genuine*.

vesper, eris and eri, m., *the evening star*.

Vesta, ae, f., *the goddess of the hearth and household*.

vester, tra, trum, *your*.

vestis, is, f., *raiment, robe*.

vet-ō, āre, -ui, -itum, *forbid*.

vetus, eris, *old, ancient*.

via, ae, f., *way, street; journey*.

vici, from **vincō**.

victor, ōris, m., *victor, conqueror; as adj., victorious, triumphant*.

victus, ūs, m., *food, substance*.

victus, from **vincō**.

videō, ēre, vidi, vīsum, *see; perceive; in pass., seem*.

vinciō, ire, vinxī, vinctum, *bind*.

vincō, ere, vici, victum, *conquer, overcome, defeat*.

vinculum (**vinculum**), I, n., *bond, fetter*.

vinum, I, n., *wine*.

vir, I, m., *man; hero*.

virēs, from **vis**.

virgō, luls, f., maiden, virgin.
vis (vis), f., strength, power, might;
 violence, fury.
viscus, eris, n. (generally in plur.),
 the vital parts; flesh.
visū, from videō.
vitalis, e, of life.
vivō, ere, vixi, victum, live, be
 alive.
vivus, a, um, living; natural,
 native.
vix, adv., hardly, scarcely.
vocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call, sum-
 mon; call upon, invoke.
volō, velle, volui, will, ordain.
volō, āre, āvi, ātum, fly, speed.
volucer, eris, ere, winged, swift.
volvō, āre, āvi, ātum, revolve;
 ponder.
volvō, ere, volvi, volvitum, roll;
 roll up, send rolling; unroll;
 roll round, roll on; revolve,
 ponder.

vorō, āre, āvi, ātum, swallow up,
 engulf.
vōtum, i, n., vow, prayer.
vōx, vōcis, f., voice, word, speech,
 accent.
vulgō, āre, āvi, ātum, spread
 abroad.
vulgus, i, m. and n., the common
 people, common herd; mob.
vulnus, eris, n., wound.
vultus, ōs, m., countenance, face;
 aspect, look.

X

Xanthus, i, m., a river near Troy.

Z

Zephyrus, i, m., the west wind.

INDEX.

(The references are to the sections of the Syntax and Composition, beginning on page 169).

- Ablative absolute, 45-50; 104.
- Ablative case, various uses of, 92-108; 45-50: 54, 55.
- Accompaniment, ablative of, 103.
- Accusative and infinitive construction, 14-18.
- Accusative case, various uses of, 69-75.
- Adjectives, used as substantives, 205, *g*; used as adverbs, 205, *h*; used in a partitive sense, 86, iv, *b*; genitive with, 90; dative with, 78, ii.; ablative with, 107, iii.
- Adverbial accusative, 72, *i*.
- Agent, ablative of, 97; dative of, 80, *d*; the secondary agent, 90, *i*.
- Agreement, forms of, 10-13.
- aliquis**, use of, 167, *a*.
- alius**, use of, 168, *a*.
- alter**, use of, 168, *b*.
- Antecedent, peculiarities of, 173; agreement of pronoun with, 13.
- Apposition, 10.
- Arrangement of words and clauses, 1-9.
- Causal clauses, 145-148, 171.
- Cause, ablative of, 96.
- Characteristic, relative clause of, 32.
- Cognate accusative, 72.
- Commands, how expressed, 132.
- Comparison, ablative of, 98; expressed by *quam*, 98, iii.; conditional clauses of, 68.
- Complementary infinitive, 19-22.
- Compound verbs, dative with, 78, v, *c*.
- Concessive clauses, 65, 66; 171.
- Concords, 10-13.
- Conditional sentences, 58-64; in indirect discourse, 192; conditional clauses of comparison, 68.
- Connective of thought, how expressed, 3, *b*; 202.
- Consecutive clauses, 29-33.
- Coordinating relative, 172; 205, *k*.
- cum** (conjunction), uses of, 148-151.
- Dative case, various uses of, 76-81; 52, 55.
- dēbeō**, use of, 140, *b*.
- Definition, genitive of, 80.
- Deliberative questions, 134, *d*.
- Demonstrative pronouns, uses of, 158-163.
- Dependent questions, 35-37; dependent clauses in indirect discourse, 175, 176; 186, 187.
- Desire, subjunctive of, 135.
- Difference, ablative of measure of, 101.
- Disjunctive questions, 38.
- Distance, accusative of, 128; ablative of, 101, *i*.
- dum**, uses of, 67; 153-155.
- Duration of time, 129.
- Duty, how expressed, 140.
- Ethical dative, 80, *c*.
- Exclamations, accusative in, 74.
- Fearing*, construction with verbs of, 138.
- Final clauses, 23-28.
- fore ut**, periphrasis with, 33, iv.
- Frequentative clauses, tenses in, 149.
- Future infinitive, with verbs of *hoping, promising*, etc., 17.
- Future participle, 122, 123.
- Future perfect tense, uses of, 184.
- Future tense, uses of, 181.

Genitive Case, various uses of, 82-91; 53, 55.

Gerund, uses of, 113, 114.

Gerundive, uses of, 118-121.

hic, use of, 158.

Hindering, verbs of, 139.

Historical infinitive, 112.

Historical present, 179, c.

Hortatory subjunctive, 134, a.

Idem, followed by *qui* or *ac*, 174; use of, 162.

Idiom, differences between English and Latin, 203; 205.

ille, use of, 160.

Imperative mood, use of, 132, 133; in indirect discourse, 186, 1, c.

Imperfect tense, uses of, 180.

Impersonal passive, 56, 57.

Indefinite pronouns, uses of, 166-169.

Indirect discourse, 185-193; principal clauses put in, 186, 1; subordinate clauses in, 175; 186, 2; virtual, 177; tenses in, 187; pronouns in, 188; adverbs in, 189; real or apparent exceptions to rules of, 175, 1; 190; conditional sentences in, 192.

Indirect object, 77, 78.

Indirect questions, 35-39.

Infinitive, uses of, 109-112; 14-18; 19-22; 195.

Inquam (**Inquit**), use of, 18, vi.; 4, g.

Instrumental ablative, 92; 99.

Interest, construction with, 53, b.

Interest, dative of, 79, 80.

Interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōne*, *num*, 31, i., 35, i., 39, iv.; *utrum* . . . *an*, 38, 39, ii.; *annōn*, *neque*, 39, i.

Intransitive verbs, corresponding to English transitive verbs, 51-55; used impersonally in the passive, 56-57.

ipse, use of, 163.

is, use of, 159.

iste, use of, 161.

Jussive subjunctive, 134, b.

licet, use of, 143.

limit of motion, accusative of, 125.

Locative ablative, 92; 127.

Manner, ablative of, 103.

Means, ablative of, 99.

Motion, limit of, 125; motion *from*, 126.

Necessity, how expressed, 141.

nēve, and **nen**, 28, ii.

nōll (**nōllite**), with infinitive, to express prohibitions, 133.

Noun clauses, different forms of, 194-199.

Object, direct, 69; indirect, 77, 78.

Objective genitive, 85; 90.

oportet, use of, 140, b.

Optative use of subjunctive, 135.

Orātiō obliqua, see Indirect discourse.

Order of words, 1-4; of clauses, 5-9; 204.

Participial phrases, value of, 43, 47.

Participles, use of, 40-44; 45-50; 118-123; with force of substantives, 205, g; for abstract noun, 205, i.

Partitive genitive, 86.

Passive voice, impersonal 56, 57; with reflexive or middle force, 69, vii.; 164, iv.

Perfect tense, uses of, 182.

Periodic structure, 9; 204.

Periphrastic conjugations, 120, 123.

Permission, how expressed, 143.

Personal pronouns, use of, 157.

Place, *from which*, 126; *in which*, 127; *to which*, 125.

Pluperfect tense, uses of, 183.

Possessive genitive, 83.

Possessive pronouns (adjectives), use of, 165.

Possessor, dative of, 80, c.

possum, use of, 142.

Potential subjunctive, 136.

- Prepositions, with accusative, 70; with ablative, 108; construction with verbs compounded with prepositions, 78, v.
- Present tense, uses of, 179.
- Price, genitive of, 88; ablative of, 100.
- Primary tenses, 25; primary sequence, 25; 176; 187; 190, vi.
- Prohibitions, how expressed, 133.
- Proviso, clauses of, 67.
- Purpose, various ways of expressing, 124; dative of, 81.
- Quality, genitive of, 87; ablative of, 105.
- quam**, with superlative, 174, i.; after comparatives, 98, iii.
- Questions, direct and indirect, 34-39; in indirect discourse, 186, i, b; deliberative questions, 134, d; rhetorical questions, page 248, fn. 2.
- qui**, see Relative Pronoun.
- quidam**, use of, 167, c.
- quidn**, with words of *doubting*, *preventing*, etc., 139; in relative clauses of characteristic, 33, ii.
- quis**, indefinite, use of, 166, a.
- quisquam**, use of, 166, b.
- quisque**, use of, 169, a.
- quidvis**, use of, 166, c.
- quod**, with clauses of purpose, 28, iii.
- quod**, causal, 145-147; introducing noun clauses, 198.
- quominus**, use of, 139.
- Reference, dative of, 80, b.
- refert**, construction with, 53, b.
- Reflexive pronoun, use of, 16, a; 164.
- Relative clauses, ordinary, 170-174; of purpose, 26; of characteristic, 32; causal, 171; concessive, 171.
- Relative pronouns, use of, 170-174.
- Result, clauses of, 29-33.
- sē**, use and reference of, 16, a; 164.
- Secondary tenses, 25; secondary sequence, 25, 176, 187; 190, vi.
- Separation, ablative of, 93; dative with verbs of, 80, a.
- Sequence of tenses, 25, 176, 187, 190, vi.
- Should*, different values and ways of translating, 144.
- Source, ablative of, 93.
- Space, accusative of extent of, 128.
- Specification, accusative of, 73; ablative of, 102.
- Structure of sentences in Latin, 1-9; 204.
- Subjective genitive, 84.
- Subjunctive mood, in principal clauses, 134-136; in clauses of purpose, 24-27; of result, 29-32; in dependent questions, 35; in conditional clauses, 61, 63; in concessive clauses, 65; in conditional clauses of comparison, 68; with verbs of *fearing*, 138; with *quidn* and *quominus*, 139; with *quod*, 147; with *cum*, 148, 151; with *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, 67; 155; with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 156; with *quā*, 26; 32; 171; in indirect discourse, 175; 186; of virtual indirect discourse, 177; by attraction, 177, i.
- Substantival use of infinitive, 109-111.
- Substantive clauses, 27; 31; 194-199.
- Supine, uses of, 115-117.
- Temporal clauses, 149-156.
- Tenses of the indicative, 178-184; of the infinitive, 15; 110, ii.; of participles, 41; 122; in indirect discourse, 187; of the subjunctive, 25; 30; 33, iii; 36; 61; 63.
- Time, duration of, 129; time *when*, 130; time *within which*, 131.
- Translation, idiomatic, 201-205.
- ut**, use of, 166, b.
- uterque**, use of, 169, b.
- utinam**, use of, 135.
- utrum** . . . **an**, 38.
- Value, genitive of, 88; ablative of, 100.
- Vollitive subjunctive, 134.
- Wish, how expressed, 135.
- Would*, different values and ways of translating, 137.

because the first element of the
 ... the syl -
 ... the syl -
 ... the syl -
 ... the syl -
 ... the syl -
 ... the syl -

Very - syl - hexameter, even
 ... because
 ...

... hexameter ...

... + ...

... — U B

... — —

5 + 6 usually — — — —

Syl ... to all ...
 ... preceding that can be
 ... with it -

... may be short or long
 ... natural ...
 at end makes it long always -

Inserts sound & look

If vowel in short syl - short
I mean in that short syl -
before it is in a short syl -
the vowel is short

If vowel in long syl - in
short syl - always long
a syllable - long

Little changes & reasons
people speaking before a quantity

Changes - and if word may be
- whole of syl - important for
adaptation -

Heavy off short syl -

1st syl - always long -

normal before round short - except
this is - final vowel preceding
initial vowel - it is short. So
also in final -

Vase - 1-33

29-31

102-106 9

108-117 10

178-207 10 10

238-242 10

423-426

433-441 8

453-493 - 404

1-10

unpublished notes - reading to - free -

1919 - Virgil 1-505

Caesar IV, 20-38

V, 1-23

